

New Hello!

& King Lear

By A Group Of Supervisors



معك

Ma3akApp

التطبيق التفاعلي
للتعلم عن بُعد



EL-MONASSER

GUIDE

الصف الثاني الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع
فدروز
التعليمي

2nd
Sec.
2022
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

MODULE 1 Health and Safety

UNIT 1 Staying healthy page 12

UNIT 2 Eating around the world page 62

UNIT 3 The future of food page 112

Revision 1 page 163

MODULE 2 Making connections

UNIT 4 Changing English page 168

UNIT 5 Being smart online page 228

UNIT 6 Learning from our mistakes page 290

Revision 2 page 341

STORY on King Lear page 346

Staying healthy

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

🕒 Reading :

A poster about how to perform first aid

🕒 Writing :

A persuasive email to a friend

🕒 Listening :

A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system

🕒 Speaking :

Suggesting solutions to problems;
Persuading

🕒 Language :

Present and past necessity and lack of necessity

🕒 Life skills :

Resilience

موقع فيروز التعليمي



<https://fb.com/studyvideoo>



<http://t.me/studyvideoo>



<https://bit.ly/2RyAjLk>



<http://t.me/secoondary3>



<https://www.studyvideoo.com>

تابعونا على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
باسم "موقع فيروز التعليمي"

Part I

Vocabulary

تلويح

- اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية ومشتقاتها في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكراسة التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

act(ed) (v)	يؤدي / يتصرف	guide(d) (v-n)	يرشد - مرشد
action (n)	أداء - حدث	immune system(n)	الجهاز المناعي
allow (ed) (v)	يدع / يترك - يسمح	immune(adj)	ذو مناعة - ذو حصانة
allowance (n)	سماح - علاوة	infect(ed) (v)	يعدي - يلتهب
boost (ed) (v - n)	يُعزّز / يوطد / يدعم	infection(n)	عدوي - مرض مُعدي
cell(n)	- تعزيز / دعم	operate(d) (v)	يُشغل - يُجري جراحة
COVID- 19	خلية	operation(n)	تشغيل - عملية جراحية
(Coronavirus	فيروس كورونا المستجد	organ(n)	عضو (بالجسم)
Disease 2019)		perform(ed) (v)	يقوم به - يؤدي
CPR		performance (n)	أداء - عرض
(Cardiopulmonary	الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	react(ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتصرف
Resuscitation)		severe(adj)	شديد - حاد - مزمن
guidance(n)	إرشاد	technique(n)	أسلوب / تقنية
		virus(n)	فيروس

2 Important Vocabulary

athlete(n)	رياضي - لاعب	injure(d) (v)	يصيب - يؤذي
available(adj)	ألعاب القوى	injured(adj)	مُصاب
back(n)	مُتاح - متوافر	injury(n)	إصابة
bandage(n)	الظهر	label(n)	ملصق بيانات
behave(d) (v)	ضمادة	lie - lay - lain (v)	يستلقي - يتمدد
bleed - bled - bled (v)	يتصرف - يسلك	lock(ed) (v-n)	يقفل - يشبك - قفل
bone(n)	ينزف	lung(n)	الرئة
brain(n)	عظمة	medical(adj)	طبي
breathing(n)	المخ	muscle(n)	عضلة
care(d) (n - v)	التنفس	persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع
chance(n)	رعاية / عناية - يرعى	persuading(n)	الإقناع
	فرصة	persuasive(adj)	مُقنع

chest(n)	الصدر	pioneer(n)	رائد
close (adj)	قريب / لصيق	place(d) (v - n)	بضع - مكان
cough(ed) (v - n)	يسعل / يكح - السعال	press(ed) (v - n)	بضغط
cycle(d) (v)	يقود دراجة	prisoner(n)	سجين
death(n)	الوفاة - الموت	pump(ed) (v)	بضخ - مضخة
destroy(ed) (v)	يدمر / يحطم	resilience(n)	المرونة - اللين
details(n)	تفاصيل	separate(d) (adj - v)	منفصل - يفصل / ينفصل
educate(d) (v)	يُعلم	serious(adj)	خطير - جاد
emergency(n)	الطوارئ	service (n)	خدمة
establish(ed) (v)	يُشَيِّد - يُشَيِّد	shoulder(n)	كتف
examination(n)	فحص - امتحان	sick(adj)	مريض
executive (adj)	تنفيذي	solution(n)	حل
expert (n - adj)	خبير	sudden(adj)	مفاجئ
explanation(n)	شرح - تفسير	support(ed) (n - v)	الدعم / يدعم
flat(adj)	مُسْتَوِي - مُسَطَّح	survive(d) (v)	ينجو - يبقى على قيد الحياة
flu(n)	انفلونزا	trophy(n)	البطولة / التتويج الرياضي
hygiene(n)	نظافة (شخصية)		- كأس
importance(n)	أهمية	wrap(ped) (v)	بغلف - يلف

3 Definitions تعريفات

boost (v) يُعزِّز - يوطد - يدعم	to help someone or something to improve or get better
cell (n) خلية	the smallest separate منفصل part of a plant or animal
immune system (n) الجهاز المناعي	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a way that your body protects you from disease something in your body that produces substances to protect you from infection and diseases
infection (n) مرض مُعدي	a disease caused by a virus or bacteria
organ (n) عضو (بالجسم)	a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart
perform (ed) (v) يقوم بـ	to do an action
react (ed) (v) يستجيب	to do something because something else has been done
severe (adj) شديد - حاد	when an illness or an injury is very serious or bad
technique (n) أسلوب / تقنية	a way of doing something with a skill
virus (n) فيروس	a very small living thing that causes disease

Exercise**On Vocabulary****• Understand**

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key & Important vocabulary

1. The system is responsible for defending the body against viral and bacterial infections.
a. digestive b. immune c. severe d. respiratory
2. Some COVID- 19 patients suffer symptoms. أعراض
a. severe b. injured c. bandage d. pioneering
3. You need much more training to improve your
a. guide b. expert c. infection d. performance
4. Influenza is a / an disease.
a. tight b. sick c. infectious d. infected
5. You need to put a / an on the cut to stop the bleeding.
a. injury b. bandage c. allowance d. muscle
6. The nose is the which helps us breathe, speak and smell things.
a. muscle b. organ c. cell d. immune
7. is short for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation.
a. CDR b. CRD c. CPR d. CBR
8. Encouraging children's good behaviour helps it.
a. boost b. infect c. immunise d. injure
9. COVID- 19 attacks and destroys the of the lungs.
a. virus b. cells c. allowance d. bandage
10. The doctor says that my grandfather well to the treatment.
a. places b. operates c. infects d. reacts
11. COVID- 19 is the which has caused the pandemic جائحة this year.
a. microbe b. bacteria c. virus d. illness
12. Mr Ayman applies the latest in business management.
a. resilience b. techniques c. pioneers d. emergency
13. Wearing a face mask and keeping a distance can help us avoid
a. allowance b. performance c. infection d. immunity
14. It is necessary to know how to CPR in case you should help in an emergency.
a. perform b. make c. allow d. guide

15. The ambulance took the man to the nearest hospital.
 a. health b. healthy c. injured d. injuring
16. When the lungs are infected, becomes very difficult.
 a. breathing b. allowing c. bleeding d. wrapping
17. The club's cupboard is full of
 a. sicknesses b. shoulders c. injuries d. trophies
18. We are always ready to you. We are your family.
 a. support b. avoid c. react d. hurt
19. As a foreigner غريب in Egypt, I need someone to me.
 a. cause b. guide c. publish d. develop
20. The police launched شن a / an attack on the terrorists who were not prepared.
 a. abroad b. ill c. sudden d. suddenly
21. Use the fire exit مَخْرَج الحريق in case of
 a. allowance b. emergency c. guidance d. hygiene
22. Cancer is a / an disease.
 a. serious b. flat c. infected d. infectious
23. He was, so he took two days off. إجازة لمدة يومين
 a. medical b. disease c. persuasive d. sick
24. The engine of this car needs careful
 a. solution b. safety c. examination d. technology
25. You can talk to the director. He is the one in charge المسئول here.
 a. locked b. immediate c. tight d. executive
26. is necessary. It helps you adapt to different situations.
 a. Cough b. Resilience c. Service d. Shoulder
27. He gets a / an of 2000 pounds a month.
 a. allowance b. athlete c. persuasion d. a & c
28. The heart is the that does most of the work in the body.
 a. medicine b. bag c. muscle d. hand
29. After the accident, I saw a man
 a. blood b. bleed c. bleeding d. b & c
30. Your heart and lungs are in your
 a. shoulder b. chest c. head d. back
31. Naguib Mahfouz was a real He was the first Arab writer to write great novels.
 a. pioneer b. follower c. athlete d. performer

32. It's usual for a person who has flu to
 a. operate b. lock c. cough d. smell
33. I asked you to the vase carefully on the table. Why did you drop it?
 a. bleed b. place c. press d. lie
34. The baby is peacefully سكيناً في in bed.
 a. lying b. laying c. laid d. lain
35. It is normal for to have strong muscles.
 a. services b. experts c. athletics d. athletes
36. Young people need They do not have enough experience in life.
 a. operation b. performance c. guidance d. a & b
37. It is necessary for a football pitch ملعب to be with no slopes. ميل
 a. flat b. fat c. fit d. float

2 Definitions

38. To is to do an action.
 a. infect b. boost c. perform d. react
39. A / An is a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart.
 a. technique b. organ c. immune system d. cell
40. To is to do something because something else has been done.
 a. infect b. boost c. perform d. react
41. When an illness or injury is very serious, we say it is
 a. immune b. severe c. available d. medical
42. A / An is a way of doing something with a skill.
 a. technique b. organ c. immune system d. cell
43. A / An is a very small living thing that causes disease.
 a. infection b. operation c. virus d. guidance
44. A / An is the smallest separate part of a plant or animal.
 a. technique b. organ c. immune system d. cell
45. To is to help someone or something to improve or get better.
 a. infect b. boost c. perform d. react
46. The is a way that your body protects you from disease.
 a. technique b. organ c. immune system d. cell
47. A / An is a disease caused by a virus or bacteria.
 a. infection b. operation c. virus d. guidance

Part II Vocabulary Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

call	the emergency services يتصل بخدمات الطوارئ	give	infection - يصيب عدوي
cause	a disease يسبب مرض an infection يسبب عدوي	have	a healthy heart لديه قلب سليم a responsibility لديه مسئولية flu يعاني من الإنفلونزا good hygiene يتبع قواعد النظافة الجيدة severe injuries لديه إصابات بالغة
develop	your skills تنمي مهاراتك		
do	an action يقوم بعمل شيء exercise يتدرب a sport يمارس رياضة first aid يقوم بالإسعاف الأولي		
do / perform	a job يؤدي مهمة عمل CPR يقوم بالإنعاش القلبي الرئوي first aid يقوم بعمل الإسعافات الأولية	make	a mistake يرتكب خطأ
		miss	the chance يضيع الفرصة
		pass	an exam يجتاز امتحان
get	a cold يصاب بنزلة برد a virus يصاب بعدوي فيروسية an infection يُصاب بمرض مُعدي better يتحسن enough sleep يحصل على قدر كاف من النوم	sound	perfect يبدو على أكمل وجه
		stay	calm يظل هادئاً safe يبقى بأمان
		suggest	solutions to يقترح حلول لـ
		take	a course يأخذ برنامج تدريبي

Mini Test 1 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Scientists are asked to solutions to the problems the society faces.
a. do b. perform c. suggest d. a & b
- All people need to a good hygiene in order to keep healthy.
a. have b. do c. make d. call
- You should follow the precautionary measures الإحترازية or you will the virus.
a. miss b. get c. play d. cause

4. CPR is when an ill or injured person is not able to breathe.
 a. done b. performed c. had d. a & b
5. The exercise I have is enough for today.
 a. stayed b. done c. made d. called
6. To keep healthy, you need to enough sleep.
 a. cause b. suggest c. get d. stay
7. If you want to succeed in life, never any chance to learn.
 a. miss b. get c. a & b d. cause
8. It is necessary to know how to first aid.
 a. do b. perform c. suggest d. a & b
9. The mistake you have is unforgivable. لا تُغْتَفَر
 a. had b. done c. made d. stayed
10. Bacteria and viruses a lot of infections.
 a. miss b. take c. reason d. cause

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
boost	يُعزِّز - يدعم	improve - enhance - support
boost	يزيد - يروج لـ	increase - promote - publicise
severe	شديد - حاد	acute - serious - grave - dangerous - profound
severe	عنيف - قوي	fierce - violent - strong
follow	يتبع	obey - carry out
normal	طبيعي - مألوف	usual - regular - ordinary - average
normal	عادل - سوي	sane - rational

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
boost	يزيد - يروج لـ	decrease - hinder
encourage ... to	يشجع ... أن	discourage ... from
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	find it easy to
follow	يتبع	break - disobey
lock	يشبك - يقفل	unlock
move closer to	يدنو من / يقترب من	move away from
normal	طبيعي - مألوف	abnormal - unusual
normal	عادل - سوي	insane - irrational
severe	عنيف - قوي	gentle - mild

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "From her behaviour, it is clear that she is not normal." The word 'normal' here can be replaced by
a. sane b. insane c. irrational d. unusual
2. "....." is to "mild" as 'irrational' is to 'normal'.
a. Gentle b. Severe c. Unusual d. Abnormal
3. "You are obliged to follow the law." In this sentence, 'follow' is the antonym of
a. carry out b. boost c. obey d. break
4. She encouraged me to save my money. She me from buying unnecessary things.
a. disappeared b. supported c. discouraged d. forced
5. A: Do you find it to work abroad?
B: Not in the least. It is interesting.
a. hard b. hardly c. difficult d. a & c
6. A: Do you want to move it the wall?
B: No, move it closer.
a. nearer to b. away from c. a & b d. towards
7. "I'm sure this advertisement will boost the sales of the product." What does the word 'boost' in this sentence mean?
a. Promote b. Fail c. Decrease d. Hinder

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as possible	بقدر الإمكان	living thing	كائن حي
be right to	يكون محقاً في	lock your fingers together	اشبك أصابعك
became a pioneer in	يصبح رائداً في	lying on his back	مُستلقي على ظهره
call for help	يطلب المساعدة	make sure	بتأكد / يتحقق
check every detail	يتحقق من كل جزئية	medical support for	الدعم الطبي لـ
come very close to	يدنو جداً من	move closer to	يدنو من / يقترب من
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ	normal breathing	التنفس الطبيعي
exercise regularly	يتدرب بانتظام	on a flat surface	على سطح مستوٍ
explanation of / for	تفسير / توضيح لـ	on top of	فوق
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	react quickly	يتصرف بسرعة
find it hard	يجد من الصعب أن		

first aid kit صندوق الإسعافات الأولية
 follow the instructions for يتبع التعليمات الخاصة به
 get ill more often يمرض كثيراً
 get sick from يصاب بالإعياء من
 healthy hearts قلوب سليمة
 in difficult situations في مواقف صعبة
 in the correct way بالطريقة الصحيحة
 in the first place في المقام الأول
 keep our hearts strong يحافظ على قلوبنا قوية

send blood around
 severe injury
 small enough to
 stay fit
 stay up late
 such as
 sudden death
 take up a sport
 the Middle East
 think fast
 two-day course

يضخ الدم خلال
 إصابة شديدة
 صغير بما يكفي لكي
 يظل لائقاً بدنياً
 يسهر لوقت متأخر
 مثل
 الموت المفاجئ
 يبدأ ممارسة رياضة
 الشرق الأوسط
 يفكر بسرعة
 برنامج تدريبي مدته يومان

5 Verb + Preposition

allow ... to يسمح لـ ... بأن ...
 care about يهتم بـ
 disagree about يختلف علي
 encourage ... to يشجع ... أن
 fall down يسقط / يقع
 fight against يكافح / يقاتل ضد
 forget about ينسى أمر
 forget to ينسى أن
 get into يدخل إلي
 get on يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)
 go out يخرج
 hear from يسمع من
 look around يبحث في المكان المحيط

look forward to + (inf. + ing) / n. يتطلع إلى
 place ... on يضع ... على
 press down يضغط لأسفل
 protect ... from / against يحمي ... من
 pull ... out يرفع - ينزع / يخلع
 remember to يتذكر أن
 reply to يرد على
 rise up يرتفع - يعلو
 seem to يبدو أن
 stay up يسهر
 take up يقبل القيام به - يبدأ
 talk to يتحدث إلى / مع
 worry about يقلق على

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A: Is your offer still available?

B: Forget it. I've changed my mind.

a. to b. from c. about d. of

2. If you go on staying late, you will fall ill.

a. down b. forward c. up d. up on

3. Please, place the microscope carefully the table.

a. for b. on c. to d. b & c

4. She follows the instructions driving a car carefully.
a. for b. to c. from d. on
5. To keep fit, try to take a sport.
a. up b. down c. off d. out
6. You to leave this job. It is boring.
a. right b. are right c. have the right d. b & c
7. She looks forward Paris for the first time.
a. to visiting b. visit c. to visit d. visiting
8. Try to keep away from direct sunlight as much possible.
a. by b. for c. as d. like
9. I'm worried about my brother in Italy. I haven't heard him for ages.
a. with b. about c. of d. from
10. It is important for a driver to think
a. fastly b. fast c. quick d. quiet

6 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
boost(ed) يُعزِّزُ / يوطِّدُ / يدعم	boost تعزيز / دَعْم		
immunize(d) (v) (يُطْعِمُ ضد الأمراض) - يُحَصِّن	immunity المناعة - الحصانة	immune ذو مناعة - ذو حصانة	
infect(ed) يعدي - يُلتهب	infection عدوي - مرض مُعدي	infectious مُعدي - مسبب للعدوي infected مُلتهب - مُصاب بالعدوي	
perform(ed) يقوم به - يؤدي	performance أداء - عرض performer مُؤدِّي - مُمثل		
react(ed) يستجيب - يتصرف	reaction استجابة - رد الفعل reactor مُفاعل	reactionary رجعي - مُتحفِّظ reactive غير مُبادِر	
	severity شِدَّة - حِدَّة	severe شديد - حادّ	severely بشِدَّة - بحدَّة
	virus فَيروس	viral فَيروسي - واسع الانتشار	

Mini Test 4 Derivatives

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your encouragement تشجيع has given me
a. boost b. boosts c. a boost d. boosted
2. Your encouragement has my confidence.
a. boost b. boosts c. a boost d. boosted
3. The clever paramedic succeeded in the of CPR and the injured man started to breathe normally.
a. perform b. performance c. performer d. performed
4. Some scientists think that people who have caught COVID- 19 do not have complete from catching it again.
a. immune b. immunity c. react d. reaction
5. You don't have the of the weather as in Canada in winter.
a. guide b. guidance c. severe d. severity
6. Smallpox الحصبة is an disease.
a. infect b. infection c. infectious d. infected
7. Be careful or you will be with smallpox.
a. infect b. infection c. infectious d. infected
8. I don't know what his to my suggestion will be like.
a. immune b. immunity c. react d. reaction
9. Children need from their parents.
a. guide b. guidance c. severe d. severity
10. Children need their parents to them.
a. guide b. guidance c. severe d. severity

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

boost - boast

• boost (ed) (v)

يُعزِّز - يدعم - يُقوِّي

- Eating fresh fruit and vegetables **boosts** the immune system.

• boast (ed) (v)

يفتخر - يتباهى - (يَفْشُر)

- He is a boring person. He **boasts** about his rich family all the time.

breathe - breath

• breathe (d) (v)

يتنفس

- The performance of CPR helped the injured man breathe normally.

• breath (n)

النفس

- It is normal for your breath to be warm.

lie - lay

• lie - lay - lain - lying (v)

يرقد / يتمدد - يكمن في - يقع / يوجد

- He lay in bed to rest. (رقد / تمدد)
- The problem lies in that he doesn't want to work hard. (تكمن في)
- Egypt lies in the north of Africa. (تقع / توجد)

• lay - laid - laying (v)

يضع - تبيض - يعدّ / يُجهّز

- He laid the glass carefully on the floor. (وضع)
- The bird has laid two eggs. (وضع البيض)
- Mum started to lay the table for lunch. (تعدّ)

• lie - lied - lying (v)

يكذب - يضلّل

- He lied when he said that his uncle is an ambassador. سفير

ولاحظ أن:

• lie to + شخص

يكذب علي

- Don't lie to your mother again.

• lie about + شيء

يكذب بخصوص

- He lied about his job. He is a driver, not a lawyer.

encourage - discourage

• encourage someone to + inf.

يشجع شخص علي القيام بشيء

- His mother encourages him to do a sport to keep fit.

• encourage + (inf. + ing) / n.

يشجع علي

- The government encourages starting private businesses.

• discourage someone from + (inf. + ing)

يثنّي عن / يصرف عن

- I discourage Rodayna from listening to bad songs.

organ - member

• organ (n)

عضو من أعضاء الجسم

- The heart and the brain are the most important **organs**.

• member (n)

عضو (في فريق أو مجموعة أو نادي ... إلخ)

- The manager welcomed the new **members** of the staff.

infection - illness - disease - sickness

• infection (n)

عدوي / مرض (ناتج عن الفيروسات والبكتيريا)

- Smallpox **and** COVID- 19 are dangerous infections.

• illness (n)

مرض / إعياء (خلل بالجسد أو العقل)

- She suffers from a serious **illness**.

• disease (n)

مرض (من نوع معين مثل الانفلونزا أو السرطان ...)

- Flu is a common **disease** in winter.

• sickness (n)

إعياء (يمنع من القيام بالعمل مثلاً)

- My **sickness** stopped me from going to school.

technique - method - way - means

• technique (of / for) (n)

تقنية (تحتاج مهارة ويجب أن يتم تعلّمها والتدرب عليها)

- Try to use a different **technique** to solve the problem.

• method (of / for) (n)

طريقة (أسلوب شائع ومتعارف عليه للقيام بالأشياء)

- This shop allows different **methods** of payment.

• way (n)

طريقة / كيفية القيام بالأشياء

- I like the **way** she talks to little children.

• means (n)

وسيلة / وسائل / أداة (تستخدم كأسم مفرد أو جمع بنفس الشكل)

- The underground is the best **means** of transport in Cairo.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The heart is the responsible for sending blood around the body.
a. member b. organ c. candidate d. sense
2. Egypt is an important of the international society.
a. member b. organ c. muscle d. sense
3. Do your best to the sales of the products.
a. infect b. lay c. boast d. boost
4. Stop about things you have not done.
a. infecting b. laying c. boasting d. boosting
5. He about his exam results. He got a low mark.
a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain
6. A hen some eggs in that hole.
a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain
7. The child on the floor and soon fell asleep.
a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain
8. The plane is the fastest of transport.
a. approach b. method c. technique d. means
9. I tried to her to take that decision.
a. encourage b. discourage c. boast d. infect
10. I tried to her from taking that decision.
a. encourage b. discourage c. boost d. infect

Part III Just for Advanced Level

للمستويات العليا

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

تنويه

boost

• **boost (ed) (v)**

بُعْزَز - يُبْعِش - يُقَوِّي

- The new decisions of the government have **boosted** the economy.
- The new advertisement will surely **boost** the sales. المبيعات

• **boost someone's confidence / ego**

- My father's encouraging words **boosted** Sama's confidence.

يرفع معنويات ...

• **boost someone's morale**

- The first goal **boosted** the team's morale.

يرفع / يرفع إلى أعلى

• **boost / boost up = raise (v)**

- The child wanted me to **boost** him to look out from the window.

تعزّيز - إنعاش

• **boost (to / for) (n)**

- The tourist season is a real **boost** to the economy.

لألفظ التعبيرات التالية:

- provide / give a boost يعطي دفعة - get / receive a boost يتلقى دعم

- morale / ego boost دعم معنوي - دفعة معنوية

cell

• **cell**

- Our bodies consist of a great number of **cells**.

خلية (حيوانية / نباتية)

• **cell**

- The dangerous criminal was locked alone in a **cell**.

زنزانة (حجرة داخل سجن)

• **cell**

- Some street lights depend on solar **cells**.

جهاز لتوليد الكهرباء

• **cell**

- The police have arrested some terrorist **cells**.

تنظيم سرى صغير

• **cell phone**

- The battery of my **cell phone** was empty, so I couldn't call you.

تليفون محمول (فى الإنجليزية الأمريكية)

immune

• **immune (adj)**

- He has caught smallpox before, so he is **immune** for life.

لديه مناعة ضد - مُحصّن ضد (لا تُستخدم قبل الاسم)

• **immune response / reaction**

- Because he is healthy, his **immune response** succeeded in fighting the virus.

الاستجابة المناعية - رد فعل جهاز المناعة

• **immune (to / from) (adj)**

- Old people are sometimes **immune** to new ideas.

لديه حصانة ضد - لا يتأثر به (لا تُستخدم قبل الاسم)

- Parliament members are **immune** from arrest.

• **immunity (to / from) (n)**

- People who have got the virus before have **immunity** to it.

المناعة ضد - الحصانة ضد

• **immunize (against) (v)**

- In Egypt, all children are **immunized** against infectious diseases.

يُحصّن ضد

علم المناعة

- **immunology (n)**
- He is expert in immunology.
- **immunologist (n)**
- He is an immunologist.

عالم متخصص في علم المناعة

infect

- **infect (ed) (with) (v)** يُعَدِّي - يصيب بمرض ≠ disinfect يُعَقِّم / يُطَهِّر
- A lot of people have been infected with COVID-19.
- **infect (ed) (with) (v)** بلوث به (غالبًا تكون الجملة مبنية للمجهول)
- The vegetables from this farm are infected with harmful chemicals.
- **infect (ed) (with) (v)** يُعَدِّي - ينتقل بالإيحاء
- Keep your children away from that bad boy. His bad behaviour will infect them.
- **infection (of / in) (n)** عدوي - مرض مُعَدِّي
- He has a bad infection in the right eye.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- suffer from an infection يعاني من عدوى
- get / develop an infection يُصاب بعدوى
- treat / fight / combat an infection يعالج / يكافح عدوى
- spread an infection ينشر عدوى
- be exposed to an infection يعاني من عدوى
- clear up an infection يزيل العدوى / التلوث
- serious / severe / acute infection عدوي شديدة
- **infectious (adj)** ناقل للعدوي - مُعَدِّي
- Flu is an infectious disease.
- **infected (adj)** مُصاب بالعدوي
- I didn't know I was infected until I had been examined by a doctor.

virus

- **virus (n)** فيروس (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)
- This virus does not infect people.
- **virus (n)** فيروس حاسوبي (برنامج ضار)
- It was a virus sent in an email that destroyed my laptop.
- **virulent (adj)** شديد العدوى
- Coronavirus is so virulent.
- **viral (adj)** فيروسي
- She has a viral infection.

حامل للفيروس
يُصاب بفيروس
يُصاب بفيروس
مُعرض للإصابة بفيروس
يُعدي بفيروس
ينتشر الفيروس
ينتشر بسرعة (على وسائل التواصل)

موقع فدروز التعليمي

- carry a virus
- get / contract a virus
- be infected with a virus
- be exposed to a virus
- pass on / transmit a virus
- a virus spreads
- go viral

3 Word Formation تكوين الكلمات

-ion / -ance

تُستخدم النهايتان (-ion) و (-ance) لتكوين الأسماء من بعض الأفعال :

-ion		-ance	
Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
act يؤدي / يتصرف	action آداء - حدث	allow يسمح	allowance سماح - علاوة
infect يعدي - يلهب	infection عدوي	guide يرشد	guidance إرشاد
operate يُشغل	operation تشغيل	perform يؤدي	performance آداء - عرض

لاحظ حذف حرف (e) غير المنطوق عند إضافة النهايات (-ion / -ance)

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبناها الإجابة والتوضيح

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- His strength as a politician in that he is a good speaker.
a. lies b. lays c. lain d. laid
- I the little baby up so that she could pick an apple from the branch.
a. boasted b. boosted c. rose d. a & c
- He was arrested because he joined a criminal
a. severity b. organ c. muscle d. cell
- These children have been vaccinated They are
a. immune b. immune people
c. immune children d. b & c
- Ibrahim is really a good student. His energy and enthusiasm have all the students in the class.
a. spoiled b. diseased c. infected d. a & c

6. Once I tweeted the news, it went It was retweeted by thousands of people.
a. viroous b. viral c. infected d. infectious
7. He strongly against my suggestion. He refused to discuss it.
a. boosted b. disagreed c. opposed d. reacted
8. Being short, he asked his uncle to give him a / an up to reach the book shelf.
a. pump b. left c. infection d. boost
9. His good manners have made him to evil ideas.
a. immune b. available c. influenced d. affected
10. A person who is has an illness and could pass it to those around him.
a. infection b. infected c. infectious d. infectiously

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- الاختيار الصحيح هو الفعل (lies) بمعنى (تَكْمُن / تُوَجِد) - لا يمكن استخدام الفعل (lain) مع أنها تؤدي نفس المعنى لأنها تصريف ثالث - لا يمكن استخدام الفعل (lays / laid) لأنه يعني (يضع - تبيض - يُعَدِّ)
2.	b	- الاختيار الوحيد المناسب للمعنى والصحيح لغوياً هو (boosted) بمعنى (رفع)
3.	d	- الاسم (cell) هنا يعني (خلية أو مجموعة إجرامية)
4.	a	- الصفة (immune) بمعنى (مُحصَّن ضد) لا يأتي بعدها الاسم الموصوف
5.	c	- الفعل (infected) هنا له معنى إيجابي مجازي (أثرت إيجابياً في)
6.	b	- التعبير (go viral) يعني (ينتشر بسرعة كبيرة على الإنترنت)
7.	d	- وجود حرف الجر (against) جعل الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح هو (reacted) لأن الفعلين (disagreed / opposed) لا يُستخدمان معه في هذا السياق
8.	d	- التعبير (give a boost) يعني (يرفع)
9.	a	- التعبير (immune to) يعني (لا يتأثر به - مُحصَّن ضد)
10.	c	- الصفة (infectious) بمعنى (مُعْدِي) هي الاختيار المناسب لمعنى الجمل

Part IV Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

How to Perform First Aid كيف تقوم بالإسعافات الأولية

(SB page 7)



step (1)



step (2)



step (3)

1 If you find an ill or injured⁽¹⁾ person, you must check⁽²⁾ the area around them first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to⁽³⁾ the person and look carefully at him/her. Does he/she seem⁽⁴⁾ to be very ill? Does he/she have severe⁽⁵⁾ injuries⁽⁶⁾?

2 If the person is awake⁽⁷⁾ but not bleeding⁽⁸⁾, you have to ask him/her how he/she feels and what happened. Check his/her body for signs⁽⁹⁾ of injury or infection⁽¹⁰⁾. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

3 If the person doesn't reply, touch his/her shoulder⁽¹¹⁾ or foot and shout to see if he/she reacts⁽¹²⁾, and remember to check for normal⁽¹³⁾ breathing⁽¹⁴⁾.

4 If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency⁽¹⁵⁾ services⁽¹⁶⁾ immediately⁽¹⁷⁾ (123).

5 If you know how to perform⁽¹⁸⁾ CPR,⁽¹⁹⁾ you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying⁽²⁰⁾ on his/her back⁽²¹⁾ on a flat⁽²²⁾ surface such as the floor.

6 Place⁽²³⁾ your hand on the centre⁽²⁴⁾ of the person's chest⁽²⁵⁾. Put your other hand on top of⁽²⁶⁾ the first hand and lock⁽²⁷⁾ your fingers together⁽²⁸⁾. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.

7 You don't have to press⁽²⁹⁾ down on the person's chest very much – only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on his/her chest and allow⁽³⁰⁾ it to rise up⁽³¹⁾ again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times⁽³²⁾ a minute until the person starts breathing again.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُصاب
- (2) يفحص
- (3) يندو من
- (4) يبدو
- (5) شديد
- (6) إصابات
- (7) مُستيقظ - واعي
- (8) ينزف
- (9) علامات - إشارات
- (10) عدوى
- (11) كتف
- (12) يستجيب
- (13) طبيعي
- (14) التنفس
- (15) الطوارئ
- (16) خدمات
- (17) في الحال
- (18) يقوم بـ
- (19) الإنعاش القلبي
- (20) مُستلقى
- (21) الظهر
- (22) مستوي - مسطح
- (23) ضع
- (24) منتصف - وسط
- (25) الصدر
- (26) فوق
- (27) يثقل
- (28) معًا
- (29) يضغط
- (30) يدع
- (31) يرتفع
- (32) مرات

(SB page 11)

Hi Fares,

How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course next week! I really think you should join them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will **injure**⁽¹⁾ themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, **right**⁽²⁾?



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يصيب - يؤذي
- (2) هل هذا صحيح
- (3) يفكر بسرعة
- (4) موافق
- (5) خبير
- (6) دورة تدريبية مدتها يومان
- (7) يبدو
- (8) رائع / جيد

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can **think fast**⁽³⁾ and you know how to stay calm in difficult **situations**⁽⁴⁾. You don't have to become an **expert**⁽⁵⁾, just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The **two-day course**⁽⁶⁾ your friends want to do **sounds**⁽⁷⁾ perfect.⁽⁸⁾

Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

To : healthtoday@mail.com**From : shady@mail.com**

(WB page 5)

Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a **pleasure**⁽¹⁾ to see them. **Unfortunately**⁽²⁾, because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to **keep clean**⁽³⁾ and **stay healthy**⁽⁴⁾. At the moment, many people in my area have the **flu**⁽⁵⁾ and so these things are even more important than **usual**⁽⁶⁾. What can I do to **persuade**⁽⁷⁾ my cousins to change how they behave?



Check Vocabulary

- (1) سعادة - بهجة
- (2) لسوء الحظ
- (3) يحافظ علي النظافة
- (4) يحافظ علي الصحة
- (5) نزلة البرد
- (6) معتاد / مألوف
- (7) يقنع

They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they cough,⁽⁸⁾ they do not cover⁽⁹⁾ their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

(8) يكح - يسعل

(9) يغطي

(10) يتسخ

(11) يذكر

(12) ينقل عدوي البرد لـ

(13) يتطلع إلي

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty.⁽¹⁰⁾

They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to remind⁽¹¹⁾ them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't give the flu to⁽¹²⁾ older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to⁽¹³⁾ hearing from you.

Yours,
Shady

2 Listening Texts



Athletic Heart Centre (AHC)

(SB page 8)

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes⁽¹⁾ believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However,⁽²⁾ health experts agree that athletes must get a special⁽³⁾ heart examination before they can be completely⁽⁴⁾ sure that they don't have a problem.



Check Vocabulary

(1) رياضيون

(2) مع ذلك

(3) خاص

(4) تماماً

(5) علي سبيل المثال

(6) لاعب كرة قدم

(7) يسقط

(8) من المحزن

(9) يبقي حياً

For example⁽⁵⁾, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer⁽⁶⁾ from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down⁽⁷⁾ while he was training. Sadly,⁽⁸⁾ although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive.⁽⁹⁾

Fortunately,⁽¹⁰⁾ Egypt became a pioneer⁽¹¹⁾ in athletic heart care⁽¹²⁾ in 2018 when it established⁽¹³⁾ the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East⁽¹⁴⁾ in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail⁽¹⁵⁾ of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.⁽¹⁶⁾

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director⁽¹⁷⁾ of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national team take full tests of their hearts before major competitions, such as the World Handball Championships. And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published⁽¹⁸⁾ a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death.

Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance⁽¹⁹⁾ to learn about the importance of heart examinations⁽²⁰⁾ to stay fit and healthy.

- (10) لحسن الحظ
- (11) رائد
- (12) رعاية
- (13) ينشئ
- (14) الشرق الأوسط
- (15) تفاصيل
- (16) بالخارج
- (17) المدير التنفيذي
- (18) ينشر
- (19) بضيع الفرصة
- (20) فحوصات

The Immune System

(SB page 10)

Our organs⁽¹⁾ are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain⁽²⁾ that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system⁽³⁾ comes from the cells and organs that work together to protect us from⁽⁴⁾ diseases.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) أعضاء
- (2) المخ
- (3) الجهاز المناعي
- (4) يحمينا من
- (5) تدمير
- (6) عادي
- (7) نزلة برد
- (8) خطير

The immune system does this by destroying⁽⁵⁾ things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something ordinary,⁽⁶⁾ like the kind of cold⁽⁷⁾ we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious⁽⁸⁾ like the COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus gets into ⁽⁹⁾ a part of the body, a message ⁽¹⁰⁾ is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts ⁽¹¹⁾ by sending cells ⁽¹²⁾ to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against ⁽¹³⁾ a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can boost ⁽¹⁴⁾ our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves. ⁽¹⁵⁾ We also need to exercise regularly. ⁽¹⁶⁾ We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active ⁽¹⁷⁾ as possible. ⁽¹⁸⁾

We also need to make sure ⁽¹⁹⁾ that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least ⁽²⁰⁾ seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid ⁽²¹⁾ getting a virus or an infection in the first place. ⁽²²⁾

We also need to do things like covering ⁽²³⁾ our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

(9) يدخل

(10) رسالة

(11) يستجيب

(12) خلايا

(13) يكافح - يحارب ضد

(14) يعزز

(15) أوراق النبات

(16) بانتظام

(17) نشيط

(18) قدر المستطاع

(19) يتأكد

(20) علي الأقل

(21) يتجنب

(22) في المقام الأول

(23) تغطية

Keeping a healthy heart

(WB page 3)

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from ⁽¹⁾ heart disease?



Check Vocabulary

(1) يظل معافي من

(2) يضح

(3) بالإضافة إلي

Your heart pumps ⁽²⁾ about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise – that means mum and dad as well as ⁽³⁾ the children.

Try to walk, **cycle**,⁽⁴⁾ swim or play games outside **as often as you can**⁽⁵⁾. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to **take up**⁽⁶⁾ a new sport, send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be **fine**,⁽⁷⁾ but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat **healthily**,⁽⁸⁾ too. Show your children that they need to look at the **labels**⁽⁹⁾ before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts **for life**!⁽¹⁰⁾

- (4) يركب دراجة
- (5) كثيراً قدر المستطاع
- (6) يبدأ
- (7) بخير
- (8) بطريقة صحية
- (9) ملصقات
- (10) مدى الحياة

3 Video script

How to perform CPR

(SB page 8)

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance arrives.

So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the **base of your hand**⁽¹⁾ on the **bone**⁽²⁾ in the centre of their **chest**⁽³⁾. Then put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and **press**⁽⁴⁾ 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

Repeat this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قاعدة اليد
- (2) عظمة
- (3) منطقة الصدر
- (4) يضغط

Part V

Language

must / have to

1 must يجب أن / من الضروري أن / من اللازم أن

Active Statement الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم	Subj. + must / mustn't + inf. المصدر ... - I must follow the school rules. - You mustn't drive a car without a licence.
Yes / No Question السؤال بـ «هل»	Must + subj. + inf. ...? - Must you speak loudly all the time?
(Wh-) Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + must + subj. + inf. ...? - What must we do when the traffic light is red?
Passive Statement المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + must / mustn't + be + p.p. - The school rules must be followed . - A car mustn't be driven without a licence.

Brief Notes

ملاحظات موجزة



١ يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد (must) :

- Students **must to follow** the school rules. (X)
- Students **must follow** the school rules. (✓)

٢ يُمكن استخدام (must) كإسم بمعنى (ضرورة / قرض) :

- Following the school rules is **a must**.
 - Working hard is **a must to reach** your goals.
- لاحظ استخدام (to) بعد (must) في المثال السابق لكن (must) هنا اسم وليست فعل.

٢ لا توجد صيغة ماضى لـ (must) وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم (had to) لتؤدى نفس الغرض فى الماضى :

- I **must take** my driving test yesterday. (X)
- I **had to take** my driving test yesterday. (✓)

كما يمكن استخدام تعبيرات بديلة فى الماضى لتعطى معنى قريب من (must) مثل :

- It was necessary to + inf.
- It was **necessary to take** my driving test yesterday.
- It was a necessity to + inf.
- It was **a necessity to take** my driving test yesterday.
- It was a must to + inf.
- It was **a must to take** my driving test yesterday.

موقع
فيدوز
التعليمي

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A driver must a driving licence.
a. holds b. to hold c. hold d. holding
2. One obey the law.
a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
3. One break the law.
a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
4. The law broken.
a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
5. The law followed.
a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
6. Defending homeland الدفاع عن الوطن is a
a. must b. necessary c. necessity d. a & c
7. In the past, people hunt for food.
a. must b. mustn't c. had to d. had

Uses of "must"

١ - تُستخدم (must + inf) في زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية:

التعبير عن القوانين والقواعد العامة :

ex. - Drivers **must wear** seatbelts.

٢ التعبير عن الالتزام الداخلى النابع من رغبة شخصية إذا كان الفاعل (I - We) :

- ex. - I **must work** hard for the exams. (رغبتي الشخصية فى النجاح هى التى تفرض على ذلك)
 - I **must buy** a present for my mother tomorrow. (أُمى لم تفرض علىَّ شراء هدية لها)
 - We **must buy** souvenirs for our friends here. (أصدقائنا لم يطلبوا هدايا)

٣ إعطاء نصيحة قوية (لشخص مُقَرَّب أو من طبيب لمرضى مثلاً) :

- ex. - You **must stop** smoking.
 - You **must wash** your hands before you eat.

٤ توجيه الدعوة بقوة (دعوة حارة لشخص مُقَرَّب) :

- ex. - Sama, you **must come** to my birthday party tonight.
 - You **must come** and see us at the weekend.

٥ تحفيز شخص مُقَرَّب على القيام بشيء ما (التركية / التوصية) :

ex. - You **must buy** this villa. It is a bargain. صفقة رابحة.

٦ تُستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للانتقاد أو اللوم :

ex. - **Must you talk** while you are eating? (انتقاد سلوك غير مقبول)

- **Why must you shout** at me all the time? (لوم أو عتاب)

Uses of "mustn't"

- تُستخدم (mustn't + inf) في زمنى المضارع والمستقبل في الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن المنع أو التحريم أو عدم السماح (طبقاً للقوانين والقواعد والأعراف) :

ex. - You **must not park** outside the entrance.

- You **must not make** loud noise after 9 o'clock.

- You **mustn't park** here. It's forbidden.

- You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals.

٢ إعطاء نصيحة قوية (لشخص مقرب أو من طبيب لمرضى مثلاً) :

ex. - You **mustn't waste** your time, son.

- You **mustn't eat** sweets. It is dangerous because you are diabetic. مريض بالسكر.

٣ التحذير من القيام بشيء قد يترتب عليه ضرر أو خطورة :

ex. - You **must not give** your visa card details to anyone.

- You **mustn't tell** this news to anyone. It's a secret.

موقع
فدروز
التعليمي

Other ways to say "mustn't"

- هناك طرق عديدة للتعبير عن المنع / التحريم مثل :

1 - It isn't / legal قانوني / permitted مسموح ... + to + inf. مصدر

= It is illegal غير قانوني / against the law + to + inf.

= Subj. + be + not + allowed / permitted + to + inf.

= (Inf. + ing) + be + (not allowed / against the law)

ex. - It isn't permitted (legal) to park your car here.

- It is illegal (against the law) to park your car here.

- You aren't allowed to park your car here.

- Parking your car here isn't allowed (legal / permitted).

- Parking your car here is illegal (against the law).

2 - It is banned / prohibited / forbidden ممنوع / محظور + to + inf.

= Subj. + be + banned / prohibited / forbidden + from + (inf. + ing)

= (Inf. + ing) + be + banned / prohibited / forbidden

ex. - It is banned / prohibited / forbidden to park your car here.

= You are banned / prohibited / forbidden from parking here.

= Parking your car here is banned / prohibited / forbidden.

Mini Test 2

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A visitor to a hospital smoke. It is banned.

a. must

b. mustn't

c. should

d. shouldn't

2. A visitor to a hospital stop smoking there. It is banned.

a. must

b. mustn't

c. should

d. shouldn't

3. "You must come and have dinner with me." This is a

a. must

b. necessity

c. suggestion

d. warm invitation

4. "You stop taking this medicine until I tell you to do so," said Dr Mustafa.

a. banned to

b. must be

c. mustn't

d. don't have to

5. In an open-book examination, it is to use your school book.
 a. legal b. illegal c. a must d. prohibited
6. Having got a red card in the last match, you are from taking part in the tomorrow's match.
 a. permitted b. banned c. obliged d. licensed
7. "Must you wear this white suit for the funeral جنازة?!" This question shows
 a. permission b. banning c. approval d. disapproval

2 يجب أن / من اللازم أن have to / has to

Active Statement المبنى للمعلوم	Subj. + have to / has to + inf. المصدر - You have to follow the school rules. - Sama has to pay the electricity bill tomorrow.
Negative النفي	Subj. + don't / doesn't + have to + inf. - You don't have to get up early. We are on holiday. - Rodayna doesn't have to buy a pen. She has two pens.
Yes / No Question السؤال بـ «هل»	Do / Does + subj. + have to + inf.? - Do they have to wait for the manager? - Does Ahmed have to attend the meeting?
(Wh-) Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + do / does + subj. + have to + inf.? - What does Abdu have to do to join the club?
Passive statement المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + have / has + to be + p.p. - The electricity bill has to be paid .

موقع
فدروز
التعليمي

١ نستخدم (has to) مع الفاعل أو المفعول المفرد الغائب (he - she - it) بينما نستخدم (have to) مع الفاعل أو المفعول الجمع (I - we - you - they):

- Sama **have to** be at work on time. (X)
- Sama **has to** be at work on time. (✓)
- You **has to** follow the traffic rules. (X)
- You **have to** follow the traffic rules. (✓)

٢ لاحظ أن نفي (have / has to) الشائع هو (don't / doesn't have to) وليس (haven't / hasn't to):

- Ahmed **hasn't to** get up early on Fridays. (X)
- Ahmed **doesn't have to** get up early on Fridays. (✓)
- We **haven't to** finish all the reports today. (X)
- We **don't have to** finish all the reports today. (✓)

٣ في الإنجليزية البريطانية نستخدم (have / has got to) مثل (have / has to) كالتالي:

- Rodayna **has got to check** the inbox every morning. (إثبات مبني للمعلوم)
- Rodayna **hasn't got to check** the inbox every morning. (نفي)
- **Has Rodayna got to check** the inbox every morning? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- How often **has Rodayna got to check** the inbox? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- The inbox **has got to be checked** every morning. (مبني للمجهول)

- تذكر أن صيغة الماضي من (have / has got to) هي (had to) وليس (had got to):

- Malak **had got to borrow** money after losing her purse. (X)
- Malak **had to borrow** money after losing her purse. (✓)

٤ نستخدم (need / needs to) مثل (have / has to) كالتالي:

- Yara **needs to take** a language course. (إثبات مبني للمعلوم)
- Yara **doesn't need to take** a language course. (نفي)
- **Does Yara need to take** a language course? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What **does Yara need to take**? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- A language course **needs to be taken** by Yara. (مبني للمجهول)

- تذكر أن (needn't) لا يتبعها حرف الجر (to):

- Mum **needn't to go** shopping every day. (X)
- Mum **needn't go** shopping every day. (✓)

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Rokaya to stay at work until five o'clock.
a. must b. mustn't c. have d. has
- Mohammed has his driving licence.
a. renew b. to renew c. to be renewed d. b & c
- Rokaya and Leen to stay at work until five o'clock.
a. must b. mustn't c. have d. has
- I have the baby.
a. to feed b. feed c. to be fed d. be fed
- The baby has
a. to feeding b. feed c. to be fed d. be fed
- to leave now ?
a. Have you b. Have you got c. Do you have d. b & c
- Ayman to do all these jobs alone.
a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. haven't d. don't have
- Ayman and Ashraf to do all these jobs alone.
a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. haven't d. don't have

Uses of "have to / has to"

١ التعبير عن الالتزام المفروض من الخارج (أى يوجد اجبار) مثل الالتزام بالقوانين والقواعد فى مواقف محددة فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل :

- ex. - I **have to** pay the bill الفاتورة or the internet service will be disconnected.
- My children **have to** study ancient history at school next year.

٢ تُستخدم (will have to + inf.) للتعبير عن شئ من المهم القيام به فى المستقبل :

- ex. - The flight is at six in the morning, so we'll **have to** get up very early.

٣ تُستخدم (had to + inf.) كصيغة الماضى من (have to / must) للتعبير عن الضرورة والالزام بصفة عامة فى الماضى :

- ex. - Aya **had to** cook the family dinner yesterday. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Aya **didn't have to** cook the family dinner yesterday. (نفي)
- **Did** Aya **have to** cook the family dinner yesterday? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What **did** Aya **have to** do yesterday? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- The family dinner **had to be** cooked (by Aya) yesterday. (مبنى للمجهول)

mustn't & don't / doesn't + have to + inf.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (mustn't) و (don't / doesn't + have / need to)

١ تعبر (mustn't) عن الإلزام (لا يجب - غير مسموح - ممنوع) :

- ex.** - Students **don't have to** make noise in the exam room. (X)
 - Students **don't need to** make noise in the exam room. (X)
 - Students **mustn't** make noise in the exam room. (✓)

٢ تعبر (don't / doesn't have / need to) عن شيء ليس من الضروري القيام به (لكن يستطيع الفاعل القيام به إن أراد) :

- ex.** - Students **mustn't** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (X)
 - Students **don't have to** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✓)
 - Students **don't need to** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✓)

didn't need to & needn't have + p.p.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't + need / have to + inf.) و (needn't have + p.p.) :

١ تعبر (didn't + need / have to + inf.) عن شيء كان الفاعل يعلم أنه ليس ضرورياً لذلك لم يقم به :

- ex.** - It was raining, so I **didn't need to water** the flowers.
 (It wasn't necessary, so I didn't do that.)

٢ تعبر (needn't have + p.p.) عن شيء لم يكن الفاعل يعلم أنه ليس ضرورياً ولذلك تم القيام به :

- ex.** - Ali **needn't have bought** meat. We have enough in the freezer.
 (Ali didn't know that we have enough meat, so he bought more unnecessarily.)

Mini Test 4

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You to renew your driving licence next month.
 a. have b. will have c. must d. a & b
- I to stay up late last night to look after my baby sister who was ill.
 a. have b. didn't have c. had d. needn't
- Mr Abdulrahman to buy a tenth-generation laptop because his old one has become old-fashioned.
 a. had got b. had c. has d. have

4. A new shirt had and ironed before you wear it for the first time.
 a. washed b. to wash c. be washed d. to be washed
5. You smoke in a public place.
 a. mustn't b. must c. haven't to d. don't have to
6. You buy a new pen. You can borrow mine.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. haven't to d. didn't have to
7. I don't have any money, so I to find an ATM.
 a. have b. need c. a & b d. must
8. You needn't out in this bad weather. You can get what you need delivered to your home.
 a. go b. to go c. have to go d. b & c
9. She'd already had her lunch. You her all these sandwiches.
 a. don't need to buy b. needn't to buy
 c. needn't have bought d. didn't have to buy
10. I knew I had enough time. So, I
 a. needn't have hurried b. needn't to hurry
 c. needn't hurry d. didn't have to hurry

Exercises On Language

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. We all smoke in petrol stations.
 a. ought b. mustn't c. needn't d. should
2. You do all this hard work alone. It is my duty to help you.
 a. need to b. have to c. don't need to d. must
3. Wait a minute, Ali : You take a taxi. I will give you a lift.
 a. have to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. must
4. You see a doctor. You look very ill.
 a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. don't have to
5. You spend too much money. You won't have any left for your holiday.
 a. should b. mustn't c. don't need to d. have to

6. You take an umbrella if you are going to Egypt. It doesn't often rain there.
 a. haven't to b. don't need to c. must d. need to
7. You take that book back to the library yet. You can keep it for another week.
 a. must b. don't have to c. need to d. mustn't
8. You speak so loudly. We are in the library.
 a. need to b. mustn't c. needn't d. don't have to
9. When you arrive in another country, you show your passport.
 a. mustn't b. should c. have to d. don't need to
10. What do I do to get a driving license?
 a. must b. have to c. will have to d. have got to
11. Why did you go to hospital?
 a. must b. have to c. will have to d. have got to
12. Does he bring the money with him?
 a. have to b. need c. ought to d. have got to
13. You help me if you don't have time. I can do it myself.
 a. don't have to b. hasn't got to c. have to d. mustn't
14. I go to hospital tomorrow to have my eyes checked.
 a. must b. have to c. will have to d. have got to
15. Hurry up, Rodayna. We be late.
 a. didn't have to b. mustn't c. haven't got to d. needn't
16. He tell me again. I can remember everything he said.
 a. doesn't have to b. haven't got to c. mustn't d. needn't to
17. Nada buy a new tablet. Her old one is still very good.
 a. mustn't b. don't need c. hasn't got d. doesn't have to
18. My aunt was in hospital. I visit her yesterday.
 a. had got to b. needn't c. must d. had to
19. I've warned you before. You play football in the street.
 a. don't have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. don't need to
20. Ahmed can't come out with us this evening. He work.
 a. must b. has to c. need to d. should

21. My old dictionary is useless. I buy a new one.
 a. don't have to b. need c. mustn't d. must
22. Well, he hasn't been invited to the party, so I think he go.
 a. don't have to b. haven't got to
 c. don't need to d. hasn't got to
23. I'm sorry. You bring your pet into school.
 a. haven't got to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. needn't
24. It's a secret, OK? You tell anyone else.
 a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. don't have to
25. I know it's raining, but you wear all these clothes.
 a. don't need b. mustn't c. needn't to d. don't have to
26. You aren't allowed to stop here. You do that.
 a. don't have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. haven't got to
27. I get up early tomorrow. I'm going away and my train leaves at 7:30.
 a. must b. need c. had to d. have got
28. I'm not deaf. You shout.
 a. are not permitted b. are prohibited
 c. aren't allowed d. don't have to
29. In most parks, you walk on the grass.
 a. needn't to b. aren't allowed to
 c. don't have d. haven't got
30. If you come to Britain, you come and visit us. We'd love to see you.
 a. will b. must c. need d. ought
31. He had to come early because it necessary.
 a. is b. was c. will be d. had
32. I be at work at 8 a.m. or my boss will be furious.
 a. should have b. must c. need to d. have to
33. I phone my friend this evening. I promised him I would.
 a. need b. have to c. should have d. must

II Special cases

34. You buy a pen. I can lend you one.
 a. need to b. needn't c. should d. haven't to
35. We forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
 a. haven't got to b. mustn't c. should d. have to
36. You any more salt to the food. Now we can't eat it.
 a. needn't have added b. should add
 c. didn't have to add d. need to add
37. We give our homework to the teacher until next week.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. should d. need to
38. You such a long essay. The teacher asked for 300 words and you have written 700.
 a. needn't have written b. had to write
 c. didn't have to write d. should have written
39. Have you ever go to hospital?
 a. must b. had to c. has to d. need to
40. According to my promise, I remember to phone my brother Ahmed tonight.
 a. don't have to b. must c. mustn't d. have got
41. Here's your present. You open it before your birthday!
 a. don't have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. don't need to
42. It's a holiday today, so we go to school. However, the school library is open.
 a. don't have to b. mustn't c. have got to d. have to
43. You can't turn right here. You to turn left.
 a. must b. have c. has got d. should
44. If you go to Egypt, you forget to go to the Pyramids. They are great.
 a. don't have to b. needn't c. don't need to d. mustn't
45. You be noisy. Dad is trying to watch TV.
 a. needn't b. don't have to c. mustn't d. haven't got to

3. You to the office. It wasn't necessary.
a. had to go b. needed to go
c. needn't have gone d. have to go
4. Policemen wear a uniform. It is a general rule.
a. have to b. should c. need to d. must
5. I get up early on school days.
a. mustn't b. have to c. don't have to d. must
6. Owing to the fact that tomorrow is a national holiday, I get up early.
a. needn't to b. haven't to c. mustn't d. won't have to
7. More money has been wasted. You bought all these toys.
a. can't have b. should have
c. need have d. needn't have
8. Your brother get his visa before travelling to the USA.
a. needn't b. need c. has to d. must

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- يتضح من سياق الكلام أن المتكلم يسأل لأنه يتحدث عن عدم إعجابه برباط العنق الأصفر وليس الزي الرسمي أو الضرورة
2.	c	- الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغوياً من ناحية البناء والمعنى هو (are banned from)
3.	c	- الاختيار الصحيح من ناحية الزمن هو (needn't have gone) كما أنه الوحيد الذي يناسب المعنى
4.	d	- الفعل الناقص (must) هو الأدق وليس (have to) لأن السياق يتحدث عن قاعدة عامة غير مرتبطة بزمان أو مكان أو أشخاص
5.	b	- الصيغة (have to) هي الأدق وليس (must) لأن السياق يتحدث عن إلزام خارجي يفرضه القانون في موقف محدد وليس التزام شخصي
6.	d	- الاختيار الأدق والأصح لغوياً ومن حيث المعنى هو (won't have to)
7.	d	- الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغوياً من ناحية البناء والمعنى هو (needn't have)
8.	c	- الصيغة (has to) هي الصحيحة لأن السياق يتحدث عن إلزام خارجي يفرضه القانون في موقف محدد

stop + obj.

• **stop + obj.** مفعول + **from + (inf. + ing)** = **stop + obj.** مفعول + **(inf. + ing)** ... من أن يمنع

ex. - We must stop people from polluting the river.

= - We must stop people polluting the river.

stop + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

• **stop + to + inf.**

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً

ex. - On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruit.

• **stop + (inf. + ing)**

يتوقف عن فعل شيء

ex. - My uncle has stopped smoking and his health is better now.

he or she versus they

هناك أسماء يندرج تحتها المذكر والمؤنث مثل:

- person - child - teacher - researcher - doctor ... etc.

- someone - somebody - everyone ... etc.

وعندما نشير إلى أي من الأسماء السابقة وما يشبهها بضمير يمكن أن نتبع أي من الطرق التالية :

١. استخدم ضمائر الجمع : **(they - them - their - theirs)**

ex. - I hear a child crying. They may be hungry. Their mother must feed them.

٢. استخدم ضمائر المذكر والمؤنث كالتالي : **(he or she - him or her - his or her - his or hers)**

ex. - I hear a child crying. He or she may be hungry. His or her mother must feed him or her.

٣. استخدم ضمير المذكر فقط أو المؤنث فقط إذا كان المتحدث متأكداً من النوع :

ex. - This is a school for boys. A student has written his name on the desk. He is careless.

start / begin + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

يأتي بعد (start / begin) المصدر مضافاً له **(ing)** أو **(to + inf.)** دون فرق في المعنى:

ex. - He began working / to work for this company last year.

لكن بعد **(starting / beginning)** نستخدم **(to + inf.)** فقط:

ex. - I was starting to do my homework when the phone rang.

as

١. يُستخدم بعدها اسم يدل على الوظيفة أو المرحلة العمرية أو الدور أو المظهر:
ex. - **As a boy**, he worked in a bakery.
 - He works **as a police officer**.
٢. يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (**as**) ويكون اختصاراً لجملة مبنية للمجهول:
ex. - He works hard **as required**. (= as it is required)
٣. تُستخدم (**as**) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة:
ex. - She broke the cups **as** she was taking them to the kitchen. (= when /while)
 - **As** he makes a lot of mistakes, he doesn't get good marks. (= Because)

like

١. تُستخدم بمعنى (**مثل / يشبه**) مع أفعال منها :
 (be / look / sound / feel / taste / seem / eat / drink / grow....)
ex. - She **looks like** her aunt.
 - He eats **like** a horse.
٢. تُستخدم لاعطاء أمثلة بعدها بمعنى : (**for example / such as**)
ex. - Colours **like** green, pink, and red are suitable for you.

Sentence adverb

هناك بعض الظروف التي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغيير معني الجملة بالكامل ، و غالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل:

- من المحزن **Sadly** - من الغريب **Strangely** - لحسن الحظ **Fortunately/Luckily**
 ... من المدهش **Surprisingly** - من المثير للإهتمام **Interestingly**

- ex.** - **Fortunately**, I had enough money.
 - **Strangely**, he agreed to help us.

Verb + adj.

يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد:

- يعطي مذاق **taste** - يبدو **sound** - يبدو **appear** - يبدو **seem** - يبدو **look** - يكون **be**
 يعطي رائحه **smell** - يعطي شعوراً أو ملمس **feel**

- ex.** - Ahmed **looks happy**.
 - Mum's food **smells delicious**.

Exercises On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The traffic policeman stopped me in front of the bank.
a. to park b. from parking c. parking d. b & c
- The child looked with his new toy.
a. happy b. happily c. happiness d. happening
-, my team lost the match.
a. Sad b. Sadness c. Sadly d. Saddened
- Viruses COVID-19 and SARS have caused thousands of deaths.
a. as b. like c. such d. as if
- a student, you should study hard
a. As b. Like c. Such d. As from
- She stopped a cold drink and a snack from the supermarket.
a. from buying b. buying c. to buying d. to buy
- She stopped junk food because it is harmful.
a. buy b. buying c. to buying d. to buy
- It will start
a. to rain b. raining c. to raining d. a & b
- It is starting
a. to rain b. raining c. to raining d. a & b
- A person should know what goal in life is.
a. his b. her c. their d. our

Part VII

Language Skills

1 Writing Tips - Persuading إرشادات خاصة بالكتابة - الإقناع

- عند محاولة إقناع شخص ما بالقيام بشئ ما يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية :

- **It's great that + جملة ...** إنه لشيء عظيم أن ...
- It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course!
- **I really think you should + inf.** أعتقد فعلاً أنه يجب عليك أن ...
- I really think you should join the course.

يجب على الجميع أن ... **Everyone has to + inf.**

- Everyone has to know how to do first aid.

لا يمكنك أن تعلم متى ... **you never know when + جملة ...**

- You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them.

إنك قد تريد أن ...، هل هذا صحيح؟ **you would want, right?**

- You would want other people to help you too, right?

إنني متأكد أنك سوف ... **I'm sure you would + inf.**

- I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations.

إنك لست مضطراً لأن ... **you don't have to + inf.**

- You don't have to become an expert, just learn enough so you can help someone.

إن ... يبدو رائعاً. **..... sounds perfect.**

- The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

2 كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني Email Writing

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

Model email

Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words to your friend John to persuade him to learn how to perform first aid. Your name is Ashraf and your email is ashraf@mail.com and your friend's email is john@mail.com.

To: john@mail.com

From: ashraf@mail.com

Dear John,

How are you ? I hope you are your best. I have heard they are starting a course in the local hospital to teach the citizens in the neighbourhood how to do first aid. I write this email to you to try to persuade you join the course with me.

Perhaps you know it is great to learn a new skill that is very useful. I really think you should join the course. First of all, I would like to tell you why it is important to learn how to perform first aid.

Everyone has to learn this skill because they may need it one day. You never know when an accident happens. When accidents happen, there are people who are badly injured. Some of them may not be able to breathe. What would you do then?

Perhaps you would say that you would call the emergency services, right? Of course, you must call the emergency services. But what if the nearest emergency service centre is far away? What would you do then? Would you stand there doing nothing for the people that were dying because you could not help?

I'm sure you would want to help. However, you can't help unless you know how to help. Performing first aid needs special skills you should learn. The first aid course is a golden chance you should never miss. By the way, the course is free. I hope very much that you would agree to join the course with me.

I'm looking forward to your positive reply.

Yours,

Ashraf

3 الترجمة Translation

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

① Translate into Arabic :

1. It has been proven that nothing remains impossible in science. In the not-too-distant future, we will be treating all diseases to cure them and not only to manage them.
2. Climate change has disastrous effects on the future of life on earth. If the effects of climate change make our environment hostile, the populations of some countries may be decreasing.
3. According to estimations, around 400 million patients have diabetes worldwide. Unfortunately, scientists' efforts to find a cure for diabetes haven't yet been successful.

② Translate into English :

١. يتوقع الخبراء أن يزداد عدد سكان العالم إلى عشر مليارات بحلول عام ٢١٠٠، وهذه الزيادة تتطلب بالضرورة زيادة في إنتاج الغذاء وتوفير المزيد من المساكن والخدمات.

٢. من المؤكد أن فرق البحث تعمل على إيجاد علاجات فعالة لأمراض مثل السكر والتهاب المفاصل، لكن هذا قد يستغرق إنجازه وقتًا طويلاً وستستفيد منه الأجيال القادمة.
٣. قد تتحول بعض الأراضي الزراعية إلى صحراء وهو ما يُعرف بالتصحّر، وهذه سوف ينتج عن الجفاف والتغير المناخي المتوقع.

Vocabulary related to translation texts

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

according to	طبقاً لـ	arthritis	التهاب المفاصل
AIDS	مرض الإيدز	field	مجال
desertification	التصحّر	generations	الأجيال
disastrous	كارثي	in case	في حالة
distant	بعيد	necessarily	بالضرورة
effective	فعال	pressure	ضغط
efforts	جهود	providing	توفير
estimations	التقديرات	requires	تتطلب
experts	الخبراء	services	الخدمات
hostile	عدائي - عدواني	threat	تهديد
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	worldwide	في كل أنحاء العالم
diabetes	مرض السكر		

King Lear

Act I

Scenes (i)

أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

Vocabulary

act(n)	فصل (في مسرحية)	kingdom(n)	مملكة
answer(n)	رد - إجابة	make ... happy	يُسعد
ask ... to marry	يطلب... للزواج	play(n)	مسرحية
beauty(n)	الجمال	pleased to meet	سعيد بلقاء
character(n)	شخصية	riches (n) = wealth	الثروة
divide ... into two	يقسم ... نصفين	scene(n)	مشهد
divide(d) (v)	يُقسّم	shout about (phr. v)	يُصرّح بـ
Duke(n)	دوق (القبأوروبي)	Sir(n)	سير (القبأوروبي)
duty(n)	الواجب	sword(n)	سيف
foolish (adj - n)	أحمق	third(n)	ثلث (١/٣)
give ... away (phr. v)	يتنازل عن	title(n)	لقب
give an answer to	يرد على - يُجيب على		

Additional Exercise

تدريب إضافي (تدريب على سؤال اختر إجابتين صحيحتين من خمس اختيارات)

★ Choose the TWO correct answers of the FIVE options given :

1. Don't be nervous and calm.
a. stay b. sail c. leave d. keep e. cause
2. Amir is the only one that can that job.
a. work b. perform c. do d. make e. damage
3. Troops have been sent to protect aid workers attack.
a. from b. for c. of d. with e. against
4. It's not normal to be very hot at this time of the year. The antonyms of "normal" are
a. usual b. formal c. unusual d. extraordinary e. official
5. Severe laws are to set to protect children. The word severe can be replaced by
a. strict b. weak c. harsh d. simple e. easy
6. When Amr arrived at the hospital, the doctor told his parents that he should CPR.
a. bring b. do c. spell d. train e. perform
7. The company will boost your chances of winning the election. The synonyms of "boost" are
a. stop b. enhance c. hinder d. support e. prevent
8. As a driver, you should be able to first aid in case of emergency.
a. do b. receive c. buy d. consume e. perform
9. The security asked the visitors to follow the security rules properly. The opposites of "follow" are
a. obey b. rescue c. break d. disobey e. disappear
10. It's not easy to be employable these days unless you your skills.
a. decrease b. develop c. prove d. remove e. improve

Consolidate

your Vocabulary From Act I, scene i

المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية في
نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I decided to my money between my two sons and two daughters.
a. give b. make c. divide d. a & c
2. Everyone likes
a. beautiful b. beauty c. beautifully d. beautify
3. Bad friends know you only for your
a. poverty b. wealthy c. rich d. riches
4. Every citizen has a towards their country.
a. duty b. beauty c. play d. kingdom
5. It is not of you to take such an important decision without careful thinking.
a. stupid b. foolish c. sensible d. a & b
6. Saudi Arabia is a, not a republic جمهورية.
a. kingdom b. state c. union d. b & c
7. A: What is your job? B: I am an accountant.
a. dress b. address c. title d. chance
8. He is sothat he makes trouble for both himself and his relatives.
a. stupid b. foolish c. sensible d. a & b
9. In ancient times, a soldier used to fight using a
a. gun b. sword c. title d. bomb
10. A: to meet you, sir. B: Me, too.
a. Please b. Pleasant c. Pleasing d. Pleased

Test on Unit 1

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



A. Vocabulary and Structures

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Normal is an antonym of
a. irrational b. insane c. a & b d. rational
2. I'm sure enough exercise will your performance.
a. lock b. boost c. persuade d. breathe
3. Too much noise gives me a / an headache.
a. athletic b. injured c. technical d. severe
4. This coach failed because his are old-fashioned.
a. muscles b. techniques c. expert d. breathing
5. Don't be strict صارم all the time. You need some to be able to adapt to different situations.
a. resilience b. resilient c. sick d. sickness
6. This jacket will protect you the severe cold outside.
a. from b. of c. against d. a & c
7. I the umbrella, it was not raining.
a. needn't have taken b. don't need to take
c. need to take d. needn't take
8. I have been tired all week. I get more sleep.
a. don't have to b. must c. needn't d. have got
9. In some countries, children wear school uniform.
a. needn't b. mustn't c. doesn't have d. don't need
10. My friend has sent me an email this morning. I reply soon or he'll start to worry.
a. don't need to b. don't have to c. need to d. mustn't
11. My son study mathematics at school next year so that he can join the faculty of engineering.
a. need b. has to c. needn't d. needn't have
12. People drive too fast in the city centre.
a. should b. need to c. mustn't d. don't have to
13. We to go to school tomorrow. It's a public holiday.
a. don't have b. couldn't c. needn't d. mustn't

14. You wear anything special for the family party, but you can if you want.
a. needn't b. don't need c. can't d. couldn't
15. You forget to do your homework tonight. The teacher wants it tomorrow.
a. don't have to b. mustn't c. don't need to d. must
16. I be at work at 7.30 am or I will be fired.
a. have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. has to

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

✶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Science writer, Carl Zimmer, says that in his utopia (المدينة الفاضلة) there would be a health system with drugs and vaccines to deal with any virus that could cause us trouble.

Viruses are the most plentiful life form on Earth. If you took all the stars in the universe and multiplied that number by a million, that's how many viruses we think are on the planet.

Zimmer thinks we should face the future with a mixture of optimism and preparing for the worse. He thinks we will face some unknown viruses that will cause a lot of damage – history tells us that this is so. We do understand viruses a lot better now, and there is great hope that one day we'll be able to find a drug that can kill any virus. But this research is at a very preliminary stage, and it will be a number of years before we see whether this type of universal anti-viral drug could actually work.

Viruses are very versatile and clever. There are things that they can do for us. Some scientists are using viruses as engineers to gather solar panels; others are using viruses to manufacture proteins that could be used as drugs. So, maybe in the future we won't think of viruses as our enemies, but instead view them as our friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The writer hopes that in the future we would have a/an drug.
a. virus b. enemy c. manufacture d. anti-viral
18. The underlined word "versatile" in the third paragraph can be replaced by
a. little b. skillful c. tiny d. lazy

19. We have understanding of viruses right now.
 a. little b. no c. much d. few
20. The universal anti-viral drug research is in its stage.
 a. preliminary b. late c. final d. advanced

B. Answer the following questions :

21. In your opinion, is the writer optimistic متفائل or pessimistic متشائم?
 How do you know?
22. If viruses can be useful, do we still need a universal anti-viral drug?
 Why / Why not?
23. What is the main idea of the third paragraph? What does it show?
24. Do you believe that viruses will be our friends in the future? Why/
 Why not?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Scientists are currently doing research into new ways of treating common diseases like diabetes, blood pressure and AIDS. They have already discovered an effective cure for virus C.

26. Translate into English :

سيؤدي التغير المناخي إلى ذوبان الجليد الذي يغطي قمم الجبال والجليد الذي يوجد عند القطبين،
 وسيؤدي هذا إلى ارتفاع مستوى المياه في البحار والمحيطات.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

How one can stay healthy

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Reading :

An excerpt from Aunt Jo's Scrap-Bag An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott. Two articles about ways of eating around the world

Writing :

A questionnaire on young people food preferences

Listening :

Descriptions of international meals

Language :

Comparative and superlative adjectives

Speaking :

Communicating opinions and beliefs

Life skills :

Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation



موقع
فدروز
التعليمي

للتقارن الوحدة

دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية
للمعاصر المشاركة

دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

- اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية ومشتقاتها في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكراسة التفاعلية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

amount(n)	كمية	personal(adj)	شخصي
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل به - يُحيي مناسبة	prepare(d) (v)	يُعَدّ / يجهّز
celebrity(n)	شخص مشهور - الشهرة	prepared(adj)	مُعَدّ - مستعد - جاهز
difficult(adj)	صعب	remember(ed) (v)	يتذكر
difficulty(n)	صعوبة - مأزق	repeat(ed) (v)	يكرر - يعيد
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	serve(d) (v)	يخدم - يقدم طعام أو شراب
get together	يلتقي - يتجمع	simple(adj)	بسيط
occasion(ed) (n - v)	مناسبة - يُسبب	Thanksgiving(n)	عيد الشكر
option(n)	اختيار - بديل	tradition(n)	تقليد - عادة موروثية
past(n - adj)	الماضي	traditional(adj)	تقليدي

2 Most Important Vocabulary

beliefs(n)	معتقدات	native(adj)	محلي - أصلي
bowl(n)	سلطانية - إناء	old-fashioned(adj)	عتيق (موضة قديمة)
choice(n)	اختيار	oysters(n)	المحار
chopsticks(n)	عيدان الأكل (يستخدمها الصينيون)	particular(adj)	مُعَيّن
complicated(adj)	مُعَقّد	pie(n)	فطيرة
confuse(d) (v)	يُحَيّر - يُربك	prawns(n)	جمبري كبير - قريدس
confused(adj)	متحير	pumpkin(n)	البقطين
consider(ed) (v)	يعتبر - يفكر في	quantity(n)	كمية
cornbread(n)	خبز الذرة	questionnaire(n)	استبيان
curious(adj)	فضولي - لديه حب استطلاع	rare - rarer -	نادر
dessert(n)	الحلوى - العقبة	rarest(adj)	أقارب
dig - dug - dug (v)	يحفر / يستخرج بالحفر	relatives(n)	يحترم - احترام
		respect(ed) (v - n)	

dish(n)	طَبْخَة - طبق	rest(ed) (n - v)	بقية - راحة - يستريح
distant(adj)	بعيد	roast(adj)	مشوي - محمص
event(n)	مناسبة هامة - حدث	mostly(adv)	في الغالب
extract(ed) (n - v)	اقتباس - يقتبس	rude(adj)	وقح
festival(n)	عيد / مهرجان	seafood(n)	طعام البحر
flat(adj)	متسطح - مستو	shellfish(n)	الصدفيات - المحاريات
foreigner(n)	شخص أجنبي	smell - smelled/	الرائحة - يشم /
fried(adj)	محمّر - مقلي	smelt (n - v)	يعطي رائحة
fry(ied) (v)	يُحمّر - يقلي	spicy - spicier -	مُتبّل - به توابل
gather(ed) (v)	يلتقي - يتجمع	spiciest(adj)	
grapes(n)	العنب	strong(adj)	نفاذة (ذات رائحة قوية)
heavy(adj)	دسم - ثقيل	survive(d) (v)	يبقى حياً - ينجو
herring(n)	الرنجة	takeaway food(n)	الوجبات السريعة
instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	The British(n)	البريطانيون
lamb(n)	لحم الضأن	turkey(n)	الديك الرومي
let - let - let(v)	يترك / يدع	UK = United	المملكة المتحدة
light (adj - n)	خفيف - ضوء	Kingdom(n)	
mealtimes(n)	أوقات الوجبات	vertically(adv)	رأسياً

3 Definitions تعريفات

amount (n)	كمية	- a quantity كمية of something - how much of something there is
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل - يحيي مناسبة	to do something fun ممتع to show that an event خاص is special مناسبة
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	to have a meal وجبة outside your home
get together	يلتقي	- meet people and spend time with them - meet with other people
occasion (n)	مناسبة	a time when something special happens
option (n)	خيار - بديل	a choice اختيار you can make in a particular معيّن situation
personal (adj)	شخصي	belonging يخص or relating يتعلق to one person, rather than to other people or to people in general بصفة عامة

prepare (d) (v) يُعَدُّ / يَجْهِّز	to get something ready to eat or use
serve (d) (v) يَخْدُم / يقدم طعام أو شراب	to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal
simple (adj) بسيط	not difficult or complicated معقد to do or understand
traditional (adj) تقليدي	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • following old ways of doing things that don't change • following a way of doing something that has existed موجودة for a long time

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key & Important vocabulary

- If something is, you have no right to try to know about it.
a. special b. personal c. common d. public
- Try to reduce the of sugar you usually put in your tea.
a. length b. number c. option d. amount
- You are asked to yourself for whatever happens.
a. serve b. celebrate c. prepare d. repeat
- What do you think we should do to Rodayna's success?
a. celebrate b. fry c. rest d. survive
- I'm meeting my old friends today on the of Omar's wedding.
a. tradition b. occasion c. festival d. b & c
- They great seafood in this restaurant.
a. simplify b. serve c. celebrate d. confuse
- I'll show you how to use this user-friendly application. I'm sure you'll find it very
a. difficult b. complex c. complicated d. simple
- You have no other Take it all or leave it all.
a. option b. tradition c. questionnaire d. event
- For me, his ideas are I find nothing new in them.
a. innovative b. creative c. traditional d. optional
- Sham El-Nassim is the nearest occasion for me and my old friends to
a. get together b. extract c. respect d. a & c
- It is for me to do all these jobs alone. I need somebody to help me.
a. easy b. simple c. difficult d. different

12. I have my meals indoors most of the time, but every now and then I
 a. catch up with b. find out c. get together d. eat out
13. is a day when people in the USA and Canada give thanks to God for the good harvest and for health.
 a. Thanksgiving b. Celebration
 c. Sham El-Nessim d. The Big Friday
14. What happened in the can't be changed.
 a. future b. past c. days to come d. b & c
15. Keep a diary to help you what you are supposed to do.
 a. forget b. remind c. remember d. avoid
16. It is foolish of you to your mistakes.
 a. apologise for b. learn from c. do d. repeat
17. Don't ask others to do things for you when you can do them for yourself.
 a. simple b. simply c. traditionally d. tradition
18. This car make is no longer produced. It is
 a. fashionable b. fashion c. old-fashioned d. modern
19. He proved that his opinion is right with a/an form a well-trusted reference.
 a. extract b. statue c. region d. cell
20. He is healthy and fit because he eats food and does regular exercise.
 a. heavy b. light c. tight d. a & c
21. You are expected to show respect to other people's
 a. believe b. believes c. beliefs d. believers
22. are a pair of thin sticks that are used for eating with, especially in China.
 a. Choppers b. Forks c. Lipsticks d. Chopsticks
23. Which of the following is / are seafood?
 a. prawns b. Herring c. a & b d. lamb
24. He gets when I give him several instructions at a time.
 a. confused b. confusing c. simple d. traditional
25. A / An is a written list of questions that are answered by a number of people so that information can be collected from the answers.
 a. article b. questionnaire c. test d. examination
26. We say that someone is when they want very much to know about things.
 a. stupid b. impolite c. traditional d. curious

27. This chef has created this delicious
 a. bowl b. pot c. dish d. plate
28. It is your duty to show to old people.
 a. respect b. disrespect c. rudeness d. greed
29. Fish, shellfish and oysters are
 a. seabed b. seafood c. sea level d. sea life
30. Eid-al-Adha and Christmas are which most Egyptians celebrate.
 a. parties b. weddings c. occasion d. festivals
31. A student won't understand if the instructions are
 a. simple b. sample c. completed d. complicated
32. Starting this business is a / an we celebrate every year. It is the beginning of the story of our success.
 a. accident b. event c. pumpkin d. a & b
33. I usually use from Naguib Mahfouz's books for my Facebook posts.
 a. amounts b. papers c. extracts d. exercises
34. A: How do you like your fish, Sir? B:, please.
 a. Fry b. Fried c. Frying d. Grilling
35. My friends and I in the club at weekends to play football.
 a. gather b. get together c. scatter d. a & b
36. Some spices have a smell.
 a. strong b. fried c. grilled d. b & c

2 Definitions

37. A / An is a quantity of something or how much of something there is.
 a. occasion b. amount c. prawn d. festival
38. To is to do something fun to show that an event is special.
 a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out
39. To is to have a meal outside your home.
 a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out
40. To is to meet people and spend time with them.
 a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out
41. A / An is a time when something special happens.
 a. occasion b. amount c. prawn d. questionnaire
42. A / An is a choice you can make in a particular situation.
 a. occasion b. trek c. prawn d. option

43. To be means belonging or relating to one person, rather than to other people or to people in general.
a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple
44. To is to get something ready for use.
a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out
45. To is to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal.
a. prepare b. get together c. serve d. eat out
46. To be means not difficult or complicated to do or understand.
a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple
47. To be means following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time.
a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple

Part II Vocabulary Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

ask	the right questions يوجه الأسئلة المناسبة		a choice يختار
bring	good luck يجلب الحظ السعيد	make	a good breakfast تعد إفطارًا جيدًا
do	something fun يقوم بشيء مبهج		a lot of difference يحدث فرقًا كبيرًا
fall	asleep يستغرق في النوم		a pumpkin pie يُعد فطيرة اليقطين
feel	hungry يشعر بالجوع		noise يحدث ضجيجًا
get	confused يتحير	mean	different things له معاني مختلفة
	together يلتقي - يتجمع	serve	the food يقدم الطعام
go	abroad يسافر إلى الخارج	show	respect يُظهر الاحترام
grow	food يزرع محاصيل غذائية	spend	time with يقضي وقتًا مع
have	... for dessert يأكل ... كحلوي	take	place يحدث
	a meal يتناول وجبة	use	simple language يستخدم لغة بسيطة
	whatever we liked نحصل على ما نشاء		

Mini Test 1 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The choice you have recently was not the best one.
a. fallen b. made c. served d. gone
- The accident place in front of the cinema.
a. got b. brought c. made d. took
- You must respect to your teachers.
a. show b. use c. get d. do
- The food in this restaurant is great.
a. fallen b. done c. served d. had
- Your company me good luck.
a. gets b. brings c. makes d. takes
- Sama laughs loudly whenever her brother something fun.
a. spends b. uses c. gets d. does
- He was so tired that he asleep in his chair.
a. fell b. made c. served d. had
- This machine used to loud noise.
a. get b. bring c. make d. take
- It is better if a teacher simple language to explain the lesson.
a. shows b. uses c. gets d. does
- In an open buffet, a guest can whatever they like to eat or drink.
a. fall b. make c. serve d. have

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
confused	متحير	puzzled - perplexed - mystified
difficult	صعب	hard - confusing - mystifying - mysterious - complicated
heavy	ثقيل الوزن	weighty - overweight
heavy	قوي	forceful - strong
personal	شخصي - خاص	private - individual
respect (n)	احترام	esteem - regard - appreciation
respect (v)	يطيع - يلتزم به	obey - follow -
respect (v)	يحترم	esteem - show regard for - appreciate
traditional	تقليدي	conventional - customary - (old-fashioned)

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
difficult	صعب	easy - simple	سهل - بسيط
heavy	دَسِم - ثَقِيل - غَزِير	light	خَفِيف - قَلِيل الدَسَم
heavy	قوي	gentle	لَطِيف
heavy	ثَقِيل الوزن	thin - light	نَحِيف - خَفِيف الوزن
heavy	غَزِير (تَصِف المَطَر)	light	خَفِيف
personal	شَخْصِي - خَاص	general - public	عَام
respect (n)	احترام	contempt - disrespect	احتقار - ازدراء
respect (v)	يطيع - يلتزم به	ignore - disobey	بخالف - يعصي
respect (v)	يحترم	scorn - disrespect	بحتقر - يزدري
simple	بسيط	complicated - complex	مُعَقَّد
traditional	تقليدي	unconventional - modern	غير تقليدي - حديث

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "He looked confused and didn't know what to say." The word 'confused' here means
a. clear-headed b. confident c. puzzled d. a & b
- His ideas are not traditional. They are
a. conventional b. novel c. old-fashioned d. b & c
- is to complicated as unconventional is to traditional.
a. Simple b. Conventional c. Modern d. Novel
- "She shows much respect to her husband." The word 'respect' can be replaced by
a. esteem b. regard c. disrespect d. a & b
- "It is a must to respect the elderly." The word 'respect' here is an antonym of
a. disrespect b. scorn c. a & b d. disobey
- "You have to respect the law." In this sentence, 'respect' can be replaced by
a. obey b. follow c. a & b d. scorn
- Don't ask me any personal questions in this interview. The opposite of "personal" is
a. public b. private c. special d. local

8. "Hot pepper has a strong taste." The adjective 'strong' in this sentence is antonymous with
- a. gentle b. weak c. sweet d. a & b
9. We had a heavy dinner yesterday. The word "heavy" can be antonymous with
- a. light b. overweight c. gentle d. thin
10. "I find this question very difficult." Another word for "difficult" is
- a. hard b. confusing c. confused d. a & b

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a bit worried about	قلق قليلاً علي	I can't wait!	أنتظر بفارغ الصبر!
a great deal of	كثير من	in a particular situation	في موقف معين
a large amount of	كمية كبيرة من	in different colours	بالوان مختلفة
a Thanksgiving dinner	عشاء عيد الشكر	In fact,	في الحقيقة
all the time	طوال الوقت	in general	بصفة عامة
almost all	تقريباً كل	in recent years	في السنوات الأخيرة
almost none	تقريباً لا أحد / لا شيء	it's a lot like	إنه يشبه كثيراً
as part of	كجزء من	keep out of the way	يبتعد عن الطريق
ask one question at a time	توجه / تطرح سؤالاً واحداً في كل مرة	late at night	في وقت متأخر من الليل
at all	علي الإطلاق	light food	طعام خفيف
at least	علي الأقل	look like	يشبه
at Thanksgiving	في عيد الشكر	me too	وأنا أيضاً
at the weekends	في العطلات الأسبوعية	more likely to become	أكثر عُرضة لأن
be careful about	يحرص علي	Native Americans	سكان أمريكا الأصليين
be known for	مشهور بـ	old-fashioned	عفا عليه الزمن - عتيق
climate change	التغير المناخي	on different occasions	في مناسبات مختلفة
curious about	يشعر بالفضول / لديه حب استطلاع بخصوص	on the menu	في القائمة
distant past events	أحداث من الماضي البعيد	on the side of	علي جانب
don't mean to be rude	لا يقصد أن يتصرف بوقاحة	personally	شخصياً
easy to remember	يسهل تذكره	share food from one plate	يأكلون من نفس الطبق
easy to understand	يسهل فهمه	small changes to	تغييرات صغيرة في
eat ... for (Monday) lunch	يأكل ... في وجبة غداء يوم (الاثنين)	soup with noodles	حساء المكرونة
find us ready to	يجد أننا مستعدين لـ	spicy food	طعام متبل
food products	منتجات غذائية	That sounds great.	ذلك يبدو عظيماً.
for example,	علي سبيل المثال	there's such a lot to do	لدينا الكثير لنقوم به
		visit ... for Thanksgiving	يزور ... في عيد الشكر

for most people
get something ready
here is

بالنسبة لمعظم الناس
يجهز شيئاً ما
ها هو / هي

with clear meanings
with help from

ذو معاني واضحة
بمساعدة من

5 Verb + Preposition

add ... to
belong to
catch up with
change to
choose from
choose to
come from
decide on

يضيف ... إلى
يخص - ينتمي إلى
ينضم إلى / يتواصل مع - يلحق بـ
يتحول إلى
يختار من بين
يختار أن
يأتي من
يختار / يحدد

dig ... out of
expect ... to
find out (about)
help with
relate to
think about
wait for

يحفر / يستخرج ... من
يتوقع من ... أن
يكشف (عن)
يساعد في
يتعلق بـ
يفكر في
ينتظر

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I haven't decided a place for the meeting yet.
a. to b. on c. of d. that
- I was a worried about his exam results.
a. bit b. lot of c. much d. more
- Farmers dig potatoes the earth.
a. for b. out c. of d. out of
- I intend to visit my family Thanksgiving Day.
a. on b. for c. a & b d. in
- Festivals give us the chance to meet and catch our relatives.
a. up b. with c. a & b d. up with
- A : You will meet all your close friends tomorrow. - B : I can't wait!
This means that 'B' his/her close friends.
a. doesn't want to meet b. doesn't like
c. wants very much to meet d. isn't yet ready to meet
- He still finds himself a stranger who does not belong this place or these people.
a. to b. in c. into d. a & b
- We are having turkey Friday lunch.
a. on b. in c. with d. for
- You have three colours to choose
a. of b. from c. for d. to

6 المشتقات Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
celebrate(d) يحتفل بـ - يُحيي مناسبة	celebration احتفال celebrity شخص مشهور - الشهرة	celebrated مشهور	
occasion(ed) يُسبب	occasion مُناسِبَة	occasional متقطع - عابر	occasionally أحياناً
	option اختيار - بديل	optional اختياري (ليس إجباري)	
personify(ied) يُجسّد	person شخص personality شخصية personification تشخيص - تجسيد	personal شخصي	personally بشكل شخصي
prepare(d) يُعدّ / يجهّز	preparation تجهيز - تحضير	prepared مُعدّ - مستعد - جاهز	
simplify(ied) يُبسّط	simplicity البساطة	simple بسيط	simply ببساطة
	tradition عادة - تقليد	traditional تقليدي	traditionally بطريقة تقليدية

Mini Test 4 Derivatives

✳ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mohammed Salah is a worldwide football
a. celebrate b. celebrity c. celebration d. celebrated
- We are preparing a small for my father's birthday tomorrow.
a. celebrate b. celebrity c. celebration d. celebrated
- His strong makes him influential.
a. person b. personality c. personal d. a & b
- It is the of some people to eat salted herring on Sham El-Nessim Day.
a. tradition b. traditional c. options d. optional
- He visits me in my distant farmhouse.
a. occasion b. occasional c. occasionally d. regular

6. He pays me visits in my distant farmhouse.
 a. occasion b. occasional c. occasionally d. regularly
7. He is busy for his wedding.
 a. preparing b. prepared c. preparation d. prepares
8. He is busy making sure that everything is for his wedding.
 a. preparing b. prepared c. preparation d. prepares
9. This question is You needn't answer it.
 a. traditions b. traditional c. options d. optional
10. As a writer, he is famous for the of his style.
 a. simplify b. simplicity c. simple d. simply
11. As a writer, he is famous for his ability to express his ideas quite
 a. simplify b. simplicity c. simple d. simply

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

event – occasion – opportunity

- **event (n)** حدث هام / مناسبة هامة
 - The match between Al Ahly and Zamalek is the main **event** this week.
- **occasion (n)** مناسبة اجتماعية أو احتفال
 - Sham El-Nessim is an important **occasion**.
- **opportunity / chance (n)** فرصة
 - Go and talk to the manager. Don't miss the **opportunity**.

amount – quantity – level

- **amount (n)** كمية / مقدار (من شيء ما)
 - The doctor advised me to reduce the **amount** of salt in my food.
- **quantity (n)** كمية / مقدار محدد من شيء ما (تستخدم غالبًا في الأوامر والتعليمات المكتوبة)
 - Add the right **quantity** of salt to your food.
- **level (n)** مستوي أو نسبة محددة من شيء ما
 - I want to measure **the level** of cholesterol in my blood.

personal – private – public

- **personal (adj)** شخصي (يخص الحياة الشخصية للفرد)
- Don't ask a lot of **personal** questions. People don't like to talk about that.
- **private (adj)** خاص (غير عام - لا تريد إطلاع الآخرين عليه)
- He goes to work in his **private** car. (تخصه هو / ملكه)
- She doesn't want to discuss her **private** life with you. (تخصها هي)
- **public (adj)** عام
- Mass media affect **public** opinion.

traditional – old-fashioned – modern

- **traditional (adj)** تقليدي / تراثي (قد يكون مقبول أو غير مقبول الآن)
- Bedouins البدو still wear **traditional** clothes.
- I don't like his **traditional** way of thinking.
- **old-fashioned (adj)** عتيق الطراز / عفا عليه الزمن (لم يعد مقبولاً أو مفضلاً الآن)
- She looks strange in her **old-fashioned** dress.
- **modern (adj)** عصري - حديث
- The mobile is a **modern** invention.

fried – grilled

- **fried (adj)** مقلّي / مُحَمَّر (في الزيت)
- She likes **fried** potatoes.
- **grilled (adj)** مشوي (في شواية أو على الفحم)
- I like **grilled** fish.

serve – surf

- **serve (v)** يخدم / يقدم (طعام أو شراب)
- She is trained to **serve** meals in five-star hotels.
- **surf (v)** يركب الأمواج (على اللوح)
- You need a lot of training to be able to **surf** safely.
- **surf (v)** يتصفح (الإنترنت)
- Don't waste your time in **surfing** the Net.

optional - free

• optional (adj)

اختياري (ليس إجباري)

- This question is optional. You don't have to answer it.

• free (adj)

مجاني (بدون مقابل)

- The drinks are free on Fridays only.

• free (adj)

حر (غير محبوس أو مقيد)

- I want to hear your free opinion.

• free (adj)

متفرغ (غير مشغول)

- We can meet at the weekend. We both will be free.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I have nothing to do at the moment. This means I am
a. optional b. option c. free d. freedom
- You don't have to pay for the child's meal. It is for
a. optional b. free c. expensive d. cost
- You don't have to write your date of birth. It is
a. optional b. free c. expensive d. cost
- the internet wastes my time.
a. Serving b. Servicing c. Saving d. Surfing
- She was responsible for drinks in the party.
a. serving b. servicing c. saving d. surfing
- The water in the Nile reached its top yesterday.
a. quantity b. amount c. level d. a & c
- Don't try to interfere بتدخل. It is something
a. personal b. private c. a & b d. public
- hospitals provide medical support to all citizens.
a. Personal b. Private c. a & b d. Public
- fish is cooked directly on the fire.
a. Grilled b. Cooked c. Fried d. Baked
- fish is cooked directly in the oil.
a. Grilled b. Cooked c. Fried d. Baked

Part III Just for Advanced level

للمستويات العليا

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

تلويح

amount

• amount (of) (n)

كمية / مقدار (من شيء ما)

- Parents should increase the **amount** of time they spend with their children.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a considerable amount of كم معقول من

- a small / tiny amount of كم ضئيل من

- no amount of ... can / will فلن ... مهما زادت كمية

- **No amount of medicine will** help you unless you control what you eat.

- any amount of ما يكفي من

- The hospital doesn't have **any amount of** oxygen cylinders اسطوانات.

• amount (ed) (v) + to + noun

ما يقرب من / ما يصل إلى حد

- He spent what **amounted to** three months doing the research.

celebrate

• celebrate(d) (v)

يحتفل به (بدون حرف جر)

- We **celebrated** Sama's birthday last Friday.

• celebrated = famous (adj)

مشهور

- Professor Magdi Yacoub is a **celebrated** heart surgeon.

• celebration (n)

احتفال

- The New Year **celebration** was wonderful.

• celebrity (n)

شخص مشهور / نجم (اسم يُعد)

- Messi is a sporting **celebrity**.

• celebrity (n)

الشهرة (اسم لا يُعد)

- **Celebrity** isn't all good. Some famous people suffer from it.

• celebratory (adj)

احتفالي

- I gave a **celebratory** dinner for the success of the deal. الصفقة

occasion

مناسبة (اجتماعية أو احتفال)

- **occasion (n)**

- I have met you **on** several **occasions** before.

وقت مناسب لـ

- **occasion (for) (n)**

- When I finished the deal, I knew it was the **occasion for** celebrating it with my family.

سبب (لا تُعد بهذا المعنى)

- **occasion = cause / reason (n)**

- I have my own **occasion** to refuse his offer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **If (the) occasion arises**

إذا استدعت الضرورة

- **If occasion arises** when I am in Cairo, I will need to borrow some money from you.

- **on occasion**

أحياناً (في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

- **On occasion**, I go for a walk by the Nile.

- **on the occasion of**

بمناسبة

- **On the occasion of** his success, he was given a BMW as a present.

- **occasion(ed) (v)**

بسبب حدوث

- Our team's great performance has **occasioned** us real happiness.

- **occasional (adj)**

غير منتظم / عَرَضي / قليل

- Real friends usually forgive **your occasional** mistakes.

- **occasionally (adv)**

بين الحين والآخر - قَلْماً

- My old friends and I meet very **occasionally**.

traditional

- **traditional = conventional (adj)**

تقليدي - نابع من التقاليد

- He still follows the **traditional** family values.

- In the countryside, some people still have a **traditional** way of life.

- **tradition - traditions (n)**

تقليد - تقاليد

- He still follows the **traditions** and values of family life.

- **in the tradition of**

- This man is a politician **in the tradition of** John Kennedy.

على نهج / على خطى / متشابه في الأسلوب

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تلاويہ : التدریبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. of persuasion إقناع will make her agree. She is stubborn. عنيدة.
 a. Amount b. An amount c. No amount d. Any amount
2. "You have no occasion to be sad. You have got the full mark." The word 'occasion' in this sentence means
 a. reason b. event c. influence d. a & c
3. "He is a football celebrity." In this sentence, 'celebrity' is a synonym of
 a. fame b. star c. popularity d. celebrated
4. "He enjoys his celebrity." In this sentence, 'celebrity' is a synonym of
 a. famous b. star c. popularity d. celebrated
5. His style of writing is in the of Naguib Mahfouz.
 a. celebrated b. celebration c. occasion d. tradition
6. When I saw him counting a lot of money, I knew it was the best to ask him to pay back my money.
 a. celebrity b. event c. celebration d. occasion
7. The queen's visit them unforgettable excitement.
 a. simplified b. amounted c. celebrated d. occasioned
8. Although it wasn't his fault, he gave what an apology.
 a. amount in b. amounted to c. amount of d. no amount
9. By, the bride العروسة wears a white dress.
 a. celebration b. celebrity c. tradition d. traditional

إجابة والتوضيح

No.	Answer & Explanation
1.	c (No amount) هو الصحيح في ظل وجود الفعل المثبت (will make) بحسب معني الجملة
2.	a (There's no reason) يعني (لا يوجد مبرر لـ)
3.	b (celebrity) بمعنى (شخصية مشهورة) هي مرادف لكلمة (star) في هذا السياق
4.	c (celebrity) بمعنى (الشهرة) هي مرادف لكلمة (popularity) في هذا السياق
5.	d (In the tradition of) يعني (على نهج / بنفس أسلوب)
6.	d (occasion) بمعنى (مناسبة / فرصة) هو الصحيح حسب معني
7.	d (occasioned) بمعنى (سببت) من بين الإختيارات هو الصحيح حسب معني وبناء الجملة
8.	b (What amounted to an apology) يعني (ما يُشبه اعتذار)
9.	c (By tradition) يعني (حسب التقاليد)

Part IV Reading & Listening

1 Reading Text

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving

(SB page 17)

In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers⁽¹⁾. Many⁽²⁾ died, but some⁽³⁾ were able to grow food and survive⁽⁴⁾ with help from Native⁽⁵⁾ Americans.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) المسافرين
- (2) الكثيرون
- (3) البعض
- (4) يبقى حياً
- (5) محلي - أصلي
- (6) عيد الشكر
- (7) يلتقي
- (8) مناسبات هامة
- (9) يحتفل
- (10) عتيق
- (11) اقتباس

Thanksgiving⁽⁶⁾ is a day when families get together⁽⁷⁾ to remember these events⁽⁸⁾. It is celebrated⁽⁹⁾ in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An Old-Fashioned⁽¹⁰⁾ Thanksgiving. Here is an extract⁽¹¹⁾:

When they **woke**,⁽¹²⁾ there was still a large amount of **snow**⁽¹³⁾ outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

"Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "**Ma**⁽¹⁴⁾ said that we could have **whatever** we **liked**,⁽¹⁵⁾ but she didn't expect us to have a **traditional**⁽¹⁶⁾ Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a **turkey**⁽¹⁷⁾?" asked Roxy.

"Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly. All you children have to do is **keep out of the way**,⁽¹⁸⁾ and **let**⁽¹⁹⁾ Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to **prepare**⁽²⁰⁾ the big **meal**,⁽²¹⁾ they got out all the **spoons**,⁽²²⁾ dishes, **pots**⁽²³⁾ and pans that they could find.

"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "**Pa**⁽²⁴⁾ will be here **by that time**⁽²⁵⁾ and he'll be surprised to find us ready to **serve**⁽²⁶⁾ the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a **bit**⁽²⁷⁾ worried about the turkey. It's so big!"

"I know," said Prue. "I **fed**⁽²⁸⁾ it all summer and now it will feed me," she **laughed**.⁽²⁹⁾

Check Vocabulary

- (12) استيقظوا
- (13) كمية كبيرة من
- (14) أمي
- (15) كل ما نشاء
- (16) تقليدي
- (17) الديك الرومي
- (18) يغازر المكان
- (19) يترك / يدع
- (20) يُعد
- (21) وجبة
- (22) ملاعق
- (23) إناء
- (24) أبي
- (25) قبل ذلك الوقت
- (26) يقدم
- (27) قليلاً
- (28) أطعم
- (29) ضحكت

New Year Celebrations around the World

(WB page 8)

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to **celebrate**⁽¹⁾ the **start**⁽²⁾ of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the **occasion**.⁽³⁾

In Mexico, for example, many people **eat out**⁽⁴⁾ at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular **dish**⁽⁵⁾ is always **tamales**,⁽⁶⁾ which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they **get together**⁽⁷⁾ with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يحتفل بـ
- (2) بداية
- (3) مناسبة
- (4) يأكل خارج المنزل
- (5) صنف من الطعام
- (6) تاماليس (وجبة مكسيكية)
- (7) يلتقي - يتجمع

In Spain, it is **traditional**⁽⁸⁾ to eat twelve **grapes**⁽⁹⁾ to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this **particular**⁽¹⁰⁾ **amount**⁽¹¹⁾ of grapes **late at night**⁽¹²⁾ when the clock reaches **midnight**⁽¹³⁾ or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to **prepare**⁽¹⁴⁾ a fish called 'herring'⁽¹⁵⁾ **at least**⁽¹⁶⁾ five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of **whale**⁽¹⁷⁾ for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the **smell**⁽¹⁸⁾ is very **strong**⁽¹⁹⁾.

(8) تقليدي

(9) العنب

(10) معين

(11) كم - مقدار

(12) في وقت متأخر من الليل

(13) منتصف الليل

(14) يُعد

(15) الرنجة

(16) على الأقل

(17) الحوت

(18) الرائحة

(19) نقادة

Can you find three ways that people show respect when they have meals together?

(SB page 21)

A. Personally, I think it's important to **respect**⁽¹⁾ our older **relatives**⁽²⁾. When **South Korean**⁽³⁾ families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The **rest**⁽⁴⁾ of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this **shows**⁽⁵⁾ your respect for the most important people in your family.



B. As you probably know, people in China usually use **chopsticks**⁽⁶⁾ to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is **considered**⁽⁷⁾ very **rude**⁽⁸⁾ to put your chopsticks **vertically**⁽⁹⁾ into your **bowl**⁽¹⁰⁾ of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese **tradition**⁽¹¹⁾ but for me, **foreigners**⁽¹²⁾ who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يحترم

(2) أقارب

(3) من دولة كوريا الجنوبية

(4) بقية

(5) يُظهر

(6) عيدان الأكل

(7) يُعتبر

(8) وقح

(9) رأسياً

(10) سلطانية

(11) تقليد

(12) أجانب

C. In my opinion, **lunchtime**⁽¹³⁾ isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in **Russia**⁽¹⁴⁾ it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon.

(13) وقت الغداء

(14) روسيا

(15) خفيف

In the evening, people usually eat some **light**⁽¹⁵⁾ food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

Writing a professional questionnaire

(WB page 10)

When you write a questionnaire, the type of questions you use is important. The questions should use simple language and shouldn't be difficult to understand. You don't need to repeat the question. Don't give too many options as this will confuse people. And never ask personal questions. People generally won't want to answer these. Ask one thing at a time. Make sure you don't have two questions in one, for example, 'Do you go abroad often with your friends'. And don't ask about things which happened a long time in the past. It can be difficult for people to remember. When you are ready, decide on the best time to ask your questions - before people start to forget !

What do people eat for breakfast in your country ? (WB page 11)

Adam : As you probably know⁽¹⁾, people eat very different things for breakfast around the world.



Check Vocabulary

(1) لعلك تعلم أن

(2) في رأيي

(3) يُعتقد أن

(4) شخصيًا

(5) إنني أدرك أن

(6) بالنسبة لي

Shady : Yes, they do. In my opinion⁽²⁾, breakfast is the best meal of the day. What do people eat in other countries ?

Adam : Let's start with the UK. It is thought that⁽³⁾ the British have the most unhealthy traditional breakfast. They have fried eggs, beans, toast and fried meat.

Shady : Personally⁽⁴⁾, I wouldn't want to eat such a big meal in the morning. What about the French ?

Adam : I understand that⁽⁵⁾ the French have a much smaller breakfast : just a croissant or piece of bread.

Shady : That sounds nice, but for me⁽⁶⁾, I'm happy with my usual breakfast of bread, cheese and an egg ! One piece of bread would be too little.

2 Listening Text



A Thanksgiving invitation

(SB page 17)

Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Huda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very **curious**⁽¹⁾ about the food you eat.



Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a **lot like**⁽²⁾ chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What **else**⁽³⁾ do you have?

Amy : We have a **special**⁽⁴⁾ kind of bread, called **cornbread**⁽⁵⁾. It's **delicious**⁽⁶⁾. And we have **sweet potatoes**⁽⁷⁾. They're like **normal**⁽⁸⁾ potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for **dessert**⁽⁹⁾?

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful **pumpkin**⁽¹⁰⁾ **pie**⁽¹¹⁾. It's very sweet and **heavy**⁽¹²⁾. Sometimes I **fall asleep**⁽¹³⁾ after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Hoda : Now I'm feeling hungry.

Amy : Me too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and **catch up with**⁽¹⁴⁾ friends and family. **That's why**⁽¹⁵⁾ we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Great. I can't wait!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) فضولي
- (2) يشبه كثيراً
- (3) أيضاً
- (4) خاص - مميز
- (5) خبز الذرة
- (6) لذيذ
- (7) بطاطا
- (8) عادي
- (9) الحلوى
- (10) اليقطين
- (11) فطيرة
- (12) كثيف
- (13) يستغرق في النوم
- (14) ينضم إلي
- (15) لهذا السبب

Meals from around the world

(58 page 18)

Nasi goreng

Nasi goreng⁽¹⁾ is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words 'nasi goreng' mean 'fried⁽²⁾ rice' in Indonesian.⁽³⁾ Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of the spiciest⁽⁴⁾ meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply⁽⁵⁾ the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying⁽⁶⁾ rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns⁽⁷⁾ to the pan. It's a bit saltier⁽⁸⁾ than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper⁽⁹⁾ than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either⁽¹⁰⁾ in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) نازي جورينج (أكلة إندونيسية)
- (2) محمّر
- (3) اللغة الإندونيسية
- (4) الأكثر تبيلا
- (5) ببساطة
- (6) تحمير
- (7) جمبري كبير - قريدس
- (8) أكثر ملوحة
- (9) أرخص
- (10) إما

Oysters

Oysters⁽¹⁾ are a type of shellfish⁽²⁾ that people dig⁽³⁾ out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer⁽⁴⁾ than most other types of seafood⁽⁵⁾ and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu⁽⁶⁾ in French⁽⁷⁾ restaurants.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) المخار
- (2) الصدفيات
- (3) يستخرج بالحفر
- (4) أكثر ندرة
- (5) طعام البحر
- (6) قائمة طعام
- (7) فرنسي

Mochi

Mochi⁽¹⁾ are sweet, round⁽²⁾ rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular⁽³⁾ type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck.⁽⁴⁾ Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat⁽⁵⁾ white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) موتشي (حلوي يابانية)
- (2) مستديرة
- (3) منتشر - شائع
- (4) الحظ
- (5) مستو - مسطح

Food in the UK

The UK did not used to be **known** for⁽¹⁾ its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and **chips**.⁽²⁾ The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper than most other **takeaway** food,⁽³⁾ too. **The British**⁽⁴⁾ also like spicy food. **Indian**⁽⁵⁾ food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular.

One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is **roast**⁽⁶⁾ **lamb**,⁽⁷⁾ which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They **mostly**⁽⁸⁾ eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.



(WB page 9)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مشهور بـ
- (2) رقائق البطاطس
- (3) الوجبات السريعة
- (4) البريطانيون
- (5) هندي
- (6) مشوي
- (7) لحم الضأن
- (8) في الغالب

Tips on Writing a questionnaire

When you're writing a **questionnaire**,⁽¹⁾ you need to ask the **right**⁽²⁾ questions. Some questions are a lot more **useful**⁽³⁾ than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of **difference**.⁽⁴⁾

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always **helpful**⁽⁵⁾ to use simple language. If you use **complicated**⁽⁶⁾ language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear **meanings**.⁽⁷⁾ Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' **instead**.⁽⁸⁾

Thirdly, don't have too many **options**.⁽⁹⁾ People get **confused**⁽¹⁰⁾ when there are more than six options to **choose from**.⁽¹¹⁾



(SB page 20)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) استبيان
- (2) صحيح
- (3) مفيد
- (4) اختلاف
- (5) مفيد
- (6) معقد
- (7) معاني
- (8) بدلاً من ذلك
- (9) خيارات
- (10) متحير
- (11) يختار من بين

Don't ask **personal**⁽¹²⁾ questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

(12) شخصي

(13) في المرة الواحدة

(14) بعيد

(15) ممل

Remember to ask one question **at a time**.⁽¹³⁾ Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the **distant**⁽¹⁴⁾ past, especially if they are about something that was **boring**.⁽¹⁵⁾

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

3 Video script section

Festival meals from different countries

(SB page 17)

People in different countries celebrate different **festivals**,⁽¹⁾ but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أعياد

(2) الفتة

(3) ملفوف الربيع

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid-al-Adha every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion is a traditional **fattah**.⁽²⁾ Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.



In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes **spring rolls**,⁽³⁾ noodles, fish and chicken.

Comparative and Superlative forms صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

1 Adjectives

الصفات

١ الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم و تأتي غالبا قبله :

- ex. - He bought an **expensive mobile** yesterday.
- I saw a **frightening animal** in the fields.

٢ يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد الافعال التقريرية مثل :

- يعطي مذاق **taste** - يبدو **sound** - يبدو **appear** - يبدو **seem** - يبدو **look** - **be**
..... يعطي رائحه **smell** - يعطي شعورًا أو ملمس **feel**

- ex. - Leen **felt cold**.
- Ahmed **looks happy**.
- Mum's food **smells delicious**.

٣ الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقا :

- حي **alive** - مُضاء **alight** - وحيد **alone** - نائم **asleep** - مستيقظ **awake** - خائف **afraid**

- ex. - Roaa feels **afraid** when she is left **alone**.
- We were happy that he was **alive**.

٤ تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

someone - **somebody** - **something** - **somewhere**

noone - **nobody** - **nothing** - **nowhere**

anyone - **anybody** - **anything** - **anywhere**

everyone - **everybody** - **everything** - **everywhere**

- ex. - I met **somebody** important. (Not: important somebody)
- He needs to buy **everything** necessary. (Not: necessary everything)

Mini Test 1

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My brother has got a

a. mobile good

c. well mobile

b. good mobile

d. mobile well

2. You look You must have passed your driving test.
a. happy b. happily
c. happiness d. unhappy
3. I was surprised to see a / an in the dark street.
a. afraid boy b. boy afraid
c. boy who was afraid d. a & c
4. He knows
a. an evil nobody b. an anybody evil
c. an evil anybody d. nobody evil

2 Comparative and Superlative Forms صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
Use الاستخدام	<p>تقارن صفة المقارنة بين طرفين:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Arabic is easier than English. - A lion is more dangerous than a fox. - Chicken is less expensive than meat. 	<p>تُميّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أكثر من طرفين):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - French is the easiest subject. - The lion is the most dangerous animal. - The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.
Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	<p>يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - fast - faster - old - older <p>يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - large - larger - close - closer <p>يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - big - bigger - thin - thinner - hot - hotter - fit - fitter 	<p>يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلى الصفة القصيرة:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - fast - the fastest - old - the oldest <p>يُضاف (the ...+ st) فقط إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - large - the largest - close - the closest <p>يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلى الصفة القصيرة:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - big - the biggest - thin - the thinnest - hot - the hottest - fit - the fittest

<p>Adjectives ending in (y)</p> <p>الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y)</p>	<p>تتحول (y) المسبوقه بحرف ساكن إلى (ier)</p> <p>- easy - easier</p> <p>- happy - happier</p> <p>- lazy - lazier</p> <p>- healthy - healthier</p>	<p>تتحول (y) المسبوقه بحرف ساكن إلى (the ...+ iest)</p> <p>- easy - the easiest</p> <p>- happy - the happiest</p> <p>- lazy - the laziest</p> <p>- healthy - the healthiest</p>
<p>Long adjectives</p> <p>الصفات الطويلة</p>	<p>تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي:</p> <p>صفة + أقل/less أكثر/more</p> <p>- more/less beautiful</p> <p>- أكثر/أقل جمالاً</p>	<p>تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:</p> <p>+ الأقل/the least الأكثر/the most</p> <p>صفة</p> <p>- the most/the least beautiful</p> <p>- الأكثر/الأقل جمالاً</p>

ملاحظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

- يمكن أن نستخدم (less) قبل الصفات القصيرة (ولا يمكن استخدام (more)) :
 ex. - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. - Ali is less strong than Ahmed.
- يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية أو إضعاف الصفة:
 كثيراً much - كثيراً even - قليلاً a little - قليلاً a bit - بدرجة طفيفة slightly
 - كثيراً a lot - كثيراً far -
 ex. - Travelling by train is much slower than travelling by plane.
 - The weather today is a little colder than yesterday.
- لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than) :
 (يفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل وضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل)
 ex. - He is taller than I am. = He is taller than me.
 - We earn more money than they do. = We earn more money than them.
- يمكن استخدام (the) مع صفات المقارنة إذا كان بعدها (of) وكانت تشير إلى طرفين :
 ex. - Hadeer is the taller of the two sisters.

Mini Test 2

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The cheetah is the deer. غزال

a. fast

b. faster

c. faster than

d. the fastest

2. The cheetah is animal ever.

- a. fast b. faster c. faster than d. the fastest

3. The environment in the countryside is that in the city.

- a. healthier b. healthier than c. healthiest d. the healthiest

4. The countryside has environment ever.

- a. healthier b. healthier than c. healthiest d. the healthiest

5. The tortoise is animal.

- a. the least fast b. fastest c. the fastest d. the faster

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية :

(first/second/third/fourth...etc.)

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (s') الملكية :

my - his - her - your - our - their - its -'s

ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's best novelist.

- Is Ahmed your youngest brother?

٣ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :

(أ) تستخدم (in) قبل الأسماء المفردة :

ex. - He is the best player in the team.

- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) قبل الأسماء الجمع :

ex. - Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(ج) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات :

ex. - The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

3 Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة

Adj/adv.	Comparative	Superlative
- bad سيء	- worse	- the worst
- badly بشكل سيء	أسوأ / بشكل أسوأ	الأسوأ / بالطريقة الأسوأ
- far بعيد	- farther أبعد	- the farthest الأبعد
	- further أبعد / أكثر	- the furthest الأبعد / الأكثر

- fore	سابق / مُسبق	- former	أسبق	- the first	الأول
				- the foremost	الأسبق
- good	جيد	- better	أفضل / بطريقة أفضل	- the best	الأفضل
- well	بصحة جيدة				بالطريقة الأفضل / الأكثر
- late	متأخر / متأخرًا	- later	أكثر تأخرًا	- the latest	الأكثر تأخرًا
		- latter	الآخر / الثاني	- the last	الآخر
- little	قليل الكمية	- less	أقل	- the least	الأقل
- many	كثير العدد	- more	أكثر	- the most	الأكثر
- much	كثير الكمية				
- a lot of	كثير للكمية والعدد				

Mini Test 3

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Ali is 65 kg and Omar is 72, so Ali is than Omar.
a. heavier b. more heavy c. less heavier d. less heavy
- An elephant is than a cow.
a. the biggest b. much big c. much bigger d. less big
- A modern BMW is expensive than this old Fiat.
a. much more b. much c. the most d. most
- Sama is of the two sisters.
a. younger b. the younger
c. youngest d. the more young
- Dubai has the first building in the world.
a. bigger b. the bigger c. biggest d. the biggest
- Green is my wife's favourite colour.
a. most b. the most c. the more d. the less
- Rodayna is the most helpful person the family.
a. of b. with c. a & b d. in
- I have two brothers. One is a doctor and the is an engineer.
a. later b. latter c. latest d. late
- My car is than yours.
a. good b. gooder c. better d. best

4 Equalatives صيغ التعبير عن التساوي

١ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي:

as + adj. الصفة + as

ex. - Aya is as old as Nada. They are both 17.

- Drinking fresh juice is nearly as useful as eating fresh fruit.

٢ في حالة النفي تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

not + as/so + adj. الصفة + as

ex. - I am not as old as Omar. = - I am not so old as Omar.

٣ لاحظ أن :

as + adj. الصفة + as = the same + الإسم من الصفة

ex. - Ahmed is as tall as Hussein. = - Ahmed is the same height as Hussein.

لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun اسم + as) من الصفات الآتية:

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
big / small	size حجم	long	length طول مسافة أو مدة
deep	depth عمق	old / young	age عُمر
expensive / cheap	price سعر	strong	strength قوة
far / near	distance مسافة	wide	width عرض / اتساع
high / tall	height ارتفاع / علو / طول		

ex. - The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.

= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

Mini Test 4

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Amir is as as Omar.

a. old

b. older

c. the oldest

d. oldest

2. Mr Mohammed and his cousin Adel were born on 26th September, 1976. This means that Adel is Mohammed.

a. older

b. older than

c. as old as

d. so old as

3. This old car is not that modern one.

a. as fast as

b. so fast as

c. less faster than

d. a & b

4. Omar is as tall as Ahmed. Ahmed is the same as Omar.

a. high

b. height

c. tall

d. length

✓ Check your understanding

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة المقارنة بدون (than) :

- Hany is **more intelligent than** Samy.
- = Samy is intelligent, but Hany **is more intelligent**.

٢ لاحظ استخدام صيغة (كلما كلما) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

جملة النتيجة + صفة مقارنة + the + جملة السبب + صفة مقارنة + The

- Studying hard makes you get higher marks.
- = The **harder you study, the higher marks you get**.

٣ لاحظ الصيغ التالية:

1. جملة تساوي + No = جملة تفضيل

- The Nile is **the longest** river in the world.
- = No river in the world is **as long as** the Nile.

2. جملة تفضيل + subj. + have/has + ever + p.p.

- = Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. + such + (a/an) + adj. + noun اسم + صفة
- = Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. + (a/an) + noun اسم + as + adj. + صفة + as + noun اسم

- She is **the most beautiful** girl I have ever seen.
- = - I have never seen **such a beautiful** girl.
- Ali is **the cleverest** boy I have ever known.
- = - I have never known a boy **as clever as** Ali.

3. صفة مقارنة + be + as + الصفة + as + الطرف الثاني

- **الطرف الثاني + as + الاسم من الصفة + has / have + the same + الطرف الأول**
- = **الاسم من الصفة + have + the same + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الأول**
- = **الاسم من الصفة + be + of the same + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الأول**
- Aya is **as beautiful as** Mariam.
- = Aya **has the same beauty as** Mariam.
- = Aya and Mariam **have the same beauty**.
- = Aya and Mariam **are of the same beauty**.

Mini Test 5

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My grandmother is old, but my grandfather is
a. as old b. older c. older than d. the oldest
2. The more you exercise, you get.
a. the fittest b. fitter c. the fitter d. more fit
3. Ahmed is the cleverest student in class. No student in class is him.
a. as clever as b. as cleverer as c. a & b d. the cleverest
4. I am as old as you. We both are the same age.
a. to b. on c. as d. of

Exercises On Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Football is popular game in Egypt.
a. the most b. less c. most d. more
2. This is picture I've ever seen.
a. the nicest b. nicest c. nicer d. nice
3. This computer is not expensive as that I bought yesterday.
a. most b. as c. less d. more
4. She is as as Sama. They are the same height.
a. long b. heavy c. high d. tall
5. A chair is comfortable than a sofa.
a. least b. little c. the least d. less
6. This is the company in the world.
a. more big b. biggest c. bigger d. mast big
7. English is than any other language.
a. the easiest b. more easy c. easier d. easy
8. You look much than yesterday.
a. the happiest b. more happy c. happier d. happy
9. This is the test I've ever taken.
a. hardest b. less hard c. harder d. hard
10. He is not reliable as his friend.
a. lessen b. less c. more d. so

11. The food is not nearly so as it was in the past.
 a. the best b. worse c. better d. good
12. Alaa is a doctor than Omar.
 a. the best b. best c. better d. good
13. Water is the expensive of all liquids.
 a. more b. less c. least d. most
14. An elephant is as a tiger.
 a. as fast b. fastest c. faster d. not as fast
15. Bill is much than Tom.
 a. the most intelligent b. least intelligent
 c. more intelligent d. intelligent
16. Nobody in our company is Abdulrahman.
 a. as efficient b. most efficient than
 c. as efficient as d. efficient
17. Climbing is the dangerous sport in the world.
 a. as b. less c. most d. more
18. He has much friends than me.
 a. more b. the least c. most d. many
19. Women are divers than men.
 a. worst b. the worst c. worse d. bad
20. Cars are twice as as they were a few years ago.
 a. more expensive b. most expensive
 c. expensive d. less expensive
21. Which do you think is city in the world ?
 a. exciting b. more exciting
 c. most exciting d. the most exciting
22. A woolen suit is not as as the clothing climbers use today.
 a. waterproof b. more waterproof
 c. less waterproof d. most waterproof
23. Mount Fuji is mountain in Japan.
 a. highest b. highest c. most high d. the highest
24. Mr Hassan doesn't earn money as I do.
 a. the most b. more c. so much d. as many
25. Her friend is than her.
 a. the wealthiest b. wealthier
 c. wealthiest d. wealthy

2 Special cases

26. Which is, the Nile or the Amazon?
 a. as long b. the longest c. longer d. long
27. You didn't do as work as I did.
 a. much b. least c. less d. more
28. The warmer the weather is, the I feel.
 a. more good b. best c. better d. good
29. It is colder here than in Cairo.
 a. most b. more c. much d. very
30. I don't read as books as you do.
 a. many b. most c. more d. much
31. Of the four students, Bassim is
 a. clever b. cleverer c. cleverest d. the cleverest
32. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even
 a. most pretty b. prettier c. prettiest d. pretty
33. Today is hotter than yesterday.
 a. more b. less c. least d. a little
34. He was the team's player.
 a. the best b. best c. better d. the better
35. It was of her to waste all her money.
 a. least foolish b. foolish
 c. less foolish d. more foolish than
36. Tablets are becoming popular nowadays.
 a. more and more b. much and more
 c. more and less d. less and more
37. That is the most beautiful scene I
 a. has ever seen b. ever see
 c. have ever seen d. ever seen
38. The more books she reads, ignorant she is.
 a. more b. the less c. much d. less
39. Perhaps I looked bad this morning, but she looked
 a. badly b. more badly c. the worst d. worse
40. Those are my two laptops. One is an Apple and the is an HP.
 a. late b. later c. latest d. latter

41. This is my first successful book.
 a. more b. most c. the most d. the least
42. This secretary seems
 a. more lazy b. lazily c. lazy d. laziest

3 Check your understanding

43. Sama doesn't have as long hair as Rodayna. Whose hair is less long?
 a. Sama's b. Rodayna's c. Both d. None
44. Rokaya has the same cleverness as Leen. This exactly means
 a. Both Rokaya and Leen are clever
 b. Neither Rokaya nor Leen is clever
 c. Rokaya isn't so clever as Leen
 d. Rokaya is as clever as Leen
45. I have never seen such an intelligent young man. This exactly means
 a. This young man is very intelligent
 b. This is the first time I have seen such an intelligent man
 c. I have never seen intelligent young men before
 d. I haven't ever seen intelligent young men before
46. Mohammed Omar is the tallest person at school.
 This exactly means
 a. Mohammed Omar is as tall as everyone at school.
 b. no one at school is taller than or even as tall as Mohammed Omar.
 c. someone at school is as tall as Mohammed Omar.
 d. no one at school is less tall than Mohammed Omar.
47. If you go on eating a lot of rice, you will put on even more weight.
 This means
 a. the more rice you eat, the less weight you put on.
 b. the more rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
 c. the less rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
 d. the more rice you eat, the more weight you lose.
48. Naglaa is clever, but Esraa is cleverer. This means
 a. Esraa is less clever than Naglaa.
 b. Naglaa is much cleverer than Esraa.
 c. Naglaa isn't as clever as Esraa.
 d. Naglaa is as clever as Esraa.

49. This is the youngest tree in my garden. What does this mean?
- No other tree in my garden is as young as this one.
 - Only another tree in my garden is as young as this one.
 - Some other trees in my garden are as young as this one.
 - Some other trees in my garden are the same age as this one.
50. This is the cheapest shirt in the shop. What does this mean?
- This shirt is the same price as another one.
 - This shirt is more in price than another one.
 - This shirt has the same price as another one.
 - This shirt has the least price in the shop.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You can swim as fast as
 a. hers b. his c. him d. he
- For information, please telephone us.
 a. farthest b. further c. furthest d. far
- Your answer looks right, but mine looks
 a. righter b. more righter c. more right d. a & c
- people are entering the competition this year than last year.
 a. Least b. Little c. A few more d. A few
- It is usual for an apple to taste
 a. worst b. badly c. good d. well
- What do you like about playing football?
 a. less b. most c. the less d. many
- The teacher told us an interesting story.
 a. so b. thus c. very d. such
- Don't go any That dog might be dangerous.
 a. close b. closer c. the closest d. closet
- I love all my family, but I love my father of all.
 a. more b. much c. the more d. most
- Sama is of two sisters.
 a. more young b. youngest c. the younger d. younger

11. He is the cleverest member the group.
a. of b. in c. into d. with
12. He is the cleverest member all groups.
a. of b. to c. into d. with
13. Rodayna is quieter than
a. me is b. I am c. am I d. mine
14. Yesterday was cold but today is
a. much more cold b. even less colder
c. even colder d. such cold

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	بعد الصيغة (as + adj. + as) يأتي ضمير مفعول في حال عدم وجود جملة
2.	b	تُستخدم صفة المقارنة (further) بمعنى (أكثر / المزيد من)
3.	d	كل من (righter – more right) صحيحتين كصيغتي مقارنة من الصفة (right) بمعنى (صحيح)، ولا يمكن استخدام (more) قبل صفة تنتهي بـ (er) الخاصة بالمقارنة
4.	c	السياق يتطلب صفة مقارنة نظراً لوجود (than)
5.	c	الفعل (taste) بهذا المعنى من الأفعال التقريرية التي يأتي بعدها صفة وليس ظرف
6.	b	التعبير (like ... most) يعني (أكثر شيء يحبه في ...)
7.	d	بعد (such) يأتي (a / an + adj. + noun)
8.	b	التعبير (go closer) يعني (يدنو من / يقترب أكثر من)
9.	d	التعبير (most of all) يعني (أكثر من أي شيء آخر)
10.	c	يمكن استخدام (the) قبل صفة المقارنة إذا كانت تقارن بين طرفين وبعدها (of)
11.	b	حرف الجر (in) هو الأدق بعد صفة التفضيل إذا كان بعده اسم مفرد
12.	a	حرف الجر (of) هو الأدق بعد صفة التفضيل إذا كان بعده اسم جمع
13.	b	في حالة وجود جملة بعد (than) الخاصة بالمقارنة فيُستخدم قبل هذا الفعل ضمير فاعل
14.	c	تُستخدم (even) قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة للمعنى والاختيار (a) خاطئ لأنه لا يمكن استخدام (more) قبل صفة تنتهي بـ (er) الخاصة بالمقارنة

Part VI

Language Hints from Reading & Listening

Using quantifiers as pronouns استخدام تعبيرات الكمية كضمائر

يمكن أن تُستخدم تعبيرات الكمية التالية كضمائر تشير إلى عدد أو كمية:

- some - any - many - much - little - few - each - either - all - every - both - none ... etc.

A ship arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many (=Many passengers) died, but some (=some passengers) were able to grow food and survive.

ex. - A lot of students dream about joining the Faculty of Medicine, but only few (= few students) can achieve this goal.

• يُسَمَّى / يُدْعَى called •

لاحظ استخدام (called) في الصيغة التالية:

... noun + who / which / that + be + called ...

= ... noun + called ...

ex. - I have a little daughter who is called Sama.

= I have a little daughter called Sama.

ex. - Abdulrahman wrote a story which is called Sad Horizon.

= Abdulrahman wrote a story called Sad Horizon.

• Try + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) •

• try to + inf.

يحاول أن يفعل شيء مع بذل مجهود

ex. - I tried to answer the question.

• try + (inf. + ing)

يجرب ليرى النتيجة

ex. - Try taking an aspirin. Your headache might disappear.

• let / allow + obj. مفعول ... •

لاحظ الفرق بين (let - allow) في الصيغة التالية:

... let + obj. مفعول + inf. ...

... allow + obj. مفعول + to + inf. ...

ex. - The manager does not let anyone smoke in the office.

- The manager does not allow anyone to smoke in the office.

في حالة عدم وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing):

ex. - The manager does not allow smoking in the office.

أيضاً / آخر **else**

تستخدم **(else)** بعد أدوات الاستفهام بمعنى (أيضاً) :

• Q.W. أيضاً **else** + أداة استفهام ؟

- Who **else** did you meet?
- Where **else** have you been?

تستخدم **(else)** بعد تراكيب **(some - any - no - every)** بمعنى (آخر) :

• **someone / anyone / something / anything + else** آخر

- **Someone else** is knocking on the door.
- I don't want **anything else**. Thank you.

كما يمكن استخدام **(else)** بعد **(or)** للتحذير :

- Do your homework **or else** you will be punished.

لذلك جملة **so** + جملة = جملة **that / which is why**

- She was very ill. **That's why** she stayed at home.
- = She was very ill, **so** she stayed at home.

The + Nationalities

تستخدم **(the)** قبل صفات الجنسية التالية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة ويتبعها فعل جمع :

- **The British / the English / the Irish / the Welsh / the Spanish / the French / the Dutch / the Swiss**

- **The British are** generally tradition lovers.

كما تستخدم **(the)** بنفس الطريقة قبل صفات الجنسية المنتهية بـ **(ese)** :

- **The Japanese / the Chinese / the Sudanese** etc.

- **The Japanese are** hard-working people.

أما صفات الجنسية الأخرى فيجب ان تجمع بعد **(the)** لتؤدي نفس المعنى :

- **The Egyptians / the Russians / the Arabs / the Scots / the Turks** ...etc.

- **The Egyptians have** a great history and a promising future.

Exercises

On Language Hints

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have a close friend Abdul Nasser.

a. is called

b. who is called

c. called

d. b & c

2. I tried him, but he refused.

a. helping

b. to help

c. to helping

d. help

3. I advise you to try another key. It might open the lock.
a. using b. to use c. to using d. use
4. My father doesn't allow any of us loud music at night.
a. play b. to play c. playing d. played
5. My father doesn't allow loud music at night.
a. play b. to play c. playing d. played
6. My father doesn't let any of us loud music at night.
a. play b. to play c. playing d. played
7. When I arrived home, I didn't hear the voices of my brothers and sisters. were already in bed.
a. Every b. Some c. All d. Each
8. I don't want to have pizza. I'll have something
a. else b. too c. also d. as well
9. Who did you meet at the party yesterday?
a. also b. as well c. as well as d. else
10. He was tired. That's why he went to bed early." In this context, 'That's why' can be replaced by '.....'.
a. as b. so c. also d. else
11. The French people who like fashion and beauty.
a. has b. is c. are d. was

Part VII

Language Skills

1 Writing Tips – introducing personal opinion and general belief

* التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي والمعتقدات المُتعارف عليها :

عند التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية:

- **Personally, (I think that) + جملة ...** شخصياً (أعتقد أن) ...
- Personally, (I think that) he will win the race.
- **I understand that ... but for me + جملة ...** إنني أدرك أن ... لكن بالنسبة لي ...
- I understand that England is a great country, but for me Egypt is the greatest country ever.
- **In my opinion, + جملة ...** في رأيي ...
- In my opinion, education is the best investment استثمار in the country's future.

عند التعبير عن المعتقدات السائدة يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية:

- **It's believed / thought that + جملة ...** يُعتقد أن ...
- It's believed (thought) that the Ancient Egyptians discovered America!
- **As you probably know, + جملة ...** لعلك تعلم أن ...
- As you probably know, no one can travel abroad without having a passport.

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

Model Essay

* **Write an essay of about 180 words about the "the ideal food" :**

The ideal food

What is your opinion about ideal food? Does it mean delicious food? Does it mean healthy food? Without any doubt, the answer is both. The ideal food is both delicious and healthy. However, it is important for food to be healthy more than being delicious.

What are the qualities of healthy food? There are different qualities of healthy food. The first of these qualities is that it must contain everything the body needs. A healthy diet has the right amounts of protein, fats and carbohydrates. It should also have all the vitamins that the body needs.

Healthy food must be the right amount of everything. Too much food will surely lead to health problems like putting on weight. Too little food will lead to weakness and food-deficiency نقص problems. The rule is: Get enough of everything.

It is important for food to be delicious. Food is one of the enjoyments of life. However, don't let your love for delicious food make you forget that food must be healthy in the first place. If the deliciousness of food makes you enjoy your meal, your health makes you enjoy your life. To sum up, ideal food is healthy, delicious and of the right amount.

3 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

• ① **Translate into Arabic :**

1. Forests, despite being major suppliers of oxygen, are being destroyed at an incredible rate, which is regarded as a threat to life on earth.

2. The Egyptian government finalized plans to establish a new administrative capital as it's the only solution to Cairo's congested streets and it will be home to all government bodies.
3. Many famous sports teams have recently added a new member to their organizations - a nutritionist. Athletes have become aware that food affects their performance.

● **② Translate into English :**

١. تحتوي جميع الكائنات الحية على جينات تتحكم في كل ما يخص الكائن الحي، مثل سرعة النمو والشكل العام وحتى الأمراض التي يمكن أن يُصاب بها.
٢. إن عدد السكان في مصر في زيادة مستمرة طول الوقت، وهذا يتطلب استصلاح المزيد من الأراضي الصحراوية، لإنتاج المزيد من الطعام الذي يلبي احتياجاتهم.
٣. يعارض الكثير إجراء أي تجارب علمية تهدف إلى التدخل في تكوين الطبيعة البشرية، ووضح ذلك في المعارضة الكبيرة لاستنساخ بعض الكائنات الحية أو حتى بعض البشر باستخدام الهندسة الوراثية.
٤. إن غزو الصحراء وتحويلها إلى أرض خضراء هو أملنا الوحيد في مستقبل أفضل للأجيال القادمة، دون الحاجة لاستخدام الهندسة الوراثية التي يخشى الناس أضرارها.

Vocabulary related to translation texts

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

administrative capital	عاصمة إدارية	harms	أضرار
athletes	الرياضيون	human nature	الطبيعة البشرية
aware of	على دراية بـ	incredible	غير معقول
balanced	متوازن	interference	تدخل
bodies	هيئات	inventions	الاختراعات
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	living beings	الكائنات الحية
cloning	استنساخ	major supplier	المصدر الرئيسي
congested	مزدحم	mankind	البشرية
deprive	يُحرَم	motivated	بدافع / مدفوعاً بـ
desert reclamation	غزو / استصلاح الصحراء	nutritionist	أخصائي تغذية
destroy	يُدمر	object	يعارض
diets	أنظمة غذائية	performance	أداء
discoveries	الاكتشافات	population	(عدد) السكان
establish	ينشئ	rate	معدل
experimentation	التجريب	research	البحث
finalize	يُعد	satisfy	يُلبي
form	تكوين	than before	عن ذي قبل
fulfill their needs	يلبي احتياجاتهم		
generations	أجيال		

King Lear

Act I

Scenes (i con. & ii)

أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

Vocabulary

Important Vocabulary

anger(n)	غضب - سخط	pleased(adj)	مسرور
angry(adj)	غاضب	scene(n)	مشهد (في مسرحية أو فيلم)
deceive(d) (v)	يخدع	send ... away (phr. v)	يطرد
deserve(d) (v)	يستحق	serious(adj)	جاد / خطير
exit(ed) (v - n)	يخرج / يغادر / يترك	stage directions	تعليمات خشبة المسرح
ill(adj)	سوء / رديء	succeed(ed) (v)	ينجح / يتبع / يخلف
income(n)	الدخل	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم
inheritance(n)	تركة - ميراث	surprised(adj)	مندهش
lie(d) (v - n)	يكذب - كذبة	trust(ed) (v - n)	يثق به - الثقة
loyalty(n)	طاعة / ولاء / إخلاص	truth(n)	الحقيقة - الصدق
my heart is broken	قلبي منقطر (حزين جدًا)		

أحرص على التدريب المستمر

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدريبات للتقويم المستمر على كل وحدة

★ اختبار تراكمي

★ تدريبات للأزهر

★ اختبارات على المنهج

موقع
فدروز
التعليمي

Additional Exercise

تدريب إضافي (تدريب على سؤال اختر إجابتين صحيحتين من خمس اختيارات)

❖ Choose the TWO correct answers of the FIVE options given :

1. You aren't in a position to a good choice, so be careful and concentrate.
 a. do b. take c. admit d. give e. make
2. When something is personal; it isn't
 a. public b. private c. general d. especial e. normal
3. Why don't you solve this simple problem immediately before it turns into a one?
 a. easy b. complicated c. persuasive
 d. complex e. impressive
4. No one knew exactly what time the accident as many people were asleep at that late time.
 a. took place b. took turns c. happened d. mentioned e. published
5. Children should healthy and balanced food during their early years.
 a. feed b. cook c. prepare d. eat e. have
6. The little girl was struggling with a heavy suitcase. The synonyms of "heavy" are
 a. overweight b. light c. weighty d. overcrowded e. busy
7. This dance is one of the traditional customs of this area. Other words for "traditional" are
 a. convenient b. customary c. conventional d. special e. natural
8. While I was studying English, my mother was lunch.
 a. making b. cutting c. dealing d. doing e. preparing
9. When something is difficult, it is
 a. foreigner b. hardly c. complicated d. hard e. interested
10. We should teach our children to know how to respect old people. The antonyms of "respect" are
 a. protect b. ignore c. appreciate d. support e. disobey

Consolidate

your Vocabulary From Act I, scene i, continued & scene ii

المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية في
نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It is important to control your feeling of
a. anger b. inheritance c. truth d. lie
2. I really wanted to pass the exam, and I felt very happy
when I!
a. deceived b. trusted c. succeeded d. lied
3. The seller says that this part is original, but I don't him.
a. deceive b. trust c. succeed d. lie
4. Don't let her tears دموع you. She is a big liar.
a. deceive b. trust c. succeed d. lie
5. I think that is the most important quality a person can have.
a. truth b. exit c. income d. loyalty
6. I want to increase my to provide my family with all their
needs.
a. truth b. exit c. income d. loyalty
7. He entered the building one way and through a different one.
a. succeeded b. trusted c. exited d. went into
8. I did not buy this flat. It is a / an from my father.
a. anger b. inheritance c. truth d. lie
9. Omar always tells the He is honest.
a. anger b. inheritance c. truth d. lies
10. He never tells You can trust him.
a. anger b. inheritance c. truth d. lies

Test on Unit 2

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



A. Vocabulary and Structures

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Do you really believe that this suit good luck. That is not reasonable.
a. brings b. buys c. takes d. makes
2. In Egypt, wearing a Galabia is something
a. innovative b. creative c. traditional d. modern
3. At weekends, my family members and have a nice time.
a. get together b. extract c. respect d. serve
4. Stop interfering with my life. It's nothing of your own business.
a. special b. personal c. common d. public
5. Our to our country is something we are born with.
a. truth b. exit c. income d. loyalty
6. I don't know how they have found our secret plan.
a. out b. out about c. a & b d. for
7. My villa is big, but yours is
a. the biggest b. bigger c. so big d. more big
8. The white blouse is nice, but I think the pink one is even
a. less nice b. nicer c. nicest d. nice
9. Today is colder than yesterday.
a. more b. less c. bit d. a bit
10. Mr Akram was the school head teacher.
a. the best b. best c. better d. the better
11. It was of her to stop arguing with him.
a. wisest b. wise c. less wise d. more wise
12. Smartphones are getting popular nowadays.
a. more and more b. much and more
c. more and less d. less and more
13. The more you eat, fit you get.
a. the most b. the less c. most d. the least
14. This is his second successful film.
a. more b. most c. the most d. the least

15. The Japanese hard-working people.
 a. has b. is c. are d. was
16. I don't feel like coffee. I'll have something
 a. too b. as well c. also d. else

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

- **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

There have been many studies which examine consumers' perception of organic food, their attitudes and reasons for purchase as well as factors that facilitate or prevent them from purchasing organic food. Existing research reveals that organic food is perceived as food without "chemicals" and "growth hormones", food that is "not intensively" produced and is "natural". Consumers purchase organic food mainly for health reasons, in view of it being better for the children, because of lower pesticide and fertilizer residues. Moreover, apart from health-related reasons, better taste, being like home-grown, being free from food additives are motivations for **buying** organic food.

The trend towards increased consumption of organic food can be linked to a broader concern with environmental issues. Ethical and moral reasons for buying organic food are also apparent in previous research. While health is undoubtedly the key motivator, ethical issues are important components of consumer motivation. Indeed, issues involving animal welfare, the environment and ethical trade all motivate consumers of organic food.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. Organic food is known as food that doesn't contain chemicals or
 a. growing b. hormones c. growth hormones d. cells
18. A word from the passage that means "**buying**" is
 a. purchase b. motivation c. consumption d. perception
19. Which of the following is not one of the reasons that motivate people to buy organic food?
 a. It is good for children. b. It causes health problems.
 c. It is costly. d. It has no chemicals.

20. What is the main idea of the passage?

- a. Why people prefer inorganic food.
- b. The upsides of organic food.
- c. The downsides of organic food.
- d. Inorganic food consumption.

B. Answer the following questions :

- 21. Why do you think customers prefer not to buy inorganic food ?
- 22. What do you think makes organic food better for children ?
- 23. Are you for or against organic food? Why ?
- 24. Do you think we can do without *يستغنى عن* inorganic food? Why/ Why not ?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

The earth provides enough to satisfy every person's need, but not every person's greed. When we take more than we need, we simply deprive others of what they need.

26. Translate into English :

يقضى العلماء كل وقتهم في البحث والتجريب ليقدموا كل ما هو جديد لخدمة البشرية، ولقد حققوا الكثير من الاكتشافات والاختراعات التي جعلت حياة الناس أكثر سهولة.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

The food people eat in your area and how healthy it is

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

The future of food

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

○ Reading :

Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming

○ Writing :

Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary

○ Listening :

An interview with an expert on sustainable farming

○ Speaking :

Speculating about the future

○ Language :

Will / Be going to; Future continuous

○ Life skills :

Problem solving



موقع
فيروز
التعليمي

إتقان الوحدة

• ذكر الله المعاصر التفاعلية للمناعة اليومية
• ملحق المهارات
• تدريبات التآزر التفريغ في دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

Part

I

Vocabulary

- اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية ومشتقاتها في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكراسة التفاعلية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

agriculture (n)	(علم) الزراعة	production (n)	إنتاج
algae (n)	الطحالب	produce (d) (v)	يُنتج
crop (n)	محصول غذائي	produce (n)	مُنتج زراعي
earth (n)	كوكب الأرض - تراب	seaweed (n)	العُشب البحري
farming (n)	الزراعة	source (n)	مصدر
farmland (n)	أرض زراعية	sustainable (adj)	مُستدام / دائم - صديق للبيئة
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية	urban (adj)	حَضْرِي - مَدْنِي
innovation (n)	ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	variety (n)	تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف
livestock (n)	حيوانات المزارع	vegetarian (n)	نباتي (لا يأكل اللحوم بأنواعها)

2 Most Important Vocabulary

actually (adv)	في الواقع	land (n)	مساحة - أرض
argue (d) (v)	يجادل - يناقش - يزعم	miss (ed) (v)	يُفَوِّت - يفقد
chemicals (n)	المواد الكيميائية	organisation (n)	مؤسسة
clear (adj)	واضح - صافى	original (adj)	أصلي
contain (ed) (v)	يحتوي على	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
create (d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر	project (n)	مشروع
decade (n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	proposal (n)	اقتراح - عرض
education (n)	تعليم	rainfall (n)	(مُعَدَّل) هطول الأمطار
elsewhere (adv)	مكان آخر	rainforest (n)	غابة استوائية
environment (n)	البيئة	remove (d) (v)	يزيل - يخلع
evidence (n)	دليل	researcher (n)	باحث
extraordinary (adj)	استثنائي	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
fire (n)	حريق	run - ran - run (v)	يدير / يشرف علي
flow (n)	تدفق	seriously (adv)	بشدة - بشكل خطير
grow - grew - grown (v)	ينمو - يزرع	solution (n)	حل
		gap (n)	فراغ - فتحة - ثغرة

growing (adj)	متزايد	space (n)	مساحة - مُتَّسع - الفضاء
heal (ed) (v)	يلتئم - يمتلئ		
include (d) (v)	يُضمِّن - يتضمن	speculate (d) (v)	يتكهن - يتنبأ - يتفكر
introduce (d) (v)	يُطرح - يقدم	stuff (n)	أغراض / حوائج
invest (ed) (v)	يستثمر	success (n)	النجاح
involve (d) (v)	يشتمل علي - يتضمن	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص
		summary (n)	تلخيص

3 Definitions تعريفات

agriculture (n) (علم) الزراعة	the practice or science of farming نشاط
algae (n) الطحالب	a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water جذوع
crop (n) محصول غذائي	a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food
earth (n) كوكب الأرض	the planet that we live on كوكب
farming (n) الزراعة	the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm
hydroponics (n) الزراعة المائية	the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil عملية
innovation (n) ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	(the introduction of) new ideas or methods الإتيان به
livestock (n) حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
produce (n) إنتاج زراعي	food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold ليتم بيعها
production (n) إنتاج	the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities
seaweed (n) العُشب البحري	a plant that grows in the sea
source (n) مصدر	a thing, place, activity, etc. that you get something from
sustainable (n) مُستدام - صديق للبيئة	- able to continue without causing damage to the environment - able to continue for a long time
variety (n) تشكيلة - التنوع	a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way بطريقة ما
vegetarian (n) نباتي (لا يأكل اللحوم بأنواعها)	someone who does not eat meat or fish

Exercises On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key & Important vocabulary

1. Farmers need to find out more methods of growing foods.
a. sustainable b. terrible c. dry d. unfortunate
2. is a plant that normally grows in the sea.
a. Seafood b. Seaweed c. Corals d. Whale
3. Sheep, cows and horses are
a. seaweeds b. algae c. livestock d. wild animals
4. We live in the age of technological
a. proposal b. rainforest c. summary d. innovation
5. According to, plants are grown in water not in soil.
a. nature b. traditions c. hydroponics d. seaweeds
6. Corn, wheat and tomatoes are
a. algae b. seaweeds c. crops d. farmland
7. Modern farming techniques help increase the of farms.
a. agriculture b. production c. innovation d. hydroponics
8. Sama has a of fashionable clothes.
a. production b. livestock c. crops d. variety
9. The Nile is the main of fresh water in Egypt.
a. source b. vegetarian c. product d. organisation
10. Most people in the countryside work in
a. agriculture b. livestock c. farming d. a & c
11. does not only mean growing animals, but it includes keeping animals as well.
a. Farming b. Agriculture c. Hydroponics d. Production
12. Life on the depends mainly on the energy we get from the sun.
a. floor b. earth c. ground d. soil
13. Don't worry. The cut is not deep and soon it will
a. heal b. heal up c. deepen d. a & b
14. He studies to know all about plants and how to grow them.
a. farmland b. soil c. industry d. agriculture

15. He is a He doesn't eat meat or fish.
 a. vegetarian b. veterinary c. vet d. vitamin
16. It is our duty to protect and increase to produce enough food for all people.
 a. earth b. farmland c. gap d. solution
17. It is necessary to sustainable food production methods.
 a. fight b. cut down c. create d. remove
18. The of Egypt increases rapidly.
 a. population b. pollution c. evidence d. rainforest
19. spare parts قطع غيار are much more expensive than fake ones.
 a. Stuff b. Rainfall c. Occasional d. Original
20. I have no time to read the whole report. Its is enough.
 a. detail b. summary c. phrase d. ocean
21. The job of a secretary making appointments and making telephone calls.
 a. involves b. keeps c. summarises d. speculates
22. The government a lot of money in farming and education to develop them.
 a. speculates b. spends c. invests d. protects
23. He is not sure about what will happen. He just
 a. speculates b. protects c. involves d. makes sure
24. Don't ask me to read the whole article. it for me, please.
 a. Predict b. Summarise c. Keep d. Include
25. I think that modern farming methods are the best to the food shortage نقص problem.
 a. gap b. type c. investment d. solution
26. The between services in the countryside and the city is very big.
 a. capital b. percent c. gap d. a & c
27. He is too young to this large company. He doesn't have enough experience.
 a. run b. heal c. involve d. introduce

28. All suggests that the new plan could help improve the agricultural sector. القطاع
 a. fire b. evidence c. flow d. shows
29. He does a / an amount of work in a short time. No one else can achieve that.
 a. formal b. normal c. ordinary d. extraordinary
30., where it is usually rainy and hot, have a variety of wildlife.
 a. Seaweeds b. Deserts c. Rainforests d. Rainfall
31. The papers you are looking for aren't in this safe خزانة. They might be in the office.
 a. where b. elsewhere c. where else d. b & c
32. I haven't expected you to refuse this It's really a bargain. صفقة
 a. proposal b. purpose c. decade d. space
33. In cities, there's not much to grow crops.
 a. farm b. place c. environment d. space
34. To succeed in life, you aren't supposed to any chance available.
 a. gain b. use c. miss d. win
35. Plants grow well in rich where they can take in nutrients مغذيات with water.
 a. weather b. soil c. atmosphere d. climate
36. In the south of Aswan, the High Dam controls the of water into the Nile.
 a. flow b. proposal c. dry d. growth
37. It is a waste of time with him. He won't be persuaded after all.
 a. healing b. farming c. creating d. arguing

II Definitions

38. means able to continue without causing damage to the environment or able to continue for a long time.
 a. Innovated b. Various c. Urban d. Sustainable
39. A is a plant that grows in the sea.
 a. production b. source c. seaweed d. produce

40. A / An is a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water.
 a. algae b. farming c. crop d. agriculture
41. A / An is a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food.
 a. earth b. algae c. crop d. hydroponics
42. A / An is someone who does not eat meat or fish.
 a. variety b. farmland c. vegetarian d. hydroponics
43. The is the planet that we live on.
 a. earth b. livestock c. crop d. hydroponics
44. is the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.
 a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture
45. is the practice or science of farming.
 a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture
46. is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
 a. Earth b. Livestock c. Agriculture d. Hydroponics
47. A is a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from.
 a. production b. source c. seaweed d. produce
48. is (the introduction of) new ideas or methods.
 a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture
49. are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
 a. Planets b. Livestock c. Crops d. Hydroponics
50. The noun means a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way.
 a. variety b. farmland c. vegetarian d. hydroponics
51. is the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities.
 a. Production b. Source c. Seaweed d. Produce
52. is food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold.
 a. Production b. Source c. Seaweed d. Produce

Part II Vocabulary study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	a vegetarian يصبح نباتيًا	make	money from يكسب مال من
buy	stuff يشتري أغراض		furniture يصنع الأثاث
cause	damage تلف / يضرر		small changes يحدث تغييرات طفيفة
damage	the environment يدمر البيئة		seawater safe to drink يجعل ماء البحر صالحًا للشرب
earn	money يكسب مال		... much healthier تجعل ... صحي بدرجة أكبر
get	worse يزداد سوء	miss	anything important يُفوت أي شيء مهم
	smaller يقل - يصغر	offer	the best solution يطرح الحل الأفضل
	even hotter يزداد سخونة	produce	gases ينتج غازات
	warmer يصبح أدفأ	save	money يدخر مال
give	an opinion يعطي رأي	show	the order يوضح الترتيب
grow	crops يزرع محاصيل	speculate	about the future يتكهن بالمستقبل
introduce	a problem يطرح مشكلة	start	fires يشعل نيران / حرائق
invest	billions of pounds in يستثمر مليارات الجنيهات في	take	ages يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
keep	livestock يربي حيوانات مزارع	tell	the difference يذكر الفرق
	cutting down trees يستمر في إزالة الأشجار	write	a summary يكتب تلخيصًا

Mini Test 1 Collocations

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I don't know how much money he

a. makes b. does c. earns d. a & c

2. The solution you have to the problem can't be applied. لا يمكن تطبيقه.

a. speculated b. invested c. offered d. missed

3. The livestock he on his farm are looked after by five workers.
a. keeps b. takes c. tells d. grows
4. It is Mr Ashraf who has this problem for discussion.
a. kept b. given c. introduced d. damaged
5. We use 'will' to about the future.
a. speculate b. invest c. offer d. miss
6. It me ages to finish the writing of that book.
a. kept b. took c. told d. grew
7. I was asked to my opinion, but I preferred to keep it to myself.
a. keep b. give c. introduce d. damage
8. The crops on our farm are watered directly from the Nile.
a. kept b. taken c. told d. grown
9. They millions of dollars in tourism.
a. speculated b. invested c. offered d. missed
10. Cutting down rainforests the environment.
a. keeps b. gives c. introduces d. damages

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
extraordinary	استثنائي
innovative	مبتكر
involve	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يضمن
keep	يحتفظ به
keep	يبقى / يظل / يستمر في
keep	يفي به - يُنفذ
keep	يربي - يُدجن
keep	يدير - يملك ويعمل في
original	أصلي
original	حقيقي
productive	مفيد - مُثمر
productive	خصب
run	يدير / يشرف على
summary	تلخيص
sustain	يصون - يحافظ على
variety	تشكيلة - التنوع
variety	نوع / صنف
	amazing – incredible – exceptional
	innovatory – original - novel
	include
	save – retain – hold on to
	go on – carry on – persist in
	fulfil – comply with
	raise – breed – look after
	manage – run
	native - first
	authentic – real - genuine
	useful - constructive - profitable -
	fruitful - rewarding
	fertile - rich
	be in charge of – operate – manage -
	control
	synopsis - outline
	maintain
	diversity
	sort - type – kind – class - category

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
extraordinary	استثنائي	ordinary - usual	عادي - مألوف
involve	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يُضمّن	exclude	يستثني - يستبعد
keep	يحتفظ بـ - يُبقي على	lose - throw away	يفقد - يتخلص من
keep	يبقي / يظل / يداوم على	give up - stop	يمتنع أو يُقْلِع عن
keep	بقي بـ - يُنفذ	disobey - break	يخالف - يحثّ بـ
original	حقيقي	fake	مزيف
poor soil	تربة رديئة	rich soil - fertile soil	تربة خصبة
productive	مُنتج - مُثمر	unproductive	عقيم - غير مُجددي
productive	خصب	sterile - barren	عقيم - مُجْدِب
sustainable	مستدام	unsustainable	غير دائم - متقطع
variety	التنوع	uniformity	انتظام - تماثل

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "We must respect and encourage the variety of ideas." The word 'variety' in this sentence is a synonym of
 a. diversity b. sort c. class d. b & c
- "This forest has 50 varieties of insects." The word 'variety' in this sentence is a synonym of
 a. diversities b. sorts c. classes d. b & c
- "Marawan wasn't involved in the team's squad." This means he was
 a. included b. excluded c. required d. contained
- "This statue is not original." The adjective 'original' in this sentence gives the antonym of
 a. first b. fake c. native d. a & c
- "He kept his promise." The verb 'kept' in this sentence is antonymous with
 a. broke b. fulfilled c. obeyed d. respected
- The teacher asked me to write an outline of the novel of about three pages." The word 'outline' can be replaced by
 a. title b. moral c. summary d. b & c

7. "My father keeps all bills in an old box." The verb 'keeps' in this sentence means the opposite of
- a. follows b. obeys c. fulfils d. throws away
8. "He kept looking at the sea in silence." 'Kept' here means '.....'.
- a. gave up b. went on c. stopped d. a & c
9. Which of the following gives the meaning of "keeps" in: "He keeps livestock."
- a. raises b. rises c. carries on d. includes
10. "He runs a supermarket." Another word for "runs" is
- a. races b. speeds c. manages d. works

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a new capital city	عاصمة جديدة	on the island	على الجزيرة
about thirty percent smaller	أصغر بنسبة ٣٠٪ تقريباً	open spaces	أماكن مفتوحة
according to	طبقاً لـ / حسب	plant life	الحياة النباتية
all the evidence suggests that	تشير كل الدلائل إلى أن	poor soil	التربة الرديئة
And then?	وماذا بعد؟	possible solutions	حلول ممكنة
areas with poor soil	مناطق ذات تربة رديئة	a small central American country	دولة صغيرة في أمريكا الوسطى
as much as you can	أقصى ما تستطيع	so that	لكي
by 2030	بحلول عام ٢٠٣٠	So what?	وماذا في ذلك؟ / وماذا بعد؟
climate change	التغير المناخي	solutions to	حلول لـ
due to the fact that	لأن	South-East Asia	جنوب شرق آسيا
easier than you might think	أسهل مما قد تظن	sustainable solutions	حلول مستدامة
expert on / in / at	خبير في	the arguments against	دلائل النفي
farming techniques	أساليب الزراعة	the arguments for	دلائل الإثبات
fill in the gaps	يملأ الفراغات	the flow of water	تدفق المياه
food production	إنتاج الغذاء	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
for many years to come	للسنوات عديدة قادمة	the order in which things happen	ترتيب حدوث الأشياء
get cut down	يتم قطعها	the original text	النص الأصلي
good for	مفيد لـ	the reason why	السبب في أن
green space	مساحة خضراء	the whole text	النص بالكامل
growing world	العالم المتزايد	To conclude	الخلاصة أن ...
		urban farming	الزراعة في المدن

less than usual
more sustainably
nouns for the things or people

أقل من المعتاد
بشكل أكثر استدامة
أسماء لأشخاص أو أشياء

welcome to
wrong with

أهلاً بكم في
الخطأ في - العيب في

5 Verb + Preposition

continue to	يستمر في	increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة
cut down	يقطع / يجتث - يقلل	learn about	يتعلم عن
deal with	يتعامل مع - يواجه	live on	يعيش على / في - يتغذى على
encourage ... to	يشجع ... أن	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
explain ... to	يشرح ... لـ	look back at	ينظر مرة أخرى إلى
feel about	يشعر تجاه	look for	يبحث عن
fill in	يملأ (استمارة مثلاً)	lose up to	يفقد ما يقرب من
focus on	يركز على	persuade ... to	يقنع ... أن
go up	يرتفع	plan to	يخطط أن
grow by	ينمو بمعدل ... / يزيد بنسبة ...	remove ... from	يزيل ... من
grow to	ينمو / يزداد حتي	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
heal (up)	يلتئم - يمتلي	think about	يفكر في
heat ... up	يسخن - يُسخن		

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Cutting rainforests will make the climate heat
a. in b. out c. up d. down
- We will need to work hard for many years to rebuild our country.
a. come b. comes c. has come d. to come
- It is a necessity to stop cutting trees in forests.
a. up b. down c. for d. to
- We need to grow food more
a. sustain b. sustainable c. sustainably d. a & c
- A palm tree can grow ten metres.
a. to b. by c. with d. on
- Plants do not grow well in soil.
a. poverty b. poor c. richness d. rich

7. You must need to fill this form accurately.

- a. on b. with c. of d. in

8. conclude, we have to look after our environment.

- a. To b. In c. Of d. With

9. He has lost five kilograms lately.

- a. up b. to c. up to d. from

10. She lost her necklace. That's the reason she looked unhappy.

- a. what b. of c. for d. why

6 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
	agriculture (علم) الزراعة agriculturalist خبير في الزراعة	agricultural زراعي	
innovate (d) يبتكر - يبتكر	innovation ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار innovator مبتكر / مُخترع	innovative مبتكر	
produce (d) يُنتج	production إنتاج product مُنتج (مفرد منتجات) producer مُنتج produce انتاج زراعي	productive مُنتج - مُثمر	
sustain (ed) يصون - يحافظ على البيئة	sustainability الاستدامة - الحفاظ على البيئة	sustainable مُسْتَدَام / دائم - صديق للبيئة	sustainably بشكل مُسْتَدَام - بشكل غير ضار بالبيئة
vary (ied) يتنوع - يختلف	variety تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف	variable قابل للتغير - متقلب / غير ثابت various عديد - متنوع	

Mini Test 4 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This is an area.
a. agricultured b. agricultures c. agriculturist d. agricultural
- I got an to help me with the reclaimed المستصلحة land.
a. agriculture b. agricultures c. agriculturist d. agricultural
- Last year, the farm was more than we had expected.
a. produce b. produced c. productive d. production
- Last year, the farm was more than we had expected.
a. produce b. produced c. productive d. a & c
- The types of fish living in the sea from one place to another.
a. vary b. various c. variety d. varies
- There are types of fish living in the sea.
a. vary b. various c. variety d. varies
- Our company has new marketing ideas.
a. innovate b. innovative c. innovation d. innovated
- Our company's new marketing ideas are
a. innovate b. innovative c. innovation d. innovated
- We can the environment by reducing pollution.
a. sustain b. sustained c. sustainable d. unsustainable

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

agriculture - farming

- **agriculture (n)** علم زراعة النباتات ورعايتها
- Mr Gamil studied **agriculture** at Ain Shams University.
- **agriculture (n)** النشاط الزراعي
- In Egypt, **agriculture** should be one of the main sources of national income.
- **farming (n)** الزراعة 'زراعة المحاصيل و تربية الحيوانات في المزارع'
- Sheep **farming** is common in Australia.

source - resource

• source (n)

مصدر (تُحصل منه على شيء ما) - منبع - سبب

- Journalists usually keep their **sources** secret. مصدر
- Ethiopia is an important **source** of the River Nile. منبع
- Your success is the **source** of our happiness. سبب

• resource (n)

مُورِد (مفرد موارد) - مَرَجِع (مصدر تعليمي أو معلوماتي)

- Egypt has a lot of natural **resources**. موارد
- This book is an important **resource** for language teachers. مرجع

(grow) as a transitive or intransitive

لاحظ الفرق في المعنى بين (grow) كفعل لازم (بدون مفعول) أو كفعل مُتَعَدِّي (يتبعه مفعول):

• grow + no object

ينمو - يكبر - يزداد (وكثيرًا ما يتبعه صفة)

- Rainforests **grow** in areas with heavy rain. تنمو
- When children **grow** old, they start to depend on themselves. يكبر
- The sheep on the farm **grew** in number. ازدادت

• grow + adj. صفة = become

لاحظ أن :

- The boy **grew** tall. = The boy **became** tall.

• grow + object

يزرع

- Farmers **grow** food.

staff - stuff

• staff

هيئة العاملين / طاقم العمل (في مؤسسة / شركة)

- The new manager is meeting the **staff** for the first time tomorrow.

• stuff

حوائج / لوازم / أشياء / أغراض (كلمة لا تُعدّ)

- I don't like the **stuff** you are eating. What is it called?
- The shop sells all kinds of **stuff**.

summary - abbreviation

• summary

تلخيص / موجز (الكتاب / قصة / مقال / تقرير)

- I didn't read the novel itself. I only read a **summary** of it.

• abbreviation

اختصار (الكلمة أو عبارة)

- Dr is the **abbreviation** of the title 'doctor'.

livestock - cattle

• livestock (n)

حيوانات المزارع (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع)

- Livestock is sold in this market on Wednesday.
- Livestock are sold in this market on Wednesday.

• cattle (n)

الماشية من أبقار وعجول (تأخذ فعل جمع)

- Cattle are sold in this market on Wednesday.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mr Ayman asked me to write a / an of the story of no more than 180 words.
a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation
- "SOS" is a / an for 'Save our souls'.
a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation
- is the practice or the science of growing plants.
a. Farming b. Agriculture c. Source d. Resource
- Livestock needs a lot of experience.
a. farming b. agriculture c. source d. resource
- "I'm a member of the teaching of this school," said Mr Ashraf.
a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation
- A: Where are the camping? B: In the boot of the car.
a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation
- The educational tablet has become one of the most important learning
a. farming b. agriculture c. source d. resources
- The broken kitchen pipe is the of the water on the kitchen floor.
a. farming b. agriculture c. source d. resource

Part III

Just for Advanced level

للمستويات العليا

تنويه

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

1

More about key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture

علم زراعة النباتات ورعايتها

• agriculture (n)

- He intends to study agriculture at university.

النشاط الزراعي

• agriculture (n)

- Agriculture employs about 40% of the population in Egypt.

• **agricultural (adj)**

- It is against the law to build on **agricultural** land.

زراعي

• **agriculturalist (n)**

- According to **agriculturalists**, this soil is not good for planting rice.

خبير زراعي

crop

• **crop (n)**

- The main **crop** we plant here is wheat.

محصول غذائي

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **grow / plant a crop** يزرع محصول غذائي

- **bring in / harvest a crop** يجني المحصول

- **destroy / damage a crop** يدمر المحصول

- **a cash crop** محصول مخصص للبيع

- **a genetically modified crop** محصول معدل وراثياً

• **crop(ped) (v)**

- Orange trees **crop** in winter.

يُثمر - يُنتج الثمار أو الحبوب

• **crop(ped) (v)**

- Little children usually do not like to **crop** their hair short.

يَقَصُّ الشعر

• **crop(ped) (v)**

- He **cropped** the photo to fit the frame.

يقص الصورة

innovation

• **innovate(d) (v)**

- He has an amazing ability to **innovate** new ideas for advertisements.

يبتكر

• **innovation (n)**

- A good teacher should come up with **innovations** that help his students enjoy learning.

ابتكار - اختراع - فكرة جديدة (اسم معدود)

• **innovation (n)**

- The manager of our company encourages **innovation** in industry.

الابتكار - الاختراع (اسم غير معدود)

• **innovative / innovatory (adj)**

- His **innovative** ideas made the office very successful.

جديد - مُبتكر - خلاق

vary

• **vary (ied) (in) (v)**

- As a teacher, you need to **vary** your teaching methods.

يتنوع - يُنَوِّع

- The plants on the farm **vary in** size and colour.

يختلف / يتنوع

تنوع - نوع

• variety (in) (n)

- The **variety** of programmes attracts viewers. تنوع
- This zoo has about 3000 **varieties** of birds and animals. أنواع

عديد / متعدد / مختلف

• various (adj)

- This drink is available in **various** sizes.

sustainable

• sustain(ed) (v)

يصون - يحافظ على - يُبقى على

- It is necessary for a teacher to **sustain** his students interest.

• sustain(ed) (v)

يعاني من (بدون حرف جر)

- During COVID -19 pandemic, oil prices **sustained** a sharp drop. انخفاض

• sustainable (adj) صديق للبيئة ≠ unsustainable ضار بالبيئة

- A bike is a **sustainable** means of transport.

• sustainable (adj)

مُستدام / دائم

- The government aims at achieving a **sustainable** economic growth. نمو

2 Reading Numbers قراءة الأعداد

١. الأرقام من (٠) إلى (١٩) تُقرأ كالتالي:

0	zero	4	four	8	eight	12	twelve	16	sixteen
1	one	5	five	9	nine	13	thirteen	17	seventeen
2	two	6	six	10	ten	14	fourteen	18	eighteen
3	three	7	seven	11	eleven	15	fifteen	19	nineteen

٢. مضاعفات (١٠) تُقرأ كالتالي:

10	ten	50	fifty	90	ninety
20	twenty	60	sixty	100	(a /one) hundred
30	thirty	70	seventy	1,000	(a /one) thousand
40	forty	80	eighty	10,000	ten thousand

٣. لاحظ قراءة الأرقام التالية:

100,000	(a /one) hundred thousand
1,000,000	(a /one) million
1,000,000,000	(a /one) billion
1,000,000,000,000	(a /one) trillion

٤. عند قراءة عدد مكون من رقمين نبدأ بالعشرات ثم الآحاد و نفصل بينهما بـ (-) :

- 21: twenty-one
- 47: forty-seven
- 99: ninety-nine

٥. تتم قراءة عدد مكون من ثلاث أرقام كالتالي :

آحاد + units + عشرات + tens + and + hundred + عدد المئات

- 136: one hundred and thirty-six
- 571: five hundred and seventy-one
- 999: nine hundred and ninety-nine

٦. تتم قراءة الأعداد الكبيرة (أكثر من ثلاث أرقام) كالتالي :

أ. نُقسّم العدد بداية من اليمين إلى مجموعات من ثلاث أرقام

ب. نقرأ كل مجموعة على حدة بداية من اليسار و نضع بعدها التمييز مثل:

(thousand / million / billion)

ج. نفصل بين كل مجموعة و أخرى بـ (,) و ليس (and)

لاحظ قراءة العدد التالي:

- 16,924,479,951:

sixteen **billion**, nine hundred and twenty-four **million**, four hundred and seventy-nine **thousand**, nine hundred and fifty-one

- 2006: two thousand and six

٧. في لغة التحدث غالباً تُقرأ الأعداد المكونة من أربع أرقام كل رقمين على حدة بداية من اليسار:

- 1976: nineteen seventy-six

- 2010: twenty ten

٨. لا تُجمع الكلمات التالية إذا جاء قبلها عدد:

(hundred / thousand / million / billion)

- 83,464: eighty-three **thousand**, four hundred and sixty-four

- 769: seven **hundred** and sixty-nine

موقع
فيديو
التعليمي

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Lake Nasser has more than 15 of fish.
 a. hydroponics b. varieties c. sources d. livestock
2. This is not the You have made a lot of changes to it.
 a. plan original b. plan which is original
 c. original plan d. b & c
3. The Earth's surface is and soon there will be less land that farmers can use.
 a. recovering b. heating up c. getting better d. improving
4. With the population of the world, we will need more food and fresh water resources.
 a. is growing b. predict to grow
 c. predicting to grow d. predicted to grow
5. How do you think you will put all that in this small car?
 a. stuff b. stuffs c. staff d. staffs
6. The neighbour's sheep the grass in my the field
 a. harvested b. cropped c. collected d. farmed
7. The livestock on this farm in good health.
 a. is b. are c. have d. a & b
8. All the of this farm is sold to the restaurants in the nearby town.
 a. crops b. vegetables c. produce d. cattle
9. This expert has techniques that help farmers increase their production.
 a. done b. taken c. introduced d. involved
10. is to soil as sustain is to maintain.
 a. Earth b. Sand c. Water d. Rock

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- كلمة (varieties) بمعنى (أنواع) هي الاختيار الصحيح
2.	c	- الصفة (original) بمعنى (أصلي) لا بد أن يأتي بعدها الاسم الموصوف
3.	b	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (heal up) مُستخدم هنا بشكل مجازي بمعنى (يمتلي - يتشبع)
4.	d	- السياق مبني للمجهول، فالإختيار (predicted to grow) هو صيغة مختصرة لعبارة الرّصل (which is predicted to grow)
5.	a	- كلمة (stuff) بمعنى (متعلقات / أغراض) هي اسم غير معدود، أما كلمة (staff) بمعنى هيئة عاملين فهي غير مناسبة للمعنى
6.	b	- كلمة (cropped) هنا تعني (جذّت - التهمت)
7.	d	- يمكن استخدام فعل مفرد أو جمع بعد الإسم (livestock)
8.	c	- لا بد من اختيار اسم مفرد مناسب أو اسم غير معدود نظراً لوجود (is) وكلمة (produce) هنا اسم غير معدود يعني (ناتج زراعي)
9.	c	- الفعل (introduced) هنا يعني (طرح - ابتكر)
10.	a	- السياق يتطلب مرادف لكلمة (soil) ويمكن استخدام كلمة (earth) بنفس المعنى

Part IV Reading & Listening

1 Reading Text

The future of farming

(SB pages 26 & 27)

1. New solutions⁽¹⁾ for our growing world

According to⁽²⁾ the United Nations,⁽³⁾ there will be almost 10 billion⁽⁴⁾ people in the world by 2050. As a result,⁽⁵⁾ we will have to increase⁽⁶⁾ our food production⁽⁷⁾ by⁽⁸⁾ about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space⁽⁹⁾ to keep more livestock⁽¹⁰⁾ and grow more crops.⁽¹¹⁾



Check Vocabulary

- (1) حلول
- (2) بحسب
- (3) الأمم المتحدة
- (4) مليار
- (5) كنتيجة لذلك
- (6) يزيد
- (7) إنتاج
- (8) بنسبة
- (9) مساحة - متسع
- (10) حيوانات المزارع
- (11) محاصيل

Instead,⁽¹²⁾ they'll need to look for⁽¹³⁾ more sustainable solutions⁽¹⁴⁾ and this will involve⁽¹⁵⁾ producing a wider variety⁽¹⁶⁾ of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference⁽¹⁷⁾ between the new burgers and real meat.

- (12) بدلاً من ذلك
(13) يبحث عن
(14) حلول مستدامة
(15) يشتمل على
(16) تشكيلة
(17) يذكر الاختلاف

2. Changes in agriculture that can save the land

Researchers⁽¹⁾ from the United Nations (UN) have found that some kinds of agriculture⁽²⁾ are seriously⁽³⁾ damaging⁽⁴⁾ the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to⁽⁵⁾ farmers using too many chemicals,⁽⁶⁾ so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow without having to use so many chemicals. In southern Africa,⁽⁷⁾ the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect⁽⁸⁾ that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations⁽⁹⁾ in technology to remove⁽¹⁰⁾ water from the land and use it elsewhere.⁽¹¹⁾



Check Vocabulary

- (1) الباحثون
(2) الزراعة
(3) بشدة
(4) يدمر
(5) بسبب
(6) المواد الكيميائية
(7) إفريقيا الجنوبية
(8) يتوقع
(9) ابتكارات
(10) يزيل
(11) مكان آخر

The future of forests

(WB page 15)

The world has been losing⁽¹⁾ millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down⁽²⁾ so that⁽³⁾ we have wood to make furniture,⁽⁴⁾ and many more get cut down



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يفقد
(2) تُقطع
(3) لكي
(4) أثاث
(5) مناطق

because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas.⁽⁵⁾

Changes started a long time ago in **Costa Rica**⁽⁶⁾. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers and **persuaded**⁽⁷⁾ them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from **tourism**⁽⁸⁾ than from cutting down trees.

It was a great **success**⁽⁹⁾ but things **got worse**⁽¹⁰⁾ in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and **governments**⁽¹¹⁾ around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been **getting smaller**⁽¹²⁾ every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this **extraordinary**⁽¹³⁾ place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

- (6) دولة كوستاريكا
- (7) يقنع
- (8) السياحة
- (9) النجاح
- (10) يزداد سوء
- (11) الحكومات
- (12) يقل
- (13) استثنائي

Is algae the future of food?

(SB page 30)

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and **dry**⁽¹⁾ for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?



Algae⁽²⁾ are plants that **grow**⁽³⁾ very quickly in water and **wet**⁽⁴⁾ places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called **seaweed**⁽⁵⁾ and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the **ocean**⁽⁶⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) جاف
- (2) الطحالب
- (3) ينمو
- (4) مبلل
- (5) العشب البحري
- (6) المحيط

In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we **breathe**⁽⁷⁾ because algae makes a lot of oxygen.

(7) يتنفس

(8) يلاحظ

(9) يحل محل

But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even **notice**⁽⁸⁾. Scientists are already using seaweed to **replace**⁽⁹⁾ salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

Hydroponics

(WB page 16)

With the population of the world **predicted**⁽¹⁾ to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production. A possible solution to this problem is using something called **hydroponics**⁽²⁾.



Check Vocabulary

(1) يتنبأ

(2) الزراعة المائية

(3) بدون

(4) التربة

(5) يحتوي على

(6) التربة الرديئة

(7) من العجيب

(8) يعيد استخدام

(9) حشرات

(10) يزعم

(11) يتحكم في

(12) تدفق

(13) يوفر

(14) القارة القطبية الجنوبية

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants **without**⁽³⁾ using any **soil**⁽⁴⁾. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which **contains**⁽⁵⁾ all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with **poor soil**⁽⁶⁾. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, **surprisingly**⁽⁷⁾, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is **reused**⁽⁸⁾. There are also fewer problems with **insects**⁽⁹⁾. Almost any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way.

Some people **argue**⁽¹⁰⁾ that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to **control**⁽¹¹⁾ the **flow**⁽¹²⁾ of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could **offer**⁽¹³⁾ the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, **Antarctica**⁽¹⁴⁾ or even space.

Urban Farming

(WB page 17)

This essay will **focus on**⁽¹⁾ something my uncle is planning to do to help **food production**⁽²⁾: something called **urban farming**⁽³⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يركز على
- (2) إنتاج الطعام
- (3) الزراعة المدنية
- (4) الأسطح المستوية
- (5) من وجهة نظري
- (6) محصول
- (7) ختاماً / في النهاية
- (8) دليل
- (9) الفراغات الخارجية

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends. Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using **flat roofs**⁽⁴⁾, gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

In my view⁽⁵⁾, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn money. They hope they will be selling some of the **produce**⁽⁶⁾ to local restaurants and markets.

To conclude⁽⁷⁾, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the **evidence**⁽⁸⁾ suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much **outdoor space**⁽⁹⁾.

2 Listening Text



The population problem in Egypt

(WB page 14)

The **population**⁽¹⁾ of Egypt is **growing**⁽²⁾ by nearly two **percent**⁽³⁾ a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on **about**⁽⁴⁾ four percent of its **land**⁽⁵⁾. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be **around**⁽⁶⁾ 128 million by 2030. So, what are the solutions to these problems?



Check Vocabulary

- (1) (عدد) السكان
- (2) يتزايد
- (3) بالمائة (%)
- (4) حوالي
- (5) مساحة
- (6) حوالي

One plan is to **invest**⁽⁷⁾ billions of pounds in a new **capital**⁽⁸⁾ city outside Cairo. This is one of the big **projects**⁽⁹⁾ that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

(7) يستثمر

(8) عاصمة

(9) مشروعات

The rainforest in Borneo

(58 page 28)

Interviewer : Hello everyone. In today's **show**⁽¹⁾ I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an **expert**⁽²⁾ on the **rainforests**⁽³⁾ in Borneo. **Welcome**⁽⁴⁾ to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different **types**⁽⁵⁾ of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And, what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large **island**⁽⁶⁾ in **South-East Asia**,⁽⁷⁾ and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, **recently**⁽⁸⁾ the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than **usual**.⁽⁹⁾ And scientists think that there will be even less **rainfall**⁽¹⁰⁾ on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : **Unfortunately**,⁽¹¹⁾ some farmers are cutting down trees and starting **fires**⁽¹²⁾ so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get **even**⁽¹³⁾ hotter, **you see**⁽¹⁴⁾. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest **over**⁽¹⁵⁾ the next few **decades**.⁽¹⁶⁾ That would be **terrible**⁽¹⁷⁾ for the animals and **plant life**⁽¹⁸⁾ in the rainforest, and Borneo would **heat up**⁽¹⁹⁾ even more.



Check Vocabulary

(1) عرض - برنامج حوارى

(2) خبير

(3) غابة استوائية

(4) مرحباً

(5) أنواع

(6) جزيرة

(7) جنوب شرق آسيا

(8) حديثاً

(9) معتاد

(10) (معدل) هطول الأمطار

(11) لسوء الحظ

(12) حرائق

(13) أكثر

(14) كما ترى

(15) عبر / على مدار

(16) عقود

(17) فظيع

(18) الحياة النباتية

(19) يسخن

Interviewer : Do you think those farmers will **keep**⁽²⁰⁾ cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to **feed**⁽²¹⁾ their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming **techniques**⁽²²⁾ and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My **organisation**⁽²³⁾ will be **running**⁽²⁴⁾ an **education**⁽²⁵⁾ programme next month to help them.

Interviewer : Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

(20) يستمر في

(21) يطعم

(22) تقنيات

(23) مؤسسة

(24) يدير / يشرف على

(25) تعليم

How to write a summary

(58 page 30)

Amir : Is that your homework, Hany?

Hany : Yes. What's wrong with it? It **took me ages**⁽¹⁾.

Amir : I can see that. It's very long.

Hany : So, what?

Amir : Well, we were asked to write a **summary**⁽²⁾ and yours looks longer than the **text**⁽³⁾ we're **summarising**⁽⁴⁾! You know it should be shorter, right?

Hany : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to **miss**⁽⁵⁾ anything important.

Amir : So, what was the text about?

Hany : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.

Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading **the whole text**⁽⁶⁾ and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the **main**⁽⁷⁾ idea? How would I **explain**⁽⁸⁾ it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.



Check Vocabulary

(1) استغرق مني وقتاً طويلاً

(2) تلخيص

(3) النص

(4) يلخص

(5) يفوت

(6) النص بالكامل

(7) رئيسي

(8) يشرح - يوضح

Hany: But, you know me. I always forget something important.

Amir: Then you should read the text again. But the second time, **underline**⁽⁹⁾ the most important words or **phrases**⁽¹⁰⁾ in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important **actions**⁽¹¹⁾ or phrases for times and places.

Hany: Okay.

Amir: After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write **complete**⁽¹²⁾ sentences that **fill in**⁽¹³⁾ the **gaps**⁽¹⁴⁾ between those words.

Hany: I see.

Amir: It's also **helpful**⁽¹⁵⁾ to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like 'first', 'after that' or 'finally'.

Hany: And then?

Amir: When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's **clear**⁽¹⁶⁾ and then look back at the **original**⁽¹⁷⁾ text to see if you've **included**⁽¹⁸⁾ all the important information.

(9) ضع خط

(10) عبارات

(11) أفعال

(12) كامل

(13) يملأ

(14) فراغات

(15) مفيد

(16) واضح

(17) أصلي

(18) يتضمن

3 Video script section

Three small changes to help the environment

(SB page 27)

Would you like to do more to help the **environment**⁽¹⁾ by living a more sustainable life? It's **actually**⁽²⁾ easier than you might think. There are many small **changes**⁽³⁾ you can make that will help to **protect**⁽⁴⁾ the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become a **vegetarian**⁽⁵⁾ but eating less meat will help the environment. Livestock produce dangerous **gases**⁽⁶⁾ and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often **possible**⁽⁷⁾ to walk or **ride**⁽⁸⁾ a bike instead and these are more sustainable ways of travelling.

Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much **stuff**⁽⁹⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(1) البيئة

(2) في الواقع

(3) تغييرات

(4) يحمي

(5) نباتي

(6) غازات

(7) ممكن

(8) يركب

(9) أغراض / حوائج

1 The Future Simple with "will + inf." "will + inf." المستقبل البسيط باستخدام

Form	The "will" future
Active المبنى للمعلوم	subj. + will + inf. ex. - I will buy this mobile.
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + will be + p.p. ex. - This mobile will be bought (by me).

Uses of "will + inf." استخدامات "will + inf."

1. Future facts الحقائق المستقبلية	ex. - Nada will become four years old next Monday.
2. Prediction without evidence التنبؤ دون دليل	وفي هذه الحالة يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوي على أفعال مثل : be sure, think, believe, expect, hope, wonder ويتساءل يشك doubt , يخشى be afraid ex. - I think the match will be very exciting. - I doubt I'll go out tonight. ومن الممكن أن يُستخدم مع (will) بعض الظروف مثل : perhaps, possibly, probably, surely, certainly, definitely
3. Quick decisions القرارات السريعة	ex. - That's the phone - I'll answer it.
4. Offers العروض	ex. - I'll go shopping with you if you like.
5. Request الطلب	ex. - Will you help me with my homework?
6. Warning التحذير	ex. - Take the medicine regularly or your health will get worse.
7. Promises الوعد	ex. - I will buy you a new mobile when you pass your final exam.
8. First conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى	ex. - If I have enough money, I will travel around the world.

Mini Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I this medicine after I have lunch.
a. takes b. took c. will take d. will be taken
- This medicine after I have lunch.
a. takes b. took c. will take d. will be taken
- I expect Omar first next term.
a. comes b. came c. will come d. will be come
- What a beautiful dress. I it.
a. buy b. will buy c. am going to buy d. am buying
- Leave this heavy bag. I it upstairs for you later.
a. will carry b. am carrying c. am going to carry d. carry
- Study for your exams or you them.
a. fail b. will fail c. are going to fail d. won't fail
- I to your birthday if I don't travel. I promise.
a. will come b. won't come c. am going to come d. am coming
- If it is late, I a taxi.
a. takes b. am taking c. going to take d. will take

2 The future continuous (will / may + be + inf. + ing)

Form	The Future Continuous Tense	زمن المستقبل المستمر
Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي	Subj. + will / won't + be + inf. + ing ... ex. - Reem will be doing the housework all morning tomorrow. ex. - At five next Friday, I will be visiting one of my old friends.	
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...? ex. - Will Reem be doing the housework all morning tomorrow?	
Wh_ Q السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...? ex. - What will Reem be doing all morning tomorrow?	
تستخدم (may) بدلاً من (will) للتنبؤ بأحداث قد تكون مستمرة في المستقبل في حالة عدم التأكد :		
	subj. + may be + inf. + ing ... ex. - When Rodayna is 20, she may be studying medicine at university.	

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم المستقبل المستمر في الحالات التالية :

التنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمراً في وقت معين في المستقبل :

- ex.** - Omar **will be watching** a football match **at nine tomorrow**.
 - **This time tomorrow**, Sama **will be travelling** to Cairo with her family.

التنبؤ بحدث سيستمر لفترة في المستقبل :

- ex.** - The manager **will be interviewing** some applicants **from three to five tomorrow**.

التنبؤ بشيء سيكون سائد ومُتعارف عليه في المستقبل :

- ex.** - In 10 years' time, more people **will be living** in new cities.

التنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمراً عندما سيقع حدث آخر في المستقبل (لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط بعد الروابط الزمنية):

- ex.** - When you **return** home, I **may be preparing** lunch.

تُستخدم مع روابط السبب والنتيجة لتبرير شيء ما في المستقبل :

- ex.** - I **can't go** to the club next Friday because I **will be planting** some trees in my garden.

تُستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للطلب أو السؤال عن معلومة بشكل مهذب :

- ex.** - **Will you be using** your digital camera tomorrow?

غالباً تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن أحداث مستمرة الآن ونتوقع أن تكون مستمرة أيضاً في المستقبل :

subj. + **will/may** + **still** لا يزال + **be** + **inf.** + **ing**

- ex.** - The number of people **may still be increasing** in the future.

غالباً لا يُستخدم المستقبل المستمر أو أي من الأزمنة المستمرة مع أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية :

- ex.** - At seven tomorrow, the pool **will be containing** fresh water . (X)

- At seven tomorrow, the pool **will contain** fresh water. (✓)

Mini Test 2

- ❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I the housework all morning tomorrow.
 - will be done
 - won't be done
 - will be doing
 - going to do
- If you call me at five, I in bed, but I am not sure.
 - will be sleeping
 - may be sleeping
 - will sleep
 - may sleep

<p>3. Prepared decisions القرارات المسبقة</p>	<p>decided, have decided / made a decision / made up his mind اتخذ القرار</p> <p>ex. - I have decided to change my car. I'm going to buy a modern one.</p>
<p>4. Actions that are about to happen أحداث على وشك الوقوع</p>	<p>وفي هذه الحالة يمكن أن نستخدم بعض العبارات الخاصة بالتحذير أو لفت الانتباه مثل:</p> <p>Watch out! = Look out! انتبه / Be careful! = Take care! احترس</p> <p>ex. - Look out! You are going to drop the plates.</p>

Mini Test 3

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**
1. I the next bus as planned.
a. take b. will take
c. am going to take d. is going to be taken
 2. The next bus by me as planned.
a. take b. will take
c. am going to take d. is going to be taken
 3. I have a plan. I the quality of our products.
a. will increase b. will be increased
c. am going to increase d. will have increased
 4. He has already decided. He his old flat.
a. is going to sell b. is going to be sold
c. will have sold d. will sell
 5. Be careful, honey. You
a. will be falling b. are going to fall
c. will be fallen d. will have fallen

4 The Present continuous المصارع المستمر

Form	The present continuous
Active المبنى للمعلوم	subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing ... ex. - Ahmed is watching the match at the stadium tomorrow.
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + am / is / are + being + P.P. ... ex. - The match is being watched at the stadium (by Ahmed) tomorrow.

Uses الاستخدامات

(Future arrangements) يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (لا بد من وجود تعبير زمني يدل على المستقبل)

تدل التعبيرات الآتية على وجود ترتيبات :

arranged, made arrangements, prepared, ...

ex. - Everything is **arranged**. We are leaving to Cairo at five tomorrow.

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها في وقت محدد في المستقبل

ex. - She **is flying** to India in the summer.

- My brother **is getting** married next month.

الاجتماعات واللقاءات الرسمية وكذلك المناسبات الاجتماعية (مثل حفلات أعياد الميلاد والزفاف والزيارات والمقابلات ...) تستلزم ترتيبات لذلك فهي غالباً تكون في صيغة المضارع المستمر بشرط تحديد وقت الحدث :

ex. - Sama **is celebrating** her birthday party next Monday.

- My sister **is getting** married tomorrow.

- The manager **is interviewing** some applicants after tomorrow's meeting.

- We **are meeting** the minister at eleven o'clock next Tuesday.

- I **am having** lunch with my uncle next Monday.

يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية (**plans**) لكن استخدام (**going to**) أكثر شيوعاً:

ex. - According to the plan, he **is making** (= **is going to make**) the design of the new building.

غالباً لا تُستخدم أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية وفعل (be) في الأزمنة المستمرة:

ex. - I **am going to see** the coral reefs in the Red Sea next month during my stay there. (Not: am seeing)

Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some friends by me for lunch as arranged.

a. will meet

b. going to meet

c. am meeting

d. are being met

2. I some friends for lunch as arranged.

a. will meet

b. going to meet

c. am meeting

d. are being met

موقع
فيديو
التعليمي

3. She to Paris at five tomorrow.
a. will fly b. will be flying c. is flying d. b & c
4. My secretary me at tomorrow's meeting in New York. She has already travelled there.
a. is replacing b. is being replaced
c. will replace d. will have replaced
5. She about the latest developments at the meeting tomorrow.
a. will be known b. knows
c. is knowing d. is going to know

5 The Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Uses	Subject + F.C. / (inf. + s, es, ies) ...
Events on a timetable أشياء تحدث حسب جدول مواعيد مثل مواعيد وسائل المواصلات - البرامج - الأفلام ... إلخ.	ex. - The course starts in October. - This lesson doesn't finish until 2.30. - My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

6 General Notes on Future forms ملاحظات عامة على صيغ التعبير عن المستقبل

- ١ هناك تعبيرات زمنية دالة على المستقبل بصفة عامة منها :
tomorrow / in the future / soon / قريبا / **next (year / month / week / Friday...)** ... etc.
- ٢ الصفات الشخصية الدائمة لا تُعد دليلاً و نستخدم معها **(will + inf.)** :
ex. - Shaza **will pass** her exams. She's **a clever student**.
- ٣ الصفات الوقتية تُعد دليلاً و يُفضل أن يُستخدم معها **'be going to'** :
ex. - Mohammed looks **exhausted**. I think he **is going to sleep** on his chair.
- ٤ نستخدم **(shall)** مع **(I / We)** لتقديم الإقتراحات و العروض :
ex. - **Shall we have** a cold drink ?
- ٥ يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية:

After / As soon as حدث أول
 When / The moment + (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) مستقبل / جملة أمر

- ex. - After I **arrive** (= **have arrived**) home, I'll take a rest.
 - Tell Ahmed to call me when you **see** (= **have seen**) him.

Before / By the time + حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) → مستقبل / جملة أمر

- ex. - Before I **leave** (= **have left**) the office, I'll **phone** some clients.
 - **Don't leave** before you **finish** (= **have finished**) the report.

حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى (غالبًا) / جملة أمر + till / until + حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام

- ex. - Mum **won't set** the table for lunch until my father **arrives** (= **has arrived**) home.
 - **Don't put** the bread in the shopping bag until it **completely** cools.

إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتباً له، و يمكن في هذه الحالة استخدام المضارع المستمر أو المستقبل المستمر:

- ex. - I **can't see** you this evening. I'm **visiting** my uncle in hospital.
 - I **can't see** you this evening. I'll **be visiting** my uncle in hospital.

Exercises On Language

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- A : Can you come on Monday evening?
 B : I'd love to, but I tennis with friends.
 a. will play b. shall play c. going to play d. am playing
- I my uncle off at the airport, so I can't meet you at nine.
 a. will be seeing b. will see
 c. will have seen d. will have been seen
- It's arranged. We to the Red Sea this summer.
 a. are going b. are going to c. will go d. go
- I think my brother a doctor. He's very clever.
 a. is b. is going to be c. is being d. will be
- From five to seven next Monday, I a medical conference.
 a. will have attended b. will be attended
 c. will be attending d. am going to be attended

6. I eighteen next Monday.
 a. am going to be b. will be c. am being d. be
7. The museum typically at 8 a.m.
 a. opens b. is going to open
 c. is opening d. will open
8. Doctors predict they chronic diseases.
 a. are treating b. will treat
 c. are going to treat d. will have treated
9. We've run out of sugar. I to the market and get some.
 a. will go b. have gone c. go d. went
10. A : What would you like to start your lunch with, Sir?
 B : Mmm, I with lentil soup.
 a. will start b. am going to start
 c. am starting d. starts
11. My lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.
 a. is going to finish b. finishes
 c. is finishing d. be finished
12. It is very cloudy. I think it by the time we are leaving the office.
 a. shall rain b. is going to be raining
 c. will be rained d. rains
13. By the time you receive my letter, I to Aswan.
 a. am going to travel b. will be travelling
 c. will have travel d. am travelling
14. I predict that Ahmed a part-time job during the next summer holiday.
 a. shall find b. is finding c. will find d. finds
15. A : What are you doing next Saturday afternoon?
 B : I'm not sure. I at home.
 a. will be sleeping b. may be sleeping
 c. will have slept d. am sleeping
16. Soon after the exams, Rokaya to Aswan as planned
 a. will travel b. has travelled
 c. is going to travel d. shall travel
17. I to Paris next Monday. It's all arranged by me.
 a. fly b. am flying c. will fly d. is going to fly
18. The drinks will
 a. be ordered b. be ordering c. have ordered d. order
19. It has already been decided. They a meeting when the new boss has arrived.
 a. will have b. are going to have
 c. having d. shall have

20. People in houses under water in twenty years' time.
 a. may have lived b. will be lived c. may be living d. are living
21. I tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
 a. 'm leaving b. 'll leave c. going to leave d. shall leave
22. I have an intention to study Russian. I for a course.
 a. am going to apply b. shall apply
 c. am applying d. applies
23. Mustafa joined the Faculty of Medicine two years ago. He as a doctor.
 a. will graduate b. is going to graduate
 c. graduates d. is graduating
24. This is the key of your new car. You it if you come first.
 a. are getting b. are going to get
 c. should get d. will get
25. I expect they the match tomorrow.
 a. win b. will win
 c. are winning d. are going to win
26. Don't worry. I'm sure you them again soon.
 a. see b. are seeing c. will see d. would see
27. I hire a car to travel around Alexandria. This is my intention.
 a. am going to b. may c. could d. will
28. In the future, every new book as an ebook.
 a. will publish b. was published
 c. will be published d. will have published

II Special cases

29. The temperature of the world in the future.
 a. will still be rising b. will still have risen
 c. is still rising d. still rises
30. A : your ebook tomorrow? B : No. You can borrow it.
 a. Will you have used b. Do you use
 c. Are you used d. Will you be using
31. Finish the reports today or you your job.
 a. will lose b. lose
 c. are losing d. are going to lose
32. This time next Friday, this car to me.
 a. will be belonging b. is belonging
 c. will have been belonged d. will belong

33. Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They the match easily.
 a. will win b. win c. are winning d. going to win
34. I can't travel at 9 a.m. tomorrow as I a meeting.
 a. have had b. going to have c. have d. will be having
35. Mai can't help you tonight. She on a science project.
 a. works b. is working
 c. won't be working d. will have worked
36. I want to buy a new villa, so I save a lot of money.
 a. am going to b. will c. am to d. will be
37. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I my homework.
 a. would be doing b. would do c. will be doing d. may do
38. She'll phone us as soon as she at Madrid Airport.
 a. arrived b. had arrived c. arrives d. arriving

III Check your understanding

39. The match starts at nine. That is according to a / an
 a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction
40. I'm sure he will come first. That is a / an
 a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction
41. I'm flying to London at 6:30 next Friday. That is a / an
 a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction
42. I am going to go shopping for clothes next Monday. This is my
 a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction
43. I can't go for a walk tomorrow as
 a. I will be helping mum at home. b. I will help mum at home.
 c. I am helping mum at home. d. a & c
44. 'Will you be using your tablet tomorrow'. This means
 a. I want you to turn off your tablet.
 b. I want to borrow your tablet.
 c. I want to tell you about the importance of your tablet.
 d. I know someone who wants to steal your tablet.
45. 'People will still be reading paperbacks in the future'. This means
 a. people look forward to reading paperbacks
 b. people don't read paperbacks at present
 c. people read paperbacks at present
 d. people didn't read paperbacks in the past

46. Rokaya has the intention to revise her physics lessons tomorrow. This means
- Rokaya will revise her physics lessons tomorrow.
 - Rokaya will be revising her physics lessons tomorrow.
 - Rokaya is revising her physics lessons tomorrow.
 - Rokaya is going to revise her physics lessons tomorrow.
47. "He has arranged everything for his wedding next Thursday". This means
- he is getting married next Thursday.
 - he is going to get married next Thursday.
 - he will get married next Thursday.
 - he will have been married next Thursday.
48. "It is the doorbell. I it".
- am opening
 - will open
 - am going to open
 - open

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Look where you are going. You into a hole.
 - will step
 - will be stepped
 - are going to step
 - are to step
- My wife and I are good at learning languages, so our children good at languages too.
 - will become
 - are going to become
 - are becoming
 - will have become
- Scientists are concerned whether enough food for so many people in the future.
 - will be produced
 - is produced
 - will have been produced
 - will produced
- Ayman the staff of the office. He has made up his mind.
 - is going to change
 - is changing
 - will change
 - changes
- For being stubborn, I expect she easily.
 - won't persuade
 - isn't going to be persuaded
 - won't be persuaded
 - is being persuaded
- I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I my homework.
 - will have done
 - will be done
 - will be doing
 - do
- I doubt that he your kind offer.
 - isn't going to accept
 - isn't accepting
 - don't accept
 - won't accept

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	حدث على وشك أن يقع
2.	a	تنبؤ دون دليل
3.	a	السياق يتطلب مستقبل بسيط مبني للمجهول
4.	a	قرار مسبق، ويتضح ذلك من (he has made up his mind.)
5.	c	السياق يتطلب مستقبل بسيط مبني للمجهول
6.	c	حدث سيكون مستمر في المستقبل بما سيمنع القيام بشيء آخر
7.	d	تنبؤ دون دليل بعد (I doubt that)

Part VI Language Hints from Reading & Listening

لذلك / نتيجة لذلك جملة + **so = as a result**

- A lot of people drink polluted water, **so / as a result** they become ill.
لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (**as a result**) في نهاية الجملة:

ex. - A lot of people drink polluted water. They become ill **as a result**.

Surprisingly = It is surprising that من الغريب أن

- Surprisingly**, he didn't get angry.
= **It is surprising that** he didn't get angry.

so that / in order that / in the hope that + جملة لكي

- Scientists can modify some genes **so that** the tomatoes do not rot so quickly.

like = such as مثل / على سبيل المثال

- I don't eat sweet foods **like (such as)** cakes and candies.

because

- Because / as / since** جملة نتيجة + جملة سبب

ex. - **Because / As / Since** I was injured, I didn't play the match.
= I didn't play the match **because / as / since** I was injured.

- Because of / Owing to / Due to** بسبب **Thanks to** بفضل + n / (inf. + ing) + جملة نتيجة

ex. - **Because of / Owing to / Due to** being injured, I didn't play the match.
= I didn't play the match **because of / owing to / due to** being injured.

leaving out relative pronouns

١. يمكن حذف كلاً من (who - which - whom - that) إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل:

- ex. - This is the man **who** I called yesterday.
= This is the man I called yesterday.

٢. يمكن حذف كلاً من (who - which - that) في الحالات التالية:

أ. إذا جاء بعدهم مبنى للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف ضمير الوصل والفاعل ويبقى الفعل مضافاً له (ing):

- ex. - The secretary **who works** here speaks five languages.
= The secretary **working** here speaks five languages.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضاً ضمير الوصل و (be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للمفعول.

- ex. - The bully **who was caught** last month was sent to prison.
- The bully **caught** last month was sent to prison.

ج. إذا جاء بعدهم (be) كفعل أساسي وهنا يتم حذف ضمير الوصل و (be)

- ex. - The food **which is in** the fridge is not fresh.
- The food **in** the fridge is not fresh.

٣. يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان بعده اسم أو صفة بعدها اسم:

- ex. - Harry Keen, **who is a talented footballer**, played for Tottenham, England.
- Harry Keen, **a talented footballer**, played for Tottenham, England.

With + obj. مفعول + p.p. ...

لأن استخدام الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

... جملة مبنية للمجهول + **Because**

... جملة مبنية للمجهول + **Due to / Because of + the fact that**

... **With + obj. مفعول + p.p. + to + inf.**

- ex. - **Because** the population of the world **is predicted** to grow, we need to increase food production.
- **Due to** the fact that the population of the world **is predicted** to grow, we need to increase food production.
- **With** the population of the world **predicted** to grow, we need to increase food production.

get + P.P.

يمكن استخدام (get) حسب الزمن بدلاً من (be) في صيغة المبني للمجهول كالتالي:

= **Obj. مفعول + get + P.P.**

- **Obj. مفعول + be + P.P.**

= Criminals **get arrested** by the police.

= I **got promoted** last month.

ex. - Criminals **are arrested** by the police.

- I **was promoted** last month.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I offered to help him in his difficult situation., he refused.
a. So b. That's why c. As a result d. Surprisingly
- We work hard we can achieve our goals in life.
a. because b. because of c. in order that d. in order to
- She wasted her time.
a. So, she failed the exam. b. As a result, she failed the exam.
c. She failed the exam as a result. d. a, b & c
- Rokaya loves children, she chose to be a primary school teacher.
a. Because b. Due to
c. So that d. In the hope that
- her love for children, Rokaya chose to be a primary school teacher.
a. Because b. Due to
c. So that d. In the hope that
- She is engaged to the young man you have played tennis with.
a. who b. that c. no pronoun d. a, b & c
- I feel sorry for the tall girl food in this restaurant.
a. who serves b. serving c. served d. a & b
- I don't like the food in this restaurant.
a. who serves b. serving c. served d. a & b
- With my team to win the cup, I was eager متلهف to watch the match in the stadium.
a. predict b. predicted c. is predicting d. b & c
- The victim stabbed طعن with a sharp knife.
a. got b. was got c. is got d. get

Part VII

Language Skills

1 Writing Tips – Essay writing

* إرشادات خاصة بكتابة المقال :

١. عند التعبير عن الفكرة الرئيسية للمقال نبدأ ب :
موضوع هذا المقال هو ...
- The subject of this essay is + الموضوع ...
 - The subject of this essay is the future of farming.
- OR: This essay will focus on + الموضوع ...
سوف يركز هذا المقال علي ...
- This essay will focus on the future of farming.

٢. عند التركيز علي مثال محدد نبدا بـ :

• **In the case of / An example of +** اسم ...

- In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens.

٣. عند التعبير عن سبب حدوث شيء ما نستخدم :

• **... due to the fact that / because +** جملة ...

- Cities are not good for farming **due to the fact that** there is so little green space.

٤. عند التعبير عن المعلومات القائمة علي حقائق نستخدم :

• **All the evidence suggests +** جملة ... كل الدلائل / الشواهد تشير إلي أن ...

- All the evidence suggests **that** urban farming could help us grow our own food in the future.

٥. عند التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي في موضوع المقال نستخدم :

• **In my opinion / view +** جملة ... من وجهة نظري ...

- In my **view**, urban farming is a great idea.

٦. عند اختتام موضوع المقال نستخدم :

• **In conclusion / To conclude, +** جملة ... الخلاصة هي أن ...

- **To conclude**, urban farming is an interesting idea.

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

Model Essay

* A model Essay about "The Future of Farming" from student's book
Page (31)

The future of farming

This essay will focus **يركز** on the future of agriculture.

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface **سطح** is healing up **يمتلي** and soon there will be less land that farmers can use. In the case of Africa, the continent could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently. **بكفاءة**

Due to the fact that there will be less land available for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they are prepared for the future.

To conclude, الخلاصة agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

3 الترجمة Translation

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

① Translate into Arabic :

1. The Nile, which gives us life, is treated with a great deal of cruelty. Sometimes the pollution is put in the river deliberately and sometimes through carelessness.
2. Water isn't the only thing that the Nile granted us. Formerly, the water from the Nile used to make the soil along its banks fertile.
3. Honesty is one of the most important qualities of a trader. Those who sell food that is later than its expiry date must be fined.
4. It is always best to buy food from a reliable shop, where you know that you can count on your food being both tasty and healthy.
5. There are now food safety organisations whose aim is to make sure that all the food that you buy is safe to eat.
6. Labels on the food may have a list of its ingredients, so you know the ingredients and whether they are natural or artificial.

② Translate into English :

١. الصحة تاج على رؤوس الأصحاء لا يراه إلا المرضى، لذا لا بد أن تحرص على تناول الغذاء الصحي والمياه النقية لكي تظل بصحة جيدة.
٢. يجب أن تكون اللحوم جيدة الطهي حتى لا تسبب أي ضرر، فالبكتيريا والجراثيم الموجودة باللحوم تحتاج إلى درجة حرارة عالية للتخلص منها.
٣. يقول الخبراء أن هناك ثلاث أسس للصحة الجيدة: الغذاء السليم وممارسة الرياضة بانتظام والحصول على قدر كاف من النوم يومياً.

٤. إن عدم استغلال الزيادة السكانية يُعتبر من أكبر المشكلات التي تواجهنا كمصريين، فكلما زاد عدد السكان في مصر كلما قلَّ نصيب الفرد من الدخل القومي والخدمات.
٥. يجب أن تُرشد استخدام المياه حتى لا نواجه الظما في المستقبل، فالعالم بأسره يواجه خطر ندرة مصادر المياه العذبة.

Vocabulary related to translation texts

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

bank	ضفة	honesty	الأمانة
chief	رئيسي	individual	الفرد
consider	يعتبر	national income	الدخل القومي
crown	تاج	population	السكان
cruelty	قسوة	pure	نقى
a great deal of	كم كبير من	services	الخدمات
formerly	في السابق	share	نصيب
getting enough sleep	الحصول على قدر كاف من النوم	sources	مصادر
grant	يمنح	stay healthy	تظل بصحة جيدة
harm	ضرر	threat	تهديد

King Lear

Act

I

Scenes (iii & iv) in brief

أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

Vocabulary

attack (ed) (v)	يهاجم	have a taste of her	يشرب من نفس الكأس / ينال
attendants (n)	الحاضرون	own medicine (idiom)	الجزء من جنس عمله
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	honest (adj)	أمين
cart (n)	عربة كارو	mad (adj)	مجنون
disguise (d) (v)	يتنكر - يتخفى	rude (adj)	وقح
encourage (d) (v)	يُشجّع	servant (n)	خادم
guilty (adj)	مُذنب	the cart is pulling the horse (idiom)	الأمور ليست كما يجب أن تكون
		wise	حكيم

Additional Exercise

تدريب إضافي (تدريب على سؤال اختر إجابتين صحيحتين من خمس اختيارات)

✳ Choose the **TWO** correct answers of the **FIVE** options given :

1. The world population by a great percent which causes many dangerous problems.
a. gives b. grows c. does d. makes e. increases
2. My time spent in the library was very productive. The synonyms of "productive" are
a. profitable b. incredible c. fruitful d. painful e. regrettable
3. One of the most important tasks for a farmer is to livestock.
a. kill b. keep c. find d. raise e. rise
4. Mohamed Salah's first season with Liverpool was extraordinary. This means that it was
a. ordinary b. familiar c. amazing d. exhausting e. exceptional
5. If you ask me, don't miss this wonderful Offers like that cannot be repeated.
a. chance b. opportunity c. crisis
d. worry e. chaos
6. He drove his father's car and it much damage.
a. made b. took c. gave d. caused e. did
7. Don't believe anyone says that they can the future. It may come by accident.
a. predict b. separate c. speculate d. admit e. do
8. People should their parents when they become old.
a. avoid b. look after c. look for d. take care of e. take part in
9. The captain asked me to keep training. This means I training.
a. depend on b. count on c. go on d. consist on e. carry on
10. I like films of the horror variety. The word "variety" can be replaced by
a. sort b. medal c. application d. type e. channel

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When one themselves, they look different.
a. behaves b. disguises c. encourages d. helps
2. He was found So, he was sent to prison.
a. guilty b. rude c. honest d. mad
3. People tell their what to do.
a. queens b. kings c. captains d. servants
4. It is a good thing for you to yourself well.
a. behave b. disguise c. encourage d. help
5. If you say something by mistake, you'd better apologise at once.
a. kind b. rude c. polite d. well
6. The noise my little brothers and sisters make drives me
a. guilty b. wise c. honest d. mad
7. To means to try to make someone do something.
a. behave b. disguise c. encourage d. help
8. Being is a good quality.
a. wise b. rude c. angry d. mad
9. It is not logical منطقي that a goes in front of a horse.
a. boat b. herring c. card d. cart
10. I trust him because he is
a. guilty b. rude c. honest d. mad

Test on Unit 3

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

ننويه
يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



A. Vocabulary and Structures

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. is a type of plant that grows in the sea and can be used as food.
a. Seafood b. Seaweed c. Corals d. Whales
2. The recent in language teaching has made it easier to learn a foreign language.
a. proposal b. rainforest c. summary d. innovation
3. is based on the idea that plants can be grown in water or sand instead of soil.
a. Nature b. Traditions c. Hydroponics d. Seaweeds
4. You refused the offer without telling us about your arguments it.
a. against b. for c. with d. from
5. Everyone in the party themselves, so I didn't recognise anybody at first.
a. behaved b. disguised c. encouraged d. helped
6. Can you the difference between the two products? They are almost the same.
a. keep b. take c. tell d. grow
7. A : your car tomorrow?
B : Oh, yes. I am driving to the airport to welcome my brother.
a. Will you have used b. Do you use
c. Are you used d. Will you be using
8. This team has skilled players who the match.
a. will win b. win c. are winning d. going to win
9. I can't call you at 11 tomorrow as I a job interview.
a. have had b. going to have
c. have d. will be having
10. He can't help you next Friday as he on his own farm.
a. works b. is working
c. won't be working d. will have worked

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

17. Why is it important for students not to be alone all the time?
 a. To learn how to play games.
 b. To save their time.
 c. To acquire normal social habits.
 d. To stop them from sleeping.
18. In which of the following school activities can students learn co-operation practically?
 a. Reading in the library. b. The school break.
 c. The school assembly. d. Team games and group work.
19. When do students work hard?
 a. When there's no play. b. When there's enough play.
 c. In class work only. d. In the playground only.
20. The underlined word "**compulsory**" means something that students do.
 a. should b. must c. needn't d. mustn't

B. Answer the following questions :

21. What is the relationship between play and study? Do you think any of them is more important than the other?
22. Can you predict what the outcome would be if students didn't play at school ? Why do you think so?
23. What are different ways to make students enjoy learning? Mention at least two.
24. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Waste which is put into the river by factories is often so poisonous that it kills fish. It is a real threat to one of the chief sources of protein.

26. Translate into English :

من الضروري أن نحمي مياه النيل من التلوث لكي نتجنب الأمراض، ولكي نحافظ أيضاً على الشروة السمكية التي تحصل عليها منه.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Sustainable ways of growing food

.....

.....

.....

Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

تلويه اختبار تراكمي على كل ثلاث وحدات في الكراسة التفاعلية.

Part

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

amount (n)	كمية	large (adj)	كبير
athletes (n)	الرياضيون	likely (adj - adv)	على الأرجح / في
bandage (n)	ضمادة		الغالب / محتمل / متوقع
boost (ed) (v)	يدعم - يرفع - يزيد	local (adj)	محلي
boxer (n)	ملاكم	meal (n)	وجبة
boxing (n)	الملاكمة	prepare (d) (v)	يُعدّ / يجهز
certificate (n)	شهادة	register (ed) (v)	يُسجّل
college (n)	كلية - مدرسة عليا	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
course (n)	برنامج تدريبي	runner (n)	عداء
distance (n)	مسافة	search (ed) (v)	يبحث
energy (n)	طاقة	teenager (n)	مراهق
fatty (adj)	دهني	together (adv)	معاً
immune system (n)	جهاز المناعة	training (n)	التدريب
injured (adj)	مُصاب	variety (n)	تشكيلة - تنوع

Part

II

Language Study

1

Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a cooking course يحصل على دورة تدريبية في الطهي	give	... energy يبد ... بالطاقة
feel	training يتمرن	have	a reason يعطي مبرر
get	(a lot) better يشعر بتحسن (كبير)	put	an accident يقع له حادث
	a certificate يحصل على شهادة		a bandage on يضع ضمادة على

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at the start	في البداية	less likely to be injured	أقل عُرضة للإصابة
a wide variety of	مجموعة متنوعة من	less likely to get ill	أقل عُرضة للمرض
fast food	وجبات سريعة	make me stronger	يجعلني أقوى
fatty food	طعام عالي الدهون	on my own	بفردى
in a different way	بطريقة مختلفة	on their website	على موقعهم
in two weeks' time	خلال أسبوعين	search for	يبحث عن
instead of	بدلاً من	sit at a desk	يجلس على مكتب
larger amounts of	كميات أكبر من	talk to	يتحدث إلى

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Text

Kareem

(SB page 36)

I'm a **runner**⁽¹⁾ who **regularly**⁽²⁾ runs very long **distances**⁽³⁾. I need to eat **large**⁽⁴⁾ **amounts**⁽⁵⁾ of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough **energy**⁽⁶⁾ to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to **boost**⁽⁷⁾ my **immune system**⁽⁸⁾, which means that I'm less **likely**⁽⁹⁾ to get ill and have to stop **training**⁽¹⁰⁾. I usually **prepare**⁽¹¹⁾ my own food at home but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!



Check Vocabulary

- (1) غذاء
- (2) بانتظام
- (3) مسافات
- (4) كبير
- (5) كميات
- (6) طاقة
- (7) يدعم
- (8) جهاز المناعة
- (9) محتمل - متوقع
- (10) التدريب
- (11) يعدّ

Amr

I'm a **boxer**⁽¹⁾ so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other **athletes**⁽²⁾. When I started **boxing**⁽³⁾, I started eating in a different way. **Instead of**⁽⁴⁾ three large **meals**⁽⁵⁾ a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide **variety**⁽⁶⁾ of food.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) ملاكم
- (2) الرياضيون
- (3) الملاكمة
- (4) بدلاً من
- (5) وجبات
- (6) تشكيلة

I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be **injured**.⁽⁷⁾ Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, **fatty**⁽⁸⁾ food, such as cakes and chocolate.

(7) مُصاب

(8) دهني

To: aya@mail.com**From:** hadeer@mail.com

(SB page 38)

Hi Aya,

How are you today?

I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more **energy**⁽¹⁾ and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat.



Check Vocabulary

(1) طاقة

(2) برنامج تدريبي

(3) معاً

(4) محلي

(5) كلية

(6) مرافقين

(7) يُسَجَّل

(8) يبحث

Do you want to do a cooking **course**⁽²⁾ with me so we can learn **together**?⁽³⁾ There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the **local**⁽⁴⁾ **college**.⁽⁵⁾ It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for **teenagers**!⁽⁶⁾

You don't need to go to the college to **register**,⁽⁷⁾ you can do it on their website. Just **search**⁽⁸⁾ for the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend.

Talk to you soon!

Hadeer

موقع
فديو
التعليمي

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 37)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) هواية
- (2) حادث
- (3) مهارات
- (4) دورة تدريبية للإسعافات الأولية
- (5) مركز رياضي
- (6) شهادة
- (7) يؤدي
- (8) أساسي
- (9) أساليب
- (10) ضمادة / شاش

Interviewer: Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Gizeh who has just started to do an interesting **hobby**⁽¹⁾. Could you tell us what you do, Mariam?

Mariam: Yes, sure. In my free time, i'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had an **accident**⁽²⁾.

Interviewer: That sounds great. So you can learn new **skills**⁽³⁾ and help other people at the same time.

Mariam: Exactly. I'm doing a **first aid course**⁽⁴⁾ with about twenty other young people at our **sports centre**⁽⁵⁾.

Interviewer: And will you receive a **certificate**⁽⁶⁾ at the end of the course?

Mariam: Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get my first certificate which shows that I can **perform**⁽⁷⁾ **basic**⁽⁸⁾ first aid.

Interviewer: Great! So you're learning simple **techniques**⁽⁹⁾ to start with and then you'll learn more techniques, is that right?

Mariam: Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put a **bandage**⁽¹⁰⁾ on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for example. I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so I can learn as much as possible.

Interviewer: And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much? What's so interesting about it?



Mariam

: Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the future, and the course is really fun too. You don't need to sit at a desk and read books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands that and he makes sure that the lessons are fun.



Interviewer: So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic !

موقع
فديو
التعليمي

Master your skills

يهدف إلى تنمية

مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية

جزء يصرف مجاناً مع الكتاب



Changing English

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

✪ Reading :

An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post

✪ Writing :

A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects

✪ Listening :

A speaker talking about messaging; Tips on how to write a successful blog post

✪ Speaking :

A debate

✪ Language :

Reported speech; reporting orders, requests and advice; could/should have + past participle

✪ Life skills :

Communication

Mom, I did well n ze meeting
and I'm in my way back home
hope u r happy, miss you dear



لإتقان الوحدة

• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.
• ملحق المهارات.
• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

Part I

Vocabulary

• اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية ومشتقاتها في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
• قاموس المعاصر لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكراسة التفاعلية.

تلويح

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	introduction (n)	مقدمة
acronym (n)	اختصار بالأحرف الأولى	linguist (n)	خبير لغة - عالم لغة
blog (ged) (n - v)	مُدونة (على الإنترنت) - يُدوّن	message (d) (n - v)	رسالة - يرسل - يتبادل الرسائل
communicate (d) (v)	يؤدي معنى - يتواصل	messaging (n)	التراسل - المراسلة
communication (n)	التواصل - الاتصال	misunderstand -	يُسي فهم
conclusion (n)	خلاصة - خاتمة	misunderstood (v)	
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة - حتماً
findings (n)	نتائج	prefix (n)	مقطع بادئ
formal (adj)	رسمى	procedure (n)	إجراءات - نهج
frown (n)	تجهم - عبوس	selfie (n)	صورة شخصية
frown (ed) (v)	يعبّس - يتجهم (يُكشّر)	suffix (n)	مقطع ناهى
innovator (n)	مبتكر - مُخترع	tone (n)	نغمة الصوت - النبرة

2 Most Important Vocabulary

admit (ted) (v)	يقرّ بـ - يعترف بـ	mansion (n)	قصر (سراي)
advice (n)	نصيحة	mark (n)	درجة
advise (d) (v)	ينصح	misuse (d) (v)	يُسي استخدام
aim (ed) (n - v)	هدف - يهدف إلى	movement (n)	حركة
app (application) (n)	تطبيق	negative (adj)	سلبي
author (n)	مؤلف	notice (d) (v) , (n)	يلاحظ - ملاحظة
aware (adj)	علي علم - مُدرك	order (ed) (n - v)	أمر - يأمر
basic (adj)	أساسي	point (ed) (n) , (v)	نقطة - يشير
basically (adv)	أساساً	positive (adj)	إيجابي
change (d) (n - v)	التغيّر - يتغيّر - يُغيّر	positively (adv)	بشكل إيجابي
cite (d) (v)	يستشهد بـ - يُنوه عن	post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر - يرسل بالبريد
comfortable (adj)	مريح	properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح - بشكل مناسب
comment (ed) (n - v)	تعليق - يُعلّق		
compare (d) (v)	يقارن		

connect (ed) (v)	يربط - يتصل	react (ed) (v)	يتصرف
create (d) (v)	يخترع - يبتكر	recognisable (adj)	يسهل التعرف عليه
debate (d) (n - v)	مناظرة - يتحاور	record (ed) (v - n)	يسجل - سجل
effect (n)	أثر - تأثير - نتيجة	request (ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب
encourage (d) (v)	يُشجّع	require (d) (v)	يتطلب - يستلزم
endless (adj)	مستمر - بلا نهاية	research (ed) (n - v)	بحث - يجري بحث
expressions (n)	تعبيرات (وجه)	response (n)	استجابة - رد
facial (adj)	وجهي (خاص بالوجه)	result (ed) (n - v)	نتيجة - ينتج
foreign (adj)	أجنبي	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي	section (n)	قسم
immediate (adj)	فوري	speaker (n)	مُتحدّث - سَماعة
include (d) (v)	يُضمّن - يضيف	sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعي
inform (ed) (v)	يعطي معلومة - يُعلم	suitable (adj)	مناسب
interest (ed) (n - v)	اهتمام - يثير اهتمام - يُشوّق	survey (n)	بحث استطلاعي
introduce (d) (v)	يُقدّم - يطرح	thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات
joke (d) (n - v)	مزحة (نكتة) - يمزح	topic (n)	موضوع - فكرة رئيسية
loud (adj - adv)	عالي الصوت - بصوت عال	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح
lovely (adj)	رائع	unlike (prep)	علي عكس
purpose (n)	غرض	warn (ed) (v)	يُحذّر
		whether (conj.)	سواء - هل

3 Definitions تعريفات

abbreviation (n) اختصار	a short form صيغة of a word or expression تعبير
acronym (n) اختصار بالأحرف الأولى	a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up the name of something
blog (n) مُدونة	a personal website diary مفكرة for other people to read
emoji (n) رمز تعبير	an icon used in electronic messages and on websites
findings (n) نتائج	information that is discovered as the result of research into something

formal (adj) رسمي	used in official رسمي or serious situations
frown (v) (يُكْشِر) يعبس	to have an expression تعبير on your face that shows you are not happy
innovator (n) مبتكر - مخترع	someone who introduces يقدم / يطرح changes and new ideas
linguist (n) خبير لغة - عالم لغة	someone who studies or teaches linguistics اللغويات
messaging (n) التراسل - المراسلة	the system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment
misunderstand (v) يسئ فهم	to not understand properly بشكل صحيح
not necessarily (adv) ليس بالضرورة	a response استجابة to something that has been said that may not be true or correct
prefix (n) مقطع بادئ	a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word
procedure (n) إجراءات - نهج	a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way
selfie (n) صورة شخصية (بالكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف)	a photograph you take of yourself
suffix (n) مقطع ناهي (لاحقة)	a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word
thesaurus (n) موسوعة مفردات	a book that lists words in groups that have similar meanings
tone (n) نغمة الصوت / نبرة	the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key & Important vocabulary

- Omar's friendly encouraged me to ask him for help.
a. tone b. inclusion c. production d. body
- Abbreviations mostly belong to language.
a. formal b. informal c. positive d. negative

3. UEFA is more of a / an for "Union of European Football Associations"
 a. prefix b. suffix c. acronym d. abbreviation
4. The on her face shows that she is disappointed. مُحِبَّة
 a. suffix b. procedure c. expression d. thesaurus
5. He responded with a red flower
 a. finding b. selfies c. messaging d. emoji
6. Those who use social media are language They introduce new ideas into language.
 a. prefixes b. innovators c. acronyms d. abbreviations
7. Leen's mobile is full of duck of herself and her friends.
 a. suffixes b. selfies c. messaging d. emoji
8. are worried that the use of abbreviations and emoji will destroy the formal language.
 a. Sections b. Procedures c. Bloggers d. Linguists
9. My father when I started to talk about the school trip next week. This made me worry.
 a. communicated b. toned c. frowned d. messaged
10. Would you kindly us of your new address?
 a. research b. reuse c. include d. inform
11. Our school library has a large physics
 a. section b. headline c. sub-heading d. conclusion
12. Roaa me the good news she had heard.
 a. communicated b. toned c. frowned d. messaged
13. Roaa the good news she had heard to me.
 a. communicated b. toned c. frowned d. a & b
14. You give your opinion in the essay's
 a. tone b. conclusion c. introduction d. main body
15. You can't use abbreviations in a / an email or letter.
 a. formal b. informal c. positive d. negative
16. 'Ma3ak' from El-Moasser will help you take online exams according to the new educational system.
 a. Section b. Headline c. Purpose d. App

17. A / An is a letter or a group of letters added to the end of the word to form a new word.
 a. suffix b. impression c. expression d. prefix
18. usually read the followers comments on their posts.
 a. Expressions b. Procedures c. Bloggers d. Linguists
19. A / An is a group of letters added to the beginning of a word to make a new word.
 a. prefix b. suffix c. acronym d. abbreviation
20. The of the research surprised everyone.
 a. findings b. selfie c. messaging d. emoji
21. In the paragraph, you tell the readers what you are going to write about and how you are going to do so.
 a. tone b. conclusion c. introduction d. body
22. Be optimistic. متفائل Don't look only at the side of life.
 a. formal b. informal c. positive d. negative
23. You can use for the different parts of the report.
 a. sections b. headlines c. sub-headings d. apps
24. Your expressions reflect تعكس your feelings and reaction. رد الفعل
 a. endless b. facial c. basics d. basically
25. A / An is a book in which words are put into groups with other words that have similar meanings.
 a. suffix b. procedure c. expression d. thesaurus
26. It is honest من الأمانة to your sources of information.
 a. react b. cite c. hide d. misuse
27. 'Thx' is more of a / an for 'Thank you'.
 a. prefix b. innovator c. acronym d. abbreviation
28. Smartphones provide a more advanced متقدم system.
 a. findings b. selfies c. messaging d. emojis
29. Face-to-face know the reaction of their listeners from their facial expressions.
 a. speakers b. procedures c. bloggers d. languages
30. The main of discussion is the new educational system.
 a. response b. topic c. survey d. interests

31. Turning off his mobile does not mean he doesn't want to talk to you. He might be asleep after all.
a. necessarily b. immediately c. uncomfortably d. positively
32. Exercise up the muscles of your body.
a. communicates b. tones c. frowns d. messages
33. "You don't need to work hard at all." This sentence gives us what can be described as advice.
a. formal b. informal c. positive d. negative
34. The of the essay tells the reader what the topic of the essay is.
a. section b. headline c. sub-heading d. app
35. I got tired of your complaints. شكوي Isn't there anything positive in your life?
a. endless b. facial c. basic d. basically
36. A lot of young people social media in a way that affects their health and wastes their time.
a. compare b. cite c. post d. misuse
37. Don't sugar in the shopping list. We have enough of it.
a. research b. reuse c. include d. inform
38. I sent Ayman an email of thanks in to his kind offer.
a. response b. topic c. survey d. interest
39. I wonder if you could tell me the for applying for a passport.
a. suffix b. procedure c. expression d. thesaurus
40. I never expected you to me. I'm really shocked.
a. research b. frown c. communicate d. misunderstand

2 Definitions

41. A / An is a personal website diary for other people to read.
a. blog b. innovator c. messaging d. acronym
42. A / An is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym

43. Information that is discovered as the result of research into something is known as
 a. findings b. suffix c. thesaurus d. selfie
44. language is used in official or serious situations.
 a. Necessary b. Not necessary
 c. Formal d. Informal
45. To is to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy.
 a. frown b. understand
 c. misunderstand d. blog
46. A / An is someone who introduces changes and new ideas.
 a. blog b. innovator c. messaging d. linguist
47. A / An is someone who studies or teaches linguistics.
 a. blog b. innovator c. messaging d. linguist
48. A is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.
 a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. prefix
49. The system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment is known as
 a. blog b. massaging c. messaging d. linguist
50. To is to not understand properly.
 a. frown b. understand
 c. misunderstand d. blog
51. A / An is a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way.
 a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym
52. A / An is a short form of a word or expression.
 a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym
53. A is a photograph you take of yourself.
 a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. selfie
54. A / An is a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up the name of something.
 a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym

Part II Vocabulary Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

add	a sub-heading يضيف عنواناً فرعياً	have	a negative effect on له أثر سلبي علي
create	new words يبتكر مفردات جديدة		an argument يتجادل - يقع في خلاف
do	wrong research يرتكب خطأ يجري بحث		so much fun يمرح كثيراً long conversations يجري حوارات مطوّلة
fail	a test يرسب في اختبار	interest	the reader يشير اهتمام القارئ
feel	special يشعر بالتميز	introduce	new ideas يطرح أفكاراً جديدة
get	... wrong advice يفهم ... بشكل خاطئ يحصل علي النصيحة upset يتزعج	make	a negative comment يعلق بشكل سلبي a joke يمرح different sounds يصدر أصواتاً مختلفة
give	... bad news ينقل لـ ... أخبار سيئة information يعطي معلومات the opposite meaning يعطي عكس المعنى		new words يبتكر كلمات جديدة sense يعطي معني
go	home يذهب للمنزل	play	the piano يعزف على البيانو
include	a question يُضمّن سؤالاً	say	... in response يقول ... رداً علي
	images يُرفّق صوراً	sound	difficult يبدو صعباً
		take	a selfie يلتقط صورة لنفسه (بالكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف)
			photos يلتقط صور

Mini Test 1 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I didn't understand your question. I it wrong .
a. did b. made c. got d. had
- The word disadvantage the opposite meaning of advantages.
a. goes b. plays c. takes d. gives

3. I haven't anything wrong. I don't know why my father is angry with me.
 a. felt b. done c. sounded d. interested
4. The coach says that he has me in the tomorrow's match squad.
 a. included b. made c. stayed d. said
5. I can't help selfies.
 a. going b. playing c. taking d. giving
6. I was the only student in class to answer that question, which made me special.
 a. feel b. do c. say d. interest
7. We must find a solution to the bad effects pollution on the environment.
 a. includes b. makes c. gets d. has
8. I don't want to home now. Let's have a drink in that café.
 a. go b. play c. take d. give
9. A successful writer always his readers.
 a. fails b. does c. says d. interests
10. Sorry, but what you say doesn't any sense.
 a. rise b. make c. get d. take

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
aware	علي علم - مُنْزَك well informed - knowledgeable - conscious of - acquainted with -informed about /of
basic	أساسي - محوري fundamental - primary - principal - chief
formal	رسمي official - legal - authorized - licensed - documented
include	يُضْمَن - يضيف involve - take in - add - insert
interest (n)	انتباه - تشويق attentiveness
interest (n)	اهتمام - مراعاة concern
interest (n)	هواية hobby
interest (v)	يشير اهتمام - يُشَوِّق be of interest to - appeal to - attract - fascinate
necessarily	حتماً - بالضرورة as a direct result - inevitably

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
aware	unaware - ignorant
basic	secondary - trivial - unimportant
comfortable	uncomfortable
formal	informal
include	exclude - leave out - omit
interest (n)	boredom
misunderstand	understand - grasp
necessarily	possibly - not necessarily
prefix	suffix

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "He wasn't included in the team's list because he was unfit." In this sentence, the verb 'included' can be replaced by
 a. excluded b. left out c. a & b d. involved
- "He didn't like the way I talked to him, so he refused to include my name in his group." The verb 'include' is antonymous with
 a. exclude b. leave out c. a & b d. involve
- "A good citizen is aware of the dangers that threaten their country." The adjective 'aware' here can be replaced by
 a. conscious b. unconscious c. ignorant d. b & c
- "I was aware of the dangerous situation you were in." The word 'aware' in this sentence gives an antonymous meaning to
 a. conscious b. unconscious c. ignorant d. b & c
- "The smile on her face does not necessarily mean she has no problems." We can use the adverb instead of 'necessarily' in this sentence.
 a. impossibly b. inevitably c. recently d. really

6. "He doesn't take in what you want to say." The phrasal verb "take in" can be replaced by
 a. understands b. misunderstands c. realises d. a & c
7. "Include only the basic facts in the report." The adjective basic in this sentence is a synonym of
 a. trivial b. fundamental c. principal d. b & c
8. 'Formal' is to as 'interest' is to 'boredom'.
 a. official b. authorized c. legal d. informal
9. "Squash interests me." The verb "interests" is the synonym of
 a. of interest b. fascinate c. appeal d. interest
10. "Squash interests me." This means it to me.
 a. of interest b. fascinates c. appeals d. interests

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a 15-year-old daughter	ابنة تبلغ من العمر ١٥ عام	innovator with language	مبدع في اللغة
a blog post	منشور في مدونة	introduction paragraph	فقرة المقدمة
a guide to messaging	دليل المراسلة	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
all about	كل ما يخص	keep sentences short	يجعل الجمل قصيرة
as a response to	كرد على	laugh out loud (يقهقه)	يضحك بصوت عال
as soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن	messaging apps	تطبيقات المراسلة
at a different time	في وقت آخر	messaging language	لغة المراسلة
at least	على الأقل	negative advice	نصيحة سلبية
be aware of	علي وعي بـ	no longer able to	لم يعد قادراً على
be careful with	يحرص على	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
be friends with	يكون صداقة مع	on their phones	على هواتفهم المحمولة
be interested in	مهتم بـ	personal information	معلومات شخصية
be unkind to	يقسو على	positive advice	نصيحة ايجابية
be upset with	غضبان من	post a photo of herself	ترسل صورة لها
become known as	يصبح معروفاً كـ	rather than	بدلاً من - أفضل من
correct spelling	التهجي الصحيح	see you later	أراك لاحقاً
couldn't stop crying	لم يستطع أن يمنع نفسه من البكاء	stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
		text messaging language	لغة الرسائل النصية

different from / to	مختلف عن
does not necessarily mean	لا يعني بالضرورة أن
since = ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
face to face	وجهاً لوجه
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه
form of communication	أحد طرق التواصل
formal English	اللغة الإنجليزية الرسمية
fun to use	ممتع في استخدامه
in general	بصفة عامة
in response to	رداً على

the findings of a survey	نتائج دراسة استطلاعية
the negative side of	الجانب السلبي لـ
the rest of	بقية
use ... positively	يستخدم ... بشكل إيجابي
use first and third person	يستخدم ضمير المتكلم / الغائب
What's up?	ماذا لديك ؟ / ما الجديد ؟
whether ... or not	سواء ... أم لا
worried about	قلق على

5 Verb + Preposition

advise ... to / not to	ينصح ... أن / ألا	learn about	يتعلم عن
agree with	يتفق مع	order ... to / not to	يأمر ... أن / ألا
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	put ... down	يترك
ask ... to / not to	يطلب من ... أن / ألا	refer back to	يشير إلى
change ... into	يغير ... إلى	reply to	يرد على
chat with	يدردش مع	speak to	يتحدث إلى
come / go back	يعود	start with	يبدأ بـ
come from	يأتي من	take ... away	يُبعد
continue (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يستمر في أن	tell ... to / not to	يخبر ... أن / ألا
encourage ... to / not to	يشجع ... أن / ألا	waiting for ... to	ينتظر ... لكي
		warn ... to / not to	يُنذِر ... أن / ألا

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I'm in a hurry. Please, reply to me as as possible.
a. far b. soon c. long d. tall
- My father warned me avoid bad company. الصُحبة
a. that b. so that c. to d. not to

3. My father warned me keep that bad company. الصُّحْبَة
 a. that b. so that c. to d. not to
4. This bike is different the one we saw yesterday.
 a. from b. to c. a & b d. with
5. I asked my little daughter to take her toys from the kitchen.
 a. up b. away c. to d. after
6. I hope you will in touch with us all.
 a. keep b. stay c. sit d. a & b
7. I agree what you have suggested.
 a. with b. that c. by d. at
8. He is old now. He longer has energy to fight as a boxer.
 a. any b. no c. much d. a bit
9. It continued for nearly three days non-stop.
 a. to rain b. raining c. a & b d. to raining
10. He left last Friday morning. I haven't heard from him
 a. never b. ever since c. since d. b & c

6 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
abbreviate (d) يختصر	abbreviation اختصار	abbreviated مُختَصَر	
blog (ged) يُدوّن	blog مُدوّنَة (على الإنترنت) blogger مُدوّن		
communicate (d) يتصل - يتواصل	communication اتصال - تواصل communicator مُفَوّه - بليغ	communicative مُفَوّه - يجيد التواصل	
conclude(d) يستنتج - يُخلص إلى	conclusion خلاصة - خاتمة	concluding ختامي	
	linguist خبير لغة - عالم لغة linguistics (علم) اللغويات	linguistical لغوي	linguistically لغوياً
necessitate (d) يستلزم / يتطلب	necessity الضرورة	necessary ضروري	necessarily بالضرورة - حتماً

Mini Test 4 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Do you think it is a that I am in uniform?
a. necessitate b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily
- Do you think it is that I am in uniform?
a. necessitate b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily
- Playing a full match being fit.
a. necessitates b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily
- 'Doctor' is to 'Dr'.
a. abbreviated b. abbreviation c. linguist d. linguistics
- Text is easier on a smartphone than on a traditional mobile phone.
a. messages b. messaging c. concludes d. conclusion
- He a number of young people from different countries.
a. messages b. messaging c. concludes d. conclusion
- He finds it difficult to find suitable words to his ideas and feelings.
a. communicable b. communication
c. communicate d. communicates
- He finds the of his ideas and feelings very difficult.
a. communicable b. communication
c. communicate d. communicates

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

abbreviation - acronym

• abbreviation

اختصار الكلمة / عبارة

Word / Expression	abbreviation	Meaning
tomorrow	2moro	غداً
Great!	Gr8	عظيم!
Please	plz	من فضلك
thank you	thx	أشكرك

• acronym (n)

اختصار لعبارة مكون من الأحرف الأولى لكل كلمة

Word / Expression	Acronym	Meaning
as soon as possible	ASAP	بأسرع ما يمكن
see you later	c u l8r	أراك لاحقاً
I don't know	idk	لست أدري
laugh out loud	LOL	تضحك بصوت عال

لاحظ أن كلمة (abbreviation) قد تستخدم أحياناً لتؤدى معنى (acronym).

photo - selfie

• photo = photograph

صورة بالكاميرا (يلتقطها شخص لآخر / آخرين)

ex. - You have to attach your **photo** to the form. استمارة

• selfie

صورة بالكاميرا (يلتقطها شخص لنفسه بمفرده أو لآخرين معه)

ex. - I don't like the **selfie** I have just taken. I'll take another one.

diary - blog

• diary = journal

مذكرة / مفكرة ورقية (يكتب فيها الشخص يومياته)

ex. - Some people think that it is old-fashioned to keep a **diary**.- I enjoy reading my grandfather's **diary**.

• blog = weblog

مدونة على الإنترنت (لآراء شخص معين أو تختص بموضوع معين)

ex. - On my **blog**, I usually post wise sayings. أقوال مأثورة.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Please, be careful when you take this It will be put on my university ID.

- a. selfie b. painting c. photo d. a & c

2. My mobile has hundreds of of me with my friends.

- a. selfies b. paintings c. photos d. a & c

3. I lost my in the fire.

- a. diary b. dairy c. blog d. a & b

4. I enjoy reading the comments on my posts.

- a. diary b. dairy c. blog d. a & b

5. "Plz" is for 'please'.
- a. the abbreviation b. short
c. an acronym d. a & b
6. "SOS" is a / an of "Save our Souls".
- a. abbreviated b. short c. acronym d. a & b
7. Which of the following is more of an abbreviation?
- a. NATO b. AIDZ c. Gr8 d. a & b
8. Which of the following is more of an acronym?
- a. NATO b. AIDZ c. Gr8 d. a & b

Part III Just for Advanced Level

المستويات العليا

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

تنويه

abbreviation

- **abbreviate (d) = shorten (ed) (v)**

يختصر (كلمة أو عبارة)

ex. - Arab Republic of Egypt is **abbreviated** to ARE.

- **abbreviated (adj)**

مختصر

ex. - The minister gave an **abbreviated** speech. خطبة

- **abbreviation (n)**

اختصار

ex. - WHO is the **abbreviation** of "World Health Organisation". منظمة الصحة العالمية.

لاحظ أن:

- **be the abbreviation of / for = be short for**

اختصار لـ

ex. - IT is **the abbreviation of / for** 'Information Technology'.
= IT is **short for** 'Information Technology'.

communicate - communication

- **communicate (d) (with) (v)**

يتواصل (مع)

ex. - We can **communicate with** people all over the world through social media.

- He has a special ability to communicate well in writing, not orally. شفهيًا

لأظ أن:

- **communicate + شخص + to + شيء**

ex. - Mr Ayman **communicated** the good news **to** the staff of the office. ينقل رسالة / يبلغ ... ل ...

- **communicate (d) (v)**

ex. - Rokaya **communicated** her anger by leaving the room. يعبر عن

- **communicate (d) (v)**

ex. - Our manager's confidence is automatically **communicated** to us. ينقل (بالإيحاء) - يغذي

مما سبق يتضح الفرق بين:

- **communicate with**

ex. - Modern technology help us to **communicate with** other people easily. يتواصل مع / يتصل به

- **communicate ... to**

ex. - We will be able to **communicate** messages **to** other people that we know. ينقل إلى / يوصل إلى

- **communication (n)**

ex. - Your **communication** skills help you succeed at work. التواصل - الاتصال

لأظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **a channel / a means / form / method / system of communication**

وسيلة أو قناة اتصال / نظام تواصل

ex. - The most common **channels of communication** used by online businesses are email, newsletters and live chat.

- **communications (n)**

وسائل التواصل أو الاتصال

كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت و الراديو و التلفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية ، وبهذا المعنى فهي جمع دائما:

ex. - Modern **communications** help us learn and work from home.

- **communicable (adj)**

مُعدي (مرض)

ex. - Flu is a **communicable** disease.

message

- **message (n)**

رسالة

ex. - I sent you a **message** with the information you need.

لأظ أن:

- a message from رسالة من

- a message for رسالة ل

- **message (n)**

مغزي / درس مستفاد

ex. - The **message** of the film is that old people need special care.

- **get the message**
- When his expression changed, I knew that he **got the message**.
يراسل (عبر الرسائل النصية وغيرها على وسائل التواصل)
- **message (d) (v)**
- She **messages** a lot of people from different countries.
التراسل / التواصل بالرسائل الالكترونية
- **messaging (n)**
- Smartphones have made **messaging** easier.

tone

- **tone (n)**
- I miss my grandmother's kind **tone**.
- She doesn't like you to speak to her in a sharp **tone**.
نبرة الصوت (تدل على مشاعر المتكلم)
- **tone (d) / tone up (v)**
- This exercise will **tone** your arm muscles.
بشد - يقوي
- **tone ... down (phr. v)**
- Don't be cruel. Try to **tone** your speech **down**.
يلطف - يخفف حدة
يخفف حدة الحديث. Try to **tone** your speech **down** قاسي.
- **tone (n)**
- The essay is sharp in **tone**.
اسلوب / طابع / وقع
(بمعنى ان المقال ذو طابع حاد)

1 مقاطع بادئة Prefixes

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
mis-	happens in the wrong way يسىء / لا يُحسن	understand يفهم use يستخدم misunderstand يفهم misuse يسىء استخدام
re-	happens again يعيد / مرة أخرى	use يستخدم do يفعل write يكتب reuse يعيد استخدام redo يعيد فعل rewrite يعيد كتابة
un-	gives a word the opposite meaning تعطي عكس الكلمة	like مثل do يفعل comfortable مريح changed متغير unlike على عكس undo يلغي / يبطل uncomfortable تنعب unchanged ثابت / كما هو

2 مقاطع ناهية Suffixes

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-able	means possible ممكّن / قابل لـ	read change recognise	يقرأ تغيّر يتعرّف عليّ readable changeable recognisable يمكن قراءته قابل للتغيّر يُمكن التعرف عليه
-er	makes the noun for a person تعطي اسم الشخص	do write use care speak	يفعل يكتب يستخدم يرعى يتحدث doer writer user carer speaker فاعل كاتب مستخدم ممرضة منزلية متحدث
-less	means without بدون / ينقصه	care use end power	رعاية استخدام نهاية قوة careless useless endless powerless مهمل بدون فائدة بلا نهاية ضعيف / واهن

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح ▶

✱ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "He looked with interest at the advertisement." This means the advertisement to him.
a. appealed b. interested c. bored d. concerned
- He left last Friday morning. I haven't heard from him since.
a. never b. ever c. no word d. b & c
- Social media are responsible for the explosion of that threaten formal language.
a. introduction b. abbreviations c. communication d. selfies
- Through crying, babies manage to their needs to us.
a. email b. post c. communicate d. connect
- 'Crime does not pay' is the clear of the film.
a. message b. innovation c. abbreviation d. introduction

6. My father examples of my friends who have got the full mark in the exam I have failed.
 a. commented b. reacted c. cited d. connected
7. This disease is It can easily pass from one person to another.
 a. controlled b. messaging c. immune d. communicable
8. He has just me the news.
 a. messaged b. massaged c. frowned d. connected
9. He is a simple-minded person. I don't think he will this complex message.
 a. leave b. get c. give d. a & c
10. You can your worry to the children without realizing it.
 a. connect b. communicate c. receive d. check



No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (appeal to) يعني (يروق له / يعجبه / يجذب انتباهه) - لا يمكن استخدام (b / c / d) قبل (to + obj.)
2.	d	- يمكن استخدام (since) بمفردها بنفس معنى (ever since)
3.	b	كلمة (abbreviations) هي الاختيار المنطقي حسب مضمون الجملة
4.	c	- الفعل (communicate to) هنا يعني (يعبر عن / يوصل)
5.	a	- كلمة (message) هنا تعني (مَغْزِي / درس مُستفاد)
6.	c	- الفعل (cite) هنا يعني (يذكر)
7.	d	- الصفة (communicable) تعني (مُعْدي)
8.	a	- الفعل (messaged) بمعنى (أرسل) هو الاختيار المنطقي حسب سياق الجملة
9.	b	- التعبير (get the message) هنا يعني (يفهم المقصود من / يُدرك المغزى المقصود من)
10.	b	- الفعل (communicate) هنا يعني (ينقل / يوحى بـ)

Part IV Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Text Messaging

(58 page 43)

Plz read this **article**⁽¹⁾ ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u  it! 


For any readers who can't understand the language of **text**⁽²⁾ **messaging**⁽³⁾, the translation is: Please, read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مقال
- (2) نص
- (3) الرسائل
- (4) اختصارات
- (5) رموز تعبيرية
- (6) التواصل
- (7) يتطلب
- (8) صحيح
- (9) التهجي
- (10) علامات الترقيم
- (11) يظهر
- (12) مناسب
- (13) رسمي
- (14) مُراهقين
- (15) لم يعد

In text messages, **abbreviations**⁽⁴⁾ **emojis**⁽⁵⁾ and numbers are all used to make **communication**⁽⁶⁾ quicker. The language of text messages doesn't **require**⁽⁷⁾ **correct**⁽⁸⁾ **spelling**⁽⁹⁾ or difficult grammar and **punctuation**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Messaging language is **appearing**⁽¹¹⁾ in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis . Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!!!!

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't **suitable**⁽¹²⁾ in **formal**⁽¹³⁾ emails. And now teachers are worried that some **teenagers**⁽¹⁴⁾ are **no longer**⁽¹⁵⁾ able to speak or write using English correctly.

However, some linguists⁽¹⁶⁾ suggest that the people who use messaging language are actually⁽¹⁷⁾ language innovators,⁽¹⁸⁾ introducing⁽¹⁹⁾ new ideas into English. They argue⁽²⁰⁾ that messaging language is quick, short and communicates⁽²¹⁾ a lot in a small space.⁽²²⁾

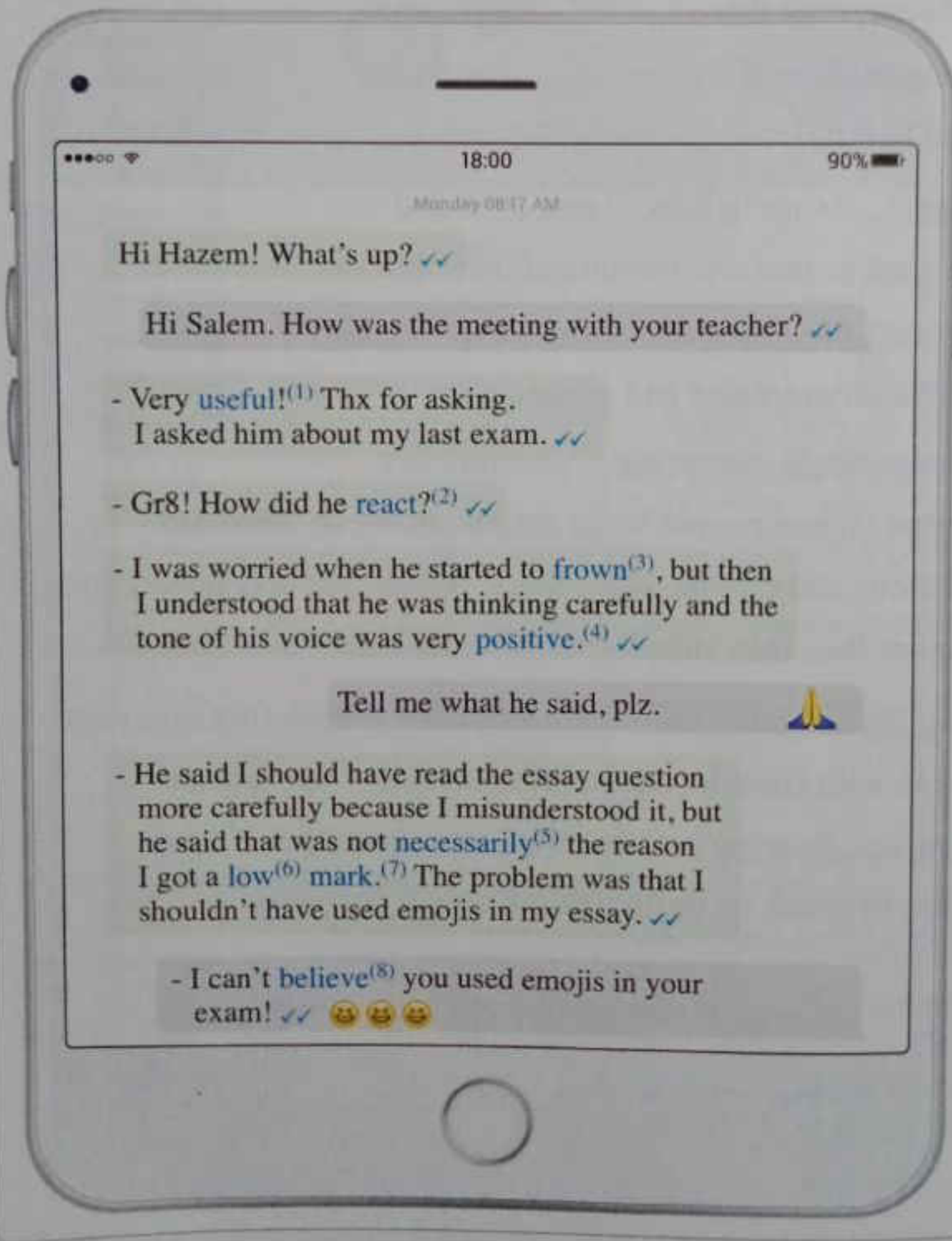
Whether⁽²³⁾ or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic⁽²⁴⁾ abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

- (16) اللغويون
(17) في الحقيقة
(18) مبتكرين
(19) يقدم - يطرح
(20) يجادل - يزعم
(21) يصل - يوصل
(22) مساحة
(23) سواء
(24) أساسي

(WB page 25)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مفيد
(2) يتصرف
(3) يعكس
(4) إيجابي
(5) بالضرورة
(6) منقوص
(7) درجة
(8) يُصدق



Hi Hamdi, I had so much fun this morning !

(WB page 24)

laugh out loud LOL. I was on TV, talking about tech, and I warned⁽¹⁾ people not to open any strange⁽²⁾ emails. It was great (gr8) ! They asked me to go back next week! I'll see you later (cu 18r) and I will tell you all about it.

Khalid

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يحذر
- (2) غريب
- (3) أنا مسرور جدًا
- (4) معلومات شخصية
- (5) يحضر

Hey Nadia, thanks (thx) for your help ! I'm so glad⁽³⁾ you advised me to change the photos on my blog. I don't know (idk) what I was thinking! My dad warned me not to post personal information⁽⁴⁾, but I didn't think about the photos. I'll change them as soon as possible (ASAP).

Judy

Yasser, why didn't you tell me that you can't find my book? I asked you to look after it. Can you please (PIZ) look for it again and bring⁽⁵⁾ it to school tomorrow (2 moro)?

Medhat

Nihal, aged⁽¹⁾ 16

(WB page 25)

A new girl has started at our school and I wanted to be friends with⁽²⁾ her. I spoke to her in the playground⁽³⁾ and we took a selfie⁽⁴⁾ together. That afternoon I posted it online,⁽⁵⁾ but she didn't like the photo and the next day at school she didn't speak to me. What did I do wrong?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بالغ من العمر
- (2) يكون صداقة مع
- (3) ملعب
- (4) صورة شخصية
- (5) على الإنترنت
- (6) يرسل
- (7) يهتم - يبالى

Adam, aged 17

Last week, my friend sent me a text message to say that he was unhappy because he had failed⁽⁶⁾ a test at school. It was late and I didn't know what to say, so I decided to reply in the morning. But then too many things happened in the morning and I forgot. Now he thinks that I don't care.⁽⁷⁾ What should I have done?

Shakespeare and the English language (SB page 46)

Language is always changing, and new words are **created**⁽¹⁾ all the time. We need new words to **describe**⁽²⁾ new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُبتكر
- (2) يصف
- (3) صورة شخصية
- (4) يزيل
- (5) عبارة
- (6) مبتكر
- (7) يربط
- (8) مقاطع بادئة
- (9) مقاطع ناهية
- (10) غير مريح
- (11) مريح
- (12) يبدو

But, when everyone started doing it, the word '**selfie**'⁽³⁾ became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they **remove**⁽⁴⁾ words and **phrases**⁽⁵⁾ that we don't use anymore.

Shakespeare was a great **innovator**⁽⁶⁾ with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and **connecting**⁽⁷⁾ words to make new words. He also added **prefixes**⁽⁸⁾ and **suffixes**⁽⁹⁾, for example, he created '**uncomfortable**'⁽¹⁰⁾ from '**comfortable**'⁽¹¹⁾.

Today the language that Shakespeare used can **sound**⁽¹²⁾ difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Endless change التغير المستمر

(WB page 26)

The Romans spoke a language called **Latin**⁽¹⁾ and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from **Germany**⁽²⁾ when people called Angles and Saxons arrived about 500 years later. Soon the Land of the Angles became known as England and the English have been using and **misusing**⁽³⁾ **foreign**⁽⁴⁾ words **ever since**⁽⁵⁾.

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from Old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the **French**⁽⁶⁾ who arrived in 1066.

Unlike⁽⁷⁾ the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with **similar**⁽⁸⁾ meanings. French words are **recognisable**⁽⁹⁾ because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a **mansion**⁽¹⁰⁾ which is a French word.

In the modern **age**⁽¹¹⁾ we often **reuse**⁽¹²⁾ old words from the past to make new **international**⁽¹³⁾ words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter is **Greek**⁽¹⁴⁾ and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a **Russian**⁽¹⁵⁾ **speaker**⁽¹⁶⁾ living in America.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) اللغة اللاتينية
- (2) دولة ألمانيا
- (3) يسيء استخدام
- (4) أجنبي
- (5) منذ ذلك الحين
- (6) اللغة الفرنسية
- (7) على عكس
- (8) متشابه
- (9) يسهل التعرف عليه
- (10) قصر (سراي)
- (11) عصر
- (12) يعيد استخدام
- (13) دولي
- (14) يوناني
- (15) روسي
- (16) متحدث

Emoji Fun !

(SB page 47)

Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of emojis. This is confusing because our grandparents think the messages are from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis **rather than**⁽¹⁾ **proper**⁽²⁾ words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can **receive**⁽³⁾ and read **replies**⁽⁴⁾ which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel **special**⁽⁵⁾ and they will want to communicate more. So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بدلاً من
- (2) مناسب
- (3) يتسلم
- (4) ردود
- (5) مميز

A summary of a survey into social media use

(WB page 27)

Introduction

The **aim**⁽¹⁾ of this report is to **summarise**⁽²⁾ the **findings**⁽³⁾ of the **survey**⁽⁴⁾ into the time students spend using **social media**.⁽⁵⁾

Procedure

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and **disliked**⁽⁶⁾ about using it. We **recorded**⁽⁷⁾ our **results**⁽⁸⁾ and **compared**⁽⁹⁾ them.

Findings

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) هدف
- (2) يلخص
- (3) نتائج
- (4) بحث استطلاعي
- (5) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- (6) يكره
- (7) يسجل
- (8) نتائج
- (9) يقارن

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that at least one **member**⁽¹⁰⁾ of their family had made a negative **comment**⁽¹¹⁾ about it.

However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it.

Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to **keep in touch with**⁽¹²⁾ their friends, and to follow their **interests**⁽¹³⁾ or **hobbies**⁽¹⁴⁾.

Conclusion

In general, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

- (10) عضو
(11) تعليق
(12) يبقى على تواصل مع
(13) اهتمامات
(14) هوايات

2 Listening Texts



Messaging

(SB page 44)

Presenter: Hello everyone, thanks for **joining**⁽¹⁾ me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about **messaging**⁽²⁾. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy.

She is the **author**⁽³⁾ of the book "A Guide to Messaging" which **encourages**⁽⁴⁾ us to use messaging **positively**⁽⁵⁾. Welcome to the programme, Dr Magda.

Dr Magda: Thank you. It's **lovely**⁽⁶⁾ to be here.

Presenter: So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very **upset**⁽⁷⁾. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually she **admitted**⁽⁸⁾ that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out **loud**⁽⁹⁾ - in **response**⁽¹⁰⁾ to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) ينضم
(2) التراسل - المراسلة
(3) مؤلف
(4) يشجع
(5) بشكل إيجابي
(6) رائع
(7) منزعج
(8) أقر - اعترف
(9) بصوت عال
(10) رد

She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda: This is a good example of why we need to be aware of ⁽¹¹⁾ the advantages ⁽¹²⁾ and disadvantages ⁽¹³⁾ of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter: Because messaging is different to speaking face - to - face, isn't it?

Dr Magda: Exactly! Sometimes face - to - face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. ⁽¹⁴⁾ And this is basically ⁽¹⁵⁾ because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she smiling ⁽¹⁶⁾ or frowning? ⁽¹⁷⁾ And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a joke ⁽¹⁸⁾?

Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements ⁽¹⁹⁾. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice ⁽²⁰⁾ all these things; facial ⁽²¹⁾ expressions, ⁽²²⁾ body movements and the tone of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand ⁽²³⁾ what the other person is trying to communicate. ⁽²⁴⁾

Presenter: So, that's the negative ⁽²⁵⁾ side ⁽²⁶⁾ of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda: Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with ⁽²⁷⁾ friends, but remember that messaging is designed ⁽²⁸⁾ to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations, ⁽²⁹⁾ and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation ⁽³⁰⁾ or acronym ⁽³¹⁾ as a response to your message.

Check Vocabulary

- (11) علي علم - مُدْرِك
- (12) مزايا
- (13) عيوب
- (14) مُخَيَّر - مُزِيك
- (15) أساساً
- (16) مَبْتَسِم
- (17) عَابِس
- (18) مَزْحَة (نَكْتَة)
- (19) حَرَكَات
- (20) يَلَاحِظ
- (21) وَجْهِي
- (22) تَعْبِيرَات
- (23) يَسْئَلُ فَهْم
- (24) يَتَوَاصَل
- (25) سَلْبِي
- (26) جَانِب
- (27) عَلِي اتِّصَال بـ
- (28) مُصْصَم
- (29) حَوَار
- (30) اِخْتِصَار
- (31) اِخْتِصَار بِالْحُرُوفِ الْأُولَى

Presenter: So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda: Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an **immediate**⁽³²⁾ reply does not **necessarily**⁽³³⁾ mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said 'Can I call you?'

(32) فوري

(33) بالضرورة

(34) تقليدي

(35) تماماً

Presenter: So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more **traditional**⁽³⁴⁾ communication is important.

Dr Magda: I am! **Absolutely**⁽³⁵⁾ Messaging is one form of communication not the only form of communication.

Presenter: Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme...

Tips on writing a blog post

(SB page 47)

Speaker 1 :

Tips on how to write a successful **blog post**⁽¹⁾

1. Start with your **topic**⁽²⁾. Think about what will interest and **inform**⁽³⁾ your reader.
2. Start with a **headline**⁽⁴⁾ for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a **suitable**⁽⁵⁾ photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the **sections**⁽⁶⁾ of your blog. Add a **sub-heading**⁽⁷⁾ for each section/new point.
5. Write your **introduction paragraph**⁽⁸⁾. Be **clear**⁽⁹⁾ what the **purpose**⁽¹⁰⁾ of this blog post is. Speak to the reader - use first and third person. Include a question.

Check Vocabulary

(1) منشور المدونة

(2) الموضوع

(3) يخبر - يُعلم

(4) عنوان رئيسي

(5) مناسب

(6) أقسام

(7) عنوان فرعي

(8) فقرة تقديمية

(9) كن واضحاً

(10) غرض / هدف

6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. Write a **conclusion**⁽¹¹⁾. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself" use "we".
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too **frequently**⁽¹²⁾. Use an online **thesaurus**⁽¹³⁾ to **avoid**⁽¹⁴⁾ repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it **make sense**⁽¹⁵⁾ to them?
10. **Cite**⁽¹⁶⁾ all your sources of information.

- (11) خاتمة
(12) مرارًا وتكرارًا
(13) معجم المترادفات
(14) يتجنب
(15) تعطى معنى
(16) يستشهد بـ

3 Video script section

(58 page 43)

Smartphones are changing the **way**⁽¹⁾ we choose to **communicate** **with**⁽²⁾ each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to **make** **phone calls**⁽³⁾. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can **keep in contact with**⁽⁴⁾ friends, make and **check** **arrangements**⁽⁵⁾, send photos, ask questions and receive answers **within seconds**⁽⁶⁾.

Messaging is now more popular than emails, **especially**⁽⁷⁾ between friends and family. Messaging **increased by**⁽⁸⁾ 7000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still **rising**⁽⁹⁾. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that **teenagers**⁽¹⁰⁾ send more than most **adults**⁽¹¹⁾.

Staying in contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation or spending time with someone : that's important too.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) طريقة
(2) يتواصل مع
(3) بحري مكالمات تليفونية
(4) يبقى على اتصال مع
(5) مع / يتحقق من الترتيبات
(6) في خلال ثوان
(7) على وجه الخصوص / خاصة
(8) يزداد بمقدار
(9) يزداد / يرتفع
(10) مراهقين
(11) بالغون سن الرشد

Part V Language

Part 1: Reporting orders, requests and advice

تحويل جمل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى الكلام غير المباشر

تبدأ جملة الأمر المثبت (افعل) بالفعل في المصدر (inf.):

ex. - "Help your mother, Yara", said Father. (مباشر)
= Father said, "Help your mother, Yara". (مباشر)
- Father asked Yara to help her mother. (غير مباشر)

تبدأ جملة النهي (لا تفعل) بـ (Don't / Never + inf.) :

ex. - "Don't leave children alone, Azza", said Noha. (مباشر)
= Noha said, "Don't leave children alone, Azza". (مباشر)
- Noha warned Azza not to leave children alone. (غير مباشر)

تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من :

باقي الجملة + ... المصدر inf. → to / not to → مخاطب → فعل ابلاغ → مَبْلَغ +

Father	asked	Yara	to	help her mother.
Noha	warned	Azza	not to	leave children alone.

يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب بعد المُبَيِّغ (المتكلم)، مثل :

- أمر - commanded - أمر - ordered - طلب - asked - أخبر / قال - told
- شجّع - encouraged - نصح - advised - حذر - warned - ذكر - reminded
- علم - taught - أراد - wanted - دعى - invited - أمر - instructed
.....المُخَاطَب + obj. هدد - threatened - توقع - expected

والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول (me – him – her – it – you – us – them) :

ex. - Nader **told Salma** to study hard.
- I **advised her** to be more serious.

تُستخدم (to + inf.) بعد المُخاطَب بمعنى (أن) :

ex. - He told me **to exercise** more.

تستخدم (not to + inf.) بمعنى (ألا ...) في صيغة النفي :

ex. - Areej asked him **not to shout** at her.

تتحول الضمان حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب :

ex. - Omar said, "Give **me your** opinion, Sara". (مباشر)
- Omar asked Sara to give **him her** opinion. (غير مباشر)

يتم حذف (excuse me - pardon me - please ...) وما شابه :

- ex. - "Help your mother, please," said my father.
- My father asked me to help my mother.

يمكن تحويل جملة الطلب التي تكون على هيئة سؤال بنفس الطريقة السابقة -
للحظ الأمثلة التالية :

- ex. - "Can you help me, Omar?" said Ali.
= Ali asked Omar to help him.
- "Could you lend me 10 pounds?" I said to Areej.
= I asked Areej to lend me 10 pounds.

يمكن تحويل جملة الطلب التي تكون على هيئة سؤال بنفس طريقة تحويل (Yes / No Questions) كالتالي :

Speaker + asked / inquired ... + if / whether + subj. ...

- ex. - "Can you help me, Omar?" said Ali.
= Ali asked Omar if he could help him.
- "Could you lend me 10 pounds?" I said to Areej.
= I asked Areej if / whether she could lend me 10 pounds.

في حالة وجود جملة بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات التالية يكون فعلها (inf. / should + inf.) :
... يطلب ask - ينصح advise - يصمم insist - يوصي بـ recommend - يقترح suggest -

It + be + (important ... - ضروري essential / crucial - ضروري vital)

- ex. - I asked that Sama get / should get ready.
- Rodayna suggested that I be / should be in charge of the project.
- It is important that Ashraf follow / should follow a diet.

يمكنك الإطلاع على الشرح التفصيلي للكلام غير المباشر بالكامل
من كتاب Skill builder الملحق بكتاب المعاصر.

تنويه

Mini Test 1

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "..... silence in the library, please," I said to Aya.
a. Keep b. To keep c. Kept d. Not to keep
- I asked Aya silence in the library.
a. keep b. to keep c. kept d. not to keep
- I asked Aya noise in the library.
a. make b. to make c. made d. not to make
- Mum Rahma to study hard.
a. asked b. said c. advised d. a & c
- Rodayna asked to show her how to prepare for a job interview.
a. I b. my c. me d. mine

6. "Do you mind if I use your calculator?"

- I asked Nada to use my calculator.
- I asked Nada whether she minds if I use her calculator.
- I asked Nada to let me use her calculator.
- b & c

Part 2: should have – could have

1 should - should have

1 should / shouldn't + inf. يجب أن / ينبغي أن

تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) للإعطاء النصيحة :

should / shouldn't + inf.

يجب / ينبغي أن / ألا

- ex. - You look very tired. You **should take** some rest. You **shouldn't work** more today.
- You **shouldn't eat** so much fast food. It's not good for you.

تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) لطلب النصيحة :

- ex. - What **should I see** while I'm in Aswan ?
- **Should Fady tell** his boss about the lost file ?

وتُستخدم (should + inf.) لتقديم اقتراحات (suggestion) أو عمل توصيات (recommendation) :

- ex. - You **should try** the fish in this restaurant. It is great.
- You **should get** a map of Cairo before you go there.

تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الرأي الشخصي :

- ex. - Sama **should study** engineering. She is very clever at maths.

تُستخدم (should – ought to) كأفعال ناقصة للتعبير عن الإلزام بشكل مهذب :

should / ought to + inf.

يجب / ينبغي أن

- ex. - You **should do** everything possible to help your parents.
- = - You **ought to** do everything possible to help your parents.
- You **shouldn't** play loud music in your room at night.
- Guests **should** leave their hotel rooms by 10 am on the morning of their departure.
- She **should not** be here; it's for employees only.
- في التعليمات الرسمية تُستخدم (should + inf.) فقط وليس (ought to + inf.) :
- ex. - Students **should be** prepared to take exams on their tablets.
- Travellers **should be** in the airport two hours before takeoff.
- في الأمثلة السابقة يمكن استخدام (must) لكن (should) تجعل أسلوب التعليمات أقل حدة

نستخدم (should / shouldn't) بعد (why) للاستفسار عن سبب الإلزام :

Why should + subj. + inf. ... ?

- ex. - Why should I have to pay for the repairs ?
- Why shouldn't we ask questions during the meeting ?

للحظ الفرق بين (should / ought to + inf.) و (must + inf.) و (have to + inf.) :

١. تعبر (should / ought to + inf.) عن إلزام أو واجب يفرضه الضمير أو الذوق العام :

ex. - You should write accurate data in the form.

في المثال السابق: بالرغم من أن كتابة البيانات الصحيحة يمثل ضرورة، إلا أن استخدام (should) يجعلنا نفهم أن المتحدث ليس له سلطة أو نفوذ على المُخاطَب لكي يلزمه بكتابة البيانات الصحيحة.

ex. - They shouldn't allow parking here. The street is too narrow.

٢. تُستخدم (must / mustn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام عندما يكون المتحدث له سلطة أو نفوذ يُمكنه من إلزام الفاعل بالقيام بالفعل أو عدم القيام به :

ex. - You must write accurate data in the form.

- They mustn't park here. It is a 'No Parking' area.

٣. تُستخدم (have to + inf.) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام عندما يكون الإلزام خارجي مفروض على الفاعل ولا يترك له اختيار :

ex. - I have to return the money before Monday.

(للمزيد عن (must / have to) يرجى مراجعة الوحدة الأولى)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He shouldn't on that wall. It's not safe.

- a. to sit b. sit c. sat d. sits

2. I help mum with the housework?

- a. Should b. Ought c. Ought to d. Should not

3. You play tennis. That's my suggestion.

- a. must b. mustn't c. should d. need

4. I think he pay for half the goods. That's just an opinion.

- a. ought to b. has to c. should d. a & c

5. A: come to work earlier tomorrow?

B: To check the preparations for the meeting.

- a. Why I should b. Why should I c. I should d. Should I

6. "You leave the office without my permission," said the manager.
 a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. oughtn't d. needn't
7. "You leave the office without permission," said my colleague.
 a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. could d. needn't

2 should be + (inf. + ing) الصيغة المستمرة

١ تتكون الصيغة المستمرة (continuous form) من:

ought to /should + be + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - Omar **should be travelling** to Cairo now but he missed the train.
 = Omar **is supposed to be travelling** to Cairo now but he missed the train.

٢ تشير هذه الصيغة إلى أن الفاعل لا يتصرف بالشكل الصحيح أو أنه لا يفعل ما هو مطلوب منه :

- ex. - Tarek **ought to be studying** for his exams. He **shouldn't be spending** all his time chatting online.
 - I **shouldn't be telling** you this. It's supposed to be a secret.

3 Should have + p.p. الصيغة التامة

١ تتكون الصيغة التامة (perfect form) من :

... ought to /should + have + p.p. ...

- ex. - I didn't expect the weather to be so cold in London. I **should have brought** my jacket. I **shouldn't have asked** my old mother to come with me. I **ought to have thought** well before I made that journey.

٢ وتتكون الصيغة التامة في المبنى للمجهول من:

... ought to /should + have been + p.p. ...

- ex. - The email **shouldn't have been read** by Nada. It wasn't sent to her.

٣ تستخدم (should have+ p.p.) في لوم أو انتقاد شخص على عدم فعل شيء كان من المفروض أن يفعله:

- ex. - Karim **should have cleaned** his room. (الكن لم يقم كريم بذلك)
 - Ahmed **should have paid** the bill. (الكن لم يدفع أحمد الفاتورة)

٤ تستخدم (shouldn't have+ p.p.) في لوم أو انتقاد شخص على فعل شيء كان من المفروض ألا يفعله :

- ex. - You **shouldn't have got up** so late. (الكنك استيقظت متأخراً بالفعل)
 - The Emergency Exit doors **shouldn't have been locked**. (الكن مخرج الطوارئ كان مغلقاً)

اللفظ : في اللغة المنطوقة يميل المتحدث الإنجليزي عادة إلى اختصار نطق (should have) فتبدو للسامع (shoulda) أو (should've).

4 (الطلبة الفائقين) should - be supposed to - be meant to

للحظ الفرق بين (should) و (be supposed to) و (be meant to) :

١. في حالات كثيرة يمكن استخدام (should - be supposed to - be meant to) بنفس المعنى تقريباً :

- ex. - He **should be** at home before midnight.
 - He **is meant to be** at home before midnight.
 - He **is supposed to be** at home before midnight.

٢. في حالة التعبير عن الواجب (duty) أو الإلزام (obligation) فإن هذه الصيغ تؤدي نفس المعنى في النفي فقط :

- ex. - You **shouldn't make** loud noise late at night.
 - You **aren't supposed to** make loud noise late at night.
 - You **aren't meant to make** loud noise late at night.

الشرح الكامل لـ (be supposed to) و (be meant to) في الوحدة الخامسة.

Mini Test 3

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You should be for the guests when they arrive.
 a. wait b. waited c. waiting d. to wait
- I don't know what you are doing here. You should the emails in your office at this moment.
 a. be typed b. be typing c. have typed d. to type
- Areej should have the email.
 a. to sent b. sent c. sends d. send
- You have arrived a bit earlier. The manager looked annoyed when you entered.
 a. should b. must c. ought to d. a & c
- Aya shouldn't the present. It wasn't sent to her.
 a. have been opened b. be opened
 c. have opened d. to open

6. The email shouldn't by Nada. It wasn't sent to her.
 a. have been opened b. be opened
 c. have opened d. to open
7. "You shouldn't have shouted at your sister." What does this mean?
 a. You didn't shout at her. b. You are meant to shout at her.
 c. You shouted at her. d. b & c
8. You should have driven more carefully. This means you
 a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't
9. You shouldn't have wasted your time. This means that you
 a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't
10. "Sorry, Sama. I shouldn't have shouted at you yesterday." The speaker expresses his / her
 a. regret b. happiness c. obligation d. pleasure

2 could - could have

1 could – couldn't + inf.

١ تُستخدم (could) للتعبير عن قدرة عامة في الماضي (مثل السباحة وقيادة السيارة والتحدث بلغة معينة ... إلخ) :

... could / couldn't + inf.

- ex. - She **could read** at the age of five.
 - I **couldn't swim** until the age of twelve.

٢ غالباً لا تُستخدم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء محدد في موقف معين في الماضي (past achievement)، لكن تُستخدم الصيغ التالية:

... was / were able to + inf.

كان قادراً على

- ex. - We **were able to arrive** home through traffic jam.

... managed to + inf.

تمكن أن

- ex. - I **managed to repair** my car.

... succeeded in + (inf. + ing)

نجح في أن

- ex. - I **succeeded in sending** that email after many attempts. محاولات

لكن تُستخدم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء محدد في موقف معين في الماضي (past achievement) مع أفعال الحواس والإدراك مثل :

... could + smell, taste, see, hear, touch, think, believe, remember, understand... etc.

- ex. - I knew they were at home. I **could hear** their voices inside.
- She spoke to me before, but I **couldn't remember** her name.
- The food was terrible. I **could taste** nothing but salt.

عند التعبير عن عدم القدرة أو عدم الإستطاعة في الماضي نستخدم :

couldn't + inf. = wasn't / weren't + able to + inf.

- ex. - I **couldn't understand** what he said.
= I **wasn't able to understand** what he said.

استخدامات أخرى لـ (could + inf.) :

1- Making suggestions :

تقديم الإقتراحات

Ali: What shall we do tonight? - We **could go** to the cinema.

2- Making requests :

تقديم الطلبات

ex. - **Could you open** that door, please ?

3- Asking for permission :

طلب الإذن

ex. - **Could I use** your office tomorrow ?

4- Expressing present / future possibility :

التعبير عن إمكانية حدوث شيء في المضارع أو المستقبل:

- ex. - He **could go** by bus. (= **Maybe he will go** by bus.)
- She **could be** at home. (= **Maybe she is** at home.)

Mini Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I found a course at my local college where I train as a teacher.
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
- I looked all over the house, but I find my phone.
a. couldn't b. wasn't able to c. managed to d. a & b
- "He could go there on his own if he wants." This is a
a. permission b. duty
c. past possibility d. future possibility

4. I able to solve the mystery. It was easy for me to do it.
 a. am b. was c. should be d. could be
5. They succeeded the problem with the tablet.
 a. to recognise b. to recognising
 c. in recognising d. a & c

2 could / couldn't be + (inf. + ing) الصيغة المستمرة

تستخدم الصيغة المستمرة لعمل استنتاج ضعيف لحدث مستمر في المضارع :

... could + be + (inf.+ing) ... = ... may/might + be + (inf.+ing) ...

ex. - I don't know what Aya **is** doing now. She **could be watching** TV.
 = I don't know what Aya **is** doing now. She **might be watching** TV.

تستخدم الصيغة المستمرة المنفية (**can't + be + inf. + ing**) كنفي لـ (**must**) لعمل استنتاج قوى منفي لحدث مستمر في المضارع :

... couldn't / can't + be + (inf.+ing) ... لا يمكن أن

ex. - I am sure Ali **is** at home now. He **couldn't be visiting** his uncle.
 = I am sure Ali **is** at home now. He **can't be visiting** his uncle.

3 could – couldn't + have + p.p. الصيغة التامة

لنلاحظ تكوين الصيغة التامة في المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول :

subj. + could + have + p.p. ... (مبني للمعلوم)

obj. + could + have + been + p.p. ... (مبني للمجهول)

ex. - He didn't call me. He **could have lost** his mobile.
 - He didn't call me. His mobile **could have been lost**.

- وتستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

يمكن أن تعبر (**could have + P.P.**) عن استنتاج ضعيف في الماضي :

... could + have + p.p. ... = may / might + have + p.p.

ex. - He **didn't visit** us for a long time. He **could have been** busy.
 - He **didn't visit** us for a long time. He **might have been** busy.

لكن لاحظ أن (couldn't have + p.p.) تعبر عن استنتاج قوى منفى فى الماضى :

... couldn't + have + p.p. ... = ... can't + have + p.p. ...

- Mr Ayman's passport is still in the office, so he couldn't (can't) have travelled abroad.

من غير الممكن أن يكون قد سافر وجواز سفره لا يزال فى المكتب.

وتستخدم (could have + P.P.) للتعبير عن حدث بديل (alternative possibility) -

أي حدث كان الفاعل يستطيع القيام به فى الماضى لكنه لم يفعل :

- Before you got this job, it was offered to me. I could have taken it but I thought you were better than me.

- فى المثال السابق: كان بإمكانى الحصول على وظيفتك قبل أن تأخذها فى الماضى لكننى لم أفعل وحصلت أنت عليها.

- I could have bought an iPhone instead of the Samsung.

- فى المثال السابق: كنت أستطيع شراء أيفون لكننى لم أفعل واشترت سامسونج بالفعل.

- She could have studied medicine but she chose to study business administration.

- فى المثال السابق: كان ممكنا فى الماضى أن تدرس الطب لكنها اختارت إدارة الأعمال.

وتستخدم (could have + p.p.) عند تخيل حدث أو موقف كان من الممكن حدوثه فى

الماضى لكنه لم يحدث :

- Moataz was driving at a mad speed. He could have killed us.

- كان يمكن أن يقتلنا بسبب السرعة لكن لم يحدث شيء والمتحدث فقط يتخيل شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه فى الماضى.

لاحظ : فى اللغة المنطوقة يميل المتحدث الإنجليزى عادة إلى اختصار نطق (could have) فتبدو للسامع :

- (could've) / (coulda) :

4 should have VS. could have

لاحظ الفرق بين (should have + p.p.) و (could have + p.p.) :

تستخدم (should have + p.p.) للإنتقاد القوى أو توجيه اللوم لشخص مُقَرَّب - لاحظ الحوار

التالى بين عادل ووالده :

Adel : I failed my exam because I didn't study hard.

Father : You should have studied hard.

تستخدم (could have + p.p.) للتعبير عن إمكانية لم تتحقق فى الماضى وهى أخف حدة من

(should) - لاحظ الحوار التالى بين عادل وزميله بالمدرسة :

Adel : I failed my exam because I didn't study hard.

Schoolmate : You could have studied hard but you didn't.

Mini Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He have gone to the city centre. He did say he wanted to go shopping.
a. can't b. could c. couldn't d. mightn't
- A: Their plane was delayed and they had to wait 20 hours in the airport.
B: They have been very happy with the airline.
a. must not b. couldn't c. must d. might
- They have been at the cafe but I didn't see them.
a. must b. can't c. couldn't d. could
- Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in London? You with your uncle.
a. could stay b. managed to stay
c. could have stayed d. should stay
- I travelled by train, but I by car.
a. might have travelled b. could travel
c. could have travelled d. can travel
- A: I failed my math class.
B: It was your fault. You Ann to help you with your math.
a. could ask b. should ask
c. may ask d. could have asked
- I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and you
a. may have killed b. must have been killed
c. could have been killed d. could have killed

Exercises On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- Ayman should have the problem with his staff.
a. to discuss b. discussed c. discussing d. discuss
- He is already late. He should the apples with other farmers on the field now.
a. be picking b. be picked c. have picked d. to pick
- Ola went to a healthcare centre where she get medical help.
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't

- 210

19. The prisoner escaping.
 a. could b. was able c. managed to d. succeeded in
20. My motorbike broke down in the middle of nowhere, but luckily I to fix it.
 a. could b. ought to c. should d. was able
21. I was feeling sick yesterday. I eat anything.
 a. can't b. couldn't c. am not able to d. wasn't able
22. She succeeded the puzzle.
 a. in doing b. to do c. did d. for doing
23. My father encouraged me accept that bad offer.
 a. whether b. that c. to d. not to
24. The teacher asked the children and listen before they crossed the road.
 a. not to look b. against looking c. about looking d. to look
25. I ordered her it that day or it would be too late.
 a. that send b. if she sent c. to send d. not to send
26. The assistant told me for the shirt over there.
 a. whether to pay b. if he pay c. to pay d. to have paid
27. The policeman instructed the drivers so fast.
 a. to drive b. not to drive c. drive d. that drives

2 Special cases

28. "You leave the school without my permission," said the head teacher.
 a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. could d. needn't
29. "You leave the school without permission," said my schoolmate.
 a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. could d. needn't
30. I pay the bill to get the internet service back.
 a. must b. have to c. should d. could
31. We be kind and helpful to our neighbours.
 a. mustn't b. have to c. should d. could
32. You have returned home so late. Your father was furious when you entered.
 a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. oughtn't d. a & c

33. Omar oughtn't the cake. It wasn't for him.
a. have been eaten b. be eaten
c. to have eaten d. eat
34. The cake shouldn't by Omar. It wasn't for him.
a. have been eaten b. be eaten
c. have eaten d. eat
35. They ought at the traffic lights. They were fined.
a. stop b. to stop
c. to have stopped d. to have been stopped
36. She should have used the knife more carefully. This means she
a. does b. doesn't c. did d. didn't
37. Amira shouldn't have eaten more rice. This means that she
a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't
38. You should have bought the computer when it on sale.
a. is b. was c. has d. had
39. I understand the lesson after you had explained the main points to me.
a. could b. was able to c. succeeded in d. a & b
40. "He could have gone there on his own if he
a. wants b. wanted c. has wanted d. will want
41. I don't know where Ahmed is. He could the horse.
a. feed b. have fed
c. have been fed d. be feeding
42. I didn't know where Ahmed was. He could to feed the horse.
a. go b. have gone
c. have been gone d. be gone
43. I here when I was young but I can't really remember.
a. could be b. could have been
c. should be d. should have been
44. I to the cinema, but I decided to watch a film on TV.
a. could go b. could be gone
c. could have gone d. should go
45. I thought I saw Ayman in the office that morning but it him.
He was in London that day.
a. can't be b. couldn't be
c. could have been d. couldn't have been

46. You destroyed the screen. You have read the instructions properly.
 a. couldn't b. can c. must d. mustn't
47. I had my mobile on the bus on my way home. It in the office.
 a. couldn't leave b. can't leave
 c. couldn't have been left d. couldn't have left
48. He suggested that we the film as it was great.
 a. see b. have seen c. sees d. seeing
49. My parents suggested exercise every day.
 a. me to do b. that I do c. me doing d. I have done
50. My friend me to be careful about fast cars when I crossed a busy street.
 a. reported b. suggested c. warned d. recommended
51. My father recommended a book about space technology.
 a. me read b. me reading c. to me read d. that I read

3 Check your understanding

52. "You shouldn't talk during the lesson." Who is the possible speaker?
 a. The teacher b. The head teacher
 c. A classmate d. a & b
53. "You mustn't talk during the lesson." Who is the possible speaker?
 a. The teacher b. The head teacher
 c. A classmate d. a & b
54. "You should be helping mum with the housework." This means
 a. You are already helping mum with the housework.
 b. You are supposed to be helping mum with the housework.
 c. You are meant to have helped mum with the housework.
 d. You don't have to help mum with the housework.
55. "We should be wearing seatbelts
 a. but we are wearing them.
 b. although we are wearing them.
 c. but we aren't wearing them.
 d. b & c

موقع
فيدوز
التعليمي

56. "Ashraf should have been careful with his money."
What does this mean ?
- Ashraf was careful with his money.
 - Ashraf isn't careful with his money.
 - Ashraf wasn't careless with his money.
 - Ashraf wasn't careful with his money.
57. "I should have studied for the test." The speaker expresses his / her
- happiness
 - obligation
 - regret
 - triumph
58. Which of the following choices is the most accurate?
- I could win the race.
 - I was able to win the race.
 - I managed to win the race.
 - b & c
59. Which of the following choices is / are correct?
- I couldn't win the race.
 - I wasn't able to win the race.
 - I managed in winning the race.
 - a & b
60. "He could operate the machine." This means
- he had the ability, so it was easy for him.
 - he didn't have the ability, so it was not easy for him.
 - he didn't have the ability, so he operated it by luck.
 - a & c
61. "He managed to operate the machine." This exactly means
- he succeeded in operating it.
 - he could operate it.
 - he couldn't operate it.
 - a & b

Advanced Exercise on Language

▶ التوجيه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We have discussed everything. Is there anything else we
concerned about?
- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| a. could have | b. should have |
| c. should be | d. ought to have |

2. The emergency notice over there reads: 'On hearing the fire alarm, workers leave the building.'
- a. should b. must c. a & b d. could
3. Ahmed has been studying hard. He do well on the test tomorrow.
- a. must b. should c. might d. has to
4. I wonder why Nada hasn't written to us. We have heard from her last week.
- a. can b. might c. should d. must
5. I'm surprised nobody told you how dangerous that road was. You have been warned.
- a. must b. should c. needn't d. may
6. A: He did badly in the exam. B: I feel sure he it.
- a. couldn't have passed b. isn't able to pass
c. succeed in passing d. can't pass
7. Had you not gone by car, you have arrived late.
- a. must b. can't c. should d. could
8. "You ought to have told him that the paint on that seat was wet." His trousers
- a. stained b. is staining c. got stained d. a & c
9. "You shouldn't have parked here." Which of the following give / gives the same meaning?
- a. You aren't supposed to park here.
b. You weren't supposed to have parked here.
c. You weren't meant to have parked here.
d. b & c
10. She asked that we early.
- a. arrives b. should arrive c. had arrived d. arriving

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- كلمة (concerned) بعد الفراغ صفة وليست تصريف ثالث، لذلك الاختيار الصحيح هو (should be)
2.	c	- الفعل الناقص (should) يمكن استخدامه لإعطاء التعليمات الرسمية بشكل مهذب، والفعل الناقص (must) يستخدم بشكل رسمي في التعليمات والقوانين المكتوبة، لذلك كلاهما صحيح

3.	b	- الفعل الناقص (should) هنا يعني (من المُفترض / المُتوقع أن)
4.	c	- الصيغة (should have + p.p.) تعني (كان من المُفترض / المُتوقع أن) للتعبير عما كان يُفترض أن يحدث في الماضي
5.	b	- الصيغة (should have been + p.p.) تعني (كان من المُفترض / المُتوقع أن) للتعبير عما كان يُفترض أن يحدث في الماضي
6.	a	- الصيغة (couldn't have + p.p.) تُستخدم للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث شيء في الماضي
7.	d	- الجملة حالة شرطية ثالثة والإختيار الصحيح حسب مضمون الجملة هو (could)
8.	d	- الفعل (stained) صحيح في المبني للمعلوم والصيغة (got stained) أيضاً صحيحة على أساس أن (stained) صفة بعد الفعل التقريري (got)، كما يُمكن اعتبار الصيغة (got stained) مبنية للمجهول
9.	d	- الصيغتين (b / c) صحيحتين وتؤديان معني يتوافق مع الجملة
10.	b	- الجملة بعد (asked that) يكون فعلها في المصدر (inf.) أو (should + inf.)

Part VI Language Hints from Reading & Listening

make + object + inf. / adj.

• **make + مفعول + inf.**

يجعل / يجبر

ex. - My father **made** me **water** the trees in the garden.

• **make + مفعول + adj.**

يجعل

ex. - Good news **makes** us **happy**.

everyday – every day

• **everyday (adj)**

يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الاسم)

ex. - Going to the club is one of my **everyday** habits.

• **every day (adv)**

كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

ex. - I go to the club **every day**. = **Every day**, I go to the club.

سواء ... أو ... whether ... or ...

١. تُستخدم (whether or) بمعنى (سواء ... أو ...) للتعبير عن بديلين :

بديل ثان + or + بديل أول + Whether

ex. - You will be late **whether** you take a taxi or go by bus.

٢. تُستخدم (whether ... or not) بمعنى (سواء ... أو لا) لنفي التأثير :

- I will tell the truth **whether** you like it or not.

عدد سنوات + at the age of = عدد سنوات + aged

= عدد سنوات + when he / she was

ex. - He died in 2014, **aged** 86.

= He died in 2014 **at the age of** 86.

= He died in 2014 **when he was** 86.

على عكس **unlike** X مثل **like**

- تُستخدم (like / unlike) كحروف جر بمعنى (مثل - على عكس):

• **Like his father**, Ahmed is hardworking. They are similar.

• **Unlike her mother**, Rody is tall. They are different.

Compound adjectives that have numbers

الصفات المركبة التي تتضمن أرقام

١. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة مركبة للاسم يأتي بعدها :

اسم موصوف + صفة + اسم مفرد + عدد

ex. - Rodayna has a **nine** - **year** - **old** brother.

٢. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة للاسم يأتي بعدها :

اسم موصوف + اسم مفرد + عدد

ex. - She is an expert on **twentieth-century** history.

٣. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم جمع كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

اسم موصوف + اسم جمع + عدد
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 - Sama joined a **six** **months'** **course**.

٤. في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد التعبيرات السابقة نستخدم ('s) في حالة المفرد و (s) في حالة الجمع :

ex. - I will leave in an **hour's** time.

- In **two years' time**, my brother will be living in his own flat.

other than - rather than

• other than

بخلاف / غير

ex. - You should eat another source of protein **other than** red meat.

• rather than

أفضل من - بدلا من

ex. - I suggest that you do a sport **rather than** chat online all the time.

Exercises On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He visits his old parents It is a habit of his.
 a. every day b. everyday c. today d. to a day
2. It is habitual of him to pay a / an visit to his old parents.
 a. every day b. everyday c. today d. to a day
3. Just your presence حضور makes us
 a. happy b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & b
4. We are made by your presence.
 a. happy b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & c
5. I will go out you go with me or not.
 a. weather b. whether c. although d. as
6. Mr Younes died in 2011, 107 years old.
 a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age

7. Mr Younes died in 2011 when he 107 years old.
 a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age
8. Mr Younes died in 2011 at the of 107 years old.
 a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age
9. her father, Leen has a serious character. They both work hard.
 a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like
10. her mother, Aya has long hair. Her mother's is short.
 a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like
11. In a time, I'll have paid back your money.
 a. month's b. months' c. monthly d. a & c
12. There's a seven - - tall tree in front of our house.
 a. a metre b. metre c. metres d. metres'

Part VII

Language Skills

1 Writing Tips - Writing a blog post كتابة منشور مدونة

* Tips on how to write a successful blog post.

* إرشادات خاصة بكتابة منشور مدونة جيد (نص الاستماع الخاص بكتاب الطالب صفحة ٤٧).

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.
 ١. ابدأ بالفكرة الرئيسية وفكر فيما سيثير اهتمام القارئ ويعطيه معلومة.
2. Start with a headline for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
 ٢. ابدأ بعنوان رئيسي لمدونتك، ويجب أن يخبر العنوان الرئيسي القارئ عن موضوع المدونة، ويجب أن يكون قصيراً ويعطي معلومات وأن يكون ممتعاً ويجعل القارئ يرغب في قراءة بقية المدونة.
3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
 ٣. ابحث عن صورة شخصية أو صورة مناسبة والتي ستوضح للقارئ موضوع منشور المدونة.

4. Plan the sections of your blog. Add a sub-heading for each section/new point.
٤. حدد أقسام مدونتك، واطف عنواناً فرعياً لكل قسم / نقطة جديدة.
5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.
٥. اكتب فقرة المقدمة، كن واضحاً فيما يتعلق بالغرض من منشور المدونة هذا، وتحدث إلى القارئ - استخدم ضمير المتكلم / المتكلمين (I / We). أو ضمائر الغائب (he - she - it) قم بتضمين سؤال.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
٦. اكتب المتن الرئيسي للمدونة، واجعل الجمل والفقرات قصيرة، وقم بتضمين صور حيثما كان ذلك مفيداً، وقم بالبحث لتجد الحقائق لتضمينها.
7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.
٧. اكتب خاتمة بالرجوع إلى العنوان الرئيسي الخاص بك والمقدمة، ولا تقم بتضمين معلومات جديدة في خاتمتك، وتحدث إلى القارئ مرة أخرى وقم بتضمين نفسك؛ واستخدم الضمير «نحن».
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently. Use an online thesaurus to avoid repeating the same word too many times.
٨. اقرأ وصحح منشور المدونة الخاص بك، وتحقق من الإملاء والقواعد اللغوية وعلامات الترقيم، وتأكد من أنك لم تكرر الأفكار الرئيسية كثيراً. استخدم موسوعة مفردات عبر الإنترنت لتجنب تكرار نفس الكلمة مرات عديدة.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?
٩. اطلب من صديق قراءة منشور المدونة الخاص بك لتتأكد أنه ذو مغزى.
10. Cite all your sources of information.
١٠. اذكر جميع مصادر المعلومات الخاصة بك.

2 Blog Post Writing كتابة منشور مدونة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

Language development

In this post, I am going to throw light on the development of languages. First, I will explain what language development means. Then I will give an example of language development.

Like everything else, languages develop. If you ask me what makes languages develop, I will tell you that it is the nature of things. Nothing stands still. *يَبْقَى جَامِداً* If everything in life develops, then language will necessarily develop in parallel. *بِالتَوَازِي*

Do you see the inventions which come into existence *الوجود* every day? Of course, we need names not only for them, but for each part of them as well. That will lead to finding new terms *مصطلحات* for these inventions and their parts. In this way, new words will have to be added to languages.

I will give you a single example. Before 2013, it was impossible to find the word 'selfie' in any English dictionary. What happened was that modern technology has led to inventing this word. The development of smart phones caused the existence of this word. These mobiles, as you know, have cameras. Young people used their mobiles to take photos of themselves, whether alone or with other friends. A language innovator added the syllable 'ie' to the word 'self'. That's how this new word came into existence.

To conclude, languages develop with the development of life. However, we must do our best to protect the fundamentals *أساسيات* of languages from being destroyed.

3 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

① Translate into Arabic :

1. It is well-known that communication is the key to personal and career success. That makes it necessary for everybody to develop their own communication skills.
2. Computer skills are necessary for the performance of a lot of businesses at the moment. You also need to know to use social networking sites the best way possible.

3. Egypt has achieved significant progress in various fields of industry, agriculture and modern technology. Now, it is on the road of educational development.

• ② Translate into English :

١. إن اللغة تتطور بنفس سرعة التطور العلمى والتكنولوجى، فالاختراعات الجديدة أوجدت مفردات جديدة، كما أن شبكات التواصل الاجتماعى أدت الى سرعة انتقال المفردات من لغة لأخرى.
٢. منذ عشرين عاماً تقريباً، كان التليفون المحمول يُعتبر ثورة كبيرة فى عالم الاتصالات، ولا زالت هذه الثورة مستمرة وتأتى لنا بالجديد كل يوم فى عالم التواصل الرقمى.
٣. تُتيح الأجيال الجديدة من الهواتف الذكية إجراء مكالمات الفيديو بجودة عالية، وذلك من خلال شبكات الإنترنت السريع التى تنتشر فى كل ربوع العالم.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

achievements	إنجازات	living being	كائن حى
allow	تتيح	quality	جودة
details	تفاصيل	rapid	سريع
develop	يتطور	revolution	ثورة
digital	رقمى	significant	ملحوظ / بارز
fields	مجالات		

King Lear

Act

II

Scenes (i & ii)

أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات فى الجزء المخصص لذلك فى نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

Vocabulary

a stab in the back	خيانة - طعنة فى الظهر	guard (ed) (n - v)	حارس - يحرس
beg (ged) (v)	يتسول - يتوسل	my heart is broken	إننى فى غاية الحزن
beggar (n)	مُتسول	persuade (d) (v)	يُقنع
call out	ينادى - يتحدث بصوت عال	plot (ted) against	يشامر ضد
change his mind	يُغير رأيه	port (n)	ميناء
disbelief (n)	تكذيب - عدم اعتقاد	pretend (ed) (v)	ينظاهر - يدعى
faithful to (adj)	مخلص لـ	profit (ted) (v - n)	يستفيد - يربح - فائدة - ربح
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع - يتتبع	reward (ed) (n - v)	مكافأة - يكافئ
get here	يصل إلى هنا		

Additional Exercise

تدريب إضافي (تدريب على سؤال اختر إجابتين صحيحتين من خمس اختيارات)

❖ Choose the **TWO** correct answers of the **FIVE** options given :

- After graduation, we tried in touching with each other, but in vain.
a. doing b. making c. keeping d. starting e. staying
- The witness was asked to the information he knew about the accident.
a. give b. get c. cause d. tell e. talk
- Flour is a basic ingredient in making cake. The synonyms of "basic" are
a. environmental b. primary c. fundamental
d. secondary e. preparatory
- It's not easy for me to friends with people I don't know well.
a. make b. become c. serve d. reserve e. spend
- Modern technology is important to follow nowadays. The synonyms of the word "important" are
a. significant b. minor c. major d. untidy e. silly
- Being included in the main team, made him very happy. The word "included" can be replaced by
a. involved b. determined c. excluded
d. inserted e. contained
- They continued for the missing child till they found him in a remote area.
a. to look b. looking c. to looking d. to looked e. look
- To communicate with foreign people or companies. We must use formal language. The synonyms of formal are
a. normal b. official c. logical d. legal e. social
- Mr Kadry lived in Canada for ages, so no one expected that he would back.
a. go b. reach c. arrive d. send e. come
- Does this volume of Shakespeare include his sonnets ? The antonyms of "include" are
a. involve b. exclude c. omit d. insist on e. consist of

Consolidate

your Vocabulary From Act II, Scene i & Scene ii

المفردات اللغوية للقصة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية في
نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The ship stayed in the due to the bad weather.
a. guard b. port c. reward d. disbelief
2. The at the gate asked me who I was going to visit.
a. guard b. beggar c. reward d. disbelief
3. I'm sure I will be able to him to accept the offer.
a. persuade b. follow c. pretend d. profit
4. I will give a valuable to whoever finds my lost papers.
a. guard b. port c. reward d. disbelief
5. When you benefit from something, you from it.
a. persuade b. follow c. pretend d. profit
6. I her to the station to make sure she would catch her train.
a. persuaded b. followed c. pretended d. profitted
7. Some ask for money out of profession, not out of need.
a. guards b. beggars c. reward d. disbelief
8. A true friend remains
a. silent b. formal c. faithful d. abbreviated
9. My children to be kings and queens when they are playing.
a. persuade b. follow c. pretend d. profit
10. We looked at her in when she said that she had passed the driving test without training.
a. guard b. port c. reward d. disbelief

Test on Unit 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تلويح

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



A. Vocabulary and Structures

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. 'Doctor' is the for 'Dr'.

- a. abbreviated b. abbreviation c. linguist d. linguistics

2. He is employed to new teaching techniques.

- a. blog b. blogger c. introduce d. introduction

3. Not coming to school does not mean Sama is ill.

- a. necessitate b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily

4. He looked with interest at the advertisement." This means he was the advertisement.

- a. appealed to b. concerned with c. bored with d. b & c

5. response to your last email, I'd like to tell you that your offer has been accepted.

- a. In b. As c. At d. From

6. I don't think it is wise to give money to those professional that fill the streets. Give your money to people whom you are sure that they need help.

- a. bloggers b. linguists c. beggars d. innovators

7. I didn't know there was a meeting that day. You me.

- a. needn't have told b. had to tell
c. should have told d. should tell

8. Hala didn't go to the doctor's yesterday although she have gone.

- a. ought to b. needn't c. shouldn't d. must

9. This is a really good book. You read it.

- a. might b. may c. must d. ought to

10. I don't know where Mai is. She could the cooking.

- a. do b. have done
c. have been done d. be doing

11. I didn't know where Mai was. She could shopping.

- a. go b. have gone c. have been gone d. be gone

12. She him before but she can't really remember.

- a. could see b. could have seen
c. should see d. should have seen

13. "He could have gone there on his own if he had wanted" This is a
 a. permission b. duty
 c. past possibility d. future possibility
14. He has left his car over there .He that . There is a "No waiting" sign.
 a. mustn't do b. shouldn't have done
 c. shouldn't do d. should have done
15. He will leave the job you agree or not.
 a. weather b. whether c. although d. as
16. me, Sama is cheerful. We both like to have fun.
 a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

- **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Vocational education is the education that trains people to work in various jobs such as technicians, tradesmen and craftsmen. It refers to the career and the technical education that allows students to get ready for a specific career. The vocational programs provide students with hands-on instructions and training that leads them to certification or a diploma. Vocational schools provide vocational training on post-secondary level, higher education level, and further education. Students can choose certificate or diploma programs, apprenticeship and associate degree programs.

Earlier, most of the vocational training programs took place in classroom or on the job site from professionals in the field, however the online vocational education has now become popular and an easy option for students to learn various skills from professionals. Earlier the training was also limited to certain jobs like welding, carpentry, automotive services, but with the changing times training has expanded to wide range of job functions like tourism management, food and beverage management, computer network management, retail training, paralegal management and so on.

Vocational education focuses more on providing practical skills and hands-on instructions in the particular job. Students get real working environment during vocational programs. Vocational education is evolving prominently and generates skilled and trained workers for specific jobs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. Vocational education is now in the past.
 a. as limited as b. less limited than
 c. more limited than d. so limited as

18. When can vocational training take place?
- On post-secondary level only
 - On higher education level only
 - After further education only
 - After the secondary level
19. Compared to vocational education, academic education focuses less on
- providing practical skills
 - providing knowledge
 - providing exams
 - classroom work
20. Which of the following is NOT a vocational profession?
- Carpentry
 - Accountancy
 - Driving
 - Building

B. Answer the following questions :

21. Which is easier, academic or vocational education? Why?
22. In your opinion, why has vocational education become more important than in the past? Give at least TWO reasons.
23. How do you think can vocational education play an important role in the development of Egypt? Can it replace academic education completely?
24. Give the passage a suitable title.

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Language, as it seems to me, is a living being. It acts and reacts to the rapid changes that take place every day everywhere.

26. Translate into English :

للتكنولوجيا الحديثة بعض الإيجابيات، كما أن لها بعض السلبيات، ومن الأفضل ألا تشارك تفاصيل حياتك الشخصية على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Mobile phone use and its effects today

.....

.....

.....

Being smart online

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Reading :

An article about an online video channel; An article about how to use the internet for research

Writing :

An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly

Listening :

Two boys discussing how to use social media;
Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people

Speaking :

A presentation

Language :

seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to

Life skills :

Critical Thinking; Resilience



لائقان الوحدة

حراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.
ملحق المهارات.
الحريسات للأزهر الشريف في حراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

Part

I

Vocabulary

- اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية ومشتقاتها في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكراسة التفاعلية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

adapt (ed) (v)	يتكيف - يتأقلم	search results	نتائج البحث
advert = add	إعلان	sensible (adj)	حكيم - عقلاني
= advertisement (n)		subscribe (d) (v)	يُسجّل (في موقع) - يشترك
banner advert (n)	إعلان على لافتة	symbol (n)	رمز
behaviour (n)	سلوك - تصرّف	take down	يُزيل (منشور) - يُنزل
consult (ed) (v)	يستشير - يتداول	tone (n)	- يُدوّن
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	unreliable (adj)	أسلوب - وقع - توجه
download (ed) (v - n)	يُنزل (من الإنترنت) - يُحمّل - التنزيل	update (d) (v - n)	غير موثوق به
follow (ed) (v)	يتابع - يتبع - يُنفذ	upgrade (d) (v)	يُحدّث - تحديث
follower (n)	متابع - تابع	upload (ed) (v - n)	يُحسّن - يضيف مزايا
post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر علي	up-to-date (adj)	جديدة
profile (n)	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي	view (n)	يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
reliable (adj)	الملف الشخصي		مُحدّث
	موثوق به		مشاهدة - رؤية

2 Most Important Vocabulary

addict (ed) (n - v)	مُدمن - يُدمن	moral (n)	مغزى أخلاقي
affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر علي	name (d) (v - n)	يذكر اسم / يُسمّي
app =	تطبيق	obvious (adj)	- اسم
application (n)		platform (n)	واضح
argument (n)	خلاف - نزاع	plus (conj.)	منصّة - رصيف
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى		بالإضافة إلى (ذلك)

blog (ged) (n - v)	مُدونة - يُدوّن	professional (adj)	محترف
browser (n)	متصفح	programmers (n)	مُبرمجين
button (n)	زر	programming (n)	البرمجة
character (n)	رمز خاص - شخصية	pros (n)	مزايا
chat (ted) (v - n)	يلدش - دردشة	provide (d) (v)	يوفر - يُمدّ به
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق من	register (ed) (v)	يُسجّل
common (adj)	شائع - مشترك	relevant (adj)	ملائم - مناسب
cons (n)	عيوب	represent (ed) (v)	يُمثّل
create (d) (v)	يخلق - ينشئ	research (ed) (n - v)	بحث - يجري بحث
criticise (d) (v)	ينتقد	result (n)	نتيجة
distract (ed) (v)	يُشتّت - يصرف انتباه	serious (adj)	جاد - خطير
effect (n)	أثر - تأثير	share (d) (v)	يشارك
effectively (adv)	بشكل فعال - بكفاءة	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
efficient (adj)	كفء	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسلّي - يُرفّه عن	software (n)	برنامج (حاسوبي)
excuse (d) (n - v)	عُذر - يَعُذر	speed (n)	سرعة
experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	sponsored (adj)	مُمول - راعى
fake (adj)	مزيف - مكنوب	stamp (ed) (n - v)	طابع بريد - يضع طابع
fire (d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	stealing (n)	- يوسم (يضع ختم) السرقة
forum (n)	مُنْتَدي	superficiality (n)	سطحيّة - عدم تركيز
game (d) (v - n)	يلعب - مباراة / لعبة	targeted (adj)	موجّه
highlight (ed) (v)	يُبرز	task (n)	مهمة
honest (adj)	أمين	teenager = teen (n)	مُراهق
identity (n)	هوية - شخصية	type (d) (v)	يكتب على جهاز
install (ed) (v)	يُثبّت - يُركّب	version (n)	نسخة - إصدار
instant (adj)	فوري	victim (n)	ضحية
knowledge (n)	المعرفة	warning (n)	تحذير
likes (n)	إعجابات - علامات إعجاب	webpage (n)	صفحة على الإنترنت
limit (ed) (n - v)	حد - يحد من / يقلل	website / site (n)	موقع على الإنترنت
meaningful (adj)	مفهوم - ذو معني		

3 Definitions تعريفات

behaviour (n) سلوك - تصرف	the things that a person or animal does
consult (v) يستشير	to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something
cookies (n) ملفات تعريف الارتباط	information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again
download (v) يُنزّل (من الإنترنت)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to move files ملفات from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer (SB) - to save something from the internet onto your computer (WB)
follower (n) مُتابع	someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites
reliable (adj) موثوق به	can be trusted or depended on
take down (phr. v) يُزيل (منشور)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to take something that you have posted online off the internet (SB) - to remove a message or photo you have put on social media (WB)
tone (n) الأسلوب / التوجه	- the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech خطبة etc.
update (v) يُحدّث	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to make something more modern and relevant ملائم by adding new information (SB) - to install يُشَبِّث the most recent version نسخة of a program (WB)
upgrade (v) يُحسّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to improve or make more efficient كف - to make something better (WB)
upload (v) يرفع (على الإنترنت)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet (SB) - to put information on social media (WB)
up-to-date (adj) مُحدّث	including all the latest information
view (n) مشاهدة - رؤية	an occasion when a post, an image or a video is watched online

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key & Important vocabulary

- Do you know how I can this app to premium ?
a. view b. follow c. upgrade d. tone
- 'App' is another word for
a. appointment b. application c. appearance d. a & b
- Don't let what people say you. Concentrate on your goal.
a. experience b. install c. share d. distract
- Some people have a fake on social media. They are not really who they seem to be.
a. profession b. symbol c. identity d. version
- Companies prefer to their products on sports channels.
a. advertise b. consult c. download d. take down
- It took me about ten minutes to the video from the webpage.
a. upload b. download c. outdate d. subscribe
- My last video on Facebook had 8552 and 5210 likes.
a. views b. followers c. upgrades d. tones
- The dove الحمامة is known as a / an of peace.
a. profile b. symbol c. identity d. version
- I the post as soon as I had seen the negative comments on it.
a. advertised b. consulted c. downloaded d. took down
- Don't buy applications from this website. Their applications are
a. fake b. downloadable c. up-to-date d. reliable
- I trust this website as it provides me with information on programming.
a. addicted b. uploadable c. up-to-date d. unreliable
- People judge علي يحكم you through your in different situations.
a. app b. application c. advert d. behaviour
- I didn't like the selfie you have just on your profile.
a. updated b. downloaded c. posted d. subscribed

14. Working in the same field for twenty years has given him a lot of
 a. experience b. installation c. share d. distraction
15. Don't share your personal data on your
 a. profile b. symbol c. identity d. version
16. Facebook adverts are They are not free.
 a. fake b. sponsored c. up-to-date d. reliable
17. I don't like the of the article. I think it is full of hatred. الكراهية
 a. profile b. follow c. upgrade d. tone
18. If you are sure about this piece of information, your sources.
 a. affect b. adapt c. name d. subscribe
19. This of windows is not activated.
 a. file b. symbol c. identity d. version
20. If you want to be a member of the Twitter society, first download and its application.
 a. experience b. install c. share d. distract
21. Have you ever bad behaviour on social media ?
 a. experienced b. installed c. typed d. distracted
22. Everything we do has its own pros and
 a. merits b. upsides c. advantages d. cons
23. Before you start a long drive, the oil in the car engine.
 a. excuse b. create c. check d. game
24. It is a waste of time online.
 a. excusing b. creating c. checking d. gaming
25. I some of the videos from the school trip on the school site.
 a. experienced b. installed c. shared d. distracted
26. Scientists are still vaccines أمصال for COVID- 19.
 a. researching b. chatting c. stamping d. firing
27. The hard time he had in prison is still on his memory.
 a. researched b. chatted c. stamped d. fired
28. Some people are interested in the number of they have on their posts.
 a. knowledge b. likes c. victims d. warnings

29. You have no for making such a mistake.
a. excuse b. create c. check d. game
30. Work hard or you will be
a. researched b. chatted c. stamped d. fired
31. He was the of a car accident in which he lost his left leg.
a. stamp b. identity c. victim d. effect
32. Criticism has a bad on sensitive people, especially when it is sharp.
a. affect b. effect c. excuse d. follower
33. Young people should learn how to to difficult situations.
a. adapt b. addict c. name d. argue
34. Parents must protect their children from to social media.
a. adapting b. addicting c. naming d. arguing
35. The of a story, a novel or a film is the lesson we learn from it.
a. chat b. character c. platform d. moral
36. You can find a lot of professional educational on the internet.
a. buttons b. pavements c. platforms d. morals
37. You can make money online., you can have fun.
a. Plus b. Because c. Instead of d. a & c
38. The information which social media collect about your activity online is used to deliver advertising.
a. fake b. targeted c. common d. meaningless

2 Definitions

39. is the things that a person or animal does.
a. Luggage b. Behaviour c. Permission d. Knowledge
40. To is to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet or to put information on social media.
a. upload b. upgrade c. consult d. update
41. To is to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something.
a. take on b. take down c. consult d. update

42. Information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again is known as
- a. view b. behaviour c. tone d. cookies
43. To is to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer or to save something from the internet onto your computer.
- a. download b. take down c. consult d. update
44. A is someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites.
- a. behaviour b. follower c. cookies d. viewer
45. Something or someone that is can be trusted or depended on.
- a. outdated b. unreliable c. reliable d. up-to-date
46. To is to take something that you have posted online off the internet or to remove a message or photo you have put on social media.
- a. download b. take down c. consult d. update
47. A / An is the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech etc.
- a. view b. behaviour c. tone d. cookies
48. To is to make something more modern and relevant ملائم by adding new information or to install the most recent version of a programme.
- a. download b. take down c. consult d. update
49. To is to improve or make more efficient or to make something better.
- a. upload b. upgrade c. consult d. update
50. The adjective means including all the latest information.
- a. outdated b. unreliable c. reliable d. up-to-date
51. A is an occasion when a post, an image or a video is watched online.
- a. view b. behaviour c. tone d. cookies

Part II Vocabulary Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية للأفعال

become	a follower يتابع (على مواقع التواصل الإجتماعي)		a bad experience بمر بتجربة سيئة
	sources يتحقق من المصادر		access to لديه صلاحية / قدرة للوصول لـ
check	the information يتأكد من المعلومة		effects on له تأثيرات على
collect	personal details يجمع تفاصيل (بيانات) شخصية	have	experience in لديه خبرة في
create	a perfect essay يؤلف مقال نموذجي		friends لديه أصدقاء
	... for a job يقوم بـ ... كوظيفة		knowledge of لديه معرفة بـ
do	a history essay يكتب مقال خاص بالتاريخ		likes يحصل على إعجابات
	research online يجري بحثاً على الإنترنت	keep	data safe online يحمي البيانات على الإنترنت
	a blog post on يكتب منشور عن	look	terrible يبدو فظيماً
find	extra facts يكتشف حقائق إضافية	miss	something important يفتقد شيئاً هاماً
game	online يلعب على الإنترنت	name	the sources بذكر المصادر
get	back to يعود على	open	a webpage يفتح صفحة على الانترنت
	information يحصل على معلومات	pay	attention to ينتهبه لـ
	... advice about ينصح ... بخصوص	post	a message يرسل رسالة
give	... a homework task يكلف ... بمهمة كواجب منزلي	put	... on a website يضع ... على موقع
	example يعطي مثال	represent	feelings يرمز إلى مشاعر
	information يعطي معلومات	seem	obvious يبدو واضحاً

go	on forums	يدخل على المنتديات	show	strange behaviour
	online	يدخل على الانترنت	stay	safe
make	a presentation	يقدم عرضاً	use	... effectively
	mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء	write	on a website
				يتصرف بغيرابة
				يبقى بأمان
				يستخدم ... بشكل فعال
				ينشر محتوى على موقع

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I am not 100-percent sure. I need to my sources.
a. check b. go c. seem d. pay
- Scientific honesty الأمانة العلمية is what makes me my sources.
a. have b. create c. do d. name
- I a blog post on yesterday's match.
a. did b. gamed c. wrote d. a & c
- The attention I to what the teacher said helped me understand the lesson.
a. checked b. went c. seemed d. paid
- Don't waste your time online.
a. doing b. gaming c. missing d. giving
- After subscription, you will access to everything on our website.
a. have b. create c. do d. name
- Yes, I online after I had done all my jobs.
a. checked b. went c. seemed d. paid
- Mr Ashraf me a homework task.
a. did b. gamed c. missed d. gave
- My teacher said that I had a perfect essay.
a. paid b. created c. done d. b & c
- You needn't be so confused. The solution of the problem obvious.
a. checks b. goes c. seems d. pays

2 مترادفات Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
reliable	dependable - trustworthy - dedicated
sensible	practical - realistic - responsible - reasonable - rational - logical
specific	particular
upgrade	improve - enhance
upgrade	promote
up-to-date	modern - contemporary - fashionable

3 متضادات Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
download	يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت) - يُحمِّل - التنزيل	upload	يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
follow	يتابع	block	يحظر
follow	يُنَفِّذ - يطيع	break - disobey	يخالف - يعصى
helpful	مفيد	unhelpful	غير مفيد
online	علي الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
reliable	موثوق به - يُعْتَمَد عليه	unreliable - untrustworthy	مشكوك فيه - لا يُثَقَّ به
sensible	حكيم - عقلاني - واقعي	foolish	أحمق
specific	محدد	general	عام
strange	غريب	familiar - usual	مألوف - معتاد
stupid	غبى	intelligent - smart	ذكي
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب
upgrade	يُحَسِّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	degrade	يقلل من شأن
upgrade	يُرقِّي	downgrade - demote	يُنزِّل الدرجة - يخفض المنزلة
up-to-date	مُحَدَّث	(out-of- date) - (old -fashioned)	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Which of the following prefixes makes the opposite of 'suitable'?
a. Up- b. Un- c. Dis- d. Im-
- "This application is up-to-date." The adjective 'up-to-date' can be replaced by
a. out-of-date b. modern c. old-fashioned d. a & c
- "This application is up-to-date." The adjective 'up-to-date' is the antonym for
a. out-of-date b. modern c. old-fashioned d. a & c
- Reliable and trustworthy are
a. acronyms b. synonyms c. antonyms d. opposites
- "Mr Ashraf is a reliable teacher." In this sentence, 'reliable' means the opposite of
a. dependable b. untrustworthy c. trustworthy d. a & c
- "Mr Ashraf is a reliable teacher." In this sentence, 'reliable' means the same as
a. dependable b. untrustworthy c. trustworthy d. a & c
- Foolish is to as familiar is to strange.
a. general b. usual c. sensitive d. sensible
- "He follows the law." The verb 'follows' in this sentence can be replaced by
a. obeys b. breaks c. blocks d. b & c
- I can't see his posts because he has me
a. obeyed b. broken c. blocked d. b & c
- is the antonym of positive.
a. Negative b. Pros c. Upside d. b & c

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a resource for research مصدر للبحث
a social media app تطبيق تواصل اجتماعي
a special character رمز خاص (ليس حرف أو رقم)
a strong password كلمة مرور قوية
access to صلاحية الوصول إلى
all over the world في كل أرجاء العالم

free for
have nothing to do with
I see your point
instead of
junk food
keep them entertained
loads of

مجاناً لـ ...
لا علاقة له به ...
أتفهم وجهة نظرك
بدلاً من
وجبات سريعة
تسليهم
الكثير من

an advert for	إعلان عن	look like	يشبه - يبدو كـ
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	make it personal	تخصي عليها طابع شخصي
as well	أيضاً	on social media	
at meal times	في أوقات الوجبات	on your profile	على وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	reliable sources	على (صفحتك الشخصية)
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	so far	مصادر موثقة
badly designed	سيء التصميم	social media behaviour	حتى الآن
be addicted to	مُدمن على	spelling mistakes	سلوك على مواقع التواصل
be distracted with / by	مُشتت به	targeted advertising	أخطاء هجائية
careful about	حريص على	the latest software update	الإعلان الموجّه
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	the other day	أحدث إصدارات البرنامج
eager to	متلهف لـ	this is why	مؤخراً
exactly what we want	ما نريده بالضبط	to do with	لهذا السبب
fact-checking	توثيق الحقائق		لها علاقة بـ
for ages	لمدة طويلة		
URL (uniform resource locator)	رابط (الموقع أو الصفحة)		

5 Verb + Preposition

adapt ... to	يُكَيِّف ... مع	go out	يخرج
addict to	يُدمن على	put up	يضع - يرفع
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	read on	يستمر في القراءة
chat to / with	يحدث مع	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
check ... against / with	يتحقق من ... من خلال	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
connect to	يدخل على - يتصل بـ	take down	يزيل (منشور)
decide to	يقرر أن	take ... off	يزيل - ينزع (شيء)
find out	يكتشف / يعرف	upgrade ... with	يحدث / يرقى ... بـ

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 'For ages' means for
 a. good b. bad c. a long time d. years
- You have to adapt your spending your income.
 a. to b. of c. from d. by

3. He was dead tired. is why he went to bed so early.
 a. That b. This c. Which d. a & b
4. I had a ten-minute-chat Dr Alaa.
 a. out b. with c. for d. at
5. Before posting some information online, fact- is a must.
 a. checks b. checking c. checked d. a & b
6. Amr put a nice photo of his on his Instagram yesterday.
 a. out b. in c. up d. down
7. You can get the information you need at the of a button.
 a. touch b. smell c. taste d. hearing
8. I share a lot of interests my cousin Malak.
 a. at b. with c. for d. on
9. He gained much weight his love of food.
 a. as a result of b. because of c. due to d. a, b & c
10. He upgraded his Facebook app the latest software update.
 a. with b. at c. off d. about

6 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb		Noun	Adjective
advertise (d)	يُعلن عن	advert = add = advertisement إعلان advertisers المُعلنين	advertised مُعلن عنه
behave (d)	يتصرف	behaviour سلوك - تَصَرُّف	behavioural سلوكي
consult (ed)	يستشير	consultant إخصائي consultation استشاري	
download (ed)	يُنزل (من الإنترنت)	download الملف المُنزل downloader برنامج تنزيل ملفات	downloadable قابل للتنزيل
follow (ed)	يتبع - يتابع	follower تابع / مؤيد - مُتابع	following تالي / تابع
rely (ied)	يعتمد	reliance التواكل - الاعتماد على الغير reliability الجدارة - الموثوقية	reliable موثوق به
subscribe (d)	يُسجل (في موقع) - يشترك	subscriber مُشترك - عضو subscription اشتراك	

Mini Test 4 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I have no time to download these right now.
a. followers b. follow c. update d. updates
2. I have no time to these applications right now.
a. followers b. follow c. update d. updates
3. You can on him. Be sure he will do the job efficiently.
a. rely b. reliable c. unreliable d. reliability
4. I have never doubted your I trust you.
a. rely b. reliance c. unreliable d. reliability
5. His on others makes him a failure.
a. rely b. reliance c. unreliable d. reliability
6. I have had 3000 to my YouTube channel so far.
a. subscribed b. subscribers c. consultants d. consulted
7. 3000 people my account on Twitter.
a. followers b. follow c. update d. updates
8. You need to your products to let people know about them.
a. advertise b. adverts c. advertisers d. a & c
9. do not waste their money. They promote their goods.
a. Advertise b. Adverts c. Advertisers d. a & c
10. I need to get advice from a about my headache.
a. subscribe b. subscribers c. consultant d. consult

7 Clear up the confusion لاحظ الفرق

sensible - sensitive

• sensible

- Stopping the war was a **sensible** decision.

عاقِل / حَكِيم / معقول

• sensitive

- I was a **sensitive** child. I got upset very easily.

حَسَّاس / سريع التأثير

update - upgrade

• update

- The Windows version on your computer needs to be **updated**.

يُحدَّث (يجعل الشيء حديثاً)

• upgrade

- To **upgrade** this application, you have to pay 300 dollars.

يُحسَّن (يضيف مزايا أو قدرات أفضل) / يُرقى التطبيق

software - hardware**• software**

- It is better if you download the latest **software**.
 برنامج حاسوبي (يؤدي غرض معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)

• hardware

- The processor is part of the computer's **hardware**.
 مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره)

app - application**• app = application**

- An antivirus is an **app (=application)** that protects a computer from malware and viruses.
 تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)

• application

- The secretary received 200 **applications**. (Not : apps).
 طلب التحاق (بناادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ)

advertisement - commercial - announcement**• advertisement / advert / ad**

إعلان (تجاري)

- Some **adverts (= ads / advertisements)** lie about the quality of the products.

• commercial

إعلان تجاري (في التلفزيون / الراديو)

- I change the channel when **commercials** are shown.

• announcement

إعلان خبري (نشر تنبيهات - تعليمات - تحذيرات - قرارات)

- The **announcement** of the final decision has been delayed until tomorrow.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. An application is a piece of a computer that does a particular job.
 a. monitor b. hard desk c. hardware d. software
2. A RAM is part of a computer
 a. monitor b. app c. hardware d. software
3. Our university accepts from Arab students.
 a. apps b. applications c. a & b d. Neither a nor b
4. I download trusted from Google Store.
 a. apps b. applications c. a & b d. Neither a nor b

5. Nearly all people find it boring when a film is interrupted by repeated for goods.
a. adds b. announcements c. commercials d. a & c
6. The of the pay rise زيادة الأجور has made the employees very happy.
a. add b. announcement c. commercial d. a & c
7. Don't be so to criticism. Try to benefit from it.
a. sensitive b. sensible c. reliable d. unreliable
8. His reaction was very We all appreciated it.
a. sensitive b. sensible c. reliable d. unreliable
9. Facebook regularly asks me to my personal data.
a. update b. outdate c. upgrade d. degrade
10. If you want full protection against viruses and malware, to premium. (النسخة المميزة (المدفوعة)
a. update b. outdate c. upgrade d. degrade

Part III Just for Advanced level

للمستويات العليا

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

تنويه

consult

- **consult(v)** يبحث عن معلومة في (بدون حرف جر)
- You can **consult** GPS if you get lost.
- **consult someone = see / ask someone** يستشير / يطلب المشورة / يستفتي
- I usually **consult** my lawyer about legal affairs. الأمور القانونية.
- **consult with** يتشاور مع
- I need to **consult with** my lawyer.
- **consultant(n)** مستشار / ناصح / خبير
- You need advertising **consultants** to help you with the new marketing campaign. حملة تسويقية.
- **consultant(n)** استشاري (طبيب خبير في فرع معين من الطب)
- Do you agree with me that a young doctor is sometimes more helpful than a **consultant**?

download - upload

• **download (n)** ملف مُنَزَّل من الانترنت \neq **upload (n)**

ملف مرفوع على الانترنت

- There are five **downloads** in this folder.

• **download (n)** تنزيل الملفات \neq **upload (n)**

رفع الملفات

- The speed of **download** is always more than the speed of upload.

• **downloading (n)** التنزيل من الانترنت \neq **uploading (n)**

الرفع على الانترنت

- **Downloading** videos is easier and faster than **uploading** them.

• **download (v)** يُنَزَّل ملف \neq **upload (v)**

يرفع ملف

- Abdulrahman has **downloaded** all Al Pacino's films.

- Mr Mohammed used to **upload** educational files for free.

للاظ التعبيرات التالية:

- download ... from ... من ... يُنَزَّل

- download ... to / onto ... إلى ... يُنَزَّل

- upload ... to ... علي ... يرفع

• **downloadable (adj)**

قابل للتنزيل

- The files on this website are **downloadable**.

reliable

• **rely (ied) on / upon (v)**

يعتمد علي

- Don't make your children **rely on** you all the time. Let them depend on themselves.

• **reliable (adj)**

يُعتد عليه / أهل للثقة

- Bassem is a **reliable** man. You can trust him.

• **reliability (n)**

الدقة - الموثوقية - الجدارة

- I'm not sure about **the reliability** of this information.

• **reliance (n)**

الاعتماد / الاتكال

- There's increasing **reliance** on computers.

up & down with computer terminology

تُستخدم كل من (**up / down**) في الكثير من مصطلحات الحاسب الآلي مثل:

• **up** : upload – upgrade – update – (up-to-date)

• **down** : download – take down

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

نوعية : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- To make a strong password, use numbers, letters and a special
a. character b. personality c. letter d. post
- He is not fit. I think that has his eating habits.
a. to do with b. to be done c. done with d. do with
- I have to check this piece of information reliable references to make sure it is reliable.
a. against b. with c. a & b d. to
- your map if you get lost.
a. Apply b. Subscribe c. Post d. Consult
- "I upgraded the antivirus on my laptop." The word 'upgraded' in this sentence the antonym of
a. downgraded b. degraded c. demoted d. a & c
- National security is a matter that can't be discussed openly in public.
a. sensitive b. sensible c. scientific d. social
- Luxor was just a city. Then, it was to the status of a governorate محافظة in 2009.
a. degraded b. demoted c. updated d. upgraded
- Just a few seconds, please. I'll get a pen to take what you say in case I forget.
a. up b. down c. off d. after
- The of the report is stinging. حاد The writer seems to be completely against the plan.
a. tone b. cookies c. behaviour d. banner
- Never your child's opinion even if it is not reasonable.
a. update b. upgrade c. downgrade d. download

No.	Answer & Explanation
1.	a الإجابة والتوضيح
2.	a - كلمة (character) هنا تعني (رمز خاص)
3.	c - التعبير (to do with) يعني (مرتبط بـ / له علاقة بـ)
4.	d - التعبير (check ... against / with) يعني (يراجع ... بمقارنته بـ)
5.	b - الفعل (consult) هنا يعني (يتحقق بالرجوع إلى)
6.	a - الفعل (degrade) بمعنى (يُحط من / يُضعف) هي المُضاد المنطقي لـ (upgrade) في هذا السياق
7.	d - الفعل (upgraded to) هنا يعني (تطوّر إلى)
8.	b - الفعل الإصطلاحي (take down) يعني (يُنزّل / يُسجّل)
9.	a - كلمة (tone) هنا تعني (أسلوب / جو عام)
10.	c - الفعل (downgrade) بمعنى (يُحقّر - يُقلّل من شأن) هو الاختيار الصحيح حسب سياق الجملة



El-Moasser The Exam

إحرص على اقتناء مراجعة
المعاصر في اللغة الإنجليزية
المطابقة للمنظومة
التعليمية الجديدة

تدريبات واختبارات طبقاً للنظام الجديد

1 Reading Text

Doing research online

إجراء الأبحاث على الإنترنت

(SB page 52)

Your teacher has given you a homework **task**⁽¹⁾. Where do you start your **research**⁽²⁾?

The internet is very **useful**⁽³⁾ with lots of information, but how do you **avoid**⁽⁴⁾ **spending**⁽⁵⁾ hours reading **unhelpful**⁽⁶⁾ **websites**⁽⁷⁾? **Read on**⁽⁸⁾ to **find out**⁽⁹⁾ how to use the internet **effectively**⁽¹⁰⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have **experience**⁽¹¹⁾ in or **knowledge**⁽¹²⁾ of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.
- Think about who has written the website. Is it a company that may be trying to **sell**⁽¹³⁾ you something?
- Check**⁽¹⁴⁾ if the website is **up-to-date**⁽¹⁵⁾. Is the information still **reliable**⁽¹⁶⁾ and useful? When was it **updated**⁽¹⁷⁾?
- Always **consult**⁽¹⁸⁾ more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different **sites**⁽¹⁹⁾ is that you can check the information and you may find **extra**⁽²⁰⁾ facts.
- What does the website **look like**⁽²¹⁾? If it is **badly**⁽²²⁾ **designed**⁽²³⁾ and is **full of**⁽²⁴⁾ grammar and **spelling**⁽²⁵⁾ **mistakes**⁽²⁶⁾, then it is probably not very reliable.
- Websites that have **named**⁽²⁷⁾ their **sources**⁽²⁸⁾ are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.
- Save**⁽²⁹⁾ the **URL** (Uniform Resource Locator)⁽³⁰⁾ of any useful **pages**⁽³¹⁾ or **images**⁽³²⁾ so you can find them easily.

- مهمة
- بحث
- مفيد
- يتجنب
- قضاء
- غير مفيد
- مواقع
- استمر في القراءة
- يكشف
- بشكل فعال
- خبرة
- المعرفة
- يبيع
- يتحقق من
- مُحدَّث
- موثوق به
- يُحدَّث
- يستشير
- مواقع
- إضافي
- يشبه
- بشكل سيء
- مُضمَّن
- مملوء بـ
- تهجي
- أخطاء
- يذكر اسم
- مصادر
- يحفظ
- الرابط
- صفحات
- صور

Hi!

Can you help me? I'm trying to do a history essay, but I've spent about 20 hours reading different websites and **blogs**⁽¹⁾, and now I've got pages and pages of **notes**⁽²⁾. But I'm really **confused**⁽³⁾. I don't know which sites are good and which aren't - and they all say different things! And now I've forgotten how I found a really good site that I looked at earlier.

(SB page 53)

Check Vocabulary

(1) مدونات

(2) ملاحظات

(3) متحير

Help!!!!!!

Thanks,

Nagwa

Essay Dun

(WB page 30)

Download this app and you will never have to write an essay again! Just type in the title, the question you need to answer, and the word limit and the app will consult the system to create a perfect essay. It is 100 % reliable and works every time.

Excuse-a-Maker

This useful app has been updated to include 2,000 new excuses which can be adapted to any situation. Just upload a photo of yourself and say why you need the excuse and where you are. You will receive a new up-to-date photo with the time and date stamped on it with your excuse!

Are you internet smart ?

(WB page 30)

هل أنت ذكي في التعامل مع الإنترنت ؟

Do you really know how to **protect**⁽¹⁾ yourself **online**⁽²⁾ ? There are **several**⁽³⁾ things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong **password**⁽⁴⁾. Did you know the most **common**⁽⁵⁾ password in the world is '123456'?

The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a **special character**⁽⁶⁾ e.g. Tl342mS!*. It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يحمي

(2) على الإنترنت

(3) عديد

(4) كلمة مرور

(5) شائع

(6) رمز خاص

- When you go online, make sure you have upgraded⁽⁷⁾ your browser⁽⁸⁾ with the latest software⁽⁹⁾ update⁽¹⁰⁾ before you open a webpage⁽¹¹⁾.
- Be careful what you upload⁽¹²⁾. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see behind⁽¹³⁾ you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these tips⁽¹⁴⁾ seem obvious⁽¹⁵⁾, but you'll be surprised how many people are careless⁽¹⁶⁾ online. Stealing⁽¹⁷⁾ someone's identity⁽¹⁸⁾ is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

- (7) يُحدث - يُزقي
(8) متصفح
(9) برنامج
(10) تحديث / ترقية البرنامج
(11) صفحة على الإنترنت
(12) يرفع
(13) خلف / وراء
(14) نصائح
(15) واضح
(16) مُهمل
(17) سرقة
(18) هوية - شخصية

Targeted advertising

(5B page 54)

Our computers and smartphones⁽¹⁾ keep small pieces of information called cookies⁽²⁾, which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to⁽³⁾ make it easier for us to find things that interest⁽⁴⁾ us, but they also help advertisers⁽⁵⁾ to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert⁽⁶⁾ for something that seems⁽⁷⁾ to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising⁽⁸⁾.



Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise⁽⁹⁾ to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner⁽¹⁰⁾ adverts that always seem to appear⁽¹¹⁾ on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest⁽¹²⁾ places, like the small sponsored⁽¹³⁾ adverts that you find in search results⁽¹⁴⁾.

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) هواتف ذكية
(2) ملفات تعريف الارتباط
(3) تهدف إلى
(4) يثير اهتمام
(5) المعلنين
(6) إعلان
(7) يبدو
(8) الإعلان الموجه
(9) يعلن عن
(10) لافتة
(11) يظهر
(12) الأغرب
(13) ممول
(14) نتائج البحث

Don't believe everything you read !

(WB page 31)

The **title**⁽¹⁾ of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or **grandparents**⁽²⁾. Although it was **true**⁽³⁾ in the past, the **speed**⁽⁴⁾ at which we have **access to**⁽⁵⁾ new information means that this **warning**⁽⁶⁾ is even more important now.



In the past, **professional**⁽⁷⁾ **journalists**⁽⁸⁾ always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two **reliable sources**⁽⁹⁾ to make sure the story was correct. **Checking sources**⁽¹⁰⁾, and the time needed to **print**⁽¹¹⁾ something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old.

Today the internet **provides**⁽¹²⁾ **instant**⁽¹³⁾ news and is a place where anyone can **share**⁽¹⁴⁾ information with the rest of the world **at the touch of a button**⁽¹⁵⁾. This means that journalists often need to **publish**⁽¹⁶⁾ their stories quickly, so **fact-checking**⁽¹⁷⁾ isn't as good as it is meant to be. **This is why**⁽¹⁸⁾ not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Even **serious**⁽¹⁹⁾ newspapers, which are supposed to be reliable, can **make mistakes**⁽²⁰⁾. Shane Fitzgerald, an **Irish**⁽²¹⁾ **sociology**⁽²²⁾ student, wanted to **test**⁽²³⁾ the **influence**⁽²⁴⁾ of the internet. He posted a **fake**⁽²⁵⁾ phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French **musician**⁽²⁶⁾ who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read **all over the world**⁽²⁷⁾.

The **moral**⁽²⁸⁾ of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to **trust**⁽²⁹⁾ everything you read online without checking it first.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عنوان
- (2) أجداد
- (3) صحيح
- (4) سرعة
- (5) لديهم قدرة للوصول لـ
- (6) تحذير
- (7) محترف
- (8) صحفيون
- (9) مصادر موثوقة
- (10) التحقق من المصادر
- (11) يطبع
- (12) يوفر
- (13) فوري
- (14) يشارك
- (15) بلحظة زر
- (16) ينشر
- (17) توثيق الحقائق
- (18) لهذا السبب
- (19) جاد
- (20) يرتكب أخطاء
- (21) أيرلندي
- (22) علم الاجتماع
- (23) يختبر
- (24) تأثير
- (25) مزيفة
- (26) موسيقار
- (27) في كل أرجاء العالم
- (28) مغزى أخلاقي
- (29) يثق بـ

2 Listening Text



(SB page 56)

Hamdi : Hey Khaled, can you help me?

I'm doing a blog post on⁽¹⁾ how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include, please?

Khaled : Yes, sure. What have you got so far⁽²⁾ ?

Hamdi : OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your profile⁽³⁾. That's important on social media.

Khaled : Definitely⁽⁴⁾ !

Hamdi : Great! What shall I write?

Khaled : Well, I like seeing who I'm chatting with⁽⁵⁾ on social media, so I believe you should always put up⁽⁶⁾ a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I hate⁽⁷⁾ it when people have symbols⁽⁸⁾ or something instead of⁽⁹⁾ their photo – you don't know who you are talking to.

Hamdi : I disagree, symbols tell you more about someone's thinks.

Khaled : Really, Hamid? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth to show your age.

Hamdi : I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad behaviour⁽¹⁰⁾. So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled : After all, you have to be sensible⁽¹¹⁾ on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يكتب منشور عن

(2) حتى الآن

(3) الملف الشخصي

(4) بالتأكيد

(5) يدرّش مع

(6) يضع

(7) يكره

(8) رموز

(9) بدلاً من

(10) سلوك

(11) عاقل

Hanan : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up the other day⁽¹⁾ about social media behaviour⁽²⁾ in Egypt?

Leila : No, I was too busy updating my profile. Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مؤخراً

(2) سلوك على مواقع التواصل

Hanan : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. **Anyway**⁽³⁾, as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt **connect to**⁽⁴⁾ one **popular social media app**⁽⁵⁾ every day?

Leila : Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media **platform**!⁽⁶⁾ But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Hanan : Don't you worry about what all those people might see **on your profile**⁽⁷⁾? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something **stupid**⁽⁸⁾ now, and in a few years' time you **apply for**⁽⁹⁾ a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Leila : I see your **point**⁽¹⁰⁾, but in my opinion, social media should be personal and **has nothing to do with**⁽¹¹⁾ your job.

Hanan : I disagree. I read about a man who was **fired**⁽¹²⁾ from his job for **criticising**⁽¹³⁾ his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan : The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there **forever**⁽¹⁴⁾. So, be careful with those **selfies**⁽¹⁵⁾ you're taking! **Plus**⁽¹⁶⁾, Hany told me that he was once the **victim**⁽¹⁷⁾ of bad **behaviour**⁽¹⁸⁾ after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is **fine**⁽¹⁹⁾ now, but it really **affected**⁽²⁰⁾ him at the time.

Leila : Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so **cute**⁽²¹⁾ and my selfies all **look terrible**⁽²²⁾ anyway!

Hanan : I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo, too.

Leila : Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

(3) علي أي حال

(4) يدخل علي

(5) تطبيق تواصل اجتماعي شهير

(6) منصة

(7) علي حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)

(8) غبي

(9) يتقدم بطلب لـ

(10) أفهم ما تقصد

(11) لا علاقة له بـ

(12) يفصل من العمل

(13) ينتقد

(14) للأبد

(15) صورة سيلفي

(16) بالإضافة لذلك

(17) ضحية

(18) سلوك

(19) بخير

(20) يؤثر علي

(21) جميل

(22) يبدو فظيلاً

Narrator: 1

Dalida : Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it **keeps them entertained**⁽¹⁾ – there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never **bored**⁽²⁾.

Narrator: 2

Injy : Hi, I'm Injy. **Like**⁽³⁾ most of my friends, I think I'm **addicted to**⁽⁴⁾ the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm **missing something important**⁽⁵⁾. It means I have a lot of **arguments**⁽⁶⁾ with my parents **at mealtimes**⁽⁷⁾ and when we **go out together**⁽⁸⁾.

Narrator: 3

Ayman : Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. **Imagine**⁽⁹⁾ if you had to go to the library and read **loads of**⁽¹⁰⁾ books for every homework or project!

Narrator: 4

Osama : Hi, my name's Osama. I **game online**⁽¹¹⁾ which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

Narrator: 5

Girl 2 : Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer **programming**⁽¹²⁾ so I **go on forums**⁽¹³⁾ to **chat to**⁽¹⁴⁾ other **programmers**⁽¹⁵⁾ – students and people who **do it for a job**⁽¹⁶⁾. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't **solve**⁽¹⁷⁾ **to do with**⁽¹⁸⁾ programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تسليهم

(2) شاعر بالمثل

(3) مثل

(4) مدمن لـ

(5) يفتقد شيئاً هاماً

(6) خلافات - نزاعات

(7) في أوقات الوجبات

(8) نخرج معاً

(9) تخيل

(10) الكثير من

(11) يلعب على الإنترنت

(12) البرمجة

(13) يدخل على المنتديات

(14) يدرّش مع

(15) مُبرمجين

(16) يقوم بها كوظيفة

(17) يحل

(18) لها علاقة بـ

3 Video script section

Social media can keep us **in contact with**⁽¹⁾ friends, **entertain**⁽²⁾ us and keep us up-to-date. So, it's important to know how to use it safely.

First of all, take care with **privacy settings**⁽³⁾. Make sure that the only people who can see what you're posting are people who you want to contact online.

Think carefully about the information that you share. Why not use a nice image instead of your face in your profile? And never put real details about yourself online, such as your date of birth, school, home address or your telephone number.

Don't be unkind. If you haven't got anything nice to say, don't say anything. And always check that you know who you are sending messages to. Is it one person or a large group?

If you want to meet more people online, there are lots of groups that you can join. Look for one with people who share your interests. But if anyone asks to meet you in person, tell an adult. Never meet them **on your own**⁽⁴⁾.

(SB page 56)

Check Vocabulary

(1) على تواصل مع

(2) يُسلي

(3) إعدادات الخصوصية

(4) بمفردك

Part V

Language

seem to – (be) meant to – be supposed to

1 Seem to

a Seem – Seemed

- أهم ما تريد معرفته عن الفعل (seem) :

يُستخدم الفعل (seem) بمعنى (يبدو)، وهي تعني أن انطباع المتحدث قد يكون صحيح أو خاطئ :

seem = appear to be true

ex. - He seems ill. = I think he is ill but I am not sure.

تذكر أن الفعل (seem) لا يُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة :

ex. - She was seeming very pleased with her son. (X)

- She seemed very pleased with her son. (✓)

٣ تذكر أن الفعل (seem) لا يُبنى للمجهول :

- ex. - The window **is seemed** to be broken. (X)
- The window **seems** to be broken. (✓)

٤ الفعل (seem) هو أحد الأفعال التقريرية التي يتبعها صفة :

seem = adjective صفة

ex. - She seems **happy**.

٥ الفعل (seem) هو أحد الأفعال التقريرية التي لا يتبعها ظرف :

- ex. - She **seems nicely**. (X)
- She **seems nice**. (✓)

Mini Test 1

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Marwa upset today. I don't know why.
a. seem b. seemed c. is seeming d. is seemed
- He seems after losing his mobile.
a. anger b. angrily c. angry d. angrily
- She seems
a. friendly b. friend c. friends d. friendship

b جملة + seems / seemed

١ لاحظ الصيغ التالية مع الفعل (seem - seemed) - لاحظ أنه يمكن حذف (that) :

It seems / seemed + جملة + that / like + جملة يبدو أن ...

- ex. - It seemed **that** she didn't like the food.
- It seems **like** he's going to sell his old car.

It seems / seemed + جملة + as if + جملة يبدو كما لو أن ...

- ex. - It seems **as if** he needs help.

It seems / seemed + جملة + as though + جملة يبدو كما لو أن ...

- ex. - It seems **as though** we are wasting our time. He won't agree.

يمكن إضافة (to + subject) إلى الصيغ السابقة كالتالي :
 It seems / seemed + to + ضمير مفعول / اسم + that / as if / as though + جملة

ex. - It seemed to me that you didn't like the idea.

- It seems to mum as if Leen doesn't know what to do.

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It seems the shop will have to close down. They can't find a buyer for it.
 a. that b. if c. no word d. a & c
2. It seems if he wants everyone to feel sorry for him, but I don't.
 a. like b. as c. though d. a & b
3. It seemed as time was standing still. She wanted that moment to last forever.
 a. through b. though c. if d. b & c
4. It seemed she didn't like the food.
 a. like b. as c. to d. if
5. It seems she is excited about the offer.
 a. as b. if c. that d. b & c
6. It seemed everyone that the police were ready to secure the event.
 a. like b. to c. as if d. as though
7. It seems to as though she needs help.
 a. I b. my c. me d. myself

c Seem to

لاحظ الصيغ التالية مع الفعل (seem - seemed) - لاحظ أنه يمكن حذف (that) :

seem/seemed to + inf. ...

يبدو أن / يبدو وكأنه ...

ex. - He seems to train hard for the final match.

لاحظ تكوين الصيغة المنفية من (seem to + inf.) :

..... don't / doesn't / didn't + seem to + inf.

or : seem / seems / seemed + not to + inf.

ex. - She seems to work hard. (إثبات)

- She doesn't seem to work hard. (نفي)

- She seems not to work hard. (نفي)

في الصيغة المستمرة، تُستخدم (be + inf. + ing) بعد (seem to) لوصف حدث مستمر في المضارع أو الماضي حسب زمن (seem) :

seem / seemed + to + be + (inf. + ing)

ex. - He seems to be waiting for someone. (حدث مستمر في المضارع)
- They seemed to be looking for something in the sand. (حدث كان مستمر في الماضي)

في الصيغة التامة، تُستخدم (have + p.p.) بعد (seem to) لوصف حدث تم مسبقاً في الماضي :

seem / seemed + to + have + p.p. ...

ex. - He was relaxed. He seemed to have solved his problems.

للحظ الصيغة التالية :

There seems / seemed to be ...

يبدو أن هناك ...

ex. - There seems to be a problem with the air conditioner.
- There seemed to be some blood on the floor in the crime scene.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- He seems busy.
a. being b. to being c. be d. to be
- I don't like that man. He friendly at all.
a. seems b. doesn't seem c. never seem d. seem not
- Don't talk loudly. The baby seems in the next room.
a. sleeping b. asleep c. to be sleeping d. b & c
- A : Why don't you talk to him now?
B : Wait. He seems somebody important at the moment.
a. meeting b. is meeting c. to be meeting d. to have met
- A : Can you talk to him now?
B : Sure. The meeting seems
a. to finish b. to be finishing c. finishing d. to have finished
- There seemed no reason why she should not come with us, so we all travelled together.
a. that b. to be c. as if d. as though
- There seemed little difference between the two alternatives.
a. no word b. to be c. a & b d. as though

Advanced Notes

ملاحظات للفائقين

١) لاحظ الفرق في المعنى بين استخدام (seem) و (seemingly):

- He **seems** polite. (= He acts politely but I am not sure if he is polite or not.)
- He is **seemingly** polite. (= He acts politely but in fact he is not polite.)

٢) لاحظ الفرق بين (seem + adj.) و (seem to be + adj.):

- seem to be + adj. تُستخدم مع الصفات الموضوعية التي تصف حقائق.
- The doctors have done all the tests, and he definitely **seems to be** insane.
- seem + adj. تُستخدم مع الصفات التي تعبر عن الرأي الشخصي.
- She **seems to be older** than she is. (X)
- She **seems older** than she is. (✓)

في المثال السابق لا يمكن استخدام (to be) لأن ذلك يعنى أنها قد تكون فعليًا أكبر من سنّها الحقيقي وهذا مستحيل.

٣) يمكن أن يأتي اسم أو جملة بعد (seem like)

- It **seems like** he wants to apologise.
- The few minutes we waited **seemed like** hours.

٤) لاحظ الفرق في المعنى بين (seem) و (appear):

seem	appear
- تُستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق الموضوعية والآراء الشخصية والمشاعر: - She seems (to be) tired . (✓) - He seems taller than he is in this suit. (✓)	- تُستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق الموضوعية فقط: - She appears (to be) tired . (✓) - He appears taller than he is in this suit. (X)
- يمكن استخدام (like) بعد (seem): - It seems like he wants to leave.	- من غير المألوف استخدام (like) بعد (appear): - It appears like he wants to leave.

2 mean - mean to

a mean - meant - meant

- أهم ما تريد معرفته عن الفعل (mean):

١) يُستخدم الفعل (mean) بمعنى "يرمز إلى / يعنى / يدل على":

mean = indicate / symbolize

- ex. - When I shake my head, it usually **means** 'no'.
- The look on her face **meant** only one thing - sadness.

تُستخدم (mean) بمعنى "يعنى" لتوضيح معنى كلمة أو عبارة :

mean = signify / represent

ex. - A: What does the word 'exhausted' mean? B: It means 'very tired'.

لا يُستخدم الفعل (mean) بمعنى (يعنى / يقصد / يدل على) فى الأزمنة المستمرة :

ex. - The word 'exhausted' is meaning 'very tired'. (X)

- The word 'exhausted' means 'very tired'. (✓)

تُستخدم (mean) بمعنى "يقصد" لتوضيح المعنى الذى يقصده المتحدث :

ex. - I mean that we must hurry because we are late.

- A: Stand up, please. B: Do you mean me? B: No, the student next to you.

قد يوحى السؤال (What do you mean?) بالغضب (anger) أو الاحتجاج (protest) :

ex. - What do you mean by waking me up at midnight?

- What do you mean I can't do anything useful?

Mini Test 4

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "That rising sun meant that the weather would be warm." In this sentence, the verb 'meant' can be replaced by

a. planned b. indicated c. supposed d. had to

2. The verb 'to suppose' "to assume".

a. means b. is meaning c. was meaning d. is meant

3. "For most people, Paris means fashion and beauty." In this sentence, the verb 'means' can be replaced by

a. plans b. presents c. summarises d. symbolizes

b mean + (inf. + ing)

تُستخدم (mean + inf. - ing) بمعنى (يعنى / يؤدي إلى) للتعبير عن النتيجة التى يؤدي إليها شيء ما :

mean + (inf. + ing) = involve + (inf. + ing)

ex. - Losing this job means looking for another one.

- Wasting much money means not buying a new flat.

تُستخدم (mean + inf. + ing) للتعبير عن الضرورة (necessity) أو الإلزام (obligation) :
 يتطلب - يستلزم mean + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - Taking the six o'clock train means getting up at five.
 - I have to be at the airport by nine. It means getting up early.

C mean + that + جملة

يُمكن أن تأتي (that) وبعدها جملة كاملة بعد (mean) :

- ex. - I didn't mean that you are careless.
 - She means that I have to follow the rules.

تذكر أنه يمكن حذف (that) :

- I didn't mean you are careless.

d mean to + inf.

تُستخدم (mean to + inf.) بمعنى «ينوي» للتعبير عن النوايا أو الخطط :

mean to + inf. = intend / plan to + inf.

- ex. - He didn't mean to hurt you. It was all by mistake.
 = He didn't intend to hurt you. It was all by mistake.
 - Do you mean to finish this job by the end of the week?
 = Do you plan to finish this job by the end of the week?

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

mean + to + inf. + شخص / شيء

يريد ... أن / يقصد ... أن

- ex. - Parents never mean their children to suffer.
 = Parents never plan to make their children suffer.
 - I didn't mean the vase to break.
 = I didn't intend to break the vase.
 - Did you mean John to send those letters?
 = Did you want John to send those letters?

mean + for + شخص + to + inf.

- ex. - Parents never mean for their children to suffer.

مهم بالنسبة لـ ...

mean something to + شخص

- ex. - My family mean a lot to me.
 = My family is very important to me.

mean + the world / everything + to + شخص ... بالنسبة لـ ... مهم جداً / يعني كل شيء

ex. - Her son means the world to her.

= Her son means everything to her.

mean nothing to + شخص

غير مهم بالنسبة لـ ...

ex. - Your opinion means nothing to me.

take to mean ...

بفهم ... على أنه ...

ex. - I took her silence to mean shyness. الخجل

mean (someone / something) + noun :

يقصد - يعتمد

ex. - I know they didn't mean our family any disrespect. عدم احترام

mean + شيء + شخص

يعتمد أن ... لشخص

ex. - I have never meant him any harm. لم أتعهد أن أسبب له أي ضرر

Mini Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "Accepting this job means living in Alexandria." The verb means in this sentence can be replaced by
a. indicates b. involves c. symbolises d. seems
- "If you decide to try the exam, it will mean studying hard." This sentence expresses
a. intention b. expectation c. obligation d. necessity
- His happy expression means he has passed the exam.
a. that b. no word c. a & b d. to
- Did you mean this number?
a. to dial b. dialing c. that dial d. b & c
- I meant Yara the job. I really recommend her.
a. take b. to take c. taking d. a & c
- He meant Ahmed to be in charge.
a. by b. to c. with d. for
- My mother means to me. She is the most important person in my life.
a. the world b. everything c. a & b d. nothing

e ... be meant to + inf.

١ تُستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن الضرورة (necessity) أو الإلزام (obligation) :

... be meant to + inf. = be supposed to + inf. من المفترض أن

- ex. - You are meant to start work at seven.
= You are supposed to start work at seven.
- Come on, Sama. You're meant to help me.

٢ وتستخدم للتعبير عن المسؤولية (responsibility) أو الواجب (duty) :

... be meant to + inf. = be supposed to / intended to + inf. من المفترض أن

- ex. - You were meant to keep the children out of trouble.

٣ وتستخدم بمعنى (suitable) :

... be meant to = be suitable for مناسب لـ / يصلح كـ

- ex. - I don't think she's meant to be a teacher.
= I don't think she's suitable for the job of a teacher.

٤ كما تُستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض (purpose) من شيء ما :

be meant to + inf. = be supposed to / intended to + inf. الهدف منه / الغرض منه

- ex. - The police are meant to protect people.
- This map is meant to show the places in this large city.
- It was meant to be an apology but it only made her angry.
- The red button is meant to turn the machine on or off.

٥ تُستخدم (be meant for + noun) بمعنى (من المفترض أن تخص) :

... be meant for + noun اسم

- ex. - The bigger offices are meant for teachers only.
- These books are not meant for primary school students.

٦ لاحظ أن (be) تحدد الزمن، ففي المضارع نستخدم (am – is – are) بينما في الماضي نستخدم (was – were) :

- ex. - The gardener is meant to look after our garden. (مضارع)
- The gardener was meant to look after our garden. (ماضي)

٧ يمكن استخدام صيغة المبني للمجهول (be + p.p) بعد (be meant to) :

be meant to + be + p.p.

- ex. - My flat is meant to be decorated next week.

يمكن استخدام الصيغة المستمرة بعد (be meant to) لتدل علي حدث مستمر حسب الزمن :

be meant to + be + (inf. + ing)

ex. - You are meant to be studying your lessons. (حدث مستمر في المضارع)

- You were meant to be studying your lessons. (حدث مستمر في الماضي)

يمكن استخدام الصيغة التامة بعد (be meant to) لتدل علي شيء من المفترض أنه تم بالفعل في الماضي :

be meant to + have + p.p.

ex. - Before the guests arrived, everything was meant to have been prepared.

Mini Test 6

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Why are you here, Ali? You are to be in the garden watering the plants.
a. had b. meant c. seemed d. b & c
- This lorry to carry the new furniture.
a. means b. is meant c. is meaning d. mean
- Students are meant hard.
a. to work b. to working c. work d. to be worked
- The new villa overlook the sea.
a. means to overlook
b. means to be overlooke
c. is meant to be overlooked
d. is meant to overlook
- I don't think you are meant a basketball player.
a. to b. not to c. for d. that
- The car engine is meant before the drive to Alexandria.
a. to check b. to be checked
c. for checking d. to have checked
- Youssef is meant in his room. I don't know why he is here.
a. for studying b. to be studied
c. to have studied d. to be studying

3 من المفترض أن / يُفترض أن (be) supposed to

Important Basics ثوابت هامة

١ هذه الصيغة مبنية للمجهول وتبدأ بالمفعول :

ex. - The boys are supposed to go to bed at nine.

- في المثال السابق تلاحظ أن (The boys) مفعول للفعل (suppose) وليست الفاعل

٢ لا يمكن حذف حرف (d) من (supposed) في الصيغة (be supposed to) :

ex. - You are supposed to leave now. (Not: suppose)

٣ لابد من وجود مفعول وفعل (be) حسب الزمن قبل (supposed to). ولابد أن يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

v. to be

Obj. المفعول + Present or : Past + supposed to + inf. ... المصدر

I	am	was	supposed to	take part in the match. have enough food. be at work at 8:30.
He / She / It	is	was		
You / We / They	are	were		

Mini Test 7

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Your new job is to be more interesting and rewarding.
a. suppose b. supposing c. supposed d. supposedly
- We are supposed after school to play tennis.
a. meet b. to meet c. meeting d. to meeting
- Omar and I supposed to start a new project next month.
a. am b. is c. are d. were
- Some workers to come to carry the new furniture upstairs.
a. suppose b. supposed c. are supposing d. are supposed

Simple present form

الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع من :

المصدر ... inf. + supposed to + am is are + المفعول. Obj.

↓	↓	↓	↓
- I	am	supposed to	be there at 10.
- Aya	is	supposed to	arrive soon.
- The students	are	supposed to	study hard for the exam.

ونستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع في الحالات التالية:

التعبير عن اعتقاد شائع (**common belief**) بخصوص شخص / شيء معين :

ex. This hospital **is supposed to have** the best staff.

= Many people think that this school has the best staff.

التعبير عن التوقع (**expectation**) أو الترتيب (**arrangement**) في المضارع أو المستقبل :

ex. Manager: How many clients **am I supposed to meet** tomorrow?

Secretary: You **are supposed to meet** four clients, Sir.

التعبير عن المسؤولية (**responsibility**) أو الإلزام (**obligation**) أو الواجب (**duty**) في

المضارع أو المستقبل :

ex. - You **are supposed to be** quiet in a library.

- Leen **is supposed to look** after her baby sister when her mother goes out tomorrow.

التعبير عن النية (**intention**) أو الغرض (**purpose**) من شيء / شخص ما :

ex. - A TV channel logo **is supposed to help** viewers recognise it.

- A mobile **is supposed to be** used for making and receiving calls.

= A mobile **is meant to be** used for making and receiving calls.

= A mobile **is intended to be** used for making and receiving calls.

Simple past form الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي من :

المصدر ... inf. + supposed to + was were + المفعول Obj.

- Ahmed was supposed to arrive home at nine.
- The tourists were supposed to visit the pyramids.

وتُستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن نية أو غرض لم يتحقق:

- ex. - My new car was supposed to be perfect, but it broke down only two days after I had bought it.
- You were supposed to come first, but we were shocked by your low marks.

٢ التعبير عن ترتيب أو توقع لم يتحقق في الماضي، وغالباً يتبعها توضيح لذلك:

- ex. - The match was supposed to start at nine. However, the heavy rain delayed it.
- Why are you late, Moataz? You were supposed to be here at work at seven.
- I regret missing my plane. I was supposed to fly to London yesterday.

Continuous form (للاطلبية الفائقين) الصيغة المستمرة

تتكون الصيغة المستمرة في المضارع والماضي من :

Obj. المفعول + be + supposed to + be + (inf. + ing) ...

- Rodayna is supposed to be sleeping now.
- My brother was supposed to be playing in the garden.

وتُستخدم الصيغة المستمرة في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن حدث من المفترض أن يكون مستمراً الآن:

- ex. - I don't know why Rokaya isn't in her office. She is supposed to be typing some business letters.

٢ التعبير عن حدث يُفترض أن يكون مستمراً في وقت معين في المستقبل:

- ex. - Yara is supposed to be flying to London at five o'clock tomorrow.

٣ التعبير عن حدث يُفترض أنه كان مستمراً في وقت معين في الماضي:

- ex. - Omar was supposed to be watering the plants in the garden yesterday morning.

Perfect form

(للطلبة الفائزين) الصيغة التامة

تتكون الصيغة التامة من :

Obj. المفعول + be + supposed to + have + p.p. ...

- Sama

was

supposed to

have written the essay.

- The gardeners

were

supposed to

have watered the plants.

وتستخدم هذه الصيغة فقط في الماضي عندما يكون الافتراض نفسه في الماضي ويخص أحداث سابقة عليه (يشبه استخدام الماضي التام):

لاحظ الفرق في المعنى بين الصيغة التامة والصيغة البسيطة والصيغة المستمرة فيما يلي:

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he was supposed to have taken his football training. (صيغة تامة: كان من المفترض أن يكون قد انتهى من التدريب بالفعل قبل أن أراه)

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he was supposed to take his football training. (صيغة بسيطة: كان من المفترض أن يبدأ التدريب عندما رأيته)

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he was supposed to be taking his football training. (صيغة مستمرة: كان من المفترض أن يكون مستمر في التدريب عندما رأيته)

Mini Test 8

● ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Omar's plane supposed to land at nine o'clock tomorrow.

a. is

b. was

c. will

d. has

2. Omar's plane supposed to land at nine o'clock yesterday.

a. is

b. was

c. will be

d. has

3. Sama is supposed a taxi home after she finishes work today.

a. to take

b. to be taken

c. to be taking

d. to have taken

4. Sama has finished her work and now she is supposed a taxi on her way home.

a. take

b. to be taken

c. to be taking

d. to have taken

5. "Our school is supposed to have the best teaching staff." This sentence expresses a / an

a. arrangement

b. common belief

c. obligation

d. purpose

6. "I am supposed to take the six o'clock train." This sentence expresses a / an

a. arrangement

b. common belief

c. obligation

d. purpose

7. "Rodayna is supposed to arrive at school on time." This sentence expresses a / an
a. arrangement
b. common belief
c. obligation
d. purpose
8. "An air conditioner is supposed to cool the room." This sentence expresses a / an
a. arrangement
b. common belief
c. obligation
d. purpose
9. "You were supposed to return home before midnight." This means he arrived home by midnight.
a. could have
b. hadn't
c. needn't have
d. shouldn't have
10. "You were supposed to be in your office at eight, Rokaya." This means Rokaya in time.
a. was
b. wasn't
c. isn't
d. is

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

١ يمكن أن تأتي (be + p.p.) بعد (supposed to) عندما تبدأ الجملة بالمفعول الرئيسي:

- My father is supposed to see a doctor tomorrow.
= A doctor is supposed to be seen by my father tomorrow.

٢) تُستخدم صبغة النفي للتعبير عن حدوث شيء غير متوقع:

- The weather news said it would be sunny. It wasn't supposed to be rainy.
(وهذا يعني أنه كان هناك أمطار عكس المتوقع)

٢ يمكن أن تدل الصيغة المنفية على أن شيء ما غير مسموح به أو لا يُفترض أن يحدث:

- We are in hospital. You aren't supposed to smoke in here.
- A good student isn't supposed to make noise in class.

⚡ لاحظ صيغة الإستفهام:

- When is our meal supposed to be delivered?
- What time are we supposed to leave the office?

٥) يدل السؤال التالي غالباً على الضيق أو الحيرة:

- What am I supposed to do?

نُستخدم (Suppose / Supposing) في صيغة الأمر بمعنى (if) - لاحظ أنه يمكن حذف (that) في هذه الصيغة:

- جملة شرط + , + جملة جواب شرط + (that) + Suppose / Supposing
- Suppose / Supposing (that) we missed the train, what would we do?

نُستخدم (Suppose / Supposing) في صيغة الأمر بمعنى (what if) لتقديم افتراضات عما يمكن أن يحدث:

- Son: Can I go out, mum? Mum: Suppose you tidied your room first.
- Climbing without a rope is very clever, but suppose you fall down.

لاحظ المعاني المختلفة للتعبيرات التالية:

I suppose ... = I guess ...

- I suppose you are right. أظن أنك علي حق.
- A: Can I use your tablet? B: I suppose so. (موافق رغم أنك لا تريد ذلك).

نُستخدم للسؤال بشكل غير مباشر أو للطلب المهذب جملة + **I don't suppose (that)**

- I don't suppose you know why Ali is late. (سؤال يتوقع السائل أن الرد بالنفي).
- I don't suppose you can lend me 100 pounds. (طلب مهذب).

What's that supposed to mean? (ما الذي يعنيه ذلك؟) (تعبير عن الضيق)

A: I'll ask someone else to write the report again.

B: What is that supposed to mean?

Mini Test 9

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My manager is supposed to some new clients tomorrow.
a. meet b. be met c. have been met d. a & b
2. Some new clients are supposed to by my manager tomorrow.
a. meet b. be met c. have been met d. a & b
3. "It is a school day, Ahmed. You aren't supposed to be here at home."
This means
a. Ahmed isn't obliged to go to school.
b. Ahmed isn't expected to be at school.
c. Ahmed is expected not to be at school.
d. Ahmed isn't expected to be at home.

4. "You aren't supposed to drive on the left in Egypt." This means
- Driving on the left is allowed in Egypt.
 - Driving on the left isn't allowed in Egypt.
 - Driving on the left was allowed in Egypt.
 - Driving on the left wasn't allowed in Egypt.
5. you won a million dollars in a competition, what would you do?
- Suppose
 - Supposing
 - Supposing that
 - a, b & c

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

١ يُستخدم الفعل (suppose) في المبني للمعلوم بمعنى (يفترض / يعتقد / يظن):

- suppose = presume / assume / believe / guess / expect
- There are more guests than we have supposed.
- Rodayna is telling the truth, I suppose.

٢ يمكن أن تأتي جملة بعد الفعل (suppose) - لاحظ أنه يمكن حذف (that) في هذه الصيغة:

- ... suppose + (that) + جملة ...
- I suppose (that) she will refuse his offer.
- = I assume / presume (that) she will refuse his offer.

- ... suppose + to + be / have ... + شخص / شيء

- We have supposed Dr Omar to be very clever.
- I suppose her to have too much work to do today.

٣ تُستخدم (supposedly) كظرف جملة (sentence adverb) وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

- **Supposedly = It is supposed / believed / assumed** من المفترض
- Supposedly, he is the best student in class.
- He is the best student in class, supposedly.

Mini Test 10

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "She is taller than her husband, I suppose." The verb 'suppose' can be replaced by
 - guess
 - assume
 - consume
 - a & b
- She her father will refuse her request.
 - is supposed
 - supposes
 - supposes that
 - b & c

3. We suppose to be an ideal mother.
a. that b. she c. her d. herself
4., he will retire next year.
a. Suppose b. Supposing c. It supposes d. Supposedly

Exercises On Language

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- He unfriendly at first, but when you know him well, you will change this opinion.
a. seems like b. is seeming c. seems d. seems that
- They have attacked our borders. حدود This war!
a. means b. intends c. supposes d. refers
- Both Aya and you supposed to attend yesterday's meeting.
a. am b. is c. are d. were
- Whenever I hear Fayrouz's songs, it seems I haven't grown older since I first started to listen to them.
a. as b. as if c. to d. a & b
- When you look at famous people like Messi, they to have no problems at all. However, this is not true.
a. seem b. seems c. are seeming d. seemed
- You are meant in bed. I don't know why you are still awake.
a. for sleeping b. to be sleeping
c. being slept d. to be slept
- You're to support your sister; not to shout at her.
a. suppose b. supposing c. supposed d. supposedly
- It this man helps everybody in need.
a. seems to be b. seems that c. seems d. b & c
- The car engine is meant
a. to check b. to be checked c. be checked d. that check
- All students are supposed ready for the exams.
a. be b. to be c. being d. to being
- One of the team members to attend the press conference. المرکز الصحفي
a. suppose b. is supposed c. are supposing d. are supposed
- "You are meant the car engine.
a. to check b. to be checked c. be checked d. that check

13. The new furniture supposed to be delivered next Monday.
 a. is b. are c. was d. were
14. My English is much better than it was two years ago. For example, listening difficult, but now it is quite easy.
 a. seems b. seemed c. seemed like d. seems like
15. Sorry! I didn't to interrupt you."
 a. suppose b. mean c. seem d. b & c
16. The new furniture supposed to be delivered last Monday, but nothing arrived.
 a. has b. are c. was d. were
17. She seems excited about the offer.
 a. like b. as if c. to be d. that
18. He is supposed a rest after he studies unit 5.
 a. to take b. to be taken c. taking d. to have taken
19. His happy expression means he has passed the exam.
 a. that b. no word c. a & b d. to
20. This film seems boring.
 a. being b. to be c. now word d. b & c
21. He has studied unit 5 and he is supposed a rest now.
 a. be taken b. taking c. to be taking d. have taken
22. "What does this word mean?" The speaker wants to know what that word
 a. signifies b. intends c. signify d. intend
23. A rest is supposed after he studies unit 5.
 a. be taken b. to be taken c. to be taking d. have taken

2 Special cases

24. Amr supposed to have called his parents.
 a. is b. isn't c. was d. had
25. Ali wasn't at school today. That's strange because he well last evening at the party.
 a. seemed b. seemed like c. seemed to d. seemed as if
26. What ?
 a. is this word meaning b. was that word meaning
 c. this word means d. does this word mean
27. "When I get home, my mum supposed to be preparing lunch."
 a. is b. was c. has been d. had been

28. Mum: You won't go out with us, Nada.

Nada: What do you mean, mum?

- Nada's reply shows that she is

- a. not interested b. pleased c. thankful d. angry

29. most students in secondary schools want to join the faculty of medicine.

- a. He seems b. They seem c. It seems d. It is seemed

30. I don't know why he is unhappy. After coming first, he is supposed to his most important goal for the year.

- a. achieve b. be achieved c. be achieving d. have achieved

31. Getting up late means the train to Aswan.

- a. misses b. miss c. missing d. to miss

32. Mr Bahaa and I were university friends twenty years ago. Now we work together and it old days.

- a. seems b. seems like c. seems that d. a & b

33. When I called him, he was supposed to the essay. That's why I was surprised when he told me that he had already finished it.

- a. be busy doing b. be still doing
c. have already done d. a & b

34. I meant to return the books on time." The verb 'meant' can be replaced by

- a. planned b. intended c. required d. a & b

35. Mum me to be responsible for my little sister.

- a. supposing b. was supposed c. seemed d. meant

36. "When I called him, he was supposed to the essay. That's why I was surprised when he told me that he hadn't finished it by then.

- a. be busy doing b. be still doing
c. have already done d. a & b

37. You don't mind that you don't get the job.

- a. seem like b. seem to c. seem d. seemed

38. My father meant for you the office.

- a. run b. to run c. that runs d. runs

39. Some new clients were supposed to by my manager tomorrow

- a. meet b. be met c. have been met d. a & b

40. Omar unusually serious today.

- a. seem b. seemed c. is seeming d. is seemed

41. "The red light means stopping." This sentence expresses

- a. intention b. expectation c. obligation d. a & c

42. "Supposing you lost your money; how would you react?
 a. that b. no word c. to d. a & b
43. The happiness of my family means It is my goal in life.
 a. the world b. everything c. a & b d. nothing
44. Ashraf seemed He took part in a full match.
 a. not good b. well c. fitly d. unfit
45. "He is lying, I suppose." In this sentence, the verb 'suppose' means
 a. guest b. assume c. consume d. belief
46. I must apologise, but really I didn't you any harm.
 a. mean b. suppose c. seem d. make
47. There to be no reason for alarm.
 a. seems b. seem c. is seeming d. is seemed
48. Amira that her mother will support her.
 a. is supposed b. supposes c. supposing that d. a & b
49. In our company, everybody is to start work at eight.
 a. supposed b. meant c. seemed d. a & b
50. The new flat a view of the Nile.
 a. means to have b. means to be had
 c. is meant to have d. is meant to be had

3 Check your understanding

51. "My mother is supposed to have an operation tomorrow."
 Who do you think supposes in this sentence?
 a. My mother does. b. The doctor does.
 c. We do. d. The operation does.
52. "The police suspect **يشك** that he has a criminal background **تاريخ إجرامي**."
 What does this mean?
 a. It seems that he has a criminal background.
 b. He seems to have a criminal background.
 c. a & b
 d. His background is criminal.
53. "El-Moasser is supposed to be the best educational book."
 This is a / an
 a. arrangement b. common belief
 c. obligation d. a & c
54. "She means something to me." This means
 a. I have nothing special to her b. I hate her
 c. she is important to me d. I don't like her at all

55. "The wedding party is supposed to start at 11 p.m." This sentence expresses a / an
 a. arrangement
 b. common belief
 c. obligation
 d. purpose
56. "You are supposed to renew your driving licence next month when it expires." This sentence expresses a / an
 a. arrangement
 b. common belief
 c. obligation
 d. purpose
57. "Teachers are meant to make their students enjoy learning." This sentence expresses one of the teacher's
 a. duties
 b. responsibilities
 c. faults
 d. a & b
58. "I was supposed to watch the match in the stadium." This means he watch the match in the stadium.
 a. had
 b. hadn't
 c. didn't
 d. could have
59. "I think that she is a strict teacher." What does this mean?
 a. It seems that she is a strict teacher.
 b. As a teacher, she seems strictly.
 c. She seems to be a strict teacher.
 d. a & c
60. "You were supposed to be in shape, Saleh." This means Saleh overweight.
 a. isn't
 b. was
 c. wasn't
 d. was never
61. "I meant Rodayna to look after the baby." This means
 a. I intended to choose Rodayna to look after the baby.
 b. I was against leaving the baby with Rodayna.
 c. I told Rodayna not to look after the baby.
 d. a & c
62. "A smart TV is supposed to connect to the internet." Which of the following give / gives the same meaning?
 a. A smart TV is meant to join the internet.
 b. A smart TV is intended to join the internet.
 c. A smart TV is expected to join the internet.
 d. a, b & c
63. "I don't think you are meant for a lawyer." This means you are not for this job.
 a. important
 b. obliged
 c. suitable
 d. a & b

64. "You aren't supposed to use your mobile while driving." Which of the following give / gives the same meaning?
 a. You mustn't use your mobile while driving.
 b. You don't have to use your mobile while driving.
 c. You are allowed to use your mobile while driving.
 d. a & c
65. "I think she is busy." What does this mean?
 a. She seems to have been busy. b. It seems that she is busy.
 c. She seems to be busy. d. b & c
66. "You passed your exams, Ali. So, you were expected to be happy." This means
 a. Ali looks happy. b. Ali looked happy.
 c. Ali didn't look happy. d. Ali doesn't look happy.
67. "I can't seem to learn how to use this programme. I've tried a lot, but it was all in vain." دون جدوي In this sentence, "can't seem to learn" means
 a. it appears that I don't want to learn.
 b. it appears that I learn.
 c. it appears that I am able to learn.
 d. it appears that I am not able to learn.
68. "You aren't supposed to smoke in a public place." This means
 a. Smoking in a public place is allowed.
 b. Smoking in a public place isn't allowed.
 c. Smoking in a public place was allowed.
 d. Smoking in a public place wasn't allowed
69. "The police suspect that two children have gone missing." This means
 a. it seems that two children have gone missing.
 b. two children seem to have gone missing.
 c. a & b
 d. it is seeming that the two boys have gone missing.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تلميح : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح ▶

- ✱ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "There seems no reason to tell anyone." This phrase 'There seems no reason' means
 a. it appears there is a good reason
 b. it appears there is no reason
 c. I believe there is no reason
 d. I am sure there is a good reason

2. I didn't mean you.
a. hurting b. to hurt c. not hurting d. me to hurt
3. It only yesterday when I first met my wife.
a. seems b. seems to c. seems like d. a & c
4. "My mother is supposed to have an operation tomorrow." My mother is the of this sentence.
a. subject b. object c. speaker d. a & b
5. Some new clients are supposed to tomorrow.
a. meet b. be met c. have been met d. a & b
6. "I didn't mean to step on your foot." The speaker wants to express lack of
a. responsibility b. intention c. duty d. obligation
7. Suppose you see a large dog in a dark street, will you run away?
a. to b. not to c. what d. no word
8. "Aya seems nice." Is the speaker sure that Aya is nice?
a. Yes, he is.
b. Not in the least.
c. Yes, definitely.
d. No, it is just an impression he has had.
9. **Ali:** Would you mind lending me 2000 pounds? **Bassem:** I suppose so.
- The bold reply means that Bassem Omar's request.
a. refuses b. turns down
c. reluctantly agrees to d. strongly agrees to
10. They supposed a lot of money.
a. me to have b. I to have c. to have d. b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- لا يمكن أن تحل (appears) محل (seems) في هذا السياق، لذلك الاختيار الذي يؤدي المعنى هو (c)، أما (a / d) فيعطيان معنى مختلف
2.	b	- الصيغة (mean to + inf.) تعني (يقصد أو يتعمد أن) وهو الاختيار الوحيد المناسب للسياق
3.	d	- كل من (seems / seems like) صحيحتين في هذا السياق
4.	d	- كلمة (object) تعني (مفعول)، كما يمكن استخدام كلمة (subject) لتعني (موضوع الجملة) خاصة قبل الأفعال التقريرية. (راجع القاموس)

5.	d	- الفعل (meet) صحيح بمعنى (يتقابلون) والصيغة المبنيّة للمجهول (be met) أيضاً صحيحة بمعنى (يتم مقابلتهم)
6.	b	- الصيغة (be meant to ...) في حالة النفي تعبر عن انعدام النية أو القصد
7.	d	- لا حاجة لوجود أي كلمة في الفراغ، فالجملة صحيحة هكذا، وكلمة (Suppose) هنا مستخدمة كبديل لـ (If)
8.	d	- الصيغة (seem + adj.) تُعبر عن رأي شخصي وليس الحقائق الموضوعية
9.	b	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (turn down) يعني (يرفض) وهو ما يبدو واضحاً لأن السائل يقول (Do you mind) بمعنى (هل تمانع)
10.	a	- في هذا السياق، الفعل (supposed) فعل متعدي ولا بد من وجود مفعول

Part VI Language Hints from Reading & Listening

adapt

• adapt to

يتكيف / يتأقلم مع

بهذا المعنى يأتي بعد (adapt to) اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - Camels have adapted to life in the desert.

- Sama has adapted to travelling a lot as an air hostess. مضيئة طيران

يُكَيَّف / يُهيئ ... لـ

• adapt ... to

بهذا المعنى يأتي بعد (adapt ... to) فعل في المصدر (Inf.) :

ex. - Engineers have adapted petrol engines to use natural gas. الغاز الطبيعي

يُهيئ / يُعد ... لـ

• adapt ... for

ex. - They adapted this part of the park for children.

لأخذ الفرق بين:

• adaptability (n)

قابليّة التكيّف (القدرة على التكيّف مع موقف أو وضع معين)

ex. - His adaptability to different situations makes him successful.

عملية التكيّف أو التهيئة - التأقلم

• adaptation (n)

ex. - Adaptation to life in a foreign country takes some time.

ولاحظ أيضاً الفرق بين :

قابل للتكيف مع / سهل التكيف مع / مرن

• **adaptable (adj)**

ex. - He is **adaptable** to different situations.

مُهَيَّأ / مُكَيَّف مع

• **adapted (adj)**

ex. - This engine is well-**adapted** to using vegetable oil.

• **spend** •

• **spend money on+ n. / (inf.+ ing)**

= **spend the money to + inf.**

ينفق المال علي

ex. - I spent a lot of money on **(building)** this house.

= I spent a lot of money to **build** this house.

• **spend time + n. / (inf.+ ing)**

يقضي الوقت في

ex. - He **spent** an hour **writing** an essay.

• **It's a waste of time / money + (inf.+ ing)**

إنها مضيعة للوقت / المال

ex. - It's a waste of time **chatting** online.

• **Plus** •

يمكن استخدام **(plus)** لربط جملتين بمعنى **(بالإضافة إلى ذلك)**

• **Plus + جملة = in addition / besides + جملة**

ex. - She works hard. **Plus**, she looks after a big family.

= She works hard. **In addition**, she looks after a big family.

= She works hard. **Besides**, she looks after a big family.

• **be/have to do with** •

• **to do with + اسم = be related to + اسم**

متعلق بـ / على علاقة بـ

ex. - She is confident. It **has something to do with** her happy childhood.

• **teach – learn – know – show** •

يمكن استخدام **(how to + inf.)** أو **(to + inf.)** بعد هذه الأفعال :

ex. - I want you to **teach me (how) to ride** a horse.

Exercises On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rodayna has adapted in the countryside.
a. to live b. to living c. to life d. b & c
2. I adapted the water pump on electricity instead of petrol.
a. to run b. to running c. running d. b & c
3. Sama spends her pocket money chocolate.
a. to buy b. buying c. on buying d. a & c
4. It is a waste of money all this chocolate, Sama.
a. to buy b. buying c. on buying d. a & c
5. I spent the weekend after the plants in the garden.
a. looking b. to look c. on looking d. look
6. At the weekend, I was busy after the plants in the garden.
a. looking b. to look c. on looking d. look
7. He studies medicine., he is a professional squash player.
a. In addition b. Plus c. a & b d. In addition to
8. Omar refused to take the money. It is with his honesty.
a. being done b. to be done c. doing d. to do
9. I taught Ahmed how
a. drive b. to drive c. driving d. a & b
10. I showed him to park his car.
a. where b. no word c. if d. a & b

1

Writing Tips – Opinion with reason

التعبير عن الرأي مع ذكر السبب

Giving opinion with reasons

example

form	example
I think / believe...because... أعتقد أن ... لأن ...	- I think all people should help charity organisation because it needs help.
In my opinion / view...as... من وجهة نظري، ... لأن ...	- In my opinion, he should take a rest as he looks very tired.
If you ask me, ... should + inf. ... so that في رأيي، ينبغي على ... أن ... لكي ...	- If you ask me, you should join a charity so that you can help poor people.
- I agree / disagree because ... أتفق / لا أتفق لأن ...	- I agree because doing a sport keeps you fit.
- I see your point, but ... أتفهم وجهة نظرك لكن ...	- I see your point, but buying this car will cost a lot of money.

2

Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

Model Essay

* Write an email of about (180) words to your friend Nadi(a) telling him / her about the advantages and disadvantages of smart phones. Your email is nabil(a)@student.com and your friend's email is nadi(a)@student.com

From : nabil(a)@student.com

To : nadi(a)@student.com

Subject : advantages and disadvantages of smartphones

Dear Nadi(a),

How are you, Nadia? I hope you and your family are your best. It gives me great pleasure to send this email to you. I want to tell you about my opinion of smartphones.

Like everything else, smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On one hand, they have made communication easier than before. You can call anybody anywhere at any time. You can also send text messages. They allow you to send and receive video calls. You can also log on the internet quickly through them. Smart phones have a lot of applications that allow you to know and follow everything. And, believe it or not, you can work and get money through smartphones.

On the other hand, mobile phones have some disadvantages. People have stopped visiting each other because it has become easier to phone them. Some young people use smartphones in bad ways. They can also cause some health problems.

Finally, I think that we have to use smartphones in a way that makes us benefit from them and, at the same time, avoid their downsides. Now, what do you think of smartphones? I'm waiting for your reply.

Yours,

Nabil(a)

3 الترجمة Translation

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تنويه

① Translate into Arabic :

1. When you make friends on social networking sites, you only find out what these friends want you to know about them not their reality.
2. Getting into contact with other people is no longer difficult. Using social networking sites, you can communicate with friends and other people wherever they are whenever you want to.
3. Chatting to other people on social networking sites sometimes helps give young people confidence. The bad thing is that online friends may be different from their real personalities.
4. Be careful about putting your personal details online because they might be seen by anyone. Some evil people or websites may use these details to harm you or even to cheat other people.

• **② Translate into English :**

١. يمكن أن تكون وسائل الدردشة على الإنترنت ذات فائدة عظيمة إذا ما تم استخدامها لتبادل المعلومات المفيدة ومساعدة الآخرين على النجاح في حياتهم.
٢. لابد من رقابة الآباء على استخدام أبنائهم لمواقع التواصل الاجتماعي، فهناك بعض المواقع الهدامة التي تدمر أفكار الشباب وتدفعهم لتبني أفكار متطرفة.
٣. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لها كثير من الإيجابيات كما أن لها بعض السلبيات، فعلى كل فرد أن يستفيد من كل ما هو إيجابي وأن يتحاشى كل ما هو سلبي.
٤. لابد من استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة بشكل يفيد الفرد والمجتمع، أما استخدامها فقط كوسائل للترفيه وإضاعة الوقت فيعتبر أمر سلبي يؤدي لقتل الرغبة في العمل والانجاز.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

achievement	الانجاز	harm	ضرر
adopt	يتبنى	individual	الفرد
benefit	يستفيد / فائدة	make up	يخلق
cheat	يغش / يخدع	mentally	عقلياً
confidence	الثقة	monitor	يراقب
desire	الرغبة	observation	رقابة
destroy	تدمر	ordinary life	الحياة العادية
destructive	هدامة	reality	الواقع
entertainment	الترفيه	represent	يُمثل
exchange	يتبادل	thoughts	أفكار
extreme	متطرف	youth	الشباب

King Lear

Act

(II Scene iii) & Act (III Scene i)

أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

Vocabulary

apologise (d) (v)	يعتذر	patience (n)	الصبر
disagreement (n)	خلاف - نزاع	room (n)	مكان يتسع لـ - مجال
double (n)	ضعف	set eyes on	ينظر إلى
go mad	يفقد صوابه	shelter (n)	مأوى
joke (d) (n-v)	مزحة (نكتة) - يمزح	spy(ied) (n - v)	جاسوس - يتجسس
lock ... out	يمنع .. من دخول	turn your back on me	ترفض مساعدتي

Additional Exercise

تدريب إضافي (تدريب على سؤال اختر إجابتين صحيحتين من خمس اختيارات)

❖ Choose the **TWO** correct answers of the **FIVE** options given :

- I think Mr. Adham is a sensible man. The synonyms of "sensible" are
 a. sensitive b. practical c. responsible d. unreliable e. trustless
- Strange behaviour should be omitted from our society. The antonyms of "strange" are
 a. familiar b. unusual c. uncommon
 d. usual e. unknown
- She spends hours chatting her friend.
 a. of b. form c. to d. on e. with
- Hany was asked to his secret sources for this important information, but he refused.
 a. mention b. name c. speak d. talk e. get
- When something is up-to-date, this means that it is
 a. recently b. lately c. modern d. contemporary e. ancient
- When someone is stupid, they cannot be
 a. violent b. smart c. active
 d. silent e. intelligent
- The company her a message to ask about her continuous absence.
 a. posted b. spent c. received d. sent e. got
- To be reliable means to be
 a. avoidable b. trustworthy c. wealthy
 d. tricky e. dependable
- The teacher asked us to a perfect essay about housing problem in ten minutes.
 a. tell b. say c. write d. create e. prove
- Most people stayed indoors to safe during the spread of COVID 19.
 a. keep b. do c. rescue d. make e. stay

المفردات اللغوية للقصّة
موضع اختبار

للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية في
نهاية الكتاب

تلويح

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He had a with his cousin and they are not talking to each other.
a. patience b. room c. spy d. disagreement
2. There's no more in your room for another chair.
a. patience b. room c. spy d. disagreement
3. I for coming late.
a. apologise b. update c. upgrade d. b & c
4. It is their that told them about our plans.
a. patience b. room c. spy d. disagreement
5. is usually a positive quality.
a. Patience b. Laughing c. Spying d. Disagreement
6. We need a to protect us from the storm.
a. pot b. wind c. rain d. shelter
7. He has the books I have in my bag.
a. number b. double c. same d. least
8. We can't help laughing at his funny
a. tears b. anger c. jokes d. pain
9. Don't turn your back others. It is impolite to ignore them.
a. at b. with c. for d. in
10. I was locked I can't go in.
a. in b. out c. up d. down

Test on Unit 5

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



A. Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Professionals sports for a job, not as a hobby.
a. have b. create c. do d. name
2. He behaves in a sensible manner." This means he is not
a. foolish b. reasonable c. logical d. b & c
3. Nothing is more useful than people who have experience in their field.
a. advertising b. consulting c. downloading d. taking down
4. I trust Mr Ayman because he is and hard-working.
a. sponsored b. download c. outdated d. reliable
5. You can't leave comments on this website unless you first.
a. upload b. download c. outate d. subscribe
6. Not all my on Facebook agree with my opinions.
a. views b. followers c. upgrades d. tones
7. I don't know how you work with that woman. She to be helpful.
a. seems b. doesn't seem c. seems not d. b & c
8. His strict صارم behaviour doesn't mean he doesn't like you." In this sentence, the verb 'mean' can be replaced by
a. intend b. suppose c. assume d. indicate
9. Where we supposed to wait for the others to catch up with us?
a. do b. are c. have d. had
10. I suppose to be a good leader.
a. that b. he c. him d. himself
11. seems to be a mistake in these calculations. Can we check them?
a. He b. They c. Their d. There
12. My driving licence is supposed next month.
a. to renew b. to be renewed c. for renewing d. to have renewed
13. She will win the race,
a. supposedly b. supposed c. be supposed to d. supposing

14. "A lift is supposed to help us go upstairs." This sentence expresses a /
an
a. arrangement b. common belief
c. obligation d. purpose
15. I have adapted in the cold weather of Canada.
a. to live b. to living c. lives d. life
16. I have spent the last two weeks for my exams.
a. revising b. to revise c. on revising d. revise

B. Reading & Critical Thinking

- **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Organizations that build digital media products rely on multi-skilled teams and manage those teams with business processes designed to enhance their efficiency and effectiveness. For example, making a game requires storytellers, programmers, artists, data analysts, user experience designers, project managers and animators. "Throwing things over the wall" between siloed groups of experts is not an effective way to manage things. You have to ensure that they understand each other, work together creatively, and collectively pull off a result that delivers a world-class experience. The skills required to manage these multi-skilled team members and the fast-paced nature of the industry means that digital media producers have to have communication and collaboration skills as well as a depth and breadth of knowledge that is unprecedented.

Team members are educated on these two aspects – working in multi-skilled teams and engaging with a wide range of modern, creative business processes – while making digital media products that deliver value for people. Programs are designed to help graduates develop several core competencies that will serve them well in their careers.

A program should cater well to members with an entrepreneurial vision. In addition to developing their business skills, they also hone their abilities to pitch, seek the right partners and investors, and manage resources. It should offer pitched project and 'venture internship' options to help members create and launch a new business with a new digital media product.

- A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

17. The underlined words "Throwing things over the wall" in the passage mean
a. living in separate rooms b. learning how to shoot
c. good relationships d. lack of good relationships

18. According to the passage, a successful digital media production needs a / an business.
- a. teamwork
b. personally-skilled
c. individual
d. family
19. The underlined word '**launch**' in the passage can be replaced by
- a. sail
b. sell
c. start
d. succeed
20. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?
- a. The downsides of digital media
b. The Merits of Digital Media
c. Digital Media Teams
d. The Dangers of Digital Media

B. Answer the following questions :

21. What is this passage mainly about? Do you think it is a worthwhile idea?
22. What do you think the most important ingredients of success in a digital media team? Mention **TWO** basics with reasons.
23. If you are a member of a digital media team that work on a digital game, which role would you play? Why?
24. Do you think digital production team members should have “venture internship” options? Why / Why not?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Unlike online friends, real-life ones are more likely to help and care about you. However, online friends can give you information, transfer money to you and convey good feelings through words, images or videos.

26. Translate into English :

أصبح الكثير من الشباب يدمنون استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، فهناك منهم من لا يستطيع أن يترك هاتفه الذكي أو الكمبيوتر اللوحي من يده، وهذا يُفقد القدرة على التواصل مع الآخرين في الحياة العادية.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Online friends and real ones

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

◉ Reading :

Two extracts from an abridged version of A Christmas Carol by Charles Dickens

◉ Writing :

An essay on your regrets

◉ Listening :

A radio programme about regrets

◉ Speaking :

Role-play about recognising mistakes

◉ Language :

Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)

◉ Critical Thinking :

Learning from our mistakes

موقع
فديو
التعليمي



لإتقان الوحدة

- دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للمتابعة اليومية.
- ملحق المشاركات.
- تدريبات للأهر الشريف في دراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

Part I

Vocabulary

- اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية ومشتقاتها في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكراسة التفاعلية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

beg (ged) (v)	يتوسل - يستجدي - يتسول	lose touch	تنقطع علاقته به
bring ... back (phr.v)	يذكر - يُعيد ذكرى	mean (adj)	بخيل
fall out (phr.v)	يتشاجر - يتساقط	pile(d) (up) (v)	يُكوم / يُكدس - يتكدس
get into (phr.v)	يندمج - يالف - يستسيغ	pile(n)	كومة - عُرمة
get on with (phr.v)	يُحسن التعامل مع	sigh(ed) (v - n)	يتنهد - تنهيدة
hang out with (phr.v)	يُعاشر - يالف - يُرافق		
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال به		

2 Most Important Vocabulary

alone (adv)	وحيد	leader (n)	قائد
apparently (adv)	من الواضح - ظاهرياً	logical (adj)	منطقي
assistant (n)	مُساعد	main (adj)	رئيسي
attention (n)	انتباه - اهتمام	mall (n)	مركز تجاري (مول)
both (deter.-pron.)	كلا / كلتا / كل من	memory (n)	ذاكرة
butcher (n)	الجزار	necklace (n)	قلادة - عُقد
character (n)	شخصية	nephew (n)	ابن الأخ أو الأخت
close (adj)	مُقرَّب	opposite (adv - prep.)	في مواجهة
damage (d) (v)	يُدمر - يُفسد	organise (d) (v)	يُنظم
dark (n - adj)	ظلام - مُظلم	own (ed) (v)	يمتلك
disappointed (adj)	مُحبط - خائب الأمل	pay - paid - paid (v)	يدفع ثمن
donation (n)	التبرُّع	pocket (n)	جيب
employee (n)	موظف	regret (ted) (v - n)	يندم - الندم
employer (n)	صاحب عمل	relationship (n)	علاقة
feedback (n)	التغذية الاسترجاعية	reunion (n)	جمع الشمل
fire (n)	مدفأة	sadly (adv)	من المُحزن

foggy (adj)	ضبابي - أغيش	sick (adj)	مريض
friendly (adj)	ودود - ودي	terrible (adj)	فظيع
friendship (n)	صداقة	tone (n)	نبرة صوت
generous (adj)	كريم - سخّي	treat (d) (v)	يعامل
gift (n)	هدية - منحة - موهبة	unfriendly (adj)	عدائي - قاتر
honest (adj)	أمين	upset- upset (adj - v)	متزعج - يزعج
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل - يتغاضى عن	wake - woke - woken (v)	يستيقظ - يوقظ
including (prep)	بما في ذلك	warm (adj)	دافئ
invite (d) (v)	يدعو - يعزم	wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي

3 Definitions تعريفات

beg(ged) (v)	يتوسّل - يستجدي	to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
bring back (phr. v)	يُذكر - يُعيد ذكري	make you remember
fall out (phr. v)	يتشاجر - يقاطع	- to stop being friendly - to have a quarrel
get into (phr. v)	يألف - يندمج	- to start enjoying - to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it
get on with (phr. v)	يُحسن التعامل مع	to be friendly with
hang out with (phr. v)	يُعاشِر - يألف - يُرافق	to spend time with
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال به	to continue to communicate with
lose touch (with)	تنقطع علاقته به	to stop communicating (with)
mean (adj)	بخيل	not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
pile (n)	كومة - عُرمة	a group of things put on top of each other
sigh (n)	تنهيدة	a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Key & Important Vocabulary

1. Walid doesn't have any friends here. That's why he feels all
 a. apparently b. alone c. sadly d. completely
2. Ali usually my comments. He never replies to them.
 a. ignores b. upsets c. treats d. fires
3. Hassan's words made us all leave the meeting.
 a. generous b. kind c. warm d. unfriendly
4. Ashraf's as a teacher makes him very successful. He has
 a natural ability to teach children.
 a. reunion b. tone c. gift d. regret
5. It is that a child makes mistakes.
 a. main b. logical c. disappointed d. foggy
6. I him to give me two more days to pay back his money.
 a. piled b. begged c. forgave d. let
7. Don't expect from someone that is to donate any money.
 a. main b. foggy c. generous d. mean
8. He is with his money. The poor like him very much
 a. generous b. sick c. warm d. unfriendly
9. When my mother didn't find out that I had broken the vase, I
 in relief.
 a. sighed b. meant c. fired d. piled
10. I don't know what time I will have checked the of students'
 essays in front of me.
 a. gift b. tone c. pile d. reunion
11. Winning the gold medal is a happy I will never forget.
 a. attention b. memory c. donation d. relationship
12., everything went well. That's clear to everyone.
 a. Apparently b. Alone c. Sadly d. Unluckily
13. Using her things without permission really her.
 a. ignores b. upsets c. treats d. fires
14. My mother cares very much about family
 a. reunion b. tone c. distraction d. regret

15. The housing problem is the interest of the government this year.
 a. main b. lonely c. disappointed d. foggy
16. We are not friends. We have an employer-employee
 a. attention b. memory c. donation d. relationship
17. Our is more important to me than business. I can't do without
 you. يستغني عن
 a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship
18. She floods her children with her feelings.
 a. disappointed b. sick c. warm d. unfriendly
19., she refused our help. We knew she needed it badly.
 a. Luckily b. Alone c. Sadly d. Completely
20. My father took us all to the park, my baby sister.
 a. including b. inviting c. firing d. extracting
21. The officer ordered his soldiers not to their guns without his
 permission.
 a. ignore b. upset c. treat d. fire
22. Your is no use. Forget about your past failures and get ready
 for a new start.
 a. reunion b. tone c. gift d. regret
23. It is very dangerous to drive fast on a road.
 a. main b. logical c. disappointed d. foggy
24. Charities depend mainly on from generous people.
 a. attacks b. memories c. donations d. relationship

2 Definitions

25. To is to make you remember.
 a. lose touch b. keep in touch with
 c. bring back d. get into
26. To is to stop being friendly or to have a quarrel.
 a. hang out with b. get on with c. get into d. fall out
27. To is to be friendly with.
 a. hang out with b. get on with c. get into d. fall out
28. To is to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very
 much.
 a. ignore b. upset c. regret d. beg

29. To is to spend time with.
 a. hang out with b. get on with c. get into d. fall out
30. To is to continue to communicate with.
 a. lose touch b. keep in touch with
 c. bring back d. get into
31. A is a group of things put on top of each other.
 a. touch b. pile c. sigh d. beggary
32. To is to stop communicating.
 a. lose touch b. keep in touch with
 c. bring back d. get into
33. To be means not happy to spend money or give anything to other people.
 a. mean b. begger c. logical d. disappointed
34. A is a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed.
 a. touch b. pile c. sigh d. beggary

Part II Vocabulary Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

change	his mind	يغير رأيه	have	a bad dream	يري حلماً مزعجاً
do	exercise	يتمرن		a bad relationship with	علاقة سيئة بـ
feel	ignored	يشعر بالتجاهل		a cold	يعاني من نزلة برد
fire	a gun	يطلق النار		a conversation	يتحاور - يتحدث
get	angry	يغضب	miss	dinner	يتناول وجبة العشاء
	burnt	يحترق		a train	يفوته القطار
	lost	يتوه		donations	يحتاج تبرعات
	worse	يزداد سوء		attention to	يُنْتَبِه - يولي اهتمام بـ
give	... a smile	يبتسم	see	his mistakes	يدرك أخطائه
go	home	يذهب للمنزل	take	a taxi	يستقل تاكسي
make	new friends	يُكوّن صداقات جديدة	waste	his time	يضيّع وقته

Mini Test 1 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I a bad dream last night.
a. had b. went c. gave d. paid
2. The so many friends you have prove that you are sociable.
a. needed b. paid c. made d. fired
3. You need to enough attention to your education.
a. pay b. miss c. fall d. had
4. We can say that somebody has angry, burnt or lost.
a. had b. gone c. seen d. got
5. The donations will be spent on the poor children.
a. needed b. missed c. done d. fired
6. No one likes to ignored.
a. pay b. miss c. feel d. have
7. He usually his mistakes when he calms down.
a. makes b. goes c. sees d. gets
8. He his gun at the thieves.
a. needed b. paid c. made d. fired
9. I got up late, so I the school bus.
a. paid b. missed c. felt d. had
10. I will home once I have finished typing the report.
a. have b. go c. see d. give

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
alone	وحيد	lonely - isolated - solitary - deserted - abandoned - friendless - desolate
apparently	من الواضح - ظاهرياً	seemingly
disappointed	مُحَبَّط - خائب الأمل	frustrated - saddened - upset
ignore	يتجاهل	disregard - pay no attention to
logical	منطقي	reasoned - reasonable
mean	بخيل	stingy - cheap
mean	قاسي	unkind - cruel

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
alone	وحيد - غير مرغوب فيه	loved - wanted	محبوب - مطلوب
disappointed	مُحَبَّب - خائب الأمل	pleased - satisfied	سعيد - راضي
foggy	ضبابي - أغيش	clear	صافي
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	عَدَائِي - فاتر
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين
ignore	يتجاهل	pay attention to	يهتم بـ
logical	منطقي	irrational - illogical	غير منطقي
mean	بخيل	generous	كريم - سخّي
mean	قاسي	kind	طيب - عطوف

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "Having no friends makes him feel alone." The adjective 'alone' in this sentence is the antonym for
 a. loved b. unwanted c. lonely d. b & c
- "I feel so alone in my new school". This means I feel
 a. loved b. unwanted c. lonely d. b & c
- "It is difficult that such a mean person will donate anything." In this sentence, mean gives the of generous.
 a. synonym b. acronym c. antonym d. b & c
- What you say seems logical to me. This means I find it
 a. irrational b. rational c. illogical d. incredible
- "He is apparently kind." This means I am he is really kind.
 a. sure b. certain c. not sure d. against
- "I was disappointed by her reaction." This means her reaction didn't me.
 a. please b. satisfy c. a & b d. shock
- He didn't pay attention to me. This means he me.
 a. ignored b. welcomed c. hanged out d. got into
- 'Apparently' is to 'seemingly' as is to isolated.
 a. loved b. alone c. wanted d. a & c

a deep breath out	زفير شديد	go past	يمر به
according to	حسب / طبقاً لـ	in a logical order	بترتيب منطقي
as a gift from me to	كهدية مني لـ	in a way that shows	بطريقة توضح أن
as usual	كالمعتاد	in an unfriendly tone	بنبرة عدائية
as well	أيضاً	in contact with	على اتصال بـ
bad for	ضار بـ	keep them warm	تدفئهم
be friendly with	ودود مع	lose touch with	تقطع العلاقة مع
be happy about	سعيد بـ	make ... change	يجعل ... يتغير
be late for	متأخر على	move away	يتعد
come inside	يدخل	need help with	بحاجة مساعدة في
do this for me	تفعل هذا لأجلي	spend money on	ينفق مالاً على
each other	بعضهم البعض	suncream	كريم واقى من الشمس
far away	بعيد	take an interest in	يظهر اهتماماً بـ
feel so alone	يشعر بالوحدة الشديدة	treat ... badly	يعامل ... بشكل سيء
go back in time	يتذكر ما مضى - يعود بالزمن	upload ... to a website	يرفع ... على موقع
go on a picnic	يذهب في نزهة	well-written essay	مقال مكتوب جيداً

argue with	يتجادل مع	invite ... to	يدعو ... إلى
ask ... for	يطلب ... من	learn from	يتعلم من
care about	يهتم لأمر	pay ... to	يدفع ... لـ
communicate with	يتواصل مع	pick up	يتناول - يلتقط
continue to	يستمر في	run off	ينطلق
feel about	يشعر تجاه	speak to	يتحدث إلى
forget to	ينسى أن	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
get into	يألف - يبدأ في الاستمتاع بـ	work for	يعمل لحساب / لدي

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I forgot the door. This means I didn't close it.

a. to close

b. closing

c. close

d. closes

2. After leaving school, try hard to in contact with your schoolmates.
 a. make b. keep c. pay d. take
3. It is a waste of time arguing such a fool.
 a. for b. into c. off d. with
4. Take this mobile a gift from me to you.
 a. such b. such as c. as d. like
5. Mrs Amira thanked us our hard work.
 a. for b. into c. off d. with
6. I saw Nagwa in the party. I saw Hana
 a. too b. as well c. either d. a & b
7. He picked up his keys and ran
 a. for b. into c. off d. by
8. According experts, gold prices will rise again.
 a. of b. to c. from d. into
9. He got playing chess. He started to enjoy it.
 a. for b. into c. off d. with
10. It was when I was 16 that I started to interest in watching football matches on TV.
 a. like b. do c. be d. take

6 المشتقات Derivatives

Verb	noun	adjective
beg(ged) يتوسَّل - يستجدي - يتسول	beggar مُتَسَوِّل (شحات) beggary الفقر المُدَقِّع	
mean يعنى يقصد	meanness البُخل - الشُّح	mean بخيل meaningful ذو معنى meaningless بلا معنى
employ يُوظِّف - يُشغِّل	employee موظف employer صاحب عمل employment التشغيل - التوظيف unemployment البطالة	employable مؤهل للتوظيف

Mini Test 4 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He doesn't like to spend money out of
a. meaningful b. meaningless c. mean d. meanness
2. What a story. It has a useful moral.
a. meaningful b. meaningless c. mean d. meanness
3. What you say is to me. I don't understand it.
a. meaningful b. meaningless c. mean d. meanness
4. Yesterday, I my elder brother to help me understand a math lesson.
a. beg b. begged c. begger d. beggary
5. I don't want money, sir. I am not a
a. beg b. begged c. beggar d. beggary
6. is a serious problem in most poor countries.
a. Beg b. Begged c. Beggar d. Beggary
7. I am one of the in this large company.
a. employ b. employees c. employer d. employs
8. I hope that my will agree to promote me.
a. employ b. employee c. employer d. employs

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

get on with ≠ fall out with

- **get on with + شخص (phr. v)** يُحسن التعامل مع - يكون علي علاقة جيدة بـ
- I have two close friends whom I **get on with**.
- **get on with + شيء (phr. v)** يستمر في القيام بـ
- Stop talking and **get on with** your task, Salma.
- **get on + (phr. v)** يتأقلم
- After two weeks, Sama started to **get on** at her new school.
- **fall out with + شخص = to have a quarrel with (phr. v)** يتشاجر مع
- Don't **fall out with** people or you will have no friends.
- **fall out (phr. v)** يتساقط - يسقط
- A lot of girls suffer from their hair **falling out**.

hang out with ≠ spend no time with• **hang out + (with)** شخص

يقضي وقت طويل (مع شخص / في مكان)

- Can you tell me who you have been **hanging out with**?
- I don't know where Karim **hangs out**.

لاحظ أن الفعل (hang) بهذا المعنى تصريفه الثاني والثالث (hung) أما إذا كان الفعل (hang) بمعنى (يعدم) يكون فعل منتظم ويُصَرَّف بإضافة (ed).

• **spend no time + (with)** شخص

لا يقضي وقت مع

- My father is so busy that he nearly **spends no time with** us at home.

keep in touch (with) ≠ lose touch (with)• **keep in (close) touch + (with)** شخص

يبقى على تواصل مع

• **keep in (close) contact + (with)** شخص

يبقى على تواصل مع

- Video calls help me **keep in touch with** my brother in Saudi Arabia.
- My mother **keeps in close contact with** us all.

• **lose touch + (with)** شخص

يفقد التواصل مع

- He travelled abroad long years ago and I **lost touch with** him.

get into ≠ stop being interested in• **get into (phr. v)**

يبدأ في الاستمتاع به - يألف - يَنخَرط في

- A student who is not sociable finds it difficult to **get into** new friendships.

• **get into / in + مكان (phr. v)** يدخل- **get in**

يدخل (به / بدون مكان)

- The door is locked, so I can't **get into / in** our flat.
- The door is locked, so I can't **get in**. (**Not:** get into)

• **stop being interested in**

يفقد الاهتمام به

- Rami **stopped being interested in** football.

bring back• **bring ... back (phr. v)**

يُذَكِّر - يُعيد ذكرى

- Seeing any of my old friends **brings back** a lot of childhood memories.
- = Seeing any of my old friends **brings** a lot of childhood memories **back**.

• **bring ... back (phr. v)**

يُعيد - يستعيد

- My father has decided to **bring back** our old house.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A sociable person others even if he or she doesn't like them.
a. gets on b. gets on with c. falls out d. falls out with
2. Some employees helped me at my new work.
a. get on b. get on with c. fall out d. fall out with
3. One of my son's teeth has just
a. got on b. got on with c. fallen out d. fallen out with
4. I have one of my classmates and we no longer talk to each other.
a. got on b. got on with c. fallen out d. fallen out with
5. When you are away, I hope we will
a. keep in touch with b. keep in touch
c. lose touch with d. lose touch
6. When you are away, I hope I won't you.
a. keep in touch with b. keep in touch
c. lose touch with d. lose touch
7. He always Omar. They spend most of their time together.
a. loses touch with b. falls out
c. hangs out with d. spends no time with
8. I accepted her excuse because she is new here and is starting to secretarial work.
a. get into b. get on c. fall out with d. a & c
9. The red light is on. That means I can't get
a. to b. into c. in d. b& c
10. Looking at a photo of my grandmother memories of the children tales حكايات she used to tell us.
a. gets into b. gets up c. brings back d. hangs out

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

تنويه

mean

• mean – meant – meant = represent (v)

يعني - يُعطي معنى

- What does this word mean?

• mean – meant – meant = intend (v)

يقصد - يتعمّد - ينوي

- He didn't mean to hurt you.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• mean to + inf.

يقصد - يتعمّد

- I am sure she didn't mean to break the vase.

• mean + شيء / شخص + to + inf.

يقصد أن + شخص / شيء ...

- I haven't meant the vase to break.

لم أقصد أن تنكسر الزهرية.

- I didn't mean Sara to hear what I told you.

لم أقصد أن تستمع سارة لما قلته لك.

• mean for + شخص + to + inf.

يقصد أن ...

- Did you really mean for Salah to get hurt?

هل كنت حقًا تقصد أن يُصاب صلاح؟

• mean no + harm / offence / disrespect

لا يقصد اضرار / الإساءة / الإهانة ...

- My friend is sure I have meant no harm. It all happened by mistake.

• mean – meant – meant = require (v)

يتطلب - يستلزم

- You want to keep fit. This means doing regular exercise.

• mean (to) (adj) طيب / عطوف ≠ kind قاسي علي

- Stop shouting at her. That's a mean thing to do.

• mean (with) (adj) بخيل مع = stingy / cheap

- We don't ask him for help because he is mean with both his money and effort.

جهد

• meaningful (adj) لا معني له / غير مفهوم ≠ meaningless ذو معني أو مغزي - هام

- The numbers and symbols on this paper are meaningful only to scientists.

للمزيد عن الفعل (mean) يمكن الرجوع لشرح الوحدة الخامسة

fire

مدفأة / موقد

• fire (n)

- We all sat around the fire.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- in front of the fire أمام المدفأة
 - by the fire بجوار المدفأة

نار - حريق

• fire (n)

- The mall caught fire and it was completely destroyed.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

مُشتعل

• be on fire = burning

- The house was on fire. = The house was burning.

تشتعل فيه النيران

• ... catch a fire

- The house caught fire.

تشتعل النيران

• a fire breaks out

- The fire broke out at midnight.

تنطفئ النيران

• a fire goes out

- There was no more wood and the fire went out.

يبدأ الحريق

• start a fire

- The fire started with a cigarette end.

• set fire to ... = set ... on fire يُشعل النيران في

- The criminal set fire to the house and ran away.

- The criminal set the house on fire and ran away.

• make a fire

- The weather was cold, so we made a fire to keep us warm.

يُشعل نار

• put out a fire = extinguish a fire

- The heavy rain put out the fire in the wood.

يُطفئ النار

• fire (n)

- The soldiers opened fire on the enemy troops.

إطلاق نار (كلمة لا تُعد)

• fire (at / on / into) (v)

- The soldiers fired at the enemy troops.

يطلق النار (علي)

• fire (from) = sack / dismiss (v)

- He was fired from the office because he was not honest.

يفصل من العمل

beg

• **beg(ged) (to / for) (v)**

- The boy **begged to** go out with his friends.
- I **begged** my manager **to** give me another chance.
- I felt sorry when the old man **begged for** help.

يتوسل - يستجدي

• **beg(ged) (v)**

- It breaks my heart to see a little child **begging** money from people in the streets.
- The old woman was **begging** for the price of medicine.

يتسول (يشح)

- I **beg** your pardon.- I **beg** of you.= please- **beg** to differ

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

أسألك المعذرة (أرجو أن تسامحني)

من فضلك

أسمح لي أن أختلف معك

متسول (شحات)

• **beggar (n)**- Some **beggars** pretend to be disabled. مُعاق• **beggar(ed) (v)**- His big family have **beggared** him.

يُفقّر

• **beggary (n)**

الفقر المدقع - العوز

- In most African countries, a lot of people suffer from **beggary**.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To me, your help too much.

a. supposes

b. piles

c. means

d. a & c

2. Supporting a football team is something fun. I don't think it is worth over.

a. falling out

b. falling out with

c. getting on

d. getting on with

3. She had just started to teaching when she married and moved to Cairo.

a. hang out

b. get into

c. get on with

d. b & c

4. The old temple has been to life through careful restoration الترميم.

a. got into

b. brought back

c. hanged out

d. fallen out

5. A: I think it is a great plan.

B: I to differ. Practically, it is useless.

a. beg

b. big

c. pile

d. sigh

6. After brushing her hair, she usually it on top of her head.
 a. hangs out b. fires c. ignores d. piles
7. Spending money carelessly will soon you.
 a. beg b. beggar c. beggary d. a & b
8. What puzzles me a lot is how young people those tight trousers.
 a. get into b. hang out c. fall out with d. get on
9. To make the rules to children, put them – the rules – in context.
 a. mean b. meaning c. meaningful d. meaningless
10. He travelled abroad to earn more money. He didn't mean to suffer.
 a. you b. for you c. to you d. a & b

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- الفعل (means) بمعنى (يعني) هو الاختيار الصحيح حسب مضمون الجملة
2.	a	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (falling out) بمعنى (الشجار / الخصام) هو الاختيار الصحيح وليس (falling out with) لعدم وجود الطرف الثاني للنزاع بعد الفراغ
3.	d	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (get into) بمعنى (يبدأ في الاستمتاع بـ) وكذلك (get on with) بمعنى (يتأقلم علي) يصلحان في هذا السياق
4.	b	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (brought back) يعني (تم إحياءه / أعيد)
5.	a	- التعبير (I beg to differ) يعني (اسمح لي أن أختلف معك)
6.	d	- الفعل (piles) بمعنى (يجمع / يعقد) هو الاختيار الصحيح حسب مضمون الجملة
7.	b	- الفعل (beggar) بمعنى (يُفقر) هو الاختيار الصحيح حسب مضمون الجملة
8.	a	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (get into) بمعنى (يرتدون) هو الاختيار الصحيح
9.	c	- الصفة (meaningful) بمعنى (مفهوم / ذو مغزى) هي الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح في هذا السياق
10.	d	- كل من (you / for you) بعد (mean) صحيحين بمعنى (يتعمد أن يجعلك)

1 Reading Texts

A Christmas Carol

ترنيمة الميلاد (رواية لـ "تشارلز ديكنز")

SB page (62)

It was the end of December. It was **dark**⁽¹⁾ outside and the streets were **foggy**⁽²⁾. Scrooge was a very rich **businessman**⁽³⁾, but he was **mean**⁽⁴⁾ and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his **assistant**⁽⁵⁾, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't **pay for**⁽⁶⁾ a big **fire**⁽⁷⁾ to **keep them warm**⁽⁸⁾.

There was only a small fire and it was very **far away**⁽⁹⁾. "It's late. Can I **go home**⁽¹⁰⁾, Mr Scrooge?" Bob **begged**⁽¹¹⁾. "Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the **enormous**⁽¹²⁾ **pile**⁽¹³⁾ of work left to do and **sighed**⁽¹⁴⁾.

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.

"No," said Scrooge.

Suddenly⁽¹⁵⁾ the door opened and Scrooge's **nephew**⁽¹⁶⁾, Fred, **came into**⁽¹⁷⁾ the office. He gave his uncle a **friendly**⁽¹⁸⁾ **smile**⁽¹⁹⁾.

"Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're **poor**⁽²⁰⁾. What have you got to **be happy about**⁽²¹⁾?"

"If you are so **rich**⁽²²⁾, why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "**Perhaps**⁽²³⁾ if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, **too**⁽²⁴⁾."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an **unfriendly**⁽²⁵⁾ **tone**⁽²⁶⁾.

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to **invite**⁽²⁷⁾ you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) ظلام - مُظلم
- (2) ضبابي - أغيث
- (3) رجل أعمال
- (4) بخيل
- (5) مُساعد
- (6) يدفع ثمن
- (7) مدفأة
- (8) تدفئهم
- (9) بعيد
- (10) يذهب للمنزل
- (11) يقول متوسلاً
- (12) ضخّم
- (13) كومة - عُرمة
- (14) يتنهد
- (15) فجأة
- (16) ابن الأخ
- (17) يدخل
- (18) وودود
- (19) ابتسامَة
- (20) فقير
- (21) يسعد بـ
- (22) غني
- (23) ربما
- (24) أيضاً
- (25) غداً - فاطر
- (26) نبرة صوت
- (27) يدعو - يعزم

A Christmas Carol :

After a dream

The next morning, Scrooge woke up⁽¹⁾ in his bed. He'd had a terrible⁽²⁾ dream, but now he could see his mistakes⁽³⁾. If he hadn't felt so alone⁽⁴⁾, he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated⁽⁵⁾ other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) استيقظ
- (2) فظيع
- (3) يدرك أخطائه
- (4) وحيد
- (5) يعامل
- (6) الجزار
- (7) كهدية مني لـ
- (8) تفعل ذلك لأجلي
- (9) انطلق
- (10) يغير رأيه
- (11) يتناول العشاء
- (12) يدخل

But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's⁽⁶⁾ shop?"

"Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift from me to⁽⁷⁾ his family. Will you do this for me⁽⁸⁾ if I pay you?"

"Of course," said the boy and then he ran off⁽⁹⁾ before Mr Scrooge changed his mind⁽¹⁰⁾. Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner⁽¹¹⁾ with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside⁽¹²⁾.

How are your friendships?

WB page (39)

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, **in the middle of**⁽¹⁾ a conversation, when you're talking, they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people **feel ignored**⁽²⁾ and upset. And the problem may be **getting worse**⁽³⁾ because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now **own**⁽⁴⁾ a phone.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) في منتصف
- (2) يشعر بالتجاهل
- (3) يزداد سوء
- (4) يمتلك
- (5) يتحاور
- (6) مؤذٍ
- (7) يدمر - يُفسد
- (8) صداقات
- (9) يتناول - يلتقط
- (10) تظل منتبهاً إلي
- (11) أمين
- (12) جيب

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while **having a conversation**⁽⁵⁾ makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being **polite**⁽⁶⁾ and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can **damage**⁽⁷⁾ even good **friendships**⁽⁸⁾.

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to **pick up**⁽⁹⁾ your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should **keep your attention on**⁽¹⁰⁾ the person you are talking to.

And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and **honest**⁽¹¹⁾ friend, keep your phone in your **pocket**⁽¹²⁾ and your eyes on your friendship.

2 Listening Texts



(SB page 66)

Presenter:

In today's show, we're **going back in time**⁽¹⁾ and looking at some of our **regrets**⁽²⁾. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will **bring back**⁽³⁾ **memories**⁽⁴⁾ for many of us. This is what he says ...

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school! I also used to **phone**⁽⁵⁾ my grandparents and my cousins. But then I **got into**⁽⁶⁾ using social media more.

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all **got on with**⁽⁷⁾ each other. Sometimes I'd **hang out with**⁽⁸⁾ them online for hours chatting.

I **guess**⁽⁹⁾ I **lost touch with**⁽¹⁰⁾ my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started **falling out with**⁽¹¹⁾ each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have **ignored**⁽¹²⁾ my family. I wish I'd **kept in touch with**⁽¹³⁾ my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly⁽¹⁴⁾, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to **take an interest in**⁽¹⁵⁾ the people who really care about us. Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) نتذكر ما مضى
- (2) الندم
- (3) يُعيد
- (4) ذكريات
- (5) يتصل
- (6) يَألف
- (7) يُحبسب التعامل مع
- (8) يقضي وقتاً طويلاً مع
- (9) يُخمين
- (10) ينقطع الإتصال مع
- (11) يتشاجر مع
- (12) يتجاهل
- (13) يبقي علي تواصل مع
- (14) من المُحزن
- (15) يُظهر اهتماماً بـ

prep School Memories

WB page (38)

Hoda : Hey Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola?
She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.



Lamia : Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola⁽¹⁾ in our class.

Hoda : Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite⁽²⁾ you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both⁽³⁾ wanted to be the leaders⁽⁴⁾.

Lamia : Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with⁽⁵⁾ her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda : Look. Here she is in the photo.

Lamia : Ahh, wow!

Hoda : ... and look at us! Oh, no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia : Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda : Oh, no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress I was wearing⁽⁶⁾ when I lost my favourite necklace⁽⁷⁾. I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia : But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have spoken to⁽⁸⁾ you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda : That's true! I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

Lamia : And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away⁽⁹⁾ to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch⁽¹⁰⁾, we would have been able to organise⁽¹¹⁾ a school reunion⁽¹²⁾. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) لا أتذكر أحداً يُسمى علا
- (2) في مواجهة
- (3) كل من
- (4) قائد
- (5) يتجادل مع
- (6) يرتدي
- (7) قلادة - عقد
- (8) يتحدث إلي
- (9) يبتعد
- (10) يبقي علي اتصال
- (11) يُنظم
- (12) جمع الشمل

Lamia : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Hoda : Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

Judy:

SB page (67)

Huda was my best friend. We'd always⁽¹⁾ hang out together at school. We made each other laugh⁽²⁾ a lot and we were very close⁽³⁾.

Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well⁽⁴⁾. We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours.

One weekend, we went shopping at the mall⁽⁵⁾. We had a great time as usual⁽⁶⁾, but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently⁽⁷⁾, it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) اعتاد ان
- (2) يضحك
- (3) مقرب
- (4) ايضاً
- (5) مركز تجاري (مول)
- (6) كالمعتاد
- (7) من الواضح - ظاهرياً

3 Video Script

Charles Dickens

SB page (63)

Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels including⁽¹⁾ Great Expectations, Oliver Twist, David Copperfield, and Hard Times. His most popular novel is probably A Christmas Carol, which was published in 1843.

In A Christmas Carol, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time. Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.

The main⁽²⁾ character⁽³⁾ is Ebenezer Scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including his employee⁽⁴⁾, Bob Cratchit, who is very poor with a large family and a sick⁽⁵⁾ child.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) نضم - بما في ذلك
- (2) رئيسي
- (3) شخصية
- (4) موظف
- (5) مريض

However⁽⁶⁾, by the end of the story Scrooge has changed and he sees life in a completely⁽⁷⁾ different way. We are told that Scrooge: Became as good a friend, as good an employer⁽⁸⁾ and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.

(6) مع ذلك

(7) تماماً

(8) صاحب عمل

Part

V

Language

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

Statement

الجملة الخبرية

مضارع بسيط ... + مضارع بسيط ، + عندما / إذا / When / If

→ ex. - When / If I feel tired, I take some time to rest.
= I take some time to rest when / if I feel tired.

Yes / No Q.

السؤال بـ (هل)

مضارع بسيط ... + مضارع بسيط + if / when + Do / Does + subj. + inf.

→ ex. - When / If you feel tired, do you take some time to rest?
= Do you take some time to rest when/if you feel tired?

'Wh' Q.

السؤال بأداة استفهام

مضارع بسيط ... + مضارع بسيط + if / when + do / does + subj. + inf.

→ ex. - What do you do if/ when you feel tired?
= If/When you feel tired, what do you do?

Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف التي لها نتيجة منطقية :

ex. - If / When I don't get enough sleep, I feel tired the next day.

٢ التعبير عن الحقائق العامة :

ex. - If / When we boil water, it turns into steam.

Mini Test 1

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I take a rest I feel stressed.

a. unless

b. if

c. when

d. b & c

2. Ice melts if the weather temperature
 a. rises b. is risen c. rose d. had risen
3. If you don't get enough sleep, tired the following day?
 a. you feel b. do you feel
 c. are you feeling d. you are feeling
4. What if chocolate is left in the sun?
 a. had happened b. would happen
 c. happens d. is happened

2 First conditional الحالة الأولى

Statement
الجملة الخبرية

If / Unless + مضارع بسيط + will / can / may + inf.

→ ex. - If he **works** hard, he'll **pass** the next exam.
 = He'll **pass** the next exam **if** he **works** hard.

Yes / No Q.
السؤال بـ (هل)

will / can / may + subj. + inf. + if + ... مضارع بسيط ؟

→ ex. - **Will** he **pass** the next exam **if** he **works** hard?
 = **If** he **works** hard, **will** he **pass** the next exam?

'Wh_' Q.
السؤال بأداة
استفهام

Q.W. + will / can / may + subj. + inf. + if + ... مضارع بسيط ؟

→ ex. - What **will** happen **if** he **works** hard?
 = **If** he **works** hard, what **will** happen?

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 إذا كانت الحقيقة تخص موقف معين أو محددة بوقت معين نستخدم الحالة الأولى وليس الحالة الصفرية:

- ex. - If it **rains** heavily, streets **become** wet. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفرية)
- If it **rains** heavily **tonight**, streets **will become** wet. (موقف محدد - حالة أولى)
- If we **water** plants regularly, they **grow** well. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفرية)
- If we **water these** plants regularly, they **will grow** well. (موقف محدد - حالة أولى)

٢ لا نستخدم المستقبل بعد (if) مباشرة لكن نستخدم المضارع البسيط:

- ex. - If I (will follow - follow) a diet, I will get fit.
 - What will you buy if you (have - will have) a million dollars?

٣ تعبر الحالة الشرطية الأولى عن مواقف قابلة للحدوث في المستقبل:

- ex. - If I have enough money, I will buy a car. (I believe I'll have enough money).

٤ يمكن أن تحل (can - may - might - must - should) محل (will) في جملة جواب الشرط

في الحالة الشرطية الأولى - لاحظ المثال التالي :

- ex. - If I feel hungry at work, I will have a snack. (متأكد sure)
 - If I feel hungry at work, I can have a snack. (قدرة / إمكانية ability / possibility)
 - If I feel hungry at work, I may have a snack. (من المحتمل probably)
 - If I feel hungry at work, I might have a snack. (من الممكن possibly)
 - If I feel hungry at work, I must have a snack. (ضرورة necessity)
 - If you can't do the job, you should apologise. (نصيحة (advice) أو اقتراح (suggestion))

Mini Test 2

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- If my glasses, it will be difficult for me to drive.
 a. breaks b. break c. are broken d. b & c
- My mother sad if I pass the exam.
 a. is b. will be c. won't be d. doesn't be
- it easy if he knows that I have dropped his mobile?
 a. Will he take b. Does he take
 c. What will he take d. What does he take
- What will happen if our car out of petrol?
 a. run b. runs c. is run d. will run
- What if a glass falls on a hard floor?
 a. happens b. happen c. will happen d. is happened
- What if this glass falls on the hard floor of the room?
 a. happens b. happen c. will happen d. is happened

More Notes on first conditional

استخدم المضارع البسيط بعد (if) إذا كانت جملة جواب الشرط تتكون من أحدي الصيغ التالية :

1. Inf. / Don't + inf. / never + inf. (جملة أمر أو نهى)

ex. - Don't eat too much fat if you (want – wanted – had wanted) to lose weight
- If one of your friends (has – had – had had) a problem, help him/her

2. Let's + inf.

ex. - Let's take a rest and have a drink if you (are – were – had been) tired.

3. had better ('d better) + inf.

ex. - You'd better work hard if you (hope – hoped – had hoped) to succeed.

4.would rather ('d rather) + inf.

ex. - I'd rather stay at home if the weather (is – was – had been) windy.

استخدم (will + inf.) في جملة جواب الشرط إذا كان فعل الشرط أحد الصيغ التالية :

1. If + subj. + (would like / would love /would prefer.....)

ex. - If you would like to attend the party, I (will go – would go – would have gone) with you.

2. If + subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing (مضارع مستمر)

ex. - She (won't go – wouldn't go – wouldn't have gone) out if she is revising for her exams.

3. If + subj. + have / has + p.p. (مضارع تام)

ex. - If he has left home, you (won't be – wouldn't be – wouldn't have been) able to meet him.

لأخذ الفرق بين (if / in case) :

تعني (if) أن الحدث سيقع إذا توفر شرط معين، فإذا لم يتوفر الشرط لن يحدث شيئاً :

ex. - I'll stay at home if it rains. (But I won't stay at home if it doesn't rain)

تستخدم (in case) بمعنى (في حالة) لتدل على أننا سنقوم بشيء ما تحسباً لحدوث شيء معين :

ex. - I'll stay at home in case it rains. (I'll stay at home because it may rain)

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't go out if you exhausted.
a. will feel b. feel c. felt d. are felt
2. If you need help at any time, me.
a. has called b. would call c. will call d. call
3. Let's go for a walk if you bored.
a. were b. have c. are d. b & c
4. If you a headache, you'd better take a rest.
a. have b. will have c. had d. had had
5. I'd rather take a taxi if the weather hot.
a. is b. was c. had been d. will be
6. I a ticket if you would prefer to travel by plane.
a. books b. booked c. would book d. will book
7. I your call if I am having a meeting at work.
a. will answer b. won't answer c. answer d. am answering
8. If he has got up early, he the train.
a. catch b. catches c. will catch d. won't catch
9. I will buy some tablets I feel a headache in the meeting room.
a. if b. in case c. unless d. a & b
10. I will buy a bottle of water from the neighbouring shop I feel thirsty.
a. if b. in case c. unless d. a & b

3 Second conditional الحالة الثانية

Statement

الجملة الخبرية

If / Unless + ماضى بسيط (تصريف ثان) + would / could / might + inf.

→ **ex.** - If he **trained** hard, he **'d win** the match.
= He **'d win** the match **if** he **trained** hard.

Yes / No Q.

السؤال ب (هل)

Would / Could / Might + subj. + inf. + If + ماضى بسيط ؟

→ **ex.** - **Would** he **win** the match **if** he **trained** hard?
= **If** he **trained** hard, **would** he **win** the match?

'Wh' Q.

السؤال بإداة
استفهام

Q.W. + would / could / might + subj. + inf. + If + ماضى بسيط؟

→ ex. - What would he do if he trained hard?
= If he trained hard, what would he do?

Important Notes

ملحظات هامة



- ١ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:
ex. - If he were taller, he'd be good at basketball.
- I don't feel ill now. If I felt ill, I would stay at home.
- ٢ إعطاء النصيحة بالصيغة (If I were ...):
ex. - If I were you, I would see a doctor. You look very ill.
- ٣ لاحظ إمكانية استخدام (were) مع المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الثانية:
ex. - Nada is ill today. If she were / was healthy, she would help you.
- ٤ الأفعال (cut – put – hit – shut – read...) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (he – she – it):
ex. - If he shut the door to the farm, the animals (won't – wouldn't) go out.
- ٥ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار (would + inf.):
ex. - If Abdu had a camera, I (will borrow – would borrow – would have borrowed) it from him.
- ٦ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار (would + inf.):
ex. - If we had to work at the weekend, we (will get – would get – would have got) a reward.
- ٧ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار ماضي بسيط:
ex. - If Sama (win – won – had won) the competition, she would get a prize.
- ٨ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار ماضي بسيط:
ex. - If Omar (spends – spent – had spent) all his money, she would have to borrow.

Mini Test

4

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you went out in that rainy weather, you get wet.
a. will b. won't c. would d. wouldn't

2. She'd lose weight if she a diet.
 a. follow b. followed c. would follow d. will follow
3. What if the car hit this rock?
 a. happen b. happens c. will happen d. would happen
4. What if the car hits this rock?
 a. happen b. happens c. will happen d. would happen
5. If she were fit, she would take part in the race. This means she fit.
 a. is b. isn't c. was d. wasn't
6. If I a bird, I'd live in a nest.
 a. were b. will be c. am d. would be
7. I you if I had enough time.
 a. would have called b. called
 c. will call d. would call
8. If I had to see a doctor, that surely be Dr Alaa.
 a. would b. will c. may d. must

4 Third conditional الحالة الثالثة

Statement

الجملة الخبرية

If + had + p.p.... + would / could / might + have + p.p.

→ ex. - If he had won the competition, he'd have got the prize.
 = He'd have got the prize if he had won the competition.

Yes / No Q.

السؤال بـ (هل)

ماضي تام ... Would + subj. + have + p.p. + if + had + p.p. ? +

→ ex. - Would he have got the prize if he had won the competition?

'Wh' Q.

السؤال بأداة
استفهام

ماضي تام ... Q.W. + would + subj. + have + p.p. + if + had + p.p. ? +

→ ex. - What would he have got if he had won the competition?
 = If he had won the competition, what would he have got?

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة في حالة تخيل عكس ما حدث في الماضي :

ex. - I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I would have stayed at home.

Mini Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I a nice time if I had been to Alexandria.
a. will have b. would have c. would have had d. have
- If that milk boiled, there would have been no bacteria in it.
a. had b. had been c. would be d. would have
- If I enough time to go home, I would have lunch outdoors.
a. had b. didn't have c. had had d. hadn't had
- "If Amr had come first, he would have got a car as a present." This means Amr the car.
a. got b. had got c. won't get d. didn't get

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

① **If = as long as** طالما = **providing (that)** بشرط أن = **provided (that)** جملة + بشرط أن

ex. - If Malak does exercise regularly, she will keep fit.

- As long as Malak does exercise regularly, she will keep fit.

② **If + جملة = with / by / in case of + noun / (inf. + ing)**

ex. - If he works hard, he will achieve his goals in life.

= In case of working hard, he will achieve his goals in life.

③ **Unless + جملة = Without / But for** لولا / بدون + **(inf. + ing) / noun**

ex. - Unless he earns enough money, he will have to sell his car.

= Without earning enough money, he will have to sell his car.

④ **Unless + جملة ماضي بسيط = If it weren't for + (inf. + ing) / noun**

ex. - Unless he had enough time, he wouldn't help me.

= If it weren't for having enough time, he wouldn't help me.

⑤ **Unless + جملة ماضي تام = If it hadn't been for + (inf. + ing) / noun**

ex. - Unless he had arrived early at the station, he would have missed the train.

= If it hadn't been for arriving early at the station, he would have missed the train.

⑥ If + ماضي بسيط / جملة مضارع = Should + subj. + inf.

- If he has a lot of money, he will help poor children.

= Should he have a lot of money, he will help poor children.

7 If + جملة ماضي بسيط = Were + subj. + (to + inf.)..... / Were + subj.+

- If you **phoned** me, I would come. = Were you to phone me, I would come.

- If I **were** taller, I would join a basketball team.

= **Were** I taller, I would join a basketball team.

8 If + subj. + had + اسم = Had + subj. + اسم

- If I had a car, I would drive you home.

= **Had I** a car, I would drive you home.

9 If + subj. + had + p. p. = Had + subj. + p. p.

- If he had finished the report, he would have left the office.

= Had he finished the report, he would have left the office.

Mini Test 6

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. she works hard, she can achieve her goal.

a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without

2. hard work, she can achieve her goal.

a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without

3. she works hard, she won't achieve her goal.

a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without

4. working hard, she won't achieve her goal.

a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without

5. If it for his strong character, he wouldn't have been a good leader.

a. isn't b. hadn't been c. weren't d. were

6. If it for his strong character, he wouldn't be a good leader.

a. isn't b. hadn't been c. weren't d. were

7. she go shopping, I'll ask her to get me a new toothbrush.

a. Should b. If c. Unless d. Provided

- 323

Exercises On Language

- ☛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. If her father alive, he would be pleased with her work.
a. is b. was been c. were d. had been
2. He won't catch the train if he soon.
a. didn't pack b. will not pack
c. hadn't packed d. doesn't pack
3. If eggs, they solidify.
a. heat b. are heated c. heated d. heats
4. If water freezes, it into ice.
a. change b. will change c. would change d. changes
5. If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I to the library.
a. go b. will go c. have gone d. would go
6. If I younger, I'd work in the New Delta Project.
a. were b. am c. have been d. had been
7. If Hisham with us, he would have a good time.
a. would come b. had come c. would have come d. came
8. Would you have lent him the money if you how badly he needed it?
a. had known b. knew c. would know d. have known
9. If the book were cheap, I buy it.
a. will b. would c. can d. may
10. If you had gone to the Cairo Exhibition معرض, you it.
a. would enjoy b. would have enjoyed
c. will have enjoyed d. will enjoy
11. If I were rich, I a yacht.
a. can buy b. would buy c. had bought d. will buy
12. If we had started earlier, we the deadline.
a. had met b. would have met
c. have been met d. would meet
13. If ice is heated, it into water.
a. will turn b. can turn c. turns d. would turn

14. If metals, they expand.
 a. heat b. will heat c. heated d. are heated
15. If water boils, it
 a. will evaporate b. can evaporate
 c. would evaporate d. evaporates
16. If you don't stop listening to that loud music, your headache worse.
 a. got b. will get c. would get d. gets
17. If the train down, I wouldn't have been late.
 a. didn't break b. doesn't break
 c. hadn't broken d. won't break
18. If I read the newspapers, I wouldn't know what is happening in the world.
 a. didn't b. hadn't c. don't d. haven't
19. very happy if you achieved your goals?
 a. You would be b. Would you have been
 c. You will be d. Would you be
20. The sea will be polluted we stop dumping oil and rubbish into it.
 a. as long as b. if c. so that d. unless
21. What if he had left the meeting?
 a. will happen b. would happen
 c. has happened d. would have happened
22. If he had remembered to set the alarm clock, Hany woken up late.
 a. would have b. wouldn't have c. have been d. would be
23. If he hadn't bought a car, he that accident.
 a. didn't have b. wouldn't have had
 c. would have d. wouldn't have
24. he understand the story if he read the summary?
 a. Will b. Did c. Would d. Can
25. She couldn't have gone out during the storm if she careful.
 a. was b. had been c. were d. is
26. If he hadn't driven so fast, he that accident.
 a. wouldn't have b. wouldn't have had
 c. didn't have d. hadn't had

27. Would Ahmed be angry if I his bicycle without asking?
 a. take b. will take c. took d. have taken
28. He won't do any work you pay him first.
 a. without b. unless c. so d. in order to
29. Pilots won't be able to fly a plane unless they
 a. will train b. had trained
 c. are trained d. were trained
30. You won't be able to achieve your goal you work hard.
 a. if b. as long as c. provided d. unless
31. If I only one job to do, I would have enough free time for hobbies.
 a. have b. had had c. didn't have d. had
32. Unless he had followed my advice, he all his money.
 a. would have lost b. would have a loss
 c. wouldn't lose d. wouldn't have lost
33. If he had studied well, he the best mark.
 a. would get b. will get
 c. would be got d. would have got
34. If Wael lost his job, he look for work in the city.
 a. will b. would c. will not d. would not

2 Special cases

35. today, he would get there by Thursday.
 a. Would he leave b. Were he to leave
 c. If he leaves d. Was he leaving
36. I would have attended the meeting if I time.
 a. had had b. would have had
 c. have had d. had
37. It is good to visit beautiful places you don't damage them.
 a. so that b. in order that c. provided that d. unless
38. Take these tools with you your car breaks down.
 a. without b. if c. in case of d. in case
39. doing this job irritates you, you needn't get angry. Just tell me.
 a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless

40. my help, he will pay back all his debts.
 a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless
41. If you a famous footballer, what would you do?
 a. are b. had been c. were d. will be
42. he had enough money, he would have bought a shirt.
 a. If b. Had c. Unless d. Provided
43. his bravery, she wouldn't have been saved.
 a. Provided b. On condition that
 c. In case d. But for
44. he come, tell him I'm out.
 a. If b. Should c. Were d. Unless
45. If we plant trees, then we cleaner air.
 a. have b. will have c. had d. would have
46. If you me, he should look for another job.
 a. question b. talk c. ask d. wonder
47. written work, he wouldn't have time to go out.
 a. Had he had b. Have he c. Were he to d. Had he
48. him today, she would know what has happened.
 a. If she meets b. Had she met
 c. Were she to meet d. Will she meet
49. Plants can grow without soil they get food from water.
 a. as much as b. as far as c. as long as d. as many as
50. The Red Sea resorts will be popular they remain unpolluted.
 a. if not b. provided c. so as d. unless

3 Check your understanding

51. "Abdulrahman can achieve great success because he is intelligent."
 This means
 a. if he is intelligent, he achieves great success
 b. if he isn't intelligent, he won't achieve great success
 c. if he were intelligent, he would not achieve great success
 d. if he had been intelligent, he would have achieved great success
52. "If he were tall, he would play basketball." What does this mean?
 a. He is tall but he can't play basketball.
 b. He is tall, so he can play basketball.
 c. He wouldn't play basketball because he wasn't tall.
 d. He won't play basketball because he isn't tall.

53. "Without your help, I might be in trouble." The speaker means that
- a. if I help him, he will be in trouble
 - b. unless I helped him, he would not be in trouble
 - c. unless I help him, he will be in trouble
 - d. if I helped him, he would be in trouble
54. "We didn't make a big loss because of your last decision." This means
- a. if it hadn't been for your last decision, we would have made a big loss
 - b. if it weren't for your last decision, we would make a big loss
 - c. but for your last decision, we would not have made a big loss
 - d. but for your last decision, we would make a big loss
55. "If you work hard, you will be successful." I want to say that
- a. you work hard, so you will be successful
 - b. you won't be successful as you don't work hard
 - c. should you work hard, you will be successful
 - d. you won't be successful even if you work hard
56. "If I feel sick, I'll take some medicine." This means
- a. I'll take some medicine only if I feel sick
 - b. I'll take some medicine when I feel sick
 - c. I'll take some medicine because I might feel sick
 - d. I'll take some medicine because I feel sick
57. "In case I feel sick, I'll take some medicine." This means
- a. I'll take some medicine only if I feel sick
 - b. I'll take some medicine when I feel sick
 - c. I'll take some medicine because I might feel sick
 - d. I'll take some medicine because I feel sick
58. "Had I enough money, I would help you." This means
- a. I had enough money, so I helped you
 - b. I don't have enough money, so I can't help you
 - c. I didn't have enough money, so I couldn't help you
 - d. I won't help you although I have enough money

تتويها : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If Edison hadn't discovered electricity, we in darkness now.
a. will live b. would live
c. would have lived d. may have lived
2. I would help you if
a. was necessary b. necessary
c. it is necessary d. it had been necessary
3. He could have drowned a passing ship rescued him.
a. so b. if c. but d. unless
4. to stay up late for long, he would have tomorrow off.
a. Had he had b. He has c. Were he to d. Had he
5. A: What if Fatma come next Saturday?
B: It would be a disaster.
a. had not b. did not c. do not d. will not
6. What if you had something stolen?
a. would you do b. would you have done
c. will you do d. have you done
7. Would you mind if my brother in with me ?
a. go b. goes c. went d. had gone
8. If we had found her in time, she among us currently.
a. would be b. wouldn't be
c. would have been d. must have
9. If Rodayna a doctor, she wouldn't have helped me yesterday.
a. were b. weren't c. had been d. hadn't been
10. Leen would have bought it if she could, but she enough money.
a. had had b. hadn't had c. doesn't have d. didn't have
11. being accurate is necessary, I will overlook the so many mistakes you make.
a. Unless b. If c. Without d. In case of

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الجملة حالة شرطية مختلطة (mixed if) بين الحالة الثالثة في جملة فعل الشرط، والحالة الثانية في جملة جواب الشرط نظراً لوجود كلمة (now)
2.	b	- يمكن استخدام الصفة مباشرة بعد (if) ولا يمكن استخدام الاختيارات الأخرى لأنها لا تتوافق مع الزمن وغير صحيحة لغوياً
3.	c	لا يمكن استخدام أدوات الشرط في هذه الجملة لعدم توافق الأزمنة بين جملة الشرط وجملة جواب الشرط
4.	d	الجملة حالة ثانية ويتضح ذلك من عدم وجود تصريف ثالث بعد (would have)
5.	b	يتضح من الرد (would be) أن السياق في الحالة الثانية
6.	a	يتضح من (had something stolen) أن السياق في الحالة الثانية لأن كلمة (stolen) صفة وليست تصريف ثالث أو أن الجملة في صيغة (causative)
7.	c	يتضح من (Would you mind ...) أن السياق في الحالة الثانية
8.	a	- الجملة حالة شرطية مختلطة (mixed if) بين الحالة الثالثة في جملة فعل الشرط، والحالة الثانية في جملة جواب الشرط نظراً لوجود كلمة (currently) بمعنى حالياً
9.	b	- الجملة حالة شرطية مختلطة (mixed if) بين الحالة الثالثة في جملة جواب الشرط، والحالة الثانية في جملة فعل الشرط لأن من المنطقي أن رودينا لو كانت طبيعة فهذا ينطبق على الأمس (وقت المساعدة) واليوم، والمعنى يتطلب النفي
10.	d	الجملة حالة ثالثة تدل على الماضي لذلك استخدمنا (didn't have)
11.	a	- لا يمكن استخدام (if / in case of) لأنهما لا يتفقان مع المعنى - لا يمكن استخدام (without) لأن (being accurate) فاعل يتبعه الفعل (is)

Part VI Language Hints from Reading & Listening

used to - would

① للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة نستخدم:

... used to + inf. ... = ... would + inf. ...

ex. - When I had enough time, I used to go to work on foot. (✓)

- When I had enough time, I would go to work on foot. (✓)

٢ تُستخدم هذه الصيغ للتعبير عن عادات الماضي في مدي زمني كبير وليس خلال مدة قصيرة.
فالعادة لا تُسمّى هكذا إلا إذا تكررت لفترة طويلة نسبياً:

- ex. - He used to do exercise every day last month. (x)
- He used to do exercise every day when he was young. (✓)
- He did exercise every day last month. (✓)

٣ تُستخدم (used to) فقط وليس (would) عند التعبير عن عادات الماضي مع الأفعال التقريرية
مثل:

be, like, love, hate, want, need, prefer, own, sound, agree, disagree,
know, understand, feel, remember, forget, seem, suppose, contain, ... etc.

- ex. - When I was young, I would love to watch cartoons. (x)
- When I was young, I used to love watching cartoons. (✓)

٤ تُستخدم (used to) فقط وليس (would) عند التعبير عن العادات السلوكية البارزة والهامة
في الماضي:

- ex. - When he was a young man, he would smoke. (x)
- When he was a young man, he used to smoke. (✓)

a / an / the + people's names

١ يمكن استخدام (the) قبل اسم العائلة في صيغة الجمع للإشارة إلى العائلة بالكامل:

- ex. - Abdulrahman invited Ayman to his wedding. (الدعوة لأيمن فقط)
- Abdulrahman invited the Aymans to his wedding. (الدعوة لأسرة أيمن كلها)

٢ يمكن استخدام (the) قبل اسم شخص لتمييز شخص عن آخرين يحملون نفس الاسم:

- ex. - Don't give the invitation to this Linda. The Linda I mean is
the woman in the white blouse over there.

٣ يمكن استخدام (a / an) قبل اسم شخص غير معروف بالنسبة للمتحدث:

- ex. - There's a Khalid waiting for you outside.
(لا يعرف المتحدث أي شيء عن خالد هذا)

- ex. - There wasn't an Ola in our class last year.
(لا يتذكر المتحدث أنه كان هناك طالبة تُسمّى عُلا)

In addition to - Besides - As well as - Also - as well - too

١ تُستخدم روابط العطف التالية بمعنى (بالإضافة إلى ذلك) ويأتي بعدها جملة:

جملة + In addition, / Besides (that) /

- ex. - She is a secretary. In addition, she runs a bookshop.
- She cooked lunch. Besides (that), she did the housework.

٢ تأتي روابط العطف التالية بمعنى (بالإضافة إلى) ويأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير أو (inf.+ing) :

In addition to / Besides / As well as + noun / pronoun ضمير (inf. + ing)

ex. - In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.

- As well as going to the market we went to the zoo.

- Besides me, two more friends will visit you.

- Besides cooking lunch, she cleaned the house.

٣ لاحظ استخدام (also / as well / too) بمعنى (أيضا) في الجمل المثبتة :

ex. - She visited her aunt. She also visited her grandma.

= She visited her aunt. She visited her grandma, too.

= She visited her aunt. She visited her grandma as well.

٤ لاحظ استخدام (either) بمعنى (أيضا) في الجمل المنفية :

ex. - I didn't do my homework. I didn't take a rest either.

but - However - although - though - even if - despite - in spite of

١ تُستخدم الروابط التالية لربط جملتين متناقضتين وتأتي في الوسط فقط :

جملة + مع ذلك however / لكن but

ex. - He has a lot of money but he is not happy.

- He has a lot of money, however he is not happy.

٢ يمكن أن تربط (but) صفتين أو ظرفين متناقضين :

ex. - He works quickly but accurately.

- He is small but strong.

- She is intelligent but lazy.

٣ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها جملة وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

جملة + although / though / even though / even if برغم أن

ex. - Although / Though she works hard, she has some free time to enjoy herself.

- She has some free time to enjoy herself although / though she works hard.

٤ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير أو (inf. + ing) وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

Despite / In spite of برغم من + noun / pronoun ضمير (inf. + ing)

ex. - Despite having a lot of money, he is not happy.

= He is not happy despite having a lot of money.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hossam had an injury in his left leg, he finished the match.
a. So b. When c. However d. Although
2. his poor behaviour, Amir is a really sweet boy.
a. While b. Despite c. Although d. But
3. having plenty of room, the flat is quiet.
a. But b. Despite c. In addition d. In addition to
4. There's no balcony, there's a view.
a. as b. however c. in spite of d. though
5. I have told you before. Omar you want to meet isn't here.
a. A b. An c. The d. Some
6. Yes, I remember that there was Omnia among the applicants.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. have travelled to Alexandria.
a. The Ahmeds b. Ahmeds c. Ahmed d. An Ahmed
8. Sama lunch every day before she got married.
a. prepare b. had prepared c. used to prepare d. prepares
9. Sama lunch every day last week.
a. prepared b. had prepared c. used to prepare d. prepares
10. I prefer green, now I prefer pink.
a. didn't b. would c. used to d. b & c

Part VII

Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تأنيبه

Write an essay of about 180 words under the title:

'If' in my life

Perhaps it seems strange to write under such a title. However it is an easy topic to write about. In this essay, I'm going to use this title in a three-tense sense: a past tense, a present sense and a future one. I'll summarise my life and dreams under this title.

Physically, بدنياً I was overweight in primary school. If I hadn't been born with a natural love of food, I wouldn't have been overweight. I would have had a carved body. No silly schoolmates would have made fun of my appearance.

One day, my PE teacher had a personal talk with me. He told me that I had the ability to get rid of the extra weight. All I needed was strong will إرادة to control my love of food and to follow a strict صارم fitness programme. If it hadn't been for his advice, I would have put on more weight. I wouldn't have got in shape. Now, I am fit and I have the carved body I used to dream of.

I am a secondary school student. I am in secondary two. If I weren't a student, I would have enough time to do my hobbies. I would be able to play football as much as I can. However, that wouldn't be good at all. If I weren't a student, this means I would have no educational dreams and no promising future.

Next year, I will be in secondary three. I will do my best to get the highest marks possible. If I get 99.5 %, I will join the faculty of medicine. Perhaps I will be a successful surgeon. I will travel abroad to improve my skills as a surgeon. I will follow on the footsteps of Professor Magdy Yacoub.

2 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

تأنيبه

• ① Translate into Arabic :

1. We are the products of our past, but we don't have to be prisoners of it. Never let past mistakes dominate your life. Always find yourself a new start and with it there will be a new hope.

2. It has always been said that failure is instructive. The person who is really intelligent learns quite as much from his failures as from his successes.
3. What we perceive as an error or failure is actually a gift. And eventually, we find that the lessons learned from that discouraging experience prove to be of great worth.

② Translate into English :

١. إنه لمن الطبيعي بل والمفيد أحياناً أن يقع الإنسان في بعض الأخطاء، فتلك الأخطاء هي أفضل مُعَلِّم للإنسان، والدروس التي نأخذها من أخطائنا لا تُنسى على الإطلاق.
٢. لا تقف كثيراً عند أخطائك، فما حدث لا يمكن تغييره لأن عقارب الساعة لا تعود إلى الوراء، فقط اقلب الصفحة وابدأ من جديد.
٣. الحياة هي أكبر مدرسة نتعلم فيها بشكل عملي، فكل موقف نمر به يترك فينا أثر لا يُمحى لأنه أصبح جزءاً من خبراتنا الحياتية التي تفيدها بشكل أو بآخر.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

at all	على الإطلاق	gift	منحة
criticism	النقد	initiatives	مبادرات
current state	الوضع الحالي	instructive	تعليمي
discouraging	مُحبط	perceive	يدرك
error	خطأ	risk	مخاطرة
eventually	في النهاية	worth	قيمة
failure	الفشل		

King Lear

Act

III

Scenes (ii , iii & iv)

أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

Vocabulary

forgive - forgave -	يفغر ل - يسامح	philosopher(n)	فيلسوف
forgiven(v)		rise - rose - risen(v)	يعلو شأنه
hardhearted(adj)	قاسي القلب	straw(n)	القش
hut(n)	كوخ	torch(n)	كشاف
lightning(n)	البرق	try walking in ... shoes	يحاول أن يضع نفسه
mice(n)	فئران		مكان ...

Additional Exercise

تدريب إضافي (تدريب على سؤال اختر إجابتين صحيحتين من خمس اختيارات)

★ Choose the TWO correct answers of the FIVE options given :

1. We all love and respect Hamza as he is He is very helpful.
a. ugly b. friendly c. silly
d. lonely e. neighbourly
2. Being disappointed with something, you cannot be with it.
a. satisfied b. frustrated c. discomfited d. pleased e. sad
3. She is always alone with no friends. This means that she is
a. friendly b. lonely c. isolated d. sociable e. social
4. Don't have a warm shower and then sit in front of the fan or you may a cold.
a. have b. fail c. melt d. give e. get
5. The lawyer won the case with a logical argument about the motives of the suspect. The opposites of the word "logical" are
a. reasonable b. unreasonable c. rational
d. irrational e. legal
6. He asked me if they meant to ignore him, but I couldn't answer it. The word "ignore" can be replaced by
a. appreciate b. pay attention to c. disregard
d. respect e. pay no attention to
7. Ali's work is always neat. The synonyms of the word "neat" are
a. nasty b. tidy c. terrible
d. horrible e. arranged
8. The players of ES Tunis نادي الترجي التونسي were disappointed after losing the semi-final two matches against Al-Ahly 0:4 The synonyms of "disappointed" are
a. pleased b. hopeful c. delighted d. frustrated e. upset
9. Mariam used to be alone. The antonyms of "alone" are
a. unwanted b. wanted c. loved d. lonely e. isolated
10. This man is known to be so mean, so he cannot be
a. generous b. stingy c. nasty
d. selfish e. honorable

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When there's a storm, people often see
a. a torch b. lightning c. a hut d. straw
2. A / An is a person who studies the meaning of life.
a. king b. assistant c. fool d. philosopher
3. Our car broke down on the desert road, so we spent the night in a small
..... by the side of the road.
a. a torch b. lightening c. hut d. straw
4. When you someone, you are no longer angry with them.
a. fall out with b. rise c. fight d. forgive
5. A person who is -hearted doesn't care how others feel.
a. hard b. kind c. soft d. b & c
6. Animals usually sleep on
a. a torch b. lightening c. a hut d. straw
7. When the sun, its rays feed the plants.
a. falls out with b. rises c. forgets d. forgives
8. Cats are the first enemies of
a. wolves b. lions c. mice d. cows
9. In the past there was no batteries. used to be lit with fire.
a. Torches b. Lightning c. Huts d. Straws
10. What does it mean to "walk in someone's shoes"?
a. To take someone's shoes without asking them.
b. To be the same as one of your parents
c. To experience life the way someone else does.
d. a & c



☛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 338

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The boys found out that almost of the equipment is indispensable for a perfect game.
 a. all b. some c. one d. none
18. At the beginning, the boys were
 a. cooperative b. dependable c. reliant d. selfish
19. After bringing the equipment, the boys lacked
 a. argument b. cooperation c. pride d. egotism
20. How has the game become a great one?
 a. By doing without some equipment.
 b. By being proud and egotistic.
 c. Through concentration on having a great time.
 d. Through shameful display.

B. Answer the following questions :

21. What do you think the most important equipment is? Why?
 22. If you were one of the boys, what equipment would you bring? Who would you suggest to start the game?
 23. What does this story teach us? Mention at least TWO morals.
 24. What is the best title for this passage? Why?

C. Translation**25. Translate into Arabic :**

Criticism is part of learning and growth. It means that you are taking initiatives to learn something new and grow over from your current state. If you are not getting criticised, it means you are not taking enough risk to learn something new and to grow.

26. Translate into English :

إن الندم شعور مؤلم يجعلنا نعاني لوقت ليس بالقصير، والندم لا يفيد وعدم محاولة التخلص منه يجعلنا سجناء له وقد يقودنا إلى الفشل والتعاسة.

D. Writing**27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :**

Something that you regret

.....

.....

.....

.....

تنويه اختبار تراكمي على كل ثلاث وحدات في الكراسة التفاعلية.

Part I

Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات Key Vocabulary & Derivatives

accounts (n)	حسابات	include (d) (v)	يتضمن
achievement (n)	إنجاز	innovator (n)	مبتكر
action (n)	الحدث	joke (d) (v - n)	يمزح - مزحة (نكتة)
address (n)	عنوان	let - let (v)	يسمح - يُمكن
admire (d) (v)	يُعجب بـ	little (adj - adv)	صغير - قليل - قليلاً
advise (d) (v)	ينصح	messaging (n)	التراسل - المراسلة
agree (d) (v)	يوافق	misunderstand (v)	يسئ فهم
agreement (n)	اتفاق - موافقة	Olympic (adj)	أولمبي
ambassador (n)	سفير	photos (n)	صور فوتوغرافية
athletes (n)	الرياضيون	phrase (n)	عبارة
audio (adj)	مسموع - سمعي	positive (adj)	إيجابي
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف - يسلك	post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر
behaviour (n)	سلوك	private (adj)	خاص - شخصي
biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية	profile (n)	الملف الشخصي - الحالة
boring (adj)	ممل	react (ed) (v)	يستجيب
career (n)	الحياة المهنية	remain (ed) (v)	يبقى
celebrity (n)	شخصية مشهورة	remove (d) (v)	يزيل
centre (n)	بؤرة - مركز	response (n)	استجابة - رد
clear (adj)	صافي - واضح	role (n)	دور
comment (n)	تعليق	role model (n)	قدوة
digital (adj)	رقمي	ruin (ed) (v)	يُدمر
disappointed (adj)	مُحبط	scientists (n)	العلماء
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	screen (n)	شاشة
ebooks (n)	الكتب الإلكترونية	search (ed) (v - n)	يبحث - بحث
encourage (d) (v)	يُشجع	security (n)	أمن
expert (n)	خبير	share (d) (v)	يشارك
expressions (n)	تعبيرات - ملامح	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي

fact file (n)	ملف الحقائق	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
feelings (n)	مشاعر	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
footprint (n)	البصمة - المسار - أثر قدم	speech (n)	خطبة
forgive - forgave - forgiven (v)	يسامح	speed up (phr.v)	يسرع
forum (n)	مُنْتَدَى	storytellers (n)	القصاصين
further (adj - adv)	أبعد - أكثر	suppose (d) (v)	يفترض
goodwill (n)	النية الحسنة	tap (ped) (v)	ينقر - يلمس
guess (ed) (v)	يُخَمِّن - يظن	through (prep)	من خلال
human (adj - n)	بشري - انسان	tone (n)	الأسلوب - نبرة الصوت
hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي	upload (ed) (v)	يرفع على الإنترنت
		warn (ed) (v)	يُحذِر
		wet (adj)	مبلل

Part II

Vocabulary Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

create	a fact file	يُنشئ ملف حقائق	comments	يُعلق
do	an internet search	يبحث على الإنترنت	make	يُحسِّن الاختيار
give	a speech	يلقي خطبة		يمزح
go	further	يتعمق أكثر	sound	يبدو غاضباً
hurt	feelings	يجرح مشاعر	take	يلتقط صورة / photo
lose	a friend	يفقد صديق	tell	يحكي قصص
play	the role of	يُمثِّل دور ...		

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an acting role	دور في التمثيل	laugh at	يضحك على / يسخر من
an example of	مثال لـ	leave behind	يخلف أثراً
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	look like	يشبه
at the centre of the action	في بؤرة الأحداث	play the lead role	يلعب الدور الرئيسي (البطولة)
careful about	حريص على	search history	سجل البحث

careful with
chat stories
each other
early life
feel like
forget about
Goodwill ambassador

حريص على / مع
قصص الدردشة
بعضهم البعض
مقبل العمر
يبدو وكأنه
ينسي أمر
سفير النوايا الحسنة

search for
spend time with
the way we do things
the World Economic Forum
too busy chatting with
write down
young people

يبحث عن
يفضي وقت مع
طريقة قيامنا بالأشياء
المنتدى الاقتصادي العالمي
مشغول بالدردشة مع
يُدوّن / يُسجّل
الشباب

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Text

New ways to enjoy stories (SB page 72)

New technology often changes the way we do things⁽¹⁾. In the past, people could only tell stories⁽²⁾ by talking to each other,⁽³⁾ but this changed when stories could be written down⁽⁴⁾ and read.



Modern technology means we can read e-books⁽⁵⁾ and listen to audio⁽⁶⁾ books, but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories.

Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your smartphone.⁽⁷⁾ They look like messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation, you tap⁽⁸⁾ the bottom of your screen⁽⁹⁾ to show the next message.

Reading a chat story feels like⁽¹⁰⁾ you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also include⁽¹¹⁾ photos, audio and videos, so you can see what a character looks like⁽¹²⁾ and the expressions⁽¹³⁾ on their face. And some chat stories let⁽¹⁴⁾ you make choices⁽¹⁵⁾ about what happens next.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) طريقة قيامنا بالأشياء
- (2) يحكي قصص
- (3) بعضهم البعض
- (4) يُدوّن / يُسجّل
- (5) الكتب الإلكترونية
- (6) مسموع - سمعي
- (7) هاتف ذكي
- (8) ينقر - يلمس
- (9) شاشة
- (10) يبدو وكأنه
- (11) يتضمن
- (12) يُشبه
- (13) تعبيرات - ملامح
- (14) يسمح - يُمكن
- (15) يختار

But some storytellers⁽¹⁶⁾ want us to go further.⁽¹⁷⁾ They invite us to imagine⁽¹⁸⁾ how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. Through⁽¹⁹⁾ our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be at the centre of the action.⁽²⁰⁾ However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become boring⁽²¹⁾ when we forget to include human feelings.⁽²²⁾

(16) القصاصين

(17) يتعمق أكثر

(18) يتخيل

(19) من خلال

(20) في بؤرة الأحداث

(21) مممل

(22) مشاعر

Digital footprints

(SB page 74)

Scientists⁽¹⁾ have discovered⁽²⁾ human⁽³⁾ footprints⁽⁴⁾ in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as Olympic⁽⁵⁾ athletes.⁽⁶⁾ Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time.



The phrase⁽⁷⁾ 'digital footprint'⁽⁸⁾ describes all the information that we leave behind⁽⁹⁾ when we use the internet. It includes things like our social media⁽¹⁰⁾ profiles,⁽¹¹⁾ posts⁽¹²⁾ and the photos⁽¹³⁾ we upload⁽¹⁴⁾, as well as⁽¹⁵⁾ the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've shared⁽¹⁶⁾.

Our search history⁽¹⁷⁾ is also part of our digital footprint. Emails can remain⁽¹⁸⁾ online for years, and the comments⁽¹⁹⁾ that we make on videos can be seen by anyone.

Taha El-Sayed is an expert⁽²⁰⁾ in internet security⁽²¹⁾. He advises⁽²²⁾ people to do an internet search⁽²³⁾ for their own names to see what other people can find.

Check Vocabulary

(1) العلماء

(2) يكتشف

(3) بشري

(4) آثار أقدام

(5) أوليمبي

(6) الرياضيون

(7) عبارة

(8) البصمة الرقمية - المسار الرقمي

(9) يترك أثراً

(10) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

(11) الملف الشخصي

(12) منشورات

(13) صور فوتوغرافية

(14) يرفع على الإنترنت

(15) بالإضافة إلى

(16) يشارك

(17) سجل البحث

(18) يبقى

(19) تعليقات

(20) خبير

(21) أمن

(22) ينصح

(23) بحث على الإنترنت

Then we're supposed⁽²⁴⁾ to remove⁽²⁵⁾ anything that we don't like, and we're encouraged⁽²⁶⁾ to close any social media accounts⁽²⁷⁾ that we don't use anymore.

He says that we have to be careful with⁽²⁸⁾ our behaviour⁽²⁹⁾ and try to be positive⁽³⁰⁾ online. When asked about advice for young people,⁽³¹⁾ he said, "Think about how other people could react⁽³²⁾ to your photos, videos or comments. Control who can see your posts and keep photos and information private⁽³³⁾ in social media."

He also warned⁽³⁴⁾ young people not to share addresses,⁽³⁵⁾ phone numbers or the name of their school with anyone online. He said, "Most young people don't mean to give away too much information, but they often forget about security when they meet new friends or join a group online."

(24) يُفترض

(25) يزيل

(26) يُشجع

(27) حسابات

(28) حريص علي

(29) سلوك

(30) إيجابي

(31) الشباب

(32) يتفاعل - يستجيب

(33) خاص - شخصي

(34) يحذر

(35) عناوين

2 Listening Texts



Losing a friend

(SB page 73)

Yasser : So, Hany posted a funny picture that he had taken last summer and we were all laughing at⁽¹⁾ it. Gamal was in it. He had fallen into a swimming pool with his clothes on. He looked very surprised, so I was making a few jokes⁽²⁾ about it with Fady.

But when Gamal saw the jokes, he was angry. He said he'd only fallen into the pool to stop Hany's little⁽³⁾ cousin, Amir, falling in. He had asked Hany to take a picture but it was wet⁽⁴⁾ and he fell over. Gamal stopped him falling in, but then he fell instead.

Gamal wasn't hurt but he wasn't happy, so he asked Hany not to show anyone the picture. Hany had agreed,⁽⁵⁾ but then he posted a lot of pictures from last summer and I guess⁽⁶⁾ he'd forgotten about that one. So, now I think Gamal isn't my friend anymore.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يضحك علي

(2) يمزح

(3) صغير

(4) مبلل

(5) يوافق

(6) يُخمن - يظن

King Lear

• King Lear

- The play follows him from the throne المنفى into exile.
- Proud, full of power, and too trusting.
- Crumbles يتداعى من الشك into doubt, madness, and death.



موقع
فدروز
التعليمي

Characters in the play

شخصيات المسرحية

• Edmund

- Schemes against يتآمر ضد his brother Edgar and betrays يخون his father.
- Killed by his virtuous brother, Edgar.



• Edgar

- Loyal but naive. ساذج
- Banished تم نفيه by his father because of his brother's scheme. مؤامرة
- Disguises himself as Poor Tom.
- Loyally cares for his father.
- Gets revenge on يثأر من Edmund.



• Earl of Gloucester

- Older nobleman; loyal to King Lear.
- Father of Edgar and Edmund.
- Deceived and betrayed by Edmund.



• Cordelia

- King Lear's good daughter
- Marries the King of France.
- Loyal to her father until the end.



• Goneril

- A true villain شريرة
- Erodes her father's loyalty and position.
- Married to the Duke of Albany.
- Has an affair with Edmund.
- Poisons تضع السم her sister and stabs تطعن نفسها herself.



• Regan

- A true villain like her sister.
- Kills a servant who tries to save Gloucester.
- Poisoned by her sister.



ACT I

Scene I

الفصل الأول - المشهد الأول

موقع
فيروز
التعليمي



1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

Vocabulary

Duke	الدوق (لقب إنجليزي)	choice	اختيار
kingdom	مملكة	riches	ثروة
duty	واجب	third	ثلث / الثالث
title	لقب / عنوان	beauty	جمال
foolish	أحمق / سخيف / مغفل	sword	سيف
forests	غابات	divide into	يقسم على
describe	يصف	cruel	قاسي
power	سلطة / قوة	your majesty	جلالتك
honestly	بأمانة	shout	يصيح
stranger	شخص غريب	speech	حديث

Words and their definitions

- ▶ **character** : A person that an actor plays. (شخصية (فى فيلم أو مسرحية ... إلخ)
- ▶ **play (noun)** : A piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre. (مسرحية)
- ▶ **scene** : A small part of a play which happens in one place. (مشهد (فى مسرحية)
- ▶ **act (noun)** : A larger part of a play. (فصل (فى مسرحية)
- ▶ **sword** : A weapon with a long, sharp metal blade. (سيف)
- ▶ **beauty** : Something that looks nice and attractive. (جمال)
- ▶ **title** : An official name of a job. (لقب)
- ▶ **riches** : A lot of money or things. (ثروة - أموال طائلة)
- ▶ **kingdom** : A country that has a king or a queen. (مملكة)
- ▶ **foolish** : Not sensible or clever. (أحمق / غبى)
- ▶ **divide (into)** : To separate something into two or more parts. (يقسم)
- ▶ **duty** : Something you do because it is right or part of your job. (واجب)

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

pleased to meet someone	مسرور لمقابلة شخصاً ما	keep the title of	يحافظ على لقب
ask someone to marry you	يطلب الزواج من ...	divide something into two	يقسم شئ لجزئين

make someone happy	يجعل (شخصًا) سعيدًا	give an answer to a question	يعطى إجابة لسؤال
give your country away	تضيع بلدك / دولتك	put my feelings in words	أعبر عن مشاعري بالكلمات
do a terrible thing	تقوم بفعل شنيع	say goodbye to	يودع

2

Text & Analysis

Act

I

Scene i

[In King Lear's palace.]

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER : Ah, the Duke of Kent!

Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT : I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER : I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND : I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND : Listen! The King is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR : Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia, I will also give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia.

First, look at this map of my kingdom, I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL : Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty and riches.

CORDELIA : *[To herself.]* I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR : *[Pointing to the map.]* Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say ?

REGAN : Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA : *[To herself.]* What can I say ? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR : Thank you Regan. I will give a third of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children, *[To Cordelia.]* Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters ?

CORDELIA : I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR : Nothing ? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA : I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

KING LEAR : But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA : You have always been a good father and it is my duty to love you, too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too ? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

KING LEAR : Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

CORDELIA : Father, I am young but I am honest.

KING LEAR : Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.

KENT : But your majesty ...

KING LEAR : Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say : Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the **power** and riches that come with being a king.



All I want is to keep the **title** of King, but they will have everything else.

KENT : Your majesty, what do you mean ? I must speak **honestly** when my King is being **foolish**. Your youngest daughter does not **shout** about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give your country away like this.

KING LEAR : Say nothing more to me, Kent!

KENT : I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.

KING LEAR : Then you must go away too ! Leave!

KENT : Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.

KING LEAR : Oh, you are a **cruel** man!

[He puts his hand on his sword]

(DUKE OF) CORNWALL : Your majesty, please stop!

KENT : I'll say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.

KING LEAR : Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go!

KENT : Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King.

[To Cordelia] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.

[Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]

GLOUCESTER : Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.

KING LEAR : Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia ?

(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY : Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.

KING LEAR : I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.

BURGUNDY : I don't understand.

KING LEAR : You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your **choice**.

BURGUNDY : I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

KING LEAR : Then leave her, sir.

CORDELIA : Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.

KING LEAR : *[To the King of France.]* So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.

(KING OF) FRANCE : But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

CORDELIA : *[To King Lear.]* Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

KING LEAR : I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!

FRANCE : My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.

[To the King.] Your daughter will be queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.

KING LEAR : She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again.

[To Cordelia.] Leave now, without my love.

Come with me, Burgundy. *[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester]*



Exercises

on Vocabulary from Act I Scene I

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. Every citizen should know his rights and
a. duties b. exercises c. mistakes d. practices
2. Cutting down is a reason for the global warming phenomenon.
a. factories b. forests c. investments d. resorts
3. Egypt is full of , but we don't make the best use of them.
a. injuries b. accidents c. earthquakes d. riches
4. Parents do their best to their children happy.
a. do b. save c. support d. make
5. Can you me an answer to this question, please ?
a. have b. get c. give d. spell
6. The old man gave each of his three children a/an of his money.
a. third b. half c. eighth d. inch

Definitions

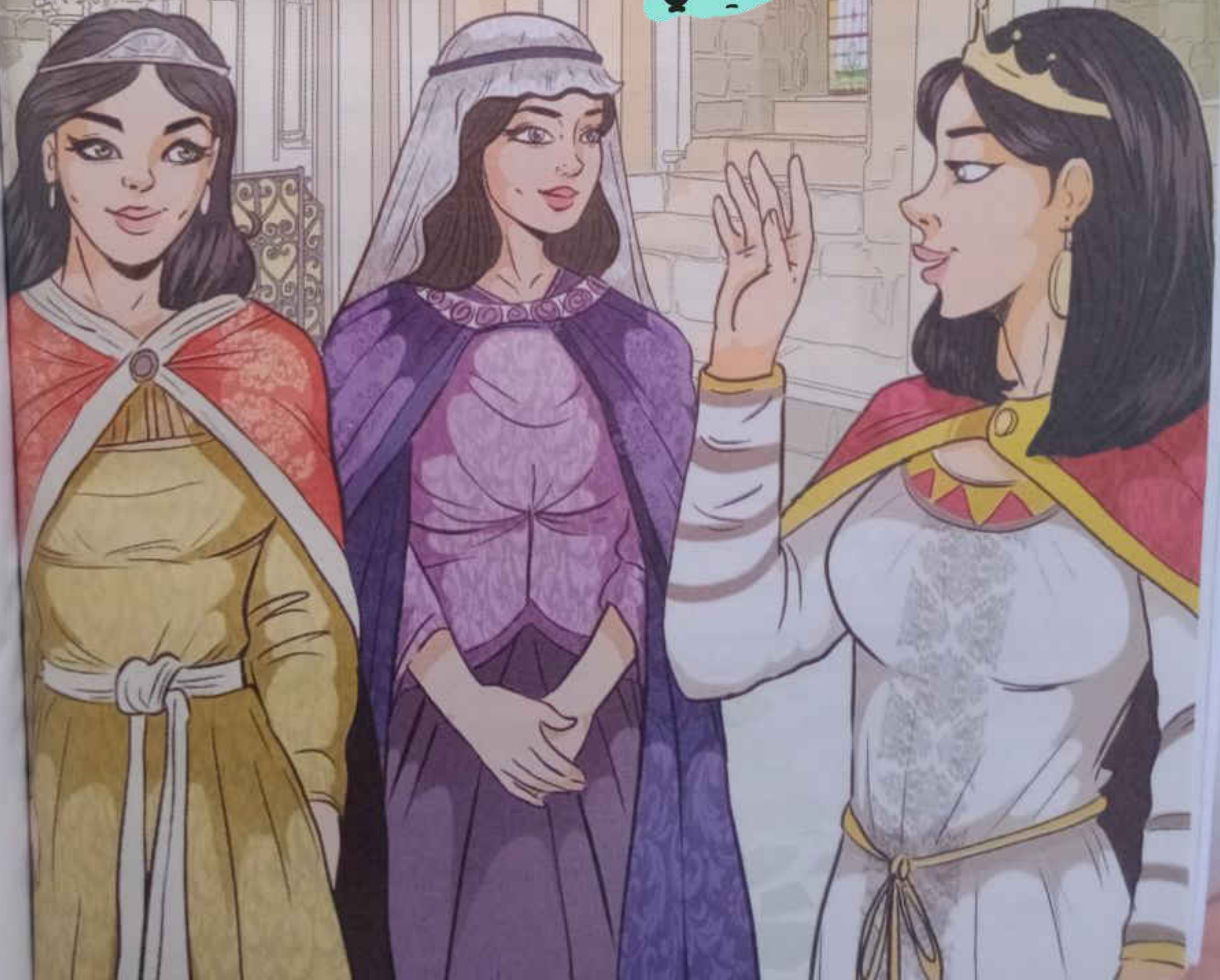
7. A/An means a person that an actor plays.
a. audience b. character c. author d. writer
8. A piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre means a/an
a. event b. novel c. occasion d. play
9. A/An means a small part of a play which happens in one place.
a. scene b. chapter c. act d. actor
10. A weapon with long, sharp metal blade and a handle is called a/an
a. dagger b. arrow c. sword d. armour
11. means something that looks nice and attractive.
a. Beauty b. Happiness c. Democracy d. Violence
12. An official name of a job means a/an
a. inspector b. title c. director d. address
13. A/An means a larger part of a play.
a. scene b. action c. tale d. act

ACT I

Scene I, continued & scene II

الفصل الأول - باقى المشهد الأول والمشهد الثانى

موقع
فيروز
التعليمي



Vocabulary

deserve	يستحق	forgive	يسامح
planning	تخطيط	immediately	فوراً / فى الحال
old age	الشيخوخة	respect	يحترم / احترام
decision	قرار	loyalty	ولاء / إخلاص
palace	قصر	income	دخل / إيراد
anger	غضب	serious	خطير / جاد
succeed	ينجح	truth	حقيقة
inheritance	إرث	discuss	يناقش
lie	يكذب	adult	بالغ
deceive	يخدع	exit	يخرج
trust	يثق / ثقة	enter	يدخل
beat	يهزم		

Words and their definitions

- adult** : A fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions. بالغ سن الرشد
- deceive** : To make someone believes something that is not true. يخدع
- deserve** : It is right for someone to have something because of the way they have behaved or because what they are. يستحق
- inheritance** : The money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died. إرث / ميراث
- income** : Money received, especially on a regular basis, for work or through investments. دخل / إيراد
- loyalty** : A strong feeling of support or allegiance. ولاء / ولا
- trust** : To believe in the reliability, truth, or ability of someone. يثق به

my heart is broken	تحطم قلبى	keep our money from us	يمنع عنا المال
become a little mad	يصاب بالجنون قليلاً	in the correct way	بالطريقة الصحيحة
send ... away	يبعد / يطرد	test his loyalty	يختبر ولائه
take good care of	يعتنى جيداً به		

2 Text & Analysis

Act

I

Scene i, continued

[In King Lear's Palace.]

FRANCE : Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.

CORDELIA : Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

GONERIL : Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN : Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve.

CORDELIA : I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember : everyone discovers the truth in the end. Goodbye!

FRANCE : Come with me, my dear Cordelia.

[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL : Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

REGAN : I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL : Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away.

REGAN : He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

GONERIL : Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.

REGAN : He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

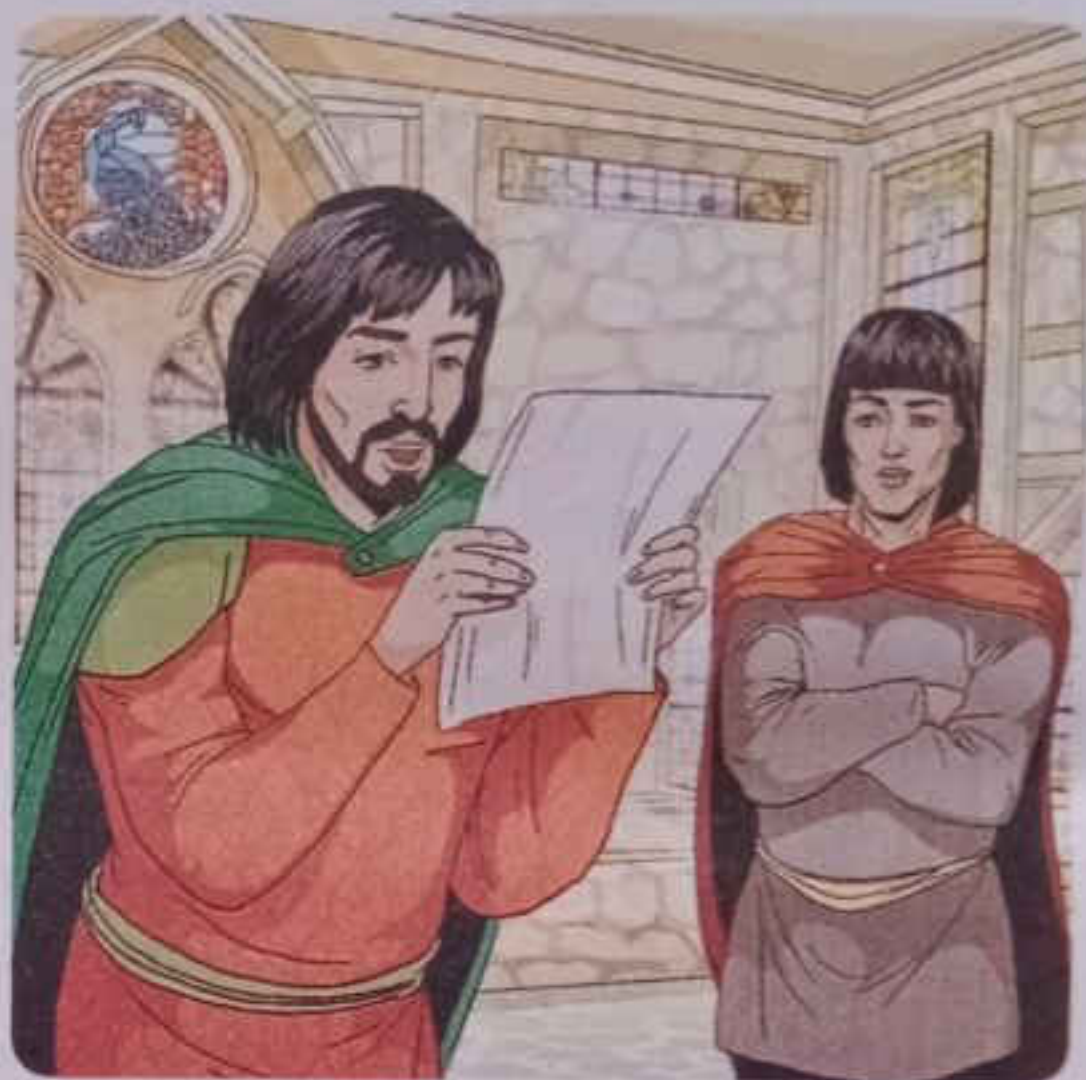
GONERIL : Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us.

REGAN : You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL : We must do something, and quickly.

[At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]

EDMUND : My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my **inheritance** just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son ? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land.



Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter **succeeds**, then Edmund the younger son will **beat** the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER : Ah Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the **palace** tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND : Nothing, father.

GLOUCESTER : Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it ?

EDMUND : Nothing, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Then, why did you hide it in your pocket ? Let me see it.

EDMUND : Please **forgive** me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet; but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER : Let me see that!

EDMUND : OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family,

GLOUCESTER : *[Reads the letter.]*

When we **respect** older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our father were dead, you could enjoy half his **income**, and be loved by your brother Edgar."

Did my son Edgar write this letter ? When did you receive this ?
Who brought it ?

EDMUND : It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER : Are you sure the writing is your brother's ?

EDMUND : Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

GLOUCESTER : Has he ever talked to you about this before ?

EDMUND : No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER : Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he ?

EDMUND : I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

GLOUCESTER : Do you really think so ?



EDMUND : Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.

GLOUCESTER : My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.

EDMUND : I'll go and find him *immediately*.

GLOUCESTER : Find him, Edmund, and be careful.

(to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.

[Gloucester exits. Edgar enters.]

EDMUND : Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you ? When did you last see our father ?

EDGAR : I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

EDMUND : And did you talk to him?

EDGAR : Yes, we spent two hours together.

EDMUND : Did you say anything unkind to him ? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.

EDGAR : Really? Then somebody has *lied* about me.

EDMUND : That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

EDGAR : My sword ? But why ?

EDMUND : That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!

[Edgar exits]

EDMUND : My brother and father *trust* me, which makes them easy to *deceive*. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.

[Edmund exits.]



Exercises

on Vocabulary from Act I Scene I & Scene II

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. My heart is because of violence crimes against children.
a. broken b. spoken c. taken d. shaken
2. We all took a good care my grandfather when he suffered from coronavirus disease.
a. with b. in c. on d. of
3. After breaking his father's valuable mobile, he to be punished by staying at home at the weekend.
a. discussed b. deserved c. described d. reserved
4. He was away from the playground because of his bad behaviour.
a. done b. spent c. sent d. lent
5. Most people suffer from their weak, especially in the increasing living costs.
a. duties b. incomes c. tasks d. rights
6. It's important to, but the most important is to get high marks to join a good university.
a. succeed b. fail c. fall d. test
7. Do you think Mahmoud Metwaly's injury is ? He was taken to hospital after the match.
a. funny b. true c. serious d. broken

Definitions

8. A/An means a fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions.
a. teenager b. baby c. adolescent d. adult
9. To make someone believe something that is not true means to him / her.
a. employ b. include c. deceive d. create
10. means the money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died.
a. Inheritance b. Expectation c. Tolerance d. Intention
11. A strong feeling of support or allegiance means
a. responsibility b. loyalty c. creativity d. popularity

ACT I

Scene III & scene IV

الفصل الأول - المشهد الثالث والرابع

موقع
فيروز
التعليمي



Vocabulary

disguise	يتنكر	hold his head	يمسك برأسه (من الألم)
servant	خادم	give away	بتخلص من / يستغنى عن
behave	يتصرف	encourage	يشجع
behaviour	سلوك	wise	حكيم / عاقل
rude	وقع	surprised	مندعش
Fool	مهرج / مُضحك	attendant	نادل / خادم (فى مكان عام)
	الملك (فى القصر)	mad	مجنون
prepare	يجهز / يعد	cart	عربة تجرها الخيول
guilty	مذنب	attack	يهاجم / هجوم
get angry about	يغضب بشأن		

Words and their definitions

- guilty** : Feeling ashamed because you have done something you know that is wrong or you haven't done something you should have done. مذنب
- servant** : A person who works in another person's house, and cooks, cleans, etc. for them. خادم
- disguise** : To change your appearance so that people cannot recognize you. يتنكر
- attendant** : A person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place. نادل / خادم
- behave** : To do things in a particular way. يتصرف / يسلك
- behaviour** : The way that someone behaves, especially towards other people. سلوك / تصرف
- attack** : To use violence to try to hurt or kill someone. يهاجم
- wise** : To be able to make sensible decisions and give good advice because of the experience and knowledge that you have. حكيم

1 Some phrases : بعض العبارات اللفوية

the cart is pulling a horse	الأمور ليست في وضعها الصحيح	have a taste of her own medicine	تجنى ثمار ما زرعت
disguise yourself	تنكر (في الشكل)	attack (someone)	يهاجم (شخص)
behave badly	يتصرف بشكل سيئ	encourage (someone) to do (something)	يشجع شخص ما على (شيء ما)
get angry about	يغضب بشأن	work hard for	يعمل بجد من أجل
be guilty of (something)	يذنب بشأن ...	make a problem solve a problem	يتسبب في مشكلة يحل مشكلة

2 Text & Analysis

Act

I

Scene iii

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald.]

GONERIL : Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant ?

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD : He's coming, madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL : Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I'll write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]

Act

I

Scene iv

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT : I've disguised myself in different clothes, and I have changed how I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR : Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.]

[To Kent] Who are you ?

KENT : I am a poor but honest man.

KING LEAR : What do you want ?

KENT : I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR : Do you know me ?

KENT : No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR : What can you do ?

KENT : I can give good and honest advice.

KING LEAR : Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.]

You, where's my daughter ?

OSWALD : I'm sorry, sir

[He exits.]



موقع
فيروز
التعليمي

KING LEAR : What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER : He said that your daughter wasn't well.

KING LEAR : Why didn't he come back when I called him ?

SOLDIER : Your majesty, he was very **rude**. I don't know what the problem is; but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.

KING LEAR : I've noticed that too. But where's my **Fool**? I haven't seen him for two days.

SOLDIER : He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.

KING LEAR : Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.

[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.]

Oh, you come here! Who am I ?

OSWALD : My lady's father.

KING LEAR : My lady's father ? How rude !

[King Lear hits him.]

OSWALD : Don't hit me, my lord.

KENT : *[Hitting him.]* Don't be rude to the King or I'll hit you, too!

KING LEAR : Thank you. You are a good man.

[Goneril enters.]

KING LEAR : What's the matter, Goneril ? Why are you holding your head ?

FOOL : You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.



موقع
فيروز
التعليمي

GONERIL : Father, are you **encouraging** your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.

FOOL : Even a fool knows when the **cart** is pulling the horse.

KING LEAR : Does anyone here know who I am ? Tell me !

GONERIL : You're old and you should be **wise**. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR : [*angry*] What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.

[*Albany enters and he is very surprised.*]

[*To the soldiers.*] Prepare my horses.

ALBANY : Please, sir, wait.

KING LEAR : [*To himself.*] Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish ?

ALBANY : Your majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not **guilty**.

KING LEAR : That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have **a taste of her own medicine**.

[*King Lear exits.*]

ALBANY : What has happened, Goneril ?

GONERIL : Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.

[*King Lear enters again*]

KING LEAR : Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!

ALBANY : What is the matter, sir ?

KING LEAR : I'll tell you. [*To Goneril.*] I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!

[King Lear exits with Kent, and Attendants.]

GONERIL : Did you hear that, my husband ?

ALBANY : You know how much I love you, Goneril, but

GONERIL : Do not say more.

[To the Fool.] You, go.

[The Fool exits.]

GONERIL : Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age ? They might **attack** us.

ALBANY : I think you are worrying too much.

GONERIL : It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY : Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

[They exit.]

Master your skills

يهدف إلى تنمية مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية

قم باستخدام مهارات اللغة من قواعد لغوية
ومهارات أخرى بصفه مستمره اثناء العام الدراسي

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



موقع
فيدوز
التعليمي

Exercises

on Vocabulary from

Act I Scene III & Scene IV

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. The policeman himself not to be recognized by the criminals.
a. disbelieved b. disappeared c. disturbed d. disguised
2. She had a bad headache and her head with pain.
a. held b. told c. folded d. called
3. After painting their flat they away all their old things.
a. got b. gave c. brought d. escaped
4. When his son got low marks, he was because he expected more than that.
a. delighted b. fascinated c. surprised d. exhausted
5. When I have a problem, I ask my uncle for advice. He is a/an man.
a. wise b. innocent c. amazing d. excited
6. Being, no one likes him.
a. polite b. clever c. cheerful d. rude
7. Parents should their children to do sports regularly.
a. prevent b. encourage c. discourage d. disappoint

Definitions

8. means feeling ashamed because you have done something you know that is wrong or you haven't done something you should have done.
a. Loyal b. Guilty c. Honest d. Democratic
9. A person who works in another person's house, and cooks cleans, etc. for them is called a/an
a. gardener b. housekeeper c. servant d. expert
10. To means to change your appearance so that people cannot recognize you.
a. interrupt b. disturb c. confuse d. disguise
11. The way that someone behaves, especially towards other people means
a. behaviour b. survivor c. violence d. attack
12. To means to use violence to try to hurt or kill someone.
a. suspect b. resort c. attack d. protect

REVIEW on Act I

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. It's impolite to while talking with your parents.
a. shut b. shout c. shoot d. shuttle
2. What a goal! That was a real beauty. The word "beauty" is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
3. I know the singer's name but I don't know the of the song.
a. address b. spelling c. rhyme d. title
4. You can count on him because he always tells the
a. lies b. habit c. fact d. truth
5. All my neighbours Mr Nader because he is a good man.
a. suspect b. neglect c. respect d. affect
6. We should meet to the elections program for the party.
a. discuss b. deserve c. disappoint d. disappear
7. He was filled with at the bad way he had been treated.
a. happiness b. anger c. confidence d. fun
8. She was guilty stealing the gold necklace.
a. in b. at c. with d. of
9. After burning her neighbour's house, a fire started in her house to have a taste of her own
a. medicine b. drugs c. cigarette d. lighter
10. The rude child shouted at his mother badly. Is the cart a horse ?
a. eating b. pulling c. pushing d. feeding

Definitions

11. Something you do because it is right or part of your job means a/an
a. right b. attitude c. duty d. intention
12. To separate something into two or more parts means to
a. divide b. share c. multiply d. perform

13. means not sensible or clever.
 a. Selfish b. Foolish c. Tolerant d. Confident
14. A country that has a king or a queen means a/an
 a. area b. state c. kingdom d. environment
15. mean a lot of money and valuable things.
 a. Measures b. Powers c. Stages d. Riches
16. To means that it is right for someone to have something because of the way they have behaved or because what they are.
 a. deserve b. preserve c. serve d. reserve
17. Money received, especially on a regular basis, for work or through investments means a/an.....
 a. treasure b. pleasure c. income d. inheritance
18. To means to believe in the reliability, truth, or ability of someone.
 a. hurt b. trust c. treat d. defeat
19. A/An means a person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place.
 a. expert b. attendant c. character d. designer
20. To be able to make sensible decisions and give good advice because of the experience and knowledge that you have means to be
 a. sensitive b. brave c. generous d. wise
21. To means to do things in a particular way.
 a. behave b. evaluate c. estimate d. donate

موقع
فدروز
التعليمي

ACT II

Scene I & scene II

الفصل الثاني - المشهد الأول والثاني



Vocabulary

castle	قلعة	reward	يكافئ / مكافأة
guard	يحرس / حارس	profit	يربح
follow	يتبع	persuade	يقنع
pretend	يتظاهر	beggar	متسول
blood	دماء	faithful	مخلص
inherit	يرث	knight	فارس
ports	موانئ	disbelief	جحود - عدم تصديق

Words and their definitions

reward	: Money for someone who finds or helps someone important.	مكافأة
beggar	: Someone who asks other people for food or money.	متسول
guard	: Someone who protects a place or a person.	حارس
profit	: To make benefit from something.	يربح
pretend	: To act in a way that is not true.	يتظاهر - تظاهر
plot against	: To make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person.	يتآمر ضد
disbelief	: The feeling that something cannot really be happening.	عدم تصديق - جحود
faithful	: To be loyal, continue to support someone.	وفى / مخلص
persuade	: To get someone to do something or agree with you.	يقنع
port	: A place where ships enter and leave a town or country.	ميناء

Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعابير

a stab in the back	طعنة في الظهر	get here	يصل هنا
change his mind	يغير رأيه	call out	يصرخ / ينادي
plot against	يتآمر على	(be) in a fight	يتعارك / يتشاجر
run away	يهرب	in the stocks	في الفلق (آلة لتقييد اللصوص)

[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND : *[To himself.]* So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a **guard** ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters.]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first, we must **pretend** to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here. Now, run from here, brother.

[Calls out.] Help me!

[To his brother again.] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself.] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight. *[He cuts his arm.]*

Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help!

[Gloucester enters with servants.]

EDMUND : Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured.

GLOUCESTER : What happened? Where's Edgar?

EDMUND : He ran that way. When I refused his plan ...

GLOUCESTER : You there, **follow** him!

[Some servants exit.]

What plan, Edmund?

EDMUND : His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you.

Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.

GLOUCESTER : He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a **reward** for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.



EDMUND : Father, I tried to **persuade** Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it. "Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. I'll say that it was all your idea. They know that you will **profit** most if father dies, not me."

GLOUCESTER : This is terrible! **It is a stab in the back.** I'll stop people from leaving England's **ports**; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will **inherit** all my land.

[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL : Gloucester, how are you, my friend ? Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.

REGAN : If it is true, it is terrible news !

GLOUCESTER : Oh Regan, my heart is broken!

REGAN : Did your son really try to kill you ? Your son Edgar ?

GLOUCESTER : Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN : I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND : That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.

REGAN : Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWALL : Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND : It was my duty, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWALL : Is anyone following Edgar ?

GLOUCESTER : Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL : The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me. I need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND : I'd be happy to help you, sir.

GLOUCESTER : I thank you, Cornwall

[They exit.]

Act

II

Scene ii

[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR : I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was not caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So, I must disguise myself as a beggar. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.



[He changes his clothes.]

I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain.
Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT : Good morning, my Lord.

KING LEAR : *[Looks in disbelief at Kent in the stocks.]* What has happened ? Who did this to you ?

KENT : It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

KING LEAR : But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible! Where's my daughter ?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT : Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now ?

FOOL : He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay, and let the wise men run away.

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR : Why don't they want to speak to me ? You say they are sick? They are tired ? That's no answer.

GLOUCESTER : I'm sorry, your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind.

KING LEAR : What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now !

[Gloucester exits.]

KING LEAR : Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart! *[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter.]*

REGAN : Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR : My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

REGAN : I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR : I'm very angry with her!

REGAN : Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.



El-Moasser The Exam

إحرص على اقتناء مراجعة
المعاصر في اللغة الإنجليزية
المطابقة للمنظومة
التعليمية الجديدة

تدريبات واختبارات طبقاً للنظام الجديد

موقع
فيدوز
التعليمي

Exercises

on Vocabulary from Act II Scene I & Scene II

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. There was a great for the person who can treat the sick princess.
a. reward b. punishment c. award d. degree
2. They asked him to their house while they were away. They trusted him so much.
a. rob b. break c. guard d. destroy
3. When we entered the building, we were asked to the security instructions.
a. avoid b. deny c. blow d. follow
4. My manager us to stay for more three hours at the factory to finish the task.
a. warned b. persuaded c. awarded d. refused
5. She didn't love him although she to.
a. followed b. forced c. pretended d. neglected

Definitions

6. A/An means money for someone who finds or helps someone important.
a. award b. gift c. reward d. assistance
7. Someone who asks other people for food or money means a/an
a. architect b. beggar c. lawyer d. expert
8. To make benefit from something means to
a. use b. select c. deduce d. profit
9. means the feeling that something cannot really be happening.
a. Disbelief b. Shame c. Disappearance d. Shy
10. To act in a way that is not true means to
a. intend b. attend c. pretend d. extend
11. A/An means someone who protects a place or a person.
a. guide b. guard c. assistant d. explorer

ACT II Scene III & ACT III Scene I

الفصل الثالث - المشهد الثالث و الفصل الثالث - المشهد الأول

موقع
فيدور
التعليمي



1

Key Vocabulary & Definitions

Vocabulary

blow / blew / blown	تهب الرياح	shelter	ملجأ - يأوى
go mad	يصاب بالجنون	double	يضاعف - ضعف
spy (n/v)	يتجسس / جاسوس	patient	صبور
joke	نكتة	patience	صبر
disagreement	خلاف	storm	عاصفة
ring (n)	خاتم / حلقة	bear / bore / borne	يتحمل
cave	كهف	lock	يغلق

Words and their definitions

- ▶ **joke** : Something that you tell other people to make them laugh. نكتة
- ▶ **shelter** : A place that will protect you from bad weather. ملجأ - يأوى
- ▶ **cave** : A large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground. كهف
- ▶ **spy (n)** : A person who tries to get secret information about a country, organization, or person, especially somebody who is employed by a government or the police. يتجسس / جاسوس
- ▶ **disagreement** : A situation where people disagree about something and often argue. خلاف
- ▶ **storm** : Very bad weather with strong winds and rain, and often thunder and lightning. عاصفة

1 Metaphors and Expressions

turn your back on me	يدير ظهره لى	It's a wet night	إنها ليلة ممطرة
lock me out of	يمنعنى من الدخول	set eyes on	يراقب / يشبث عينيه على
I'd rather + inf.	أنا أفضل ...	apologise to someone	يعتذر لشخص ما
keep you warm	يجعلك دافئاً	apologise for ...	يعتذر عن (شئ)
there isn't room for	لا يوجد مساحة / فراغ لـ ...		

[In the countryside.]

KING LEAR : Regan, I will not stay with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed. Remember, I am old.

REGAN : Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR : Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She has been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN : You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR : No, Regan, I'll never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never **turn your back on me**. And you'd not **lock me out** of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN : Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL : Listen! Who's coming ?

REGAN : It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald].

KING LEAR : Who put my servant in the stocks ? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this. *[To Goneril.]* You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand ?

GONERIL : Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father ? What have I done wrong ?

KING LEAR : Oh, how unhappy you've made me. You're too cruel! Why won't you **apologise** to me ? And why is my servant in the stocks ?

CORNWALL : I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave well.

KING LEAR : You? Was it you ?

REGAN : Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.

KING LEAR : Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave ? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.

[To himself.] Return with Goneril? I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man. *[Points at Oswald.]*

GONERIL : It's your choice, father.

KING LEAR : Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't **set eyes on you** again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. I'll be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.

REGAN : That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister. Are fifty soldiers not enough for you ?

GONERIL : My servants could help you.

REGAN : Yes, why not, father ? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.

KING LEAR : But Regan, I gave you everything ...

REGAN : And you gave it to me at the right time !

KING LEAR : I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing - to keep a hundred soldiers. Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan ?

REGAN : Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR : *[To Goneril.]* Then I'll go back with you. Your fifty soldiers is **double** her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.

GONERIL : Listen, father. You do not need twenty five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.

REGAN : Why do you even need one soldier ?

KING LEAR : Why do I need them ? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you only give people what they need to live, then they are little more than animals. You are a lady. If you just want to stay warm, you don't need those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need **patience**! Oh, give me patience, or I will **go mad**!

[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL : We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.

REGAN : This house is small; there isn't **room** for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL : Where is the Duke of Gloucester ?

CORNWALL : He followed Lear.

[Gloucester enters.]

Here he is.

GLOUCESTER : The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.

CORNWALL : Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.

GONERIL : Yes, don't try to stop him.

GLOUCESTER : But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing.
There is nowhere to **shelter** for many kilometres.

REGAN : That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.

CORNWALL : Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.

[They exit.]



Act

III

Scene i

[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]

KENT : Who's there, in this terrible weather ? Where's the King ?

SOLDIER : He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.

KENT : But who's with him ?

SOLDIER : Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes.



KENT : Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems. I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King.

[They exit.]

موقع
فيروز
التعليمي

Exercises

on Vocabulary from Act II Scene III & Act III Scene I

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. While they were fishing, the wind hard.
a. exploded b. blew c. flew d. excluded
2. You should apologise your elder brother now.
a. about b. of c. to d. at
3. They their eyes on the criminal to know his partners.
a. sit b. met c. set d. bit
4. While climbing the mountain, they stayed for a night in a/an to protect themselves from heavy rains.
a. inn b. office c. stream d. cave
5. He made us laugh all time by his nice
a. jokes b. arguments c. riddles d. tales
6. His wife's death affected him badly and he mad.
a. made b. came c. went d. took
7. He went to prison because he for another country for years.
a. spoiled b. spied c. tried d. tied

Definitions

8. A/An is a person who tries to get secret information about a country, organization, or person, especially somebody who is employed by a government or the police.
a. soldier b. actor c. spy d. archaeologist
9. Something that you tell other people to make them laugh is a/an
a. lock b. joke c. aim d. ambition
10. A/An means very bad weather with strong winds and rain, and often thunder and lightning.
a. cloud b. earthquake c. storm d. eruption
11. A place that will protect you from bad weather means
a. prison b. cell c. jail d. shelter

ACT III

Scene II, Scene III and Scene IV

الفصل الثالث - المشهد الثاني والثالث والرابع

موقع
فيروز
التعليمي



1 Key Vocabulary & Definitions

Vocabulary

stomach	معدة	hungry stomachs	بطون جائعة
hard-hearted	قاسى القلب	blanket	بطانية
forgive	يسامح / يعفو عن	mice	فئران
straw	قش	keep away from	يبتعد عن / يبعد عن
footprints	آثار الأقدام	hut	كوخ (عشة)
philosopher	فيلسوف / حكيم	lightning	البرق
apart from	باستثناء	rise	يرتفع / تشرق الشمس
army	جيش	torch	كشاف
homeless	مشرّد / بلا مأوى	keep warm	يدفء

Words and their definitions

sigh (n)	: A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed.	يتنهد
pile	: A group of things put on top of each other.	كومة - ركام
philosopher	: A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life.	فيلسوف
beg	: To ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.	يتوسل
lightning	: Bright light that comes from the sky in a storm.	البرق
torch	: A light you can carry to help you to see.	كشاف ضوئى
hut	: A small building usually with one room.	كوخ
straw	: Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals.	قش
forgive	: To stop feeling angry with someone who does something wrong, annoy or upset you; to stop feeling angry with yourself.	يسامح

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

get rewarded for	يتم مكافأته على ...	come out of ...	يخرج من ...
win the trust	يفوز بثقة ...	accept the man's offer	يقبل عرض شخص

walk in someone's
shoes

بسیار علی خطی /
نهج شخص

2

Text & Analysis

Act

III

Scene ii

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR : Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL : Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR : I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters ?

[Kent enters.]

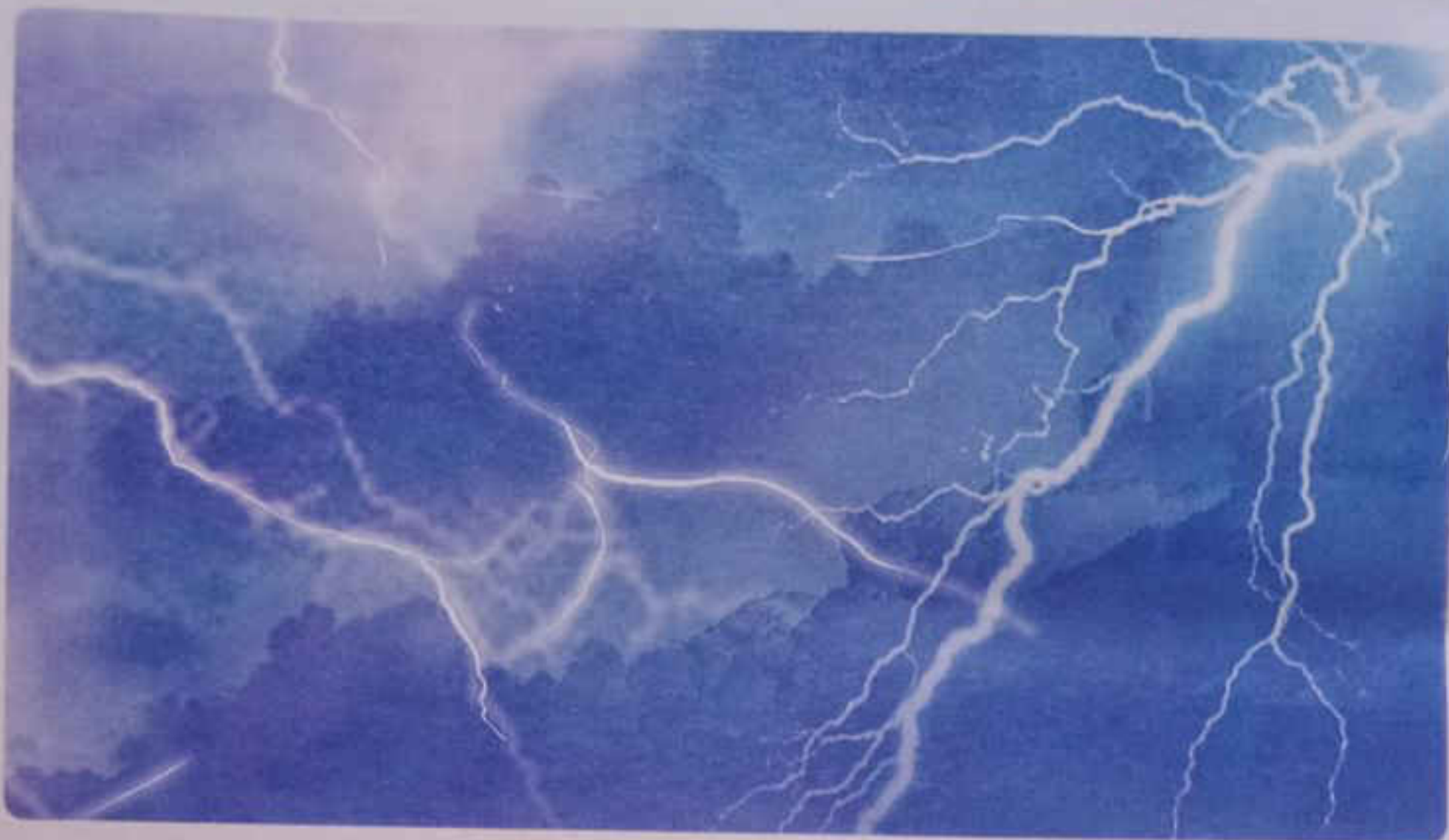
KING LEAR : Who's there ?

FOOL : Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.

KENT : Oh no, why are you here ? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut near here. It will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard-hearted daughters.

KING LEAR : When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad!
[To the Fool.] How are you, my boy ? I'm cold. Where's the straw? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent].



[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]

GLOUCESTER : Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND : That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER : Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes, and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight ...

[To himself.] No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him.

[To Edmund.] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND : *[To himself.]* I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man **ris**es as the old man falls!

[He exits.]

Act

III

Scene iv

[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT : Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR : Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it any more!

KENT : Please, go inside.

KING LEAR : *[To the Fool.]* You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor **homeless** people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your **hungry stomachs** and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]

FOOL : Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT : Who's in there ?

FOOL : A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT : Who are you ? Come out here.

[Edgar enters disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.]

EDGAR : Keep away from me!

KING LEAR : Are you mad like me ? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR : Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR : Have his daughters done this to him ?

[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL : No, he only has a blanket.

KING LEAR : Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you ?

EDGAR : I was a servant, who was very proud.

KING LEAR : It would be better if you were dead than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL : Look, here comes a walking fire.

[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]

KING LEAR : Who's this ?

GLOUCESTER : What's your name ?

EDGAR : My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.

GLOUCESTER : Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man ? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers ?

EDGAR : Poor Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER : Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT : My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR : First, let me talk to this philosopher. What are you researching ?

EDGAR : I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.

KENT : *[To Gloucester.]* Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.

[Gloucester holds his torch in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]

GLOUCESTER : I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen – the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.

EDGAR : Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER : Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.

KENT : This way, your majesty.

KING LEAR : *[Pointing to Edgar.]* I am going with him!

KENT : My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.

GLOUCESTER : OK, Sir, come on; come with us.

KING LEAR : Let's go then, my good philosopher.

[They exit.]



Exercises

on Vocabulary from

Act III Scene II, Scene III & Scene IV

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. When he fell over, his was broken and he was in a complete darkness.
a. candle b. light c. torch d. lighter
2. We had lunch in a restaurant downtown yesterday, but it wasn't good and my hurt me badly.
a. hand b. stomach c. knee d. elbow
3. They sleep on a mattress filled with
a. straw b. crops c. flour d. strawberry
4. Your father is very angry. away from him now.
a. Take b. Forget c. Dig d. Keep
5. Don't be with your sister. She loves you.
a. kind-hearted b. hard-handed c. hard-working d. hard-hearted

Definitions

6. A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed means a/an
a. sigh b. end c. sign d. idea
7. A/An means light you can carry to help you to see.
a. lightning b. torch c. edition d. flash
8. A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life means a/an
a. archaeologist b. therapist c. educationalist d. philosopher
9. To means to stop feeling angry with someone who does something wrong, annoy, or upset you; to stop feeling angry with yourself.
a. remember b. remain c. forgive d. revenge
10. A small building usually with one room means a/an
a. hut b. establishment c. charity d. area
11. Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals means
a. sand b. straw c. grains d. bills

REVIEW on Act II & Act III

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Vocabulary

1. Although they the price, he refused to sell the old car.
a. reduced b. doubled c. decreased d. limited
2. Did you know that camels can being thirsty for 15 days ?
a. tear b. protect c. defend d. bear
3. It is not accepted to your back on someone while talking with him.
a. turn b. replace c. change d. run
4. Finally, they managed to here. It was a long tiring journey.
a. give b. get c. take d. make
5. Do you agree to help us or you will your mind ?
a. change b. replace c. correct d. charge
6. She called for help when the thieves grabbed her bag.
a. in b. on c. out d. with

Definitions

7. To means to make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person.
a. plot for b. protect from c. escape from d. plot against
8. To be loyal, continue to support someone means to be
a. hateful b. respectful c. helpful d. faithful
9. To means to get someone to do something or agree with you.
a. persuade b. delete c. determine d. spy
10. A place where ships enter and leave a town or country means a/an
a. station b. establishment c. port d. organization
11. means bright light that comes in the sky in a storm.
a. Thunder b. Hurricane c. Volcano d. Lightning
12. A large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground means a/an
a. cave b. oasis c. gulf d. island

New Hello

& King Lear

By A Group Of Supervisors

Skills Builder

الصف الثاني الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

2nd
Sec.
2021
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

PART 1

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

1. The Structure of the Simple Sentence
١. بناء الجملة البسيطة
2. Parts of Speech
٢. أقسام الكلام
3. Tenses
٣. الأزمنة
4. Kinds of Sentences
٤. الجمل بأنواعها

PART 2

Skills

المهارات

1. Reading Skill
١. مهارة القراءة
2. Writing Skill
٢. مهارة الكتابة
3. Translation
٣. الترجمة

تنويه

- استخدام ملحق المهارات بحصة مستمرة أثناء العام الدراسي لتتمكن من تنمية مهاراتك اللغوية
- يساعدك الملحق في المهارات المطلوب تحصيلها من العام الماضي التي لم تتعرض إليها نظرا لأزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد (كوفيد 19).



PART

1

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية



Contents :

1. The Structure of the Simple Sentence
2. Parts of Speech
3. Tenses
4. Kinds of Sentences

١. بناء الجملة البسيطة
٢. أقسام الكلام
٣. الأزمنة
٤. الجمل بأنواعها

القواعد اللغوية من المرحلة الابتدائية
حتى الصف الثاني الثانوي

تنويه

I The Structure of the Simple Sentence

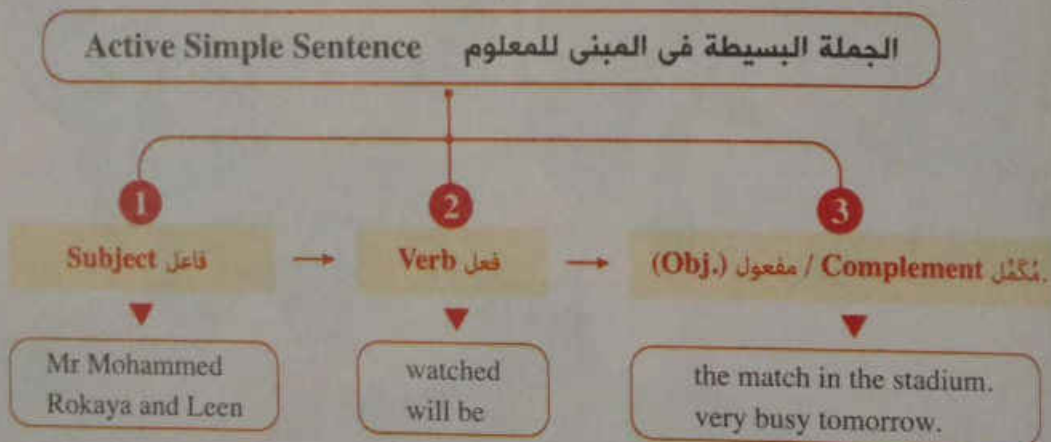
بناء الجملة البسيطة

في هذا الجزء ستراجع كيف تكتب الجملة، وهذا الموضوع مهم جداً لكي :

١. تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون (مهارة الاستماع).
٢. تُعبر عن أفكارك وانطباعاتك وما تريده (مهارة التحدث).
٣. تقرأ وتفهم وتحلل وتستنتج (مهارة القراءة والتفكير النقدي).
٤. تُنمي القدرة على التعبير الإبداعي (مهارة الكتابة: مقال - بريد الكتروني - قصة... إلخ).
٥. تُتقن نقل الأفكار (المعنى المراد) من لغة لأخرى (فن الترجمة).

أولاً : الجملة المبنية للمعلوم.

- تتكون الجملة الخبرية البسيطة المبنية للمعلوم من :



- المكونات الرئيسية الثلاثة للجملة البسيطة :

1 Subject الفاعل

① الفاعل هو الذي يقوم بالفعل :

e.g. : - Ali ate a sandwich. - My horse won the race.

② يمكن أن يكون الفاعل هو موضوع الجملة (يقابله المبتدأ في اللغة العربية) :

e.g. : - Mariam is tall. - Sports make us fit.

③ قد يكون الفاعل اسم إنسان / حيوان / مكان / شيء معنوي غير ملموس ... إلخ :

e.g. : - Rodayna studies medicine at university. (اسم إنسان)

- The cat caught a rat. (اسم حيوان)

- Our house is in Aswan. (اسم مكان)

- Cooperation makes people happy. (اسم معنوي)

④ قد يكون الفاعل اسم مفرد أو جمع [انظر الجزء الخاص بالأسماء (Nouns) صفحة (١٣)]:

e.g. :- My sister is at home. - My sisters are at home.

⑤ تحل ضمائر الفاعل التالية محل فاعل الجملة [راجع الجزء الخاص بالضمائر (Pronouns) صفحة (٢٤)]:

I - you - he - she - it - we - they

e.g. :- Omar is clever. = He is clever.
- Nada is beautiful. = She is beautiful.
- Esraa and Doaa are sisters. = They are sisters.
- The lion and the tiger are strong. = They are strong.

⑥ تُستخدم صفات الإشارة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- this (هذه / هذا للمفرد القريب) - these (هؤلاء / للجمع القريب)
- that (ذلك / تلك للمفرد البعيد) - those (أولئك / للجمع البعيد)

e.g. :- This is my friend. - These are my friends.
- That was a good present. - Those were good presents.

- وتُستخدم صفات الإشارة أيضاً قبل فاعل الجملة :

e.g. :- This boy got high marks. - These boys got high marks.
- That dog chased a cat. - Those dogs chased a cat.

⑦ قد تُستخدم الضمائر غير المحددة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- someone - somebody - something - somewhere
- anyone - anybody - anything - anywhere
- everyone - everybody - everything - everywhere
- no one - nobody - nothing - nowhere

e.g. :- Someone took my tablet. - No one is at home.
- Everyone wants you to succeed. - Anything can change your opinion.

⑧ يمكن استخدام (One) بمعنى (المرد / الفرد) كفاعل للجملة :

e.g. :- One must help other people.

⑨ تُستخدم (it) أحياناً كفاعل وظيفي أو مُبَيِّن في بعض الجمل :

e.g. :- It has been hot today. (It = The weather)
- It is nine o'clock. (It = The time)
- It was kind of you to help me. (It = The action itself)

PART 1

١٠ تُستخدم (There) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هناك / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ...) للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

- e.g. : - There is a fish restaurant on the corner.
- There goes Omar on his bike.

١١ تُستخدم (Here) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هنا / إلى هنا / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ...) للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

- e.g. : - Here's my camera.
- Here comes Ranya with her husband.

١٢ وقد يكون الفاعل عبارة اسمية :

- e.g. : - The manager of the school wants all students to be clever.
- Some men and women attended the meeting.
- Everyone in our company works hard.

١٣ يمكن استخدام صفة أو أكثر قبل الفاعل :

- e.g. : - A tall man welcomed us.
- A small car stopped in front of my shop.
- A clever young man wants to marry my sister.

١٤ يمكن استخدام الأرقام والأعداد الترتيبية كصفات قبل الفاعل :

- e.g. : - Five students got the full marks in the exam.
- The first computer was very big.

١٥ يمكن استخدام صفات الملكية التالية قبل الفاعل :

my - your - his - her - its - our - their

- e.g. : - Our grandfather built the family house in 1970.

١٦ يمكن عطف فاعل على فاعل آخر باستخدام الروابط التالية :

لا ... ولا / neither ... nor / إما ... أو ... or / and / or / not / either ... or ...
/ as well as = along with = in addition to إلى ... etc.

- e.g. : - Ahmed and Abdu are friends.
- My cousins, as well as my uncle, are having lunch with us tomorrow.

١٧ يمكن استخدام ضمائر الملكية التالية كفاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

mine - yours - his - hers - ours - theirs

- e.g. : - That isn't your bike. Yours is blue. (Yours = Your bike)
- This house is small. Mine is bigger. (Mine = My house)

١٨ يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية كضمائر فاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

some / any / a lot / many / much / several / each / every /
all / both / one / two / three ... etc.

e.g. : - Not all people liked the film. Some said it was boring.
(Some = Some people)

- I didn't talk to Ayman or Ashraf. Both were very busy.
(Both = Both Ayman and Ashraf).

- You can give students an electronic exam. Each has a tablet.
(Each = Each student)

١٩ يمكن استخدام تعبيرات الكمية والتجزئة التالية قبل الفاعل :

some / any / no / part / a lot of / lots of / plenty of كثير من
/ many / much / (a) little / (a) few / several / عديد ... etc.

e.g. : - A lot of people visited my uncle in hospital.

٢٠ يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل الرئيسي :

جملة رئيسية + say / think / believe / expect / hope / ... + that
جملة رئيسية + It + be + said / thought / believed / expected / hoped ... + that

e.g. : - People say that Omar has a lot of money.

- It is said that Omar has a lot of money.

٢١ يمكن استخدام بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وبعض التعبيرات الأخرى في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Every day, I go to the gym.
- On my way to school, I stopped to buy a sandwich.
- Unfortunately, I lost my mobile.

٢٢ وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To + inf.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمعلوم) :

e.g. : - To succeed is the dream of all students.

٢٣ وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To be + p.p.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمجهول) :

e.g. : - To be thanked makes some people happy.

٢٤ وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (Being + p.p. / adj.) كفاعل للجملة :

e.g. : - Being clever is the dream of everyone. (معلوم)

- Being hurt, he called for a doctor. (مجهول)

PART 1

2

Verb

الفعل

e.g. : - Magdi ate a sandwich.

- We will go shopping.

١ يأتي الفعل غالباً بعد الفاعل :

٢ يحدد الفعل زمن الجملة :

Sentence	الجملة	Tense	الزمن
He plays football.	إثبات	مضارع بسيط	
He doesn't play football.	نفي		
He is playing football.	إثبات	مضارع مستمر	
He isn't playing football.	نفي		
He has played football.	إثبات	مضارع تام	
He hasn't played football.	نفي		
He has been playing football.	إثبات	مضارع تام مستمر	
He hasn't been playing football.	نفي		
He played football.	إثبات	ماضي بسيط	
He didn't play football.	نفي		
He was playing football.	إثبات	ماضي مستمر	
He wasn't playing football.	نفي		
He had played football.	إثبات	ماضي تام	
He hadn't played football.	نفي		
He had been playing football.	إثبات	ماضي تام مستمر	
He hadn't been playing football.	نفي		
He will play football.	إثبات	مستقبل بسيط	
He won't play football.	نفي		
He will be playing football.	إثبات	مستقبل مستمر	
He won't be playing football.	نفي		
He will have played football.	إثبات	مستقبل تام	
He won't have played football.	نفي		
He will have been playing football.	إثبات	مستقبل تام مستمر	
He won't have been playing football.	نفي		

- [للمزيد يُرجى مراجعة الجزء الخاص بالأفعال صفحة (٣٠) وكذلك الجزء الخاص بالآزمنة صفحة (٧١)].

٢) هناك أفعال لازمة (intransitive) بمعنى أنها لا تأخذ مفعول به مثل :

be – go – sleep – smile – cry – look = sound = seem = appear يبدو ... etc.

e.g. : - She smiled when she saw her son.

- He looks happy.

٣) هناك أفعال مُتَعَدِّية (transitive) بمعنى أنها تأخذ مفعول به أو أكثر مثل :

eat – play – visit – choose – take – give – like – see ...etc.

e.g. : - We saw a lion under a tree.

- She gave me some food.

٤) الأفعال الناقصة (Modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

will – would – can – could – may – might – shall – should – must – needn't

e.g. : - Noha can drive a car.

- I will buy this T-shirt.

- You needn't go out now.

- You mustn't smoke here.

٥) الأفعال شبه الناقصة (Semi-modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

have to – has to – had to – used to – need to – be going to – be able to
...etc. من المفترض أن be to – من المفترض أن be supposed to

e.g. : - Amir has to arrive at school at seven.

- I used to live in the countryside.

٦) قد تحتوي الجملة علي أكثر من فعل مساعد :

e.g. : - I have been sleeping for eight hours now.

- I will have finished my university course by next month.

٧) هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) وهناك أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافاً له (ing) أو اسم :

e.g. : - She wants to work in a tourist company.

- He suggested having lunch outdoors.

٨) الفاعل المفرد يأخذ فعل مفرد والفاعل الجمع يأخذ فعل جمع :

e.g. : - She is clever.

- They are clever.

- Omar works hard.

- Omar and Karim work hard.

PART 1

١٠ هناك أفعال تُسمَّى أفعال المطاوعة (ergative verbs) وهي الأفعال التي يمكن أن يُستخدم مفعولها كفاعل لها بنفس المعنى، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

bake	يخبز - يجف بفعل الحرارة	melt	يذوب - يذوب
boil	يغلي	move	يُحرَّك - يتحرك
break	يُكسر - ينكسر	open	يفتح - يفتح
burst	يُفجّر - ينفجر	run	يُدير - يجري
cook	يطبخ - ينضج (يستوى)	sail	يقود السفينة - تُبحر
drive	يقود - ينطلق - يوصل	shake	يُرجّ - يهتز / يرتعش
fly	يُطير - يسافر جواً	tear	يُمزّق - يتمزّق
form	يُكوّن - يتكون	transform	يُحوّل - يتحول
grow	يزرع - ينمو	turn	يلف - يدور من تلقاء نفسه
heal	يُعالج الجرح - يلتئم	walk	يمشي - يأخذ ... للتمشّي

e.g. : - The hot weather **melted** the ice.

(أذاب)

The ice **melted** in the hot weather.

(ذاب)

- Farmers **grow** a lot of plants.

(يزرع)

A lot of trees **grow** in the forest.

(تنمو)

- I **walked** with my wife by the Nile.

(يسير)

I **walked** my wife by the Nile.

(أخذ للتمشية)

١١ لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل نستخدم ظروف الكيفية، ويأتي الظرف بعد الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : - I **walk** carefully in this busy street.

- I **walk** in this busy street carefully.

١٢ تأتي ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) والأفعال المساعدة :

أحياناً sometimes - غالباً often - عادة usually - دائماً always

... etc. أبداً never - نادراً rarely = scarcely = seldom - بين الحين والآخر occasionally

e.g. : - She **always** gets up early.

- He **is always** careful.

3 Complement (الكلمة الجملة) المُكْمَل

١) المقصود بالمُكْمَل هو باقى الجملة الذى يأتى بعد الفاعل والفعل :

e.g. : - I bought some fruit yesterday.

٢) يُمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل صفة (أو صفة بعدها اسم) تصف الفاعل وتأتى بعد أفعال الربط مثل :

be [am, is, are, was, were, has / have been, being, might have been, etc.]

become = get = grow = turn يصبح - seem = appear = sound = look يبدو -

يكون ذو مذاق taste - يكون ذو رائحة smell - يشعر / يكون ذو ملمس feel - يبقى / يظل remain

e.g. : - She is tired.

- Amr looks happy.

- My mother grew old.

- Sama got angry.

٣) يُمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل اسم يُعرّف الفاعل أو يصفه :

e.g. : - Alaa is a doctor.

- Alaa is a clever doctor.

٤) يُمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل مفعول (اسم / صفة يتبعها اسم / عبارة اسمية ... إلخ) :

e.g. : - I bought a car.

- I bought a new car.

- I bought a large new car.

٥) يُمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل أحد ضمائر المفعول التالية :

me - him - her - it - you - us - them - one

e.g. : - An old friend called me.

- My friends have arrived. I'll welcome them.

٦) يُمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل جار ومجرور (حرف جر + اسم) :

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed lives in Aswan.

- Abdulrahman plans to get married next year.

- Bassem works as a police officer.

٧) يُمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل ظرف زمان أو مكان :

e.g. : - I have always lived here.

- She arrived yesterday.

٨) يُمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل ظرف كيفية (بدل على طريقة وقوع الفعل) :

e.g. : - This old man walks slowly.

- She didn't sleep well.

- Karim studies hard.

PART 1

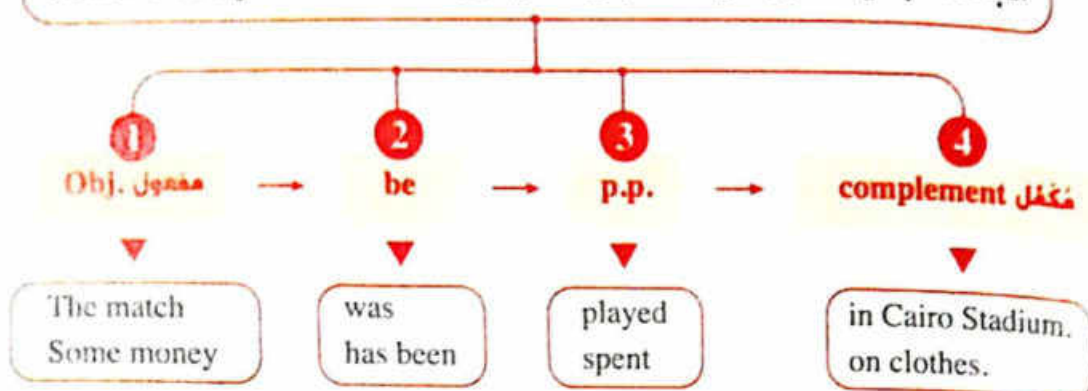
ليس بالضرورة أن يكون هناك مُكْمَل مع الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول به):

e.g. : - The baby has slept.

- Mr Ashraf didn't arrive.

ثانيًا : الجملة المبنيّة للمجهول.

الجملة البسيطة في صيغة المبني للمجهول



Sentence

الجملة

Tense

الزمن

He sells vegetables.	معلوم	مضارع بسيط
Vegetables are sold (by him).	مجهول	
He is selling vegetables.	معلوم	مضارع مستمر
Vegetables are being sold (by him).	مجهول	
He has sold vegetables.	معلوم	مضارع تام
Vegetables have been sold (by him).	مجهول	
He sold vegetables.	معلوم	ماضي بسيط
Vegetables were sold (by him).	مجهول	
He was selling vegetables.	معلوم	ماضي مستمر
Vegetables were being sold (by him).	مجهول	
He had sold vegetables.	معلوم	ماضي تام
Vegetables had been sold (by him).	مجهول	
He will sell vegetables.	معلوم	مستقبل بسيط
Vegetables will be sold (by him).	مجهول	
He will have sold vegetables.	معلوم	مستقبل تام
Vegetables will have been sold (by him).	مجهول	

2

Parts of Speech

أقسام الكلام

Parts of Speech أقسام الكلام



- وفيما يلي شرح شامل لكل هذه الأجزاء :

1 Nouns

الاسماء

People : man – woman – girl – boy – uncle – Sama – Omar...etc.

Animals : animal – insect – bird – lion – cat – snake ... etc.

Things : plant – tree – rock – sea – love – beauty... etc.

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

A Countable Nouns

الاسماء المعدودة

١ الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

- a girl → girls

- an egg → eggs

- a bus → buses

- a library → libraries

٢ هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular	مفرد	Plural	جمع
child	طفل	children	أطفال
crisis	أزمة	crises	أزمات
datum	معلومة	data	معلومات
foot	قدم	feet	أقدام
goose	وزة	geese	أوز
man	رجل	men	رجال
medium	وسيلة إعلامية	media	وسائل الإعلام
mouse	فأر	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	oases	واحات

PART 1

ox	ثور	oxen	ثيران
phenomenon	ظاهرة	phenomena	ظواهر
tooth	سنة	teeth	أسنان
woman	امراة	women	نساء

❶ قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
One	- One student got the full marks.
Every / Each	- Every player in the team trains hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
This / That	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

❶ قبل الأسماء الجمع يُمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

these / أولئك / هؤلاء / a few / كثير / many / أي / some / بعض / those / أولئك / these / أولئك / هؤلاء / a lot of / كثير من / lots of / كثير من / several / عديد / two / three

- e.g. : - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

B Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

❶ الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :

1. Liquids السوائل

water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.

2. Gases الغازات

oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.

3. Meals الوجبات

breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

4. School subjects

المواد الدراسية

history - mathematics - physics - الفيزياء - biology - الأحياء ... etc.

5. Languages

اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

6. Different activities

الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

7. Sports

الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

8. Materials

أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime - حامض الليمون - stone - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

9. Natural phenomena

الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning - البرق - heat - snow - thunder - الرعد - light - rain

10. Abstract nouns

الأسماء المجردة

honesty - أمانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred - كراهية

- confidence - ثقة - courage - شجاعة - experience - خبرة - progress - تقدم

- evidence - دليل - patience - الصبر - peace - السلام - poverty - الفقر etc.

11. Other nouns

أسماء أخرى

jewellery - مجوهرات - money - laughter - ضحك - rubbish

- equipment - المعدات - furniture - اثاث - cash - نقدية - work

- clothing - الملابس - electricity - traffic - مرور - baggage - حقائب

luggage - أمتعة - machinery - news - information - advice - money

- music - bread - cloth.... etc.

1 تُستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that..... etc.

e.g. : - I'd like to have a little juice.

(Not : a few juice)

- How much money do you need?

(Not : How many)

2 لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المحدود :

e.g. : - This equipment is very necessary.

(Not : These equipment)

- I bought bread at the baker's.

(Not : a bread)

3 يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تُعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

e.g. : - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.

- He had a good education at Oxford.

C Quantifiers

تعبيرات الكمية والعدد

1 اسم لا يُعد. / uncountable n. / اسم جمع plural n. + كثير من a lot of / lots of

- يفضل استخدام (a lot of / lots of) في الإثبات مع الأسماء التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد :

e.g. : - I have a lot / lots of books.

- She bought a lot / lots of sugar.

2 اسم جمع plural noun + كثير من / عديد many

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد في صيغة الجمع وتفضل في النفي والاستفهام :

e.g. : - Have you got many books ?

- No, I haven't got many books.

3 اسم لا يُعد uncountable noun + كثير من much

- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتفضل في النفي والاستفهام :

e.g. : - Did you drink much coffee ?

- No, I didn't drink much coffee.

4 a few / few قليل + plural n. اسم جمع

a few = some / a small number عدد قليل ولكنه يكفي

few = not many / almost none عدد قليل وغير كاف

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل :

e.g. : - I have **a few pens**. I can lend you one.

- There are **few glasses** in the kitchen. I need to buy some for the party.

5 a little / little لا يُعد + uncountable قليل

a little = some / a small amount كمية قليلة ولكنها تكفي

little = not much / almost nothing كمية قليلة وغير كافية

- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة :

e.g. : - There is **a little cheese** in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.

- I have **little money** in my pocket. I need to borrow some.

6 some بعض

- تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد في الحالات التالية :
الإيجابيات

1. Affirmative

e.g. : - I will have **some cheese** and **some eggs** for breakfast.

2. Offering

e.g. : - Would you like **some sandwiches** and **some juice**?

تقديم عروض

3. Request

e.g. : - Can you give me **some paper** and **some pens**?

الطلب

7 any أي

- تستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد في الحالات التالية :
النفي

1. Negative

e.g. : - He didn't have **any sandwiches** or **any juice**.

2. Interrogative

e.g. : - Are there **any tomatoes** or **any cheese** in the fridge?

الاستفهام

3. Hardly any

e.g. : - There is **hardly any** milk left.

4. Any at all

e.g. : - I don't have **any money at all**.

- لاحظ ما يلي :

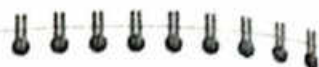
no + فعل مثبت = **any** + فعل منفي

e.g. : - He **hasn't** got **any** friends.
= He **has** got **no** friends.

- There **isn't** **any** milk.
= There **is** **no** milk.

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة



١ عندما تربط كلمة (and) اسمين أو ضميرين فإن الفعل بعدهما يكون جمعا في كل الاحوال :
 e.g. : - Meat and chicken are sources of protein.
 - You and I have to leave early.

٢ الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول مفرد أو لا يُعد هي (is / was / has / (inf. + s / es / ies)
 e.g. : - This man is kind.
 - The car was repaired.
 - Milk makes us healthy.

٣ الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول جمع هي (are / were / have / infinitive)
 e.g. : - These men are kind.
 - The cars were repaired.

٤ يُمكن أن تُستخدم (many - much) في الجملة المثبتة في الحالات التالية :
 أ. تستخدم (many - much) في الجمل المثبتة إذا جاء قبلهما ما يلي :
 so / very / as / too + much

e.g. : - I have so much work to do.
 - She has put too much salt in the soup.

so / as / too / a good / a great + many
 e.g. : - I saw too many people in the street.
 - He has so many friends on Facebook.

ب. إذا كانت many / much فاعل الجملة أو تصف فاعل الجملة :
 e.g. : - Many students find maths difficult.
 = Many find maths difficult.

٥ بعض الأسماء لها نفس الشكل في المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المعنى المقصود :
 طائرة - طائرات aircraft / سمكة - سمك fish / غزال - غزلان deer / خروف - غنم sheep
 مركبة فضاء - مركبات فضاء spacecraft /

e.g. : - A deer is running away from a tiger.
 - Some deer are standing in the shade ظل of a tree.

٦ عند استخدام **the** قبل صفة دون وجود موصوف تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع و تأخذ دائما فعل جمع :

... المصابين بالصمم / the deaf / المعاقين / the disabled / الأغنياء / the rich / الفقراء / the poor

e.g. : - The poor are in need of our help. = Poor people are in need of our help.

٧ هناك أسماء دائما في صيغة الجمع وليس لها صيغة مفرد مثل :

cattle	ماشية	pliers	زرديّة
clothes	ملابس	police	الشرطة
glasses	نظارة	scissors	مقص
jeans	بنطلون جينز	shorts	بنطلون قصير
people	الناس	trousers	بنطلون

- Your clothes are dirty.

- The pliers have many uses.

٨ الأسماء المكونة من جزئين مكملين لبعضهما البعض دائما تأخذ فعل جمع :

e.g. : - My glasses were broken yesterday.

- Your trousers are very fashionable.

- ويمكن استخدام (pair of) قبل الأسماء المكونة من جزئين وفي هذه الحالة يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع حسب كلمة (pair) :

e.g. : - A pair of sunglasses was on the table.

- Five pairs of socks were bought for me.

٩ بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل :

Uncountable (لا تُعد)	Countable (تُعد)
business	عمل
chicken	لحم الدجاج
coffee	قهوة
cold	البرد عموما
experience	خبرة
glass	الزجاج
hair	الشعر
iron	الحديد
light	الضوء
orange	اللون البرتقالي
paper	ورق الكتابة
time	الوقت
a business - businesses	شركة / مشروع
a chicken - chickens	دجاجة
a coffee - coffees	فنجان قهوة
a cold - colds	نزلة برد
an experience - experiences	تجربة حياتية
a glass - glasses	كوب زجاجي
a hair - hairs	شعرة
an iron - irons	مكواة
a light - lights	مصباح كهربائي
an orange - oranges	برتقالة
a paper - papers	جريدة / وثيقة
a time - times	مرة واحدة / مرات

PART 1

e.g. : - I don't like orange.

- Iron conducts heat and electricity.

- Two very good irons are displayed in this shop.

١٠ يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالاتي :

أ. استخدام (bit - piece) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه في المفرد وفي الجمع (bits - pieces) :

e.g. : - She gave me a piece (a bit) of advice.

- She gave me three pieces (bits) of advice.

ب. استخدام ألفاظ تجزئة تشير إلى كميات محددة مثل :

A tube of toothpaste	أنبوبة معجون اسنان	A slice of meat	شريحة لحم
A box of matches	علبة كبريت	A loaf of bread	رغيف خبز
A sheet of paper	فرخ ورق	A grain of sand	حبة رمل
A drop of water	قطرة ماء	A bottle of milk	زجاجة حليب
A glass of lemonade	كوب ليموناده	A bar of soap /	قطعة صابون /
A jar of jam	برطمان مربى	chocolate	شوكولاتة
A lump of sugar	مكعب سكر		

ج. وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة :

e.g. : - four sheets of paper

- five pairs of shoes

- six jars of jam

- two loaves of bread

- two slices of meat

- six bars of chocolate

- five cups of coffee

Test Yourself

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Hassan earns money. He is in need of your help.

a. little

b. a little

c. a few

d. much

2. How meat do you need, Madam ?

a. a lot

b. many

c. much

d. little

3. I must buy some bread. I hardly have left in the kitchen.

a. much

b. any

c. many

d. some

4. He doesn't like city life as there's always too noise.

a. many

b. much

c. little

d. a little

5. Two hundred pounds enough for today's spending.
 a. are b. have c. is d. were
6. Will you buy a of toothpaste, honey?
 a. piece b. glass c. tube d. plate
7. people live in the country today than in the past.
 a. Little b. Least c. Few d. Fewer
8. Five hundred metres a long distance to walk.
 a. haven't b. hasn't c. isn't d. aren't
9. Can you tell us how holiday a year did you use to have?
 a. many b. much c. often d. tall
10. is usually on the menu of that restaurant.
 a. The chickens b. Chickens c. Chicken d. Chicks
11. I can hear too many in the living room. Do you have guests?
 a. noise b. sound c. voice d. voices
12. Try to reduce the of cups of tea you drink a day.
 a. amount b. quantity c. number d. quality
13. I've had many jobs to do and so I have got time.
 a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
14. There three pairs of scissors in the drawer.
 a. is b. are c. was d. has
15. There is juice for everyone to drink, so we need some more.
 a. too much b. too many c. little d. enough
16. There aren't hotels in this town. Only two.
 a. some b. any c. many d. much
17. The money of the books on the table.
 a. are b. were c. has d. is
18. How do you have?
 a. much money b. few money c. many money d. little money
19. There aren't seats for everybody. Some people will have to sit on the floor or stand!
 a. all b. much c. any d. enough
20. How people are coming to the party?
 a. some b. many c. much d. any

PART 1

21. He bought blue shorts.
 a. a b. an c. some d. any
22. There plenty of sugar but we need some more coffee.
 a. is b. are c. was d. were
23. The police interviewing some people.
 a. is b. was c. are d. have
24. He failed to carry out his duties as a manager as he didn't have
 a. many experience b. many experiences
 c. enough experiences d. much experience
25. He gave the police a lot of about the criminal.
 a. few information b. an information
 c. informations d. information
26. congratulations! I'm very happy to hear your good news.
 a. A b. Any c. Few d. Many
27. I don't have time to speak to you. I have to leave right now.
 a. some b. much c. any d. many
28. My trousers some holes in them.
 a. has b. have c. is d. are
29. Can you help me with?
 a. a luggage b. many baggage c. a baggage d. my luggage
30. Could I have only oranges to eat?
 a. some b. any c. many d. an
31. There wasn't traffic on the road. Only a few private cars.
 a. many b. much c. little d. a few
32. My are in my bag.
 a. a glass b. pair of glasses c. glass d. glasses
33. There a lot of people who are interested in what you are doing.
 a. is b. was c. have d. are
34. How coffees do you want to drink ?
 a. much b. many c. little d. few
35. Those sheep fat.
 a. is b. are c. was d. had

36. I gave Rodayna advice about doing better at English.
 a. an b. some c. any d. a few
37. there a lot of hotels in Aswan?
 a. Has b. Was c. Are d. Had
38. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take photographs.
 a. a b. some c. any d. many
39. Her clothes to be ironed.
 a. has needed b. needs c. need d. is needing
40. There only a little accommodation available in this hotel.
 a. are b. were c. do d. is
41. There a lot of rubbish in the kitchen.
 a. is b. are c. has d. were
42. We met interesting people at the party.
 a. some b. any c. much d. a little
43. Ashraf has a lot of good He is a genius.
 a. an idea b. idea c. ideas d. some ideas
44. I need information.
 a. an b. few c. some d. many
45. My trousers too long.
 a. are b. is c. have d. has
46. I didn't buy a pen, I bought hat for my mother.
 a. some b. few c. an d. a
47. How work do you do every day?
 a. many b. much c. often d. old
48. My reading glasses missing.
 a. had b. was c. is d. are
49. This poor woman has
 a. child b. a few children c. little children d. much children
50. I haven't got luggage.
 a. many b. some c. any d. a
51. We hardly heard news of him since he left the company.
 a. any b. some c. many d. much

PART 1

52. She gave me binoculars.
 a. much b. some c. any d. a
53. He bought a lot of for his new flat.
 a. few furniture b. new furniture c. a new furniture d. many furniture
54. Walid likes in his soup.
 a. a salt b. many salt c. a few salt d. a lot of salt
55. She didn't eat much for lunch, only apple.
 a. an b. some c. many d. a lot of
56. A lot of require that you have to be patient.
 a. a job b. work c. jobs d. job
57. Mathematics not very easy to understand.
 a. are b. were c. is d. has
58. Knowledge of foreign languages necessary.
 a. is b. are c. have d. were
59. We saw some running in the garden.
 a. mouse's b. mouse c. mice d. mice's
60. I drink tea.
 a. none b. a lot of c. many d. a few

2 Pronouns الضمائر

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكة
I	me	my	mine	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	her	hers	herself
It	it	its	-----	itself
You	you	your	yours	yourself
				yourselves
They	them	their	theirs	themselves
We	us	our	ours	ourselves
One	one	one's	one's	oneself

1 Subject Pronouns**ضمائر الفاعل**

- تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل لتحل محل فاعل الجملة لتجنب تكراره :

- e.g. : - I bought a car last month. - Ashraf (He) wrote a new article.
 - Aya (She) studies hard. - A lion (It) eats meat.
 - You came to school late. - Rokaya and I (We) like tennis.
 - Ayman and Mohammed (They) love mum.
 - Cats (They) eat fish.
 - One can achieve a goal by working hard.

2 Object Pronouns**ضمائر المفعول**

- تستخدم ضمائر المفعول لتحل محل مفعول الجملة وتأتي بعد الفعل وحروف الجر أيضًا :

- e.g. : - Menna helped me with my homework.
 - We visited Ahmed (him) last Friday.
 - My father bought a bike for Leen (her).
 - Rahma chased the rat (it). - We won't help you.
 - They invited Rodayna and me (us). - She doesn't like goats (them).
 - He greeted Ahmed and Omar (them).

3 Possessive Adjectives**صفات الملكية**

- صفات الملكية يأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك :

- e.g. : - My sister is a teacher. - I think it is his coat.
 - Hanan decorated her flat. - An animal cleans its skin.
 - Never waste your time. - We sold our old car.
 - They renewed their visa. - Birds cooperate to look after their young.

4 Possessive Pronouns**ضمائر الملكية**

- ضمائر الملكية تستخدم بدون اسم بعدها :

- e.g. : - The blue bike is mine. - He used my pen and saved his.
 - My bag is small, but hers is big. - That house isn't yours; it's ours.
 - They asked us to leave our seats, but they kept theirs.

PART 1

- لاحظ استخدام ضمائر الملكية بعد الصيغة التالية :

1. a / an + اسم مفرد + of + ضمير ملكية

e.g. : - He is a cousin of hers. = He is her cousin.

2. ضمير ملكية + of + اسم جمع

e.g. : - They are friends of ours. = They are our friends.

ملاحظات على استخدام الضمائر

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية و عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع لكن يفضل استخدام ضمير مفرد يعود على المذكر وضمير مفرد يعود على المؤنث مربوطين بكلمة (or) :
(Someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody)

e.g. : - Someone was knocking on the door. They made my sister afraid.
= Someone was knocking on the door. He or she made my sister afraid.
- Somebody took my pen. I didn't see them.
= Somebody took my pen. I didn't see him or her.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية :

(Something / anything / everything / nothing)

e.g. : - Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud noise.
الضمير (It) يستخدم لغير العاقل المفرد (فاعل / مفعول) وفي حالة الجمع نستخدم (They)
للفاعل و (them) للمفعول :

e.g. : - The cat (It) eats fish. - Lions (They) eat meat.
- Amal fed the cat (it). - I don't like rats (them).

- لاحظ استخدام (It) للتعبير عن الزمن والمسافة والطقس :

e.g. : - It is half past nine. - It is a long way to school.
- It is quite cold today.

- لاحظ أن (its) للملكية و يأتي بعدها اسم أو صفة ثم اسم :

e.g. : - The fox moved its long tail. - The dog ate its food.
أما (It's) تكون اختصار (It is / It has) :
- It's (It is) a new car. - It's (It has) rained for two days.

- لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

It + (be) + object pronoun ضمير مفعول

e.g : A : Who opened the door ? B : It's me.

It is + subject / object pronoun ضمير فاعل / ضمير مفعول + relative pronoun ضمير وصل

e.g. : - It's I (me) who opened the door.

- يستخدم الضمير (one) بمعنى « المرء » وتدل على الناس بصفة عامة ويمكن استخدام (you) بدلاً منها :

e.g. : - One (You) should eat healthy food.

- وفي حالة الملكية نستخدم (one's) ويمكن استخدام (your) بدلاً منها :

e.g. : - It is easy to lose one's (your) money in a bus in Cairo.

5 Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول :

e.g. : - Ali hurt himself.

- I bought myself a cold drink.

- She saw herself in the mirror.

- We'll pay for ourselves.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد عندما يأتي بعد الفاعل / المفعول :

e.g. : - I myself polished the shoes. = I polished the shoes myself.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى « بمفرده » أو « بدون مساعدة » :

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

e.g. : - I went shopping on my own. (alone).

- He lives on his own. (alone / by himself).

- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

- يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر on / for / after :

e.g. : - The girls looked after themselves. - Always depend on yourself.

- هناك فرق بين (of his own / on his own) :

PART 1

on his own = alone / without help

e.g. : - I live on my own. = I live alone.

- I cleaned the kitchen on my own. = I cleaned the kitchen without help.

of his own = belonging to him and to no one else تدل علي الملكية

e.g. : - I'd like to have a room of my own. (belonging to me)

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حرف الجر (with) عندما يكون بمعنى «مع» ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - us) :

e.g. : - I went with herself. (X)

- I went with her. (✓)

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر الخاصة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول :

e.g. : - She doesn't want anyone to sit next to her.

- The car was coming fast towards me.

- لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة (تصف أشياء يؤديها الإنسان بنفسه) مثل :

approach	يقترّب من	rest	يستريح	stand up	يقف
remember	يتذكّر	lie down	ينام	meet	يقابل
shave	يحلّق	wonder	يتساءل	sit down	يجلس
wake up	يستيقظ	relax	يسترخي		
complain	يشكو	worry	يقلق		

e.g. : - He shaved in ten minutes.

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة

- Enjoy yourself. = Have a good time.
- Take care of yourself. = Be careful.
- Help yourself (to). = Take what you want.
- Make yourself at home. = Behave freely as if it were your own home.
- Behave yourself. = Be polite /Behave well.
- He made a name for himself. = He became famous.
- He isn't feeling himself today. = He's feeling ill today.

Test Yourself

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

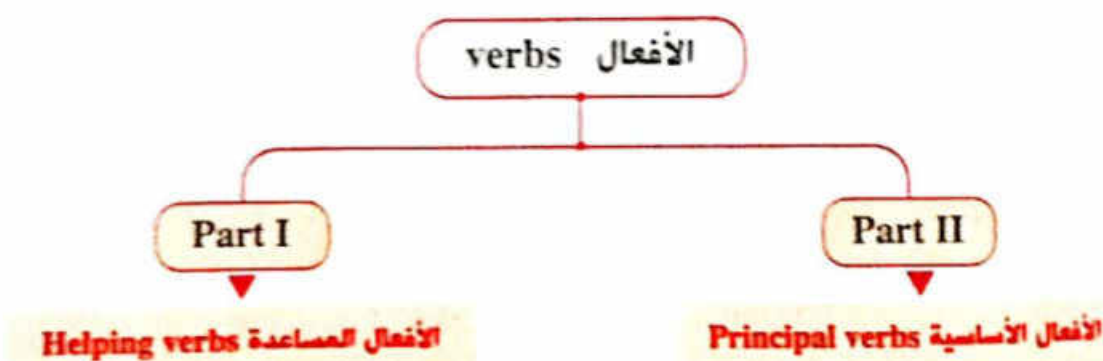
1. We think that those stories are
 a. ours b. us c. we d. our
2. The film wasn't very good, but I liked the music.
 a. itself b. himself c. herself d. it
3. These books belong to
 a. their b. they c. them d. theirs
4. The dog barked on seeing in a mirror.
 a. its b. it's c. itself d. it
5. A: Ali, did you and Sami repair the broken window?
 B: Yes, we did. But I cut on a piece of glass.
 a. mine b. myself c. ourselves d. me
6. Make a cup of tea.
 a. you b. your c. themselves d. yourself
7. A: Is this your sister's bedroom?
 B: No, it's my bedroom. is downstairs.
 a. Herself b. She c. Hers d. Her
8. A: Who repaired your bicycle for you ?
 B: Nobody. I repaired it
 a. my b. mine c. me d. myself
9. We got out of the water and dried
 a. us b. we c. ourselves d. themselves
10. The girl is feeling faint. Take to hospital.
 a. herself b. her c. hers d. yourself
11. The door of this room sometimes opens
 a. themselves b. by itself c. oneself d. himself
12. Are you going to do this exercise?
 a. herself b. themselves c. yourself d. himself
13. My wife and I have just bought a new flat. is near to where we live now.
 a. Its b. We c. Itself d. It

PART 1

14. Our house is not as modern as
a. their b. her c. hers d. your
15. Children sometimes hurt when they are playing.
a. them b. themselves c. ourselves d. himself
16. Your garden is bigger than
a. we b. us c. ours d. our
17. Did you both hurt?
a. yourself b. yourselves c. themselves d. herself
18. We wanted to buy the table, but surface was damaged.
a. itself b. it's c. it d. its
19. Take an umbrella with in case it rains.
a. yourself b. you c. yours d. your
20. These books aren't They are ours.
a. theirs b. they c. them d. there's
21. I and dressed in ten minutes.
a. showered myself b. showered with myself
c. showered by myself d. showered to myself

3 Verbs الأفعال

في الجزء التالي، يتم شرح الأفعال (verbs) من خلال نقطتين رئيسيتين هما :



- تنقسم الأفعال المساعدة إلى ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية :

Part I Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة

be - do - have

Modals الأفعال الناقصة

Semi-modals الأفعال شبه الناقصة

Verb to "be"

١) لاحظ تصريف فعل (to be) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
be	am - is - are	was - were	been

٢) لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to be) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I	am / 'm / am not	was / was not / wasn't
He / She / It	is = 's / / is not / isn't	was / was not / wasn't
You / We / They	are = 're / aren't / are not	were / were not / weren't

٣) يُستخدم فعل (to be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. : - I am tired.

- She is not / isn't clever.

- They are / They're at school.

٤) تُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون) بعد (to) :

e.g. : - She wants to be a doctor.

٥) يُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي أو مساعد بعد الأفعال الناقصة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

e.g. : - Omar will be 17 tomorrow. (فعل أساسي)

- Your eyes must be examined. (فعل مساعد)

PART 1

يُستخدم كلاً من (am - is - are) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين المضارع المستمر والمبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالآزمنة)

e.g. : - Rodayna is having lunch now. (مضارع مستمر)
- The boys are taken to school by their mother. (مضارع بسيط مبني للمجهول)

يُستخدم كلاً من (was - were) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين الماضي المستمر والمبني للمجهول في الماضي البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالآزمنة)

e.g. : - Sama was watching TV. (ماضي مستمر)
- A new school was built in our street last year. (ماضي بسيط مبني للمجهول)

يُستخدم (being) بعد (am - is - are - was - were) كفعل مساعد ثان لتكوين المضارع المستمر والماضي المستمر المبني للمجهول : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالآزمنة)

e.g. : - The house is being cleaned. (مضارع مستمر مبني للمجهول)
- TV was being watched by Sama. (ماضي مستمر مبني للمجهول)

يُستخدم (been) في تكوين الأزمنة التامة والمبني للمجهول :

e.g. : - Omar has been ill recently. (مضارع تام المعلوم)
- The player had been sent out before scoring any goals. (ماضي تام مبني للمجهول)

يُستخدم الصيغة (being + adj.) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالروابط)

e.g. : - Because he was tired, he went to bed early.
= Being tired, he went to bed early.

يُستخدم الصيغة (be to + inf.) للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات الرسمية أو إعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات :

e.g. : - The manager is to meet some important businessmen today.
- You are to write an essay about tourism.

Verb to "do"

لاحظ تصريف فعل (to do) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
do	do - does	did	done

لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to do) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I / You / We / They	do ≠ do not = don't	did ≠ did not = didn't
He / She / It	does ≠ does not = doesn't	did ≠ did not = didn't

٢ يُستخدم فعل (to do) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يفعل / يقوم به) :

e.g. : - She **does / did** her homework.

- I **do / did** the shopping once a week.

٤ يُستخدم كلاً من (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في النفي والسؤال في المضارع البسيط :

e.g. : - He **does not (doesn't)** like fish.

- **Does** he like fish ?

- What **does** he like ?

- They **do not (don't)** go out late at night.

- **Do** they go out late at night ?

- When **do** they go out ?

٥ تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي والسؤال في الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - We **did not (didn't)** see what happened.

- **Did** you see what happened ?

- What **did** you see ?

٦ تُستخدم (do - does - did + inf.) بشكل بلاغي في الجمل المثبتة للتوكيد :

e.g. : - I **do know** who took the money.

- You **did hear** what I said.

Verb to "have"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to have) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
have	have - has	had	had

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to have) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I / You / We / They	have = 've ≠ have not = haven't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't
He / She / It	has = 's ≠ has not = hasn't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't

PART 1

١ يُستخدم فعل (to have) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يعاني من ... إلخ) :

e.g. : - I have / had a headache.
- She has / had a lot of money.

٢ لاحظ أن نفي (have / has) كأفعال أساسية في المضارع البسيط هو (don't / doesn't + have) :

e.g. : - He doesn't have meals outdoors. (Not : he hasn't)
- I don't have tea or coffee at night. (Not : I haven't)

٣ لاحظ أن نفي (had) كفعل أساسي في الماضي البسيط هو (didn't + have) :

e.g. : - Aya didn't have a nice time. (Not: he hadn't)

٤ يُستخدم كل من (have - has) كأفعال مساعدة في المضارع التام :

e.g. : - He has bought a car. = He's bought a car.
- They have won the match. = They've won the match.

٥ يُستخدم (had) كفعل مساعد في الماضي التام :

e.g. : - He had taken a rest before going out.

Modals الأفعال الناقصة

١ الأفعال الناقصة هي أفعال لا تؤدي معنى بمفردها وتحتاج إلى فعل في المصدر (inf.) بعدها :

e.g. : - I can English well. (×) - I can speak English well. (✓)
- You should your lessons hard. (×) - You should study your lessons hard. (✓)

٢ هناك أفعال ناقصة رئيسية هي :

can - could - will - would - may - might - shall - should - must

e.g. : - I will go home. - She might be late. - Shall we leave now ?

للمزيد حول استخدام الأفعال الناقصة يمكن الرجوع إلى الأجزاء المخصصة للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام والقدرة :

Semi-modals الأفعال والتعبيرات شبه الناقصة

١ هناك أفعال وتعبيرات شبه ناقصة (Semi-modals) مثل :

• ought to - used to - be going to + inf.

e.g. : - You ought to (should) be more careful.

- I used to go to the fields when I was young.

- Sama is going to join university.

- have to (has to / had to / will have to) من اللازم / من الضروري / يجب

e.g. : - I had / have / will have to follow the rules.

- Omar has / had/ will have to renew his passport.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have to / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

e.g. : - He hasn't to get up early. (✗)

- He doesn't have to get up early. (✓)

- She hadn't to go to work yesterday. (✗)

- She didn't have to go to work yesterday. (✓)

- have got to / has got to من اللازم / من الضروري / يجب

e.g. : - I have got to leave now.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has + got to) هو (haven't / hasn't + got to) :

- I don't have got to leave now. (✗)

- I haven't got to leave now. (✓)

- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي من (have / has + got to) هي (had to) :

e.g. : - She had got to look after her baby sister. (✗)

- She had to look after her baby sister. (✓)

- need / needs / needed to - needn't + inf.

- dare (to) يستطيع / يجرؤ - daren't + inf.

e.g. : - You need to see a doctor.

- No one dares (to) argue يجادل with this manager.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (daren't / needn't) :

e.g. : - I needn't to buy a new tablet. (✗)

- I needn't buy a new tablet. (✓)

- I don't need to buy a new tablet. (✓)

- had ('d) better + inf. / would ('d) rather + inf.

e.g. : - You'd better find another job. - I'd rather go to the park.

- لاحظ أن نفي ('d better - 'd rather) هو ('d better not - 'd rather not) :

- I wouldn't rather have lunch outdoors. (✗)

- I would rather not have lunch outdoors. (✓)

PART 1

Part II Principal verbs الأفعال الأساسية

Verb forms أشكال الأفعال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

1 Verb forms أشكال الأفعال

Inf. المصدر	First Form التصريف الأول	Second Form التصريف الثاني	p.p. التصريف الثالث	Present Participle اسم الفعل
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being
do	do - does	did	done	doing
have	have - has	had	had	having
visit	visit - visits	visited	visited	visiting
go	go - goes	went	gone	going
try	try - tries	tried	tried	trying

- وفيما يلي شرح تفصيلي لكل هذه الأشكال الخاصة بالفعل :

Infinitive مصدر الفعل

١ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الناقصة مثل :

can - could - will - would - shall - should - may - might - must - dare
- had better - would rather ... + inf.

e.g. : - I can drive a car.

- Omar will arrive soon.

- You had better take a rest.

٢ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة المنفية (don't / doesn't / didn't) :

e.g. : - She doesn't like fish.

- He didn't go out.

- I don't know who broke the glass window.

لاحظ أنه يستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة (do / does / did) في الجمل المثبتة للتأكيد

- Hani does smoke.

- They do know what I mean.

- I did break the vase.

٢ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد حرف الجر (to) لأغراض مختلفة :

- e.g. : - I want to buy a car. (verb + to + inf.)
 - She studies hard to get high marks. (لكي)
 - To work hard is a good thing. (استخدام الصيغة المصدرية كفاعل)

٤ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في الصيغة التالية :

let / make / see / hear / watch / notice + ضمير مفعول + inf. ...

- e.g. : - My father let us go to the park.
 - I saw Ahmed cross the street.

٥ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في بداية الجملة لتكوين الأمر المثبت :

- e.g. : - Open your books, please.
 - Study your lessons before going out.

٦ يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد أداة الاستفهام (Why) لتقديم اقتراحات :

لِمَ لا ؟ - Why not + inf. ...
 لِمَ ؟ - Why + inf. ...?

- e.g. : - Why walk when we can go by bus?
 - Why not buy a cold drink?

التصريف الأول First form

١ يستخدم التصريف الأول للفعل لتكوين زمن المضارع البسيط، و يضاف له (s - es - ies) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد (He - She - It) :

- e.g. : - Ahmed plays tennis in the club every Saturday.
 - Ahmed and Karim play tennis.
 - A lion eats meat.
 - Lions eat meat.

٢ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (be) هي (am / is / are) :

- e.g. : - I am busy.
 - He / she / It is old.
 - You / We / They are hungry

٢ لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (have) هي (have / has) :

- e.g. : - He / She / It has family.
 - I / You / We / They have some friends.

PART 1

Second form التصريف الثاني

يستخدم التصريف الثاني للفعل لتكوين زمن الماضي البسيط :

- e.g. : - She went to the library with her friends.
- They watched the match in the stadium.

Third form (p.p.) التصريف الثالث (اسم المفعول)

يستخدم التصريف الثالث للفعل في الحالات التالية :

١ بعد (have / has / had) لتكوين المضارع التام والماضي التام :

- e.g. : - He has gone shopping.
- Mum had prepared lunch before we arrived home.

٢ بعد الأفعال المساعدة لتكوين المبني للمجهول :

- e.g. : - The window was broken by him.
- The film is shown on this channel every month.
- Our flat will be decorated soon.
- The old man has been helped by his daughter.

٢ يُستخدم كصفة :

- e.g. : - Polluted air causes a lot of diseases.
- I have some written work to do.

٤ تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمجهول. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيدا :

- e.g. : - The trees which were grown by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.
= The trees grown by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.
- The criminal who was arrested last night is very dangerous.
= The criminal arrested last night is very dangerous.

"-ing" Form (present participle) اسم الفعل

يستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

١ يُستخدم كفعل بعد (be / am / is / are / was / were / been) لتكوين الأزمنة المستمرة :

- e.g. : - He may be sleeping at home. - He is watching TV.
- They were having lunch. - She has been revising her lessons.

٢ تُستخدم بعد أفعال المكان والحركة مثل (go / lie / come / be busy) :

e.g. : - We went fishing last Friday.

- I lay looking at the stars in the dark sky.

٣ تُستخدم بعد أفعال الإدراك التالية للدلالة على متابعة جزء من الحدث :

see / hear / watch / notice + اسم / ضمير + (inf. + ing) ...

e.g. : - I heard someone crying.

- He saw his friends playing in the park.

- I watched the rabbits eating some carrots.

٤ تُستخدم في الصيغ التالية :

spend / waste + time / money + (inf. + ing) ...

e.g. : - Don't waste your money (on) buying clothes!

- I've spent three hours shopping.

find / catch + اسم / ضمير + (inf. + ing) ...

e.g. : - His father caught him playing in the street.

- They found their teachers sitting in the garden.

٥ تُستخدم كصفة :

e.g. : - It was an interesting story.

- I sat on the beach to watch the setting sun.

٦ تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الوصل في صيغة المبني للمعلوم. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

e.g. : - The dog which is sleeping under the tree belongs to our neighbours.

= The dog sleeping under the tree belongs to our neighbours.

- The boy who is wearing a white shirt is my son.

= The boy wearing a white shirt is my son.

٧ تُستخدم في عبارة اسم الفعل (present participle clause) كبديل للعبارات السببية والزمنية. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

e.g. : - After he had put on his coat, he left the house.

= Putting on his coat, he left the house.

- While I was watching the match at home, I fell asleep.

= Watching the match at home, I fell asleep.

- Because he felt very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.

= Feeling very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.

PART 1

كيفية تكوين اسم الفعل :

1 مع معظم الأفعال، يُضاف المقطع (ing) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :

- visit → visiting

e.g. : - read → reading

2 إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فإنه يحذف قبل إضافة (ing) :

- make → making

e.g. : - write → writing

- ويشذ عن ذلك أفعال مثل :

- singe → singeing

e.g. : - dye → dyeing

3 يتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :

- swim → swimming

e.g. : - run → running

- stop → stopping

4 يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المتكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ing) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :

e.g. : - regret → regretting

- begin → beginning

5 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فإنهما يتحولان إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - die → dying

- tie → tying

6 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - panic → panicking

- picnic → picnicking

2 Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

1 Conjugation of Regular Verbs نصريف الأفعال المنتظمة

١ بصفة عامة يتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة بإضافة (ed) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :

e.g. : - visit → visited - watch → watched - land → landed

٢ إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) يضاف له حرف (d) فقط :

e.g. : - like → liked - change → changed - bake → baked

٣ يتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ed) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :

e.g. : - stop → stopped - ban → banned

- يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ed) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :

e.g. : - deter → deterred - regret → regretted

٤ إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن فإنه يتحول إلى (i) قبل إضافة (ed) :

e.g. : - study → studied - dry → dried - try → tried

٥ إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ed) :

e.g. : - panic → panicked - picnic → picnicked

2 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs نصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

تنويه: الطالب غير ملزم بحفظ كل الأفعال غير المنتظمة، لكن هذا التصنيف يُعتبر مرجع لكل دارس. يواجه معظم الطلاب مشكلة في حفظ تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة (الشاذة)، ولتسهيل حفظ هذه الأفعال، سنقوم بتقسيم هذه الأفعال إلى مجموعات حسب طريقة تصريفها :

١ أفعال لا تتغير عند تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bet (s) براهن	bet	bet
broadcast (s) بذيغ / يبث	broadcast	broadcast
burst (s) ينفجر	burst	burst
cost (s) يُكلف	cost	cost
cut (s) يقطع	cut	cut

PART 1

hit (s)	يضرب	hit	hit
hurt (s)	يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt
let (s)	بدع / يسمح	let	let
put (s)	يضع	put	put
quit (s)	يترك / يُقلع	quit	quit
read (s)	يقرأ	read	read
set (s)	يُعد / يضبط	set	set
shut (s)	يُغلق	shut	shut

أفعال يتغير فيها حرف واحد : فقط يتحول حرف (d) إلى (t) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bend (s)	يَلْوِي / ينحني	bent
build (s)	يَبْنِي	built
lend (s)	يُقْرِض	lent
send (s)	يُرْسِل	sent
spend (s)	يَقْضِي وَت / يُنْفِق	spent

أفعال يتغير فيها (ay) إلى (aid) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
lay (s)	يُعد / تبيض	laid
pay (s)	يدفع (مالاً)	paid
say (s)	يقول	said

أفعال يُضاف حرف (t) لنهايتها (يُستثنى الفعل hear) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
deal (s)	يُوزَع / يتعامل	dealt
dream (s)	يحلم	dreamt
hear (s)	يسمع	heard

lean (s)	يَسْلُ / يَنْحَنِي	leant	leant
leap (s)	يَقْفُزُ	leapt	leapt
mean (s)	يَعْنِي / يَقْصِدُ	meant	meant

٥ أفعال يتحول فيها (ell) إلى (old) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
sell (s)	بيع	sold
tell (s)	يُخْبِرُ	told

٦ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (ou) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bind (s)	يَرْبُطُ	bound
find (s)	يجد	found
grind (s)	يَطْحَنُ / يَشْحَذُ / يَسْنُ	ground
wind (s)	يُلْقِ / يَتَعَرَّجُ	wound

٧ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ee) أو (ea) إلى (e) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
bleed (s)	يَنْزِفُ	bled
feed (s)	يُطْعِمُ	fed
flee (s)	يَفْرُ / يُخْلِي	fled
lead (s)	يَقُودُ / يُوْدِي إِلَى / يَعِيشُ (بِطَرِيقَةٍ مُعَيَّنَةٍ)	led
speed (s)	يُسْرِعُ	sped

PART 1

أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (u) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
begin (s) يبدأ	began	begun
drink (s) يشرب	drank	drunk
shrink (s) ينكمش	shrank	shrunk
sing (s) يغني	sang	sung
sink (s) يَغْرَق (للأشياء) / يغوص	sank	sunk
spring (s) يَقْفِز / يبرز	sprang	sprung
swim (s) يسبح	swam	swum

أفعال ينتهي تصريفها بـ (ought / aught) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bring (s) يجلب / يُحضِر	brought	brought
buy (s) يشتري	bought	bought
fight (s) يقاتل / يواجه	fought	fought
seek (s) يسعى	sought	sought
think (s) يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
catch (s) يمسك / يقبض على / بصطاد	caught	caught
teach (es) يُعَلِّم / يشرح	taught	taught

أفعال بها (ee) يتم فيها حذف حرف (e) مع إضافة حرف (t) لنهاية الفعل ما لم يكن موجودا (يُستثنى الفعل feed) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
creep (s) يتسلل / يزحف	crept	crept
feed (s) يُطعم	fed	fed
feel (s) يشعر	felt	felt
keep (s) يحتفظ بـ / يظل / يربي	kept	kept

kneel (s)	يركع على ركبتيه	knelt	knelt
meet (s)	يقابل	met	met
sleep (s)	ينام	slept	slept
sweep (s)	يكنس / يندفع / يجز	swept	swept
weep (s)	يبكي	wept	wept

١١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير الحرف المتحرك إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، ثم يُضاف إليه (en) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s)	يستيقظ / يوقظ	awoke / awaked
break (s)	يكسر / ينكسر	broke
choose (s)	يختار	chose
freeze (s)	يتجمد / يُجمد	froze
speak (s)	يتحدث	spoke
steal (s)	يسرق	stole
wake (s)	يستيقظ	woke / waked
weave (s)	ينسج	wove

١٢ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير المتحرك (i) إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني، وينتهي التصريف الثالث بـ (en) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
arise (s)	ينشأ	arose
drive (s)	يقود (سيارة)	drove
rise (s)	يرتفع / يزداد / تشرق	rose
ride (s)	يركب	rode
write (s)	يكتب	wrote

PART 1

١٧ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ear) إلى (ore) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (orn) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bear (s) تلد / يتحمل / يطبق	bore	borne / born
swear (s) يَسْبُ / يَعِدُ / يُوَكِّد	swore	sworn
tear (s) يُمزِقُ	tore	torn
wear (s) يرتدي	wore	worn

١٨ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ow) إلى (ew) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (own) لتكوين التصريف الثالث (يُستثنى الفعل draw) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
blow (s) يَهْبُ / يَنْفُخُ / يَطِيرُ مَعَ الرِّيحِ	blew	blown
draw (s) يَرْسُمُ / يَجُرُّ / يَسْحَبُ	drew	drawn
grow (s) ينمو / يزرع	grew	grown
know (s) يعرف	knew	known
throw (s) يرمي / يُلْقِي	threw	thrown
fly (ies) يطير / يُطِيرُ	flew	flown

١٩ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) أو (u) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث، و يتم حذف حرف (e) من نهاية الفعل إن وُجد :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
dig (s) يحفر	dug	dug
spin (s) يَدُورُ حَوْلَ نَفْسِهِ / يَغْزِلُ	spun / span	spun
stick (s) يُلصِقُ / يَغْزِرُ / يَغْلُقُ	stuck	stuck
sting (s) يَلْدَغُ	stung	stung
strike (s) يَضْرِبُ / يَخْطُرُ عَلَى بَالٍ / يَدُقُّ	struck	struck

swing (s)	يَتَأَرْجَح	swung	swung
-----------	-------------	-------	-------

١٦ أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريف الأول مع التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P
become (s)	يُصْبِح	became	become
come (s)	يَأْتِي	came	come
run (s)	يجري / يدير	ran	run

١٧ أفعال يتشابه تصريفها الثاني و الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
babysit (s)	يُرْعَى الطِفْل	babysat	babysat
hold (s)	يُمْسِك / يُثَبِّت	held	held
leave (s)	يغادر / يترك	left	left
lose (s)	يخسر / يفقد	lost	lost
sit (s)	يجلس	sat	sat
slide (s)	يَنْزِلِق	slid	slid
stand (s)	يقف	stood	stood
understand (s)	يفهم	understood	understood
win (s)	يفوز	won	won
shoot (s)	يُطْلِق النَّارَ عَلَى / يرمي / يقذف	shot	shot

١٨ أفعال متنوعة في طريقة تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
be (am / is / are)	يَكُون / يوجد	was / were	been
do (es)	يفعل	did	done
have / has	يملك	had	had
go	يذهب	went	gone

Inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
beat (s)	يهزم / يضرب	beat	beaten
bite (s)	يعض / يقضم	bit	bitten
hide (s)	يخفي	hid	hidden
eat (s)	يأكل	ate	eaten
fall (s)	يسقط / يقع	fell	fallen
forbid (s)	يمنع	forbad / forbade	forbidden
forget (s)	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
get (s)	يحصل على	got	got / gotten
forgive (s)	يسامح	forgave	forgiven
give (s)	يعطي	gave	given
see (s)	يري	saw	seen
shake (s)	يهز / يرج / يصافح	shook	shaken
take (s)	يأخذ	took	taken

أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين دون اختلاف في المعنى :

inf. / Present Simple		Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s)	يَسْتَيْقِظ	awoke / awaked	awoke / awaked
bear (s)	تلد / يتحمل	bore	borne / born
burn (s)	يحرق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
dream (s)	يحلم	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
dwell (s)	يقطن / يسكن	dwelt / dwelled	dwelt / dwelled
forbid (s)	يمنع	forbad / forbade	forbidden
kneel (s)	يَجْثُو على	knelt / kneeled	knelt / kneeled
lean (s)	ينحني	leant / leaned	leant / leaned
learn (s)	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
light (s)	يُشْعِل / يُنِير	lighted / lit	lighted / lit

mow (s)	يَحْرُ الغُشْب	mowed	mowed / mown
sew (s)	يَخِيط	sewed	sewed / sewn
show (s)	يَعْرِض	showed	showed / shown
smell (s)	يَشْم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
sow (s)	يَنْزِر	sowed	sowed / sown
speed (s)	يُسْرِع	speeded / sped	speeded / sped
spell (s)	يَتَهَجَّى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spill (s)	يَسْكَب	spilt / spilled	spilt / spilled
spoil (s)	يُتْلَف	spoilt / spoiled	spoilt / spoiled
swell (s)	يَتَوَزَّم	swelled	swelled / swollen
wake (s)	يَسْتَيْقِظ	woke / waked	woke / waked

٢١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين أو أكثر مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bid	bid	bid
bid (s)	bade	bidden
dive (s)	dove	dived
dive (s)	dived	dived
fit (s)	fit	fit
fit (s)	fitted	fitted
hang (s)	hung	hung
hang (s)	hanged / hung	hanged / hung
lay (s)	laid	laid
lie (s)	lied	lied
lie (s)	lay	lain
shine (s)	shone	shone
shine (s)	shone / shined	shone / shined
shine (s)	shined	shined

4 Adjectives الصفات

الصفة

الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم وتأتي غالباً قبله :

Adjective :

e.g. : - Rodayna bought an **expensive** mobile yesterday.- I saw a **frightening** animal in the fields.يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدونها بعد فعل
verb to be وأفعال أخرى مثل :
(look / seem / appear / taste / feel / sound / smell)- Ahmed **looks** happy.e.g. : - Leen **felt** cold.- Mum's food **smells** delicious.- Ali is **clever**.صفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقاً و لكن تستخدم بعد verb to be
أفعال مثل seem / look / feel (أفعال الحواس):

أفعال على قيد الحياة alive / غائب absent / مشتعل alight / alone / asleep / awake / afraid

e.g. : - Roaa feels **afraid** when she is left alone.- We were **happy** that he was **alive**.

1

Similarity

التشابه

هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن التشابه أو تساوي طرفين في صفة ما ومن تلك الطرق ما يلي:

الطرف الثاني + **as** + الصفة + **as** + **be** + الطرف الأولالطرف الثاني + **as** + الاسم من الصفة + **has / have** + **the same** + الطرف الأولالاسم من الصفة + **have** + **the same** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الأولالاسم من الصفة + **be** + **of the same** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الأولالصفة + **be** + الطرف الثاني، الطرف الأول + **Like**e.g. : - Aya is **as beautiful as** Mariam.= Aya has the **same beauty as** Mona.= Aya and Mariam have **the same** beauty.= Aya and Mariam are of **the same** beauty.= Like Aya, Mariam **is** beautiful.

- لاحظ عند النفي نستخدم (not as/so + صفة + as) :

e.g. : - Nabil is taller than Samy.

= Samy isn't as (so) tall as Nabil.

- لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun + as) من الصفات الآتية :

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
expensive/ cheap	price	deep	depth
big / small	size	wide	width
old / young	age	long	length
far / near	distance	high / tall	height
strong	strength	heavy / light	weight

e.g. : - This house is as high as yours.

= This house has the same height as yours.

- The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.

= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

2 Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما :

e.g. : - Malak is **taller than** Rodayna.

- A car is fast, but a train is **faster**.

- Films are **more exciting than** novels.

- Chicken is **less expensive than** meat.

تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة والطويلة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم :

* تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة :

① يضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة :

e.g. : - quiet → quieter - cheap → cheaper - narrow → narrower

② إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) نضيف في المقارنة (r) فقط :

e.g. : - wide → wider - nice → nicer
- large → larger - simple → simpler

PART 1

صفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) إلى (ier) :
 e.g. : - lucky → luckier - healthy → healthier - easy → easier
 - thin → thinner
 e.g. : - hot → hotter - fat → fatter
 صفات المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة :

more / less + adj. الصفة + than

e.g. : - more / less expensive than - more / less terrifying than
 - more / less exciting than - more / less dangerous than

ملاحظات عامة علي صفات المقارنة

يمكن استخدام **less** قبل الصفات القصيرة :

e.g. : - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. = Ali is **less** strong than Ahmed.

يمكن استخدام (even / much / a lot / far...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة لمعنى الصفة :

e.g. : - Travelling by train is **much** slower than travelling by plane.

يمكن استخدام (slightly / a bit / a little...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإضعاف معنى الصفة :

e.g. : - I had to drive **a bit** faster.

يمكن استخدام صفتي مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر في شيء :

e.g. : - It's become **more and more** difficult to find a flat.

ط شكل الضمير بعد **than** (يكون "ضمير فاعل" إذا كان بعده فعل و "ضمير مفعول" في حالة وجود فعل) :

e.g. : - He is taller **than** I am.

= He is taller **than** me.

- We earn more money **than** they do.

= We earn more money **than** them.

يمكن استخدام المقارنة للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة (كلما كلما) :

جملة النتيجة + صفة مقارنة + **the** + جملة السبب + صفة مقارنة + **The**
 e.g. : - **The harder** you study, **the higher** marks you get.

3 Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

- تستخدم صفات التفضيل لتقارن بين أكثر من طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم (تمييز فرد عن مجموعة) :

- e.g. : - Omar is the **cleverest** student in class.
 - The plane is the **fastest** means of transport.
 - Football is the **most** exciting sport.
 - Fish is the least **expensive** protein source.

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات قصيرة المقطع :

❶ توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (est) لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - old → the **oldest** - strong → the **strongest**
 - tall → the **tallest**

❷ إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) (لا ينطق) و قبلها حرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (st) فقط لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - nice → the **nicest** - wide → the **widest**
 - simple → the **simplest**

❸ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم تتحول (y) الي (iest) في نهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - lazy → the **laziest** - heavy → the **heaviest**
 - noisy → the **noisiest**

❹ إذا انتهت الصفة قصيرة المقطع بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد نضاعف الحرف الأخير مع إضافة (the) قبل الصفة و (est) في نهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - big → the **biggest** - thin → the **thinnest**
 - hot → the **hottest**

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات طويلة المقطع :

طويلة المقطع. the most / the least + adj.

- e.g. : - dangerous → **the most / the least** dangerous
 - interesting → **the most / the least** interesting

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

- يمكن استخدام (most) بدون (the) وفي هذه الحالة تساوى في المعنى (very) :

most + adj. (without the) = very

e.g. : - The information I've just heard is **most** important. = **very** important

- لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل مع الاعداد الترتيبية (first / second / third / fourth...etc) :

e.g. : - Cairo is the **first** largest city in Africa.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية او ('s) الملكية قبل الصفة :

e.g. : - The femto-second is Zewail's **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- The femto-second is his **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- استخدام (No) بدلاً من أسلوب التفضيل :

باقي الجملة + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل

طرف المقارنة + **than** + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل + No

باقي الجملة طرف المقارنة + **as** + **adj.** **صفة** + **as** + "verb to be" + فاعل + No

e.g. : - Omar was the **most** courageous man in the city.

= No man in the city is **more** courageous than Omar.

No man in the city is **as** courageous **as** Omar.

- The Nile is **the longest** river. = No river is **longer than** the Nile.

- Water is the **most** important liquid.

= No liquid is **more** important than water.

- المقارنة والتفضيل باستخدام ever - never :

+ فاعل ثانى + التمييز + صيغة تفضيل + "verb to be" + الفاعل الاول

"have / has"ever + p.p. ...

+ فاعل ثانى + التمييز + صيغة تفضيل + "verb to be" + الفاعل الاول

فاعل اول + **like** + تمييز + صفة بدون اضافات

- نلاحظ أن الصفة في جملة (ever) في صيغة التفضيل أما الصفة في جملة (never) صفة من الدرجة

الأولى (بدون إضافات) :

e.g. : - Ali is the **cleverest** boy I have **ever** seen.

= I have **never** seen a clever man like Ali.

- I have **never** watched a **funny** film like that.

= This is the **funniest** film I have **ever** seen.

- Zewail is the **most important** person I have **ever** met.

= I have **never** met **an important** person like Zewail.

- نلاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام **which** تستخدم عند السؤال للمفاضلة بين شيئين في صفة معينة (نستخدم صفة من الدرجة الثانية) :

e.g. : - Which is faster; the train or the plane ?

- Which is more exciting; the pyramid or the tower ?

- لاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام **which** يمكن أن تستخدم للمفاضلة بين أكثر من شيئين (صفة من الدرجة الثالثة).

- Which is the **most** expensive car ? - The red car.

Irregular adjectives

صفات غير منتظمة

Adj. / adv.	comparative	superlative
bad / badly / ill / wrong	worse than	the worst
far	farther (further) than	the farthest (furthest)
fore	former than	the first
good / well / right	better than	the best
late	latter than / later than	the last / the latest
little	less than	the least
many / much	more than	the most
old	older / elder	oldest / eldest
real	more real	the most real

Test Yourself

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A chair is comfortable than a sofa.

a. less

b. the least

c. little

d. least

2. This is company in the world.

a. big

b. bigger

c. biggest

d. the biggest

3. English is than any other language.

a. easy

b. easier

c. more easy

d. the easiest

PART 1

4. You look much than yesterday.
 a. happy b. happier c. happiest d. the happiest
5. Football is popular game in Egypt.
 a. more b. most c. less d. the most
6. This is picture I've ever seen.
 a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
7. This computer is not expensive as the one that I bought yesterday.
 a. more b. less c. as d. most
8. The tree in the world is in Sweden.
 a. old b. older c. eldest d. oldest
9. This is the test I've ever taken.
 a. hard b. harder c. less hard d. hardest
10. He is not reliable as his friend.
 a. so b. more c. less d. most
11. The food is not nearly so as it was in the past.
 a. good b. better c. worse d. the best
12. Alaa is a doctor than Omar.
 a. good b. better c. best d. the best
13. Water is the expensive of all liquids.
 a. much b. least c. less d. more
14. An elephant is as a tiger.
 a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. not as fast
15. Nobody in our company is Peter.
 a. efficient b. as efficient as
 c. most efficient than d. as efficient
16. It was of her to waste all her money.
 a. more foolish than b. less foolish
 c. foolish d. least foolish
17. Laptops are becoming popular nowadays.
 a. less and more b. more and less
 c. much and more d. more and more
18. Climbing is the dangerous sport in the world.
 a. more b. most c. less d. as
19. Mr Ali has friends than me.
 a. many b. most c. the least d. more

20. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even
 a. pretty b. prettiest c. prettier d. most pretty
21. Today is hotter than yesterday.
 a. least b. little c. less d. most
22. My flat is than yours.
 a. more big b. less big c. bigger d. the biggest
23. I don't read as books as you do.
 a. much b. more c. most d. many

5 Adverb الظرف

- هناك خمسة أنواع من الظروف هي :

Types of adverbs أنواع الظروف

Frequency التكرار

- I **often** get up early.

Degree الدرجة

- She was **very** happy yesterday.

Manner الكيفية

- He ran **quickly**.

Place المكان

- She travelled **abroad**.

Time الزمان

- He went to the park **yesterday**.

- وفيما يلي شرح مُبَسَّط لأنواع الظروف المختلفة :

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

١) تدل ظروف التكرار كما يتضح من اسمها على تكرار الحدث :

e.g. - I go to Alexandria **every summer**. - She goes to the cinema **once a month**.

٢) ظروف التكرار التالية مُشتقة من كلمات زمنية، وتدل على تكرار الحدث كل فترة معينة :

daily - weekly - monthly - yearly / annually = every (day - week - month - year) = once a (day - week - month - year)

PART 1

e.g. : - We pay the taxes yearly.
= We pay the taxes every year.

= We pay the taxes once a year.

ظروف التكرار التالية تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

every + (عدد) + (day - night - week - month - summer - year ...)

e.g. : - I visit my aunt every month. = Every month, I visit my aunt.

- She calls her mother every three days.

= Every three days, she calls her mother.

ظروف التكرار التالية تدل على تكرار الحدث عدد محدد من المرات كل فترة زمنية، وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : - once مرة واحدة / twice مرتين / three times ... + a / an / every كلمة زمنية

- I go to the club twice a week.

= Twice a week, I go to the club.

٥ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (to be) والأنفعال المساعدة :

بانتظام regularly - عادة usually / normally - بشكل ثابت constantly - دائما always

- often غالبا frequently غالبا - sometimes أحيانا occasionally آخر

- little قلما rarely / seldom نادراً - hardly ever بالكاد never مطلقا

e.g. : - I sometimes go to the club.

- Tom is often late for work.

- كما يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف :

e.g. : - Sometimes I play football.

= I play football sometimes.

٦ الظروف التالية تدل على النفي، وعند استخدامها في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل :

فاعل + فعل مساعد + Scarcely / Rarely / Seldom / Hardly / Little / Never

e.g. : - We never waste our time.

= Never do we waste our time.

- My mum rarely goes out.

= Rarely does my mum go out.

Adverbs of degree

ظروف الدرجة

١ أهم ظروف الدرجة في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

a bit	قليلاً	nearly	تقريباً
absolutely	بشكل مطلق	pretty	بالفعل / حقاً
almost	تقريباً	quite	إلى حد ما
completely	تماماً	rather	إلى حد ما
enough	كاف / بما يكفي	really	بالفعل / حقاً
entirely	كُلِّياً	scarcely	نادراً / قلماً
extremely	للمغاية	too	جداً / أكثر من اللازم
hardly	بالكاد	utterly	كُلِّياً
just	فحسب / تَوّاً	very	جداً
little	قليلاً / قلماً		

٢ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة في الحالات التالية :

- قبل الصفات :

e.g. : - Mr Omar is very tall.

- I'm a bit tired.

- قبل الظروف :

e.g. : - He speaks quite loudly.

- She walks very slowly.

- قبل الأفعال :

e.g. : - Aya has nearly prepared lunch.

- She just smiled and went away.

٣ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية :

little / a bit - rather / quite - very - really - extremely

e.g. : - The water is very hot.

- I'm extremely tired.

٤ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

absolutely - utterly / entirely - completely

e.g. : - This engine is absolutely excellent.

- The temple is utterly ancient.

PART 1

يمكن أن تُستخدم (really / pretty) مع كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة :

e.g. : - He is really angry / furious.

تُعطي (enough) معني إيجابي وتُستخدم قبل الاسم أو بعد الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - He has enough money. (enough + noun)

- He is old enough to depend on himself. (adj. + enough)

- She works hard enough to pass the exam. (adv. + enough)

تُعطي (too ... to) معني سلبي وتُستخدم قبل الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - The tea is too sweet to drink. (too + adj.)

Adverbs of manner ظروف الكيفية

ظرف الكيفية يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجب عن السؤال بـ (How) :

e.g. : - A : How does Omar walk?

B : He walks quickly.

- A : How do they work?

B : They work hard.

٢ يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

e.g. : - Sama walks slowly.

- Ali shouted at me angrily.

٣ تأتي الظروف التالية قبل الفعل وليس بعده :

usually – probably – possibly – definitely – surely – certainly

e.g. : - It is probable he will buy a car. = He will probably buy a car.

- He prays as usual. = He usually prays.

٤ يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة :

١. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة :

e.g. : - slow → slowly - quick → quickly

٢. وتُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l) :

e.g. : - careful → carefully

- beautiful → beautifully

٣. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) :

e.g. : - possible → possibly

- probable → probably

٤. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily) :

e.g. : - easy → easily

- happy → happily

٥. الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام : (in a way / manner)

e.g. : - friendly ودود - **in a friendly way**

- cowardly جبان - **in a cowardly way**

- Bassem is a **good swimmer** = Bassem swims well.

٦. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل :

e.g. : - good → **well**

- fast → **fast**

- hard → **hard**

- late → **late**

- early → **early**

- He smiled in a **fatherly** manner (way).

٥ هناك بعض الظروف لها شكلين ومعنيين مختلفين :

deep	بعمق / عميقاً	deeply	بشدة
free	مجاناً	freely	بحرية
hard	بجد / بصعوبة	hardly	بالكاد / تقريباً لا
high	عالياً	highly	بدرجة كبيرة
late	متأخراً	lately	مؤخراً / حديثاً
most	الأكثر	mostly	أساساً / في الغالب
near	بقرب	nearly	تقريباً
pretty	إلى حد ما	prettily	بشكل جميل

e.g. : - The ship **sank deep** in the ocean.

- I was **deeply affected** by your advice.

٦ يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام :

more أكثر / less أقل + adv. الظرف + than

e.g. : - Rodayna draws **more beautifully than** Ahmed.

- Mr Ayman drives **less fast than** Mr Ashraf.

Adverbs of place

ظروف المكان

١ أهم ظروف المكان في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

above	فوق / أعلي	eastwards	شرقاً
abroad	خارج البلاد	everywhere	في كل مكان

PART 1

across	عبر	far	بعيداً
ahead	للأمام	here	هنا
around	حول	homeward	باتجاه البيت
away	بعيداً	in	بالداخل
back	للخلف	indoors	بالداخل
backwards	للخلف	inside	بالداخل
below	أسفل	nearby	قريب / مجاور
between	بين	outside	بالخارج
beyond	وراء / بعد	overseas	خارج البلاد
down	أسفل	there	هناك
downwards	لأسفل	west	في / باتجاه الغرب

٢ تُستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان حدوث الفعل :

e.g. : - We are meeting **here** next October.

٣ توضع ظروف المكان عادة بعد المفعول أو بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - I will wait for them **outside**.

- I will wait **outside** for them.

٤ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الاتجاه :

e.g. : - He went **north** to enjoy the good weather in Alexandria.

٥ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى المسافة :

e.g. : - There's a gym **nearby**.

٦ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى مكان شيء بالنسبة لأشياء أخرى :

e.g. : - The horse is **under** the tree.

٧ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الحركة :

e.g. : - The boat moved **backwards**.

Adverbs of time

ظروف الزمان

١ ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

yesterday – tomorrow – today – now – last week – later فيما بعد etc.

e.g. : - I'll call you **later**. - I'm busy studying **now**.

- يُمكن استخدام هذه الظروف في بداية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف :

e.g. : - **Later**, I'll call you. - **Now**, I'm busy studying.

٢ ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : for + مدة / since + توقيت + all + مدة

- I have been waiting here **for ten minutes**.

- She has had this mobile **since 2017**.

٣ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (not) لتدل على شيء لم يحدث بعد وإن كان يُنتظر حدوثه :

e.g. : - Have they arrived **yet** ? - We haven't decided **yet**.

- A: Have you finished ? - B: Not **yet**.

٤ تُستخدم (still) بمعنى (لا يزال)، وتوضع قبل الفعل الأصلي وبعد الفعل المساعد :

e.g. : - He is **still waiting** for his friends.

- Do you **still live** in Aswan?

- عندما يكون (be) فعلاً أساسياً فإن (still) تُستخدم بعده :

٥ عندما يكون هناك أكثر من ظرف زمان يكون الترتيب كالتالي :

التوقيت + when + التكرار + how often + المدة + how long

e.g. : - I worked **for five hours**.

- I have worked **for five hours every day**.

- I worked **for five hours every day last year**.

Test Yourself

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He has no money. He is poor.

a. very

b. fairly

c. quite

d. extremely

PART 1

2. You shouldn't climb the stairs
 a. careful b. care c. carelessly d. careless
3. My sister is a good student, she studies her lessons
 a. well b. good c. goodly d. willingly
4. My father ran very and caught a thief.
 a. fastly b. fast c. fastness d. fasten
5. I sometimes get up and miss the school bus.
 a. late b. lately c. later d. lateness
6. The team played the match very, so they lost it.
 a. bad b. badly c. badness d. good
7. This girl behaves
 a. friendly b. friend
 c. in a friendly way d. friendliness
8. He couldn't buy the suit because it was expensive.
 a. rather b. quite c. never d. hardly
9. I had an ordinary childhood.
 a. quite b. quiet c. quit d. quickly
10. We like our English teacher. He is a good person.
 a. quite b. never c. lately d. hardly
11. It is raining
 a. heavy b. heavily c. heaviness d. heavenly
12. Dalia does her work She is efficient.
 a. good b. well c. proper d. prepare
13. Samy was exhausted when he finished the race.
 a. utterly b. very c. quite d. rather
14. Bassam doesn't leave his office before he finishes his work. He is quite
 a worker.
 a. harder b. hardly c. hardest d. hard
15. Noha was after she had cleaned the house all day. She slept
 for 12 hours after that.
 a. absolutely exhausted b. absolutely tired
 c. very exhausted d. not tired
16. Today, car engines burn petrol more than in the past.
 a. efficient b. efficiently c. efficiency d. inefficient
17. She's a bad writer. She writes English
 a. badly b. worse c. worst d. bad

18. She works

- a. hardly b. more hardly c. hard d. hardness

19. Don't behave to be popular with people.

- a. rudely b. rude c. rudeness d. rudest

20. She answered the questions

- a. accurate b. more accurate
c. accuracy d. accurately

6 Definite and Indefinite articles أدوات المعرفة والنكرة

A Indefinite articles : A & An أدوات النكرة

- تستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن عند النطق :

e.g. : a girl a farmer a wolf

- تستخدم (a) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بحرف متحرك (a , e , i , o , u) ولكن يُنطقُ كصوت ساكن.

e.g. : a university a uniform a unit
a union a European country a one a useful book

- تستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك (a , e , i , o , u)

e.g. : an umbrella an egg an honest man
an ink pot an ox an apple

- تأتي (an) قبل الأسماء التي تبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق :

e.g. : He is an honest man.

Usage : الاستخدام

- قبل اسم مفرد يُذكر لأول مرة :

e.g. : - I saw a plane flying in the sky.
- I have a villa with a swimming pool.

- قبل الصفة إذا سبقت الاسم المفرد المعدود :

e.g. : - This is a beautiful vase.
- He gave an incredible concert موسيقية yesterday.

- تستخدم بمعنى «واحد من بين العديد من ...» :

e.g. : We have got a car.

- تستخدم عند تصنيف الناس حسب جنسياتهم أو وظائفهم :

e.g. : - She is a Turkish girl.
- She is an accountant.

PART 1

مع عبارات عددية معينة وللتنجزة :

- e.g. : - a couple زوج من
 - a dozen دسنة
 - a million مليون
 - a hundred مائة
 - a kilo of sugar
 - half a dozen نصف دسنة
 - a score عشرون
 - a lot of / a great deal of كثير من
 - a thousand ألف
 - a bag of rice

مع تعبيرات السرعة والضمن والنسبة :

- e.g. : - twice a week
 - two pounds a kilo
 - twenty kilometres an hour
 - four times a day

- لاحظ أن (a / an) لا تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التى لا تُعد والأسماء المعنوية :

- e.g. : - **Sharks** are dangerous animals.
 - My shoes are made of **leather**.
 - He was pale with **fear**.

B The definite article : The أداة المعرفة

- تستخدم قبل الاسم الذى أصبح مُعرفاً عند ذكره للمرة الثانية :

- e.g. : We have got a villa with a garden. **The** garden is beautiful.

- تستخدم قبل الاسم الذى يوجد منه واحد فقط (أى ليس له مثل فى الكون) :

- e.g. : **the** Earth , **the** North Pole, **the** sky, **the** Nile ... etc.

- تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد للدلالة على النوع أو الفصيلة وقبل الاختراعات :

- e.g. : - **The** camel is the ship of the desert.
 - **The** computer is useful.

- لكن عند الحديث عن بيع أو شراء أو إصلاح أو امتلاك جهاز معين فلا تأخذ (the) :

- e.g. : - My grandfather had a radio which looked like a wooden box.

- تستخدم قبل أسماء سلاسل الجبال والأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحارى ومجموعات الجزر والمناطق الجغرافية والاتجاهات وبعض الدول :

- e.g. : **the** Red Sea, **the** Indian Ocean, **the** Thames, **the** Alps, **the** Middle East, **the** Mediterranean Sea, **the** USA, **the** Sudan, **the** United Kingdom, **the** European Union, **the** Pacific Ocean, **the** Bahamas Islands, **the** South of Egypt, **the** Siwa Oasis ... etc.

- أما أسماء الجزر المفردة فلا تأخذ (the). Sicily / Bermuda / Crete etc.

والقمم الجبلية المنفردة عادة لا تأخذ (the) (Mount Everest / Kilimanjaro) :

- قبل صفات التفضيل القصوى، وقبل صفات المقارنة بمعنى «كلما».

e.g. : - The elephant is **the** biggest animal.

- Diamond is **the most** expensive metal.

- **The harder** you work, **the more** money you get.

- تستخدم قبل الصفات عند استخدامها كاسم بمعنى الجمع :

e.g. : - He is collecting money for **the blind**.

- **The poor** are usually generous to each other.

- **The disabled** are in need of our help.

- "the poor" تعنى طبقة الفقراء عامة.

- مع الآلات الموسيقية فى سياق العزف والاستماع أو التعليم أو الممارسة وتأتى بعد أفعال مثل:

play / practise / learn / study / listen to

e.g. : **the** piano, **the** violin, **the** drum, **the** guitar

- مع التعبيرات الزمنية والاتجاهات:

e.g. : in **the** morning, in **the** afternoon, in **the** evening, in **the** north,
in **the** east

- قبل الكتب المقدسة وأسماء الصحف:

e.g. : **the** Quran , **the** Bible, **the** Times

- قبل أسماء الأماكن عند استخدامها لغرض غير غرضها الأساسى:

(*school, hospital, university, bed, prison, church, market, mosque*)

e.g. : - I go to **school** to learn.

- I go to **the school** to meet the principal المدير.

- تستخدم قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات الآتية :

the government, **the** fire brigade, **the** police, **the** army, **the** cinema,
the office, **the** theatre, **the** radio, **the** internet, **the** Cathedral

- تستخدم (**the**) قبل بعض الصفات التى تدل على الجنسية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة :

e.g. : - **The** British / **The** English / **The** Irish / **The** Welsh / **The** Spanish /
The Dutch / **The** Swiss.

- كما تستخدم (**the**) بنفس الطريقة قبل الصفات التى تدل على الجنسية المنتهية بـ (ese) :

e.g. : - **The** Japanese / **the** Chinese / **the** Sudanese etc.

- أما صفات الجنسية الأخرى فيجب أن تجمع بعد (**the**) لتؤدى نفس المعنى :

e.g. : - **The** Egyptians / **The** Russians / **the** Arabs / **the** Scots / **the** Turks

- تستخدم (**the**) قبل أسماء الأماكن التى بها (of) :

e.g. : - **The** Great wall of China / **the** Bank of England

PART 1

- تستخدم (the) غالبًا قبل الاسم الذي تتبعه عبارة بها ضمير وصل :
- e.g. : - The man who lost his son was very sad.
- قبل العدد الذي يدل على فترة عشر سنوات وقبل الأعداد الترتيبية :
- e.g. : - The fifties / the nineties / the first / second / third / the last etc.)
- لاحظ أن "the" لا تستخدم مع :
- الاسم الجمع بمعنى عام .
- e.g. : - **Sharks** are wild animals. - **Women** form half of society.
- الأسماء المجردة المعنوية والأسماء غير المحدودة بوجه عام :
- e.g. : death, birth, wisdom, sorrow, freedom, democracy, happiness
- أسماء المواد وأسماء الوجبات والألعاب الرياضية والمواد الدراسية :
- e.g. : dinner, breakfast, wood, metal, milk, wool, iron, plastic, meat, basketball, volleyball, tennis, English, Arabic, history, maths
- لكن لاحظ أن (the) تأتي مع الوجبات إذا كانت وجبة مُعدة لمناسبة خاصة (احتفال مثلاً) :
- أسماء فصول السنة والأعياد :
- e.g. : summer, winter, spring, autumn, Easter, Christmas
- قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم :
- e.g. : President Obama, Professor Magdi, King Abdullah
- لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء القارات وأسماء الدول :
- e.g. : Asia, Africa, Europe, Spain, France
- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة على كلمات مثل Republic / Union / Kingdom / States / Federation فهي تأخذ (the) :
- e.g. : - The Arab Republic of Egypt / The United Kingdom.
- لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن المركبة إذا كان الاسم الأول يدل على شخص أو مكان.
- e.g. : - Victoria Station / Buckingham Palace / London Zoo

Test Yourself

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's..... most expensive car I have ever seen.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

2. I had a cup of tea and some cake, but tea was hot.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

3. I asked Prof. Samy about his childhood.

a. a b. an c. the d. no article

4. science is a difficult subject.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
5. We always go on holiday in August.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
6. My friend is a sportsman, he plays football.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. I'm hungry, I want to have dinner.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
8. We all went to dinner organized by the committee.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
9. Ahmed's father went to school to meet the headmaster.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
10. My sister works in hospital.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
11. She has to wear uniform when she's at work.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
12. My uncle is honest man.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
13. He drives underground train.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
14. For this job you need experience with computer.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. Did you come by air ?
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
16. I couldn't hear because of noise of the train.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
17. The Earth moves round sun.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
18. Excuse me, where is bus station, please?
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
19. We had dinner in very nice restaurant.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
20. There were no..... chairs , so we had to sit on the floor.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
21. policeman usually wears a uniform.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
22. intelligence is important for success.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
23. It was a happy party, but we could only stay for half hour.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
24. Vegetarians don't eat meat.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
25. You will find the information you need at the top of page 15.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

Part I

Present Tenses

الجزء الأول : الزمن المضارع

1

The Present Simple Tense

الزمن المضارع البسيط

Formation : التكوين

• يتكون المضارع البسيط في الجملة المثبتة من :

Subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل +

- يتكون من التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافة مع (I / We / You / They) أو فاعل جمع وإضافة (s) للفعل إذا كان الفاعل (He / She / It) أو فاعل مفرد :

e.g. : - We **study** English at school.

- A rabbit **eats** grass.

- Walaa **cooks** lunch at one every day.

قواعد إضافة (s)

- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he / she / it) إذا كان المصدر منتهياً بـ :
(ch - sh - ss - o - x)

e.g. : - Malak **brushes** her teeth twice a day.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he / she / it) إذا كان المصدر منتهياً بـ y مسبقاً بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف y :

e.g. : - A baby **cries** when he is hungry.

• يتكون المضارع البسيط في الجمل المنفية من :

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. المصدر +

e.g. : - We **don't** study Spanish at school.

- Rodayna **doesn't** play tennis.

- ونستخدم (never) أيضاً للنفي :

e.g. : - He **doesn't** help the poor. = He **never** helps the poor.

- They **don't** come early. = They **never** come early.

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه هل :

Do / Does + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر ?

e.g. : * Do you get up at six o'clock every morning?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

* Does Aya watch action films?

- Yes, she does.

- No, she doesn't.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word المصدر + do / does + subject + فاعل + inf. أداة استفهام ؟

e.g. : - What do you eat for dessert?

- How often does Reham go to the club?

- المضارع البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Object + am / is / are + p.p.

e.g. : - Farmers grow plants.

(Active)

Plants are grown by farmers.

(Passive)

- Some people don't eat meat at all.

(Active)

Meat isn't eaten at all by some people.

(Passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

1 to express facts :

- التعبير عن حقائق علمية ثابتة لا تتغير :

e.g. : - The moon goes round the Earth.

2 to express habits :

- التعبير عن عادات :

e.g. : - He always comes late.

Subject + فاعل + usually + verb فعل

It + is + someone's habit to + inf. المصدر

Subject + فاعل + (be) + in the habit of + (inf. + ing)

Subject + فاعل + (be) + used to + (inf. + ing) / n.

e.g. : - Ali usually eats fruit for dessert الحلو بعد الأكل.

- It is Ali's (his) habit to eat fruit for dessert.

- Ali is in the habit of eating fruit for dessert.

- Ali is used to eating fruit for dessert.

PART 1

لاحظ استخدام **no longer / any longer / any more** بمعنى (لم يعد) لنفي العادة عن الحاضر وإثبات حدوثها في الماضي :

Subject فاعل + no longer + present simple +

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed **no longer** smokes. = He **used to** smoke.

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. + + any longer / any more

e.g. : - Ali **doesn't** smoke any more. = He **used to** smoke.

Notes : ملاحظات عامة

• يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار الآتية وتأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد **verb to be** وأحياناً تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

- always	- sometimes	- usually	- often	- occasionally
- rarely	- scarcely	- seldom	- regularly	- frequently
- generally	- monthly	- weekly	- never etc.	

e.g. : - He **always** comes late. = He **is** always late.

• لاحظ الكلمات السابقة بوجه عام تنفي بـ **never / rarely / scarcely / seldom** :

e.g. : - I **always** get up early. - I **never** get up early.

- She **usually** watches TV at night.

- She **rarely** watches TV at night.

• يستخدم مع الكلمات الآتية في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

every (day - night - Monday - week - month - year ... etc.)

at night / in the morning / at noon / in the evening ... etc.

e.g. : - We watch TV **every night**. = **Every night**, he watches TV.

استخدامات أخرى للمضارع البسيط

١ يستخدم مع أفعال الشعور والحواس والادراك والعاطفة والتفكير بدلا من المضارع المستمر:

like, dislike, love, think, seem, look, know, feel, understand,
want, need, hate, see, remember, forget, prefer, believe,
mean, taste, hear, have, possess, own, belong,.... etc.

e.g.: - I **prefer** his way of thinking.

- He **enjoys** reading romantic novels.

٢ يستخدم مع الحالة الأولى من (if) و يدل علي المستقبل :

e.g.: - If you **play** well, you **will win**.

٢ يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية التالية و يدل علي المستقبل :

(when / as soon as / after / before / till / until / the moment)

e.g.: - **After** he **arrives**, we **will eat**.

- They **will not go until** he **gives** them money.

٣ يعبر عن الحقائق التي تدوم لفترة :

e.g.: - I **work** in a bank.

٥ يستخدم مع جداول المواعيد بدلا من المستقبل البسيط :

e.g.: - The train **arrives** at 10:15 pm.

- We **have** English at ten every Sunday.

٦ يستخدم المضارع البسيط في حالة طلب أو إعطاء التعليمات والاتجاهات :

e.g.: - How do I **get** to the station?

- You go **straight on**, and then you **turn** left.

2 The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation : التكوين

- تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر من:

- في الجمل المثبتة: Subject فاعل + am / is / are + (inf. + ing)

ex.: - Ali **is reading** a story. - I **am running** fast.

- Aya and Heba **are cooking** lunch.

PART 1

- في الجمل المنفية :

Subject فاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + inf. + ing.

e.g. : - Ali is not (isn't) reading a story.

- I am not running fast.

- Aya and Heba are not (aren't) cooking lunch.

• كيفية إضافة (ing) للفعل :
inf. المصدر + ing:

e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting

(١) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فإنه يحذف قبل إضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - write → writing - make → making

- ويشذ عن ذلك الفعلين dye / singe :

e.g. : - dye يصنع → dyeing - singe يلسع → singeing

(٢) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد و كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد أو أكثر بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق فإنه يضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - run → running - begin → beginning

- stop → stopping - regret → regretting

- swim → swimming

(٣) إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فإنهما يتحولان إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying

(٤) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه هل :

Am / Is / Are + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ?

e.g. : - Is Ali reading a story ? - Yes, he is . / No, he isn't.

- Are you running fast? - Yes, I am.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + (inf. + ing)....? فاعل + am / is/ are + أداة استفهام

e.g. : - What is Ali doing ?

- Who is running fast ?

- المضارع المستمر فى صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Object + am / is / are + being + p.p.

e.g. : - Ali is reading a story. (active)

- A story is being read by Ali. (passive)

- She is watering the plants. (active)

- The plants are being watered by her. (passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

① To express actions that are happening now : التعبير عن أحداث تقع اثناء التحدث -

e.g. : - I am revising for my test. - They are watching Tom and Jerry.

② To express actions that are taking place around the present

- التعبير عن أحداث تقع حول الوقت الحاضر و ليس بالضرورة الآن :

e.g. : - We are taking exams these days.

- I'm reading a story for Naguib Mahfouz.

③ To express future arrangements

- يعبر عن حدث فى المستقبل كامل الترتيبات (الموعد معروف والأطراف المشتركة فى الحدث تعلم ذلك) :

e.g. : - Our aunt is leaving hospital tomorrow morning.

- They are travelling on Monday.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع كلمات زمنية مثل :

Key words :

now - at the moment - at present - still ما زال - Look ! - Listen ! - Watch out! انتبه etc.

- لاحظ: لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع أفعال الحواس و التفكير و العاطفة و التملك بل يأتى معهم زمن المضارع البسيط مثل :

PART 1

astonish	دهش	hate	بكره	need	يحتاج
see	يرى	believe	يصدق	hear	يسمع
owe	يدين	seem	يبدو	belong	يخص
know	يعرف	own	يملك	smell	يشم
concern	يهتم به/يتعلق به	lack	ينقص	possess	يملك
suppose	يفترض	consist	يتكون	like	يحب
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يفاجئ	contain	يحتوي على
love	يحب	realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم	recognise	يتعرف على
understand	يفهم	deserve	يستحق	mean	يعنى
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد	have	يملك

• لا يستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى "يملك" في المضارع المستمر ولكن يضاف له (ing) إذا استخدم بمعنى غير المعنى الأساسى (يملك) :

- e.g. : - I **have** a shower. أمتلك دش
 - I'm **having** a shower. انني آخذ دشا
 - I'm **having** my breakfast now. يتناول أو يأكل

3 The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

التكوين : Formation

- فى الجملة المثبتة : Subject + have / has + P.P.
 - تستخدم (has) مع المفرد الغائب (he / she / it) وتستخدم (have) مع باقى الضمائر:
 e.g. : - I **have** tidied my bedroom.
 - Ahmed **has** played tennis for an hour.

- فى الجملة المنفية : Subject + hasn't / haven't + p.p. +
 e.g. : - They **haven't** watched the match yet.
 - Rodayna **hasn't** done her homework yet.

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه «هل» :

Have / Has + subject + P.P. ?

e.g. : - Have you tidied your room?

- Yes, I have (tidied my room).

- Has Rodayna done her homework?

- No, she hasn't (done her homework yet).

- السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + P.P. ?

e.g. : - Where have you played the match?

- How long have you stayed here?

- فى صيغة المبني للمجهول : have / has + been + p.p. + Object المفعول

e.g. : - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)

- My room has been tidied (by me). (passive)

- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour. (active)

- Tennis has been played for an hour (by Ahmed). (passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

١ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود :

e.g. : - Rodayna has cleaned the kitchen. The kitchen is clean now.

- He has broken his leg. He can't walk easily.

٢ حدث انتهى في وقت غير محدد في الماضي :

e.g. : - She has polished her shoes.

- Ahmed has fed the sheep.

- لكن عند تحديد وقت الحدوث نستخدم الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - Rodayna cleaned the kitchen yesterday.

- Ahmed fed the sheep in the afternoon.

٣ يدل المضارع التام علي حدث متكرر (أي أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدوث مرة أخرى) :

e.g. : - Ahmed has scored a hundred goals. (He can score more.)

- لكن اذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعني ذلك أن الحدث توقف :

e.g. : - He wrote 46 novels. (He stopped writing.)

٤ يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرات سابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها :

e.g. : - Have you ever met anyone famous?

- She's never met anyone famous yet, but she hopes to one day.

PART 1

نستخدم (has / have gone to) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد ، أما (has / have been to) :
ذهب لمكان ومازال هناك (لم يعد) :

e.g. : - Rodayna has gone to school. (She is still at school now.)

- Ahmed has been to the cinema. (He isn't there now.)

- يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية :

Key words :

1 just / حاليًا / من فترة وجيزة

- تستخدم (just) غالبًا في الإثبات والسؤال للتعبير عن حدث انتهى منذ فترة وجيزة :

e.g. : - She has just turned on the computer.

- إذا استخدمنا just بدلا من a moment ago / a short time ago نحول الماضي البسيط إلى مضارع تام مثبت.

e.g. : - The train left a moment ago. = The train has just left.

2 already بالفعل

- نستخدم already في الأسئلة و الجمل المثبتة لتقول أن حدث انتهى أسرع مما كنا نتوقع.

e.g. : - Mr Osama has already had dinner.

- Have you eaten all that food already ?

- عند استخدام before now مكان already يحول زمن الجملة للماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - He has already finished. = He finished before now.

3 yet حتى الآن

- تستخدم yet في نهاية الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية :

e.g. : - Has he arrived yet ? - They haven't eaten yet.

- تستخدم yet في نفي جملة بها (just / already) :

e.g. : - He has just arrived. - He hasn't arrived yet.

- في حالة استخدام yet بدلا من still نستخدم مضارع تام منفي بدلا من المضارع المستمر :

e.g. : - He is still writing the report.

= He hasn't finished writing the report yet.

4 so far / up till now / till now حتى الآن

- نستخدم so far / up till now / till now في الأسئلة و الجمل المثبتة :

e.g. : - I've written two letters so far / up till now.

= So far / Up till now, I've written two letters.

5 ever أبداً / مطلقاً never من قبل / سبق

- تستخدم ever غالبا في السؤال بينما تستخدم never للنفي المطلق :

e.g. : - Have you ever met the manager in person?

- I have never seen such a strange person.

- نستخدم **ever** في الجمل التي تبدأ بـ **No** :

e.g. : - Nothing like this **has ever happened** to us.

- No student **has ever answered** this question.

- يمكن استخدام **ever** في الجمل التي تتضمن صيغة تفضيل :

... + subject + have / has + ever + P.P. + صفة تفضيل

e.g. : - This is the strangest match I have **ever** watched.

- The most exciting novel he has **ever** read was "Oliver Twist".

- لاحظ أنه عند استخدام **never** بدلاً من **ever** نستخدم (n) + (adj) + such (a/an) :

e.g. : - This is the strangest match I have **ever** seen.

- I have **never** watched such a strange match.

- في حالة استخدام **ever** في جملة بها **never / before** تبدأ بـ **this is the first time** :

e.g. : - I have never seen a lion **before**.

= This is the first time I have **ever** seen a lion.

6 lately/recently حديثاً / مؤخراً

- نستخدم كل من **recently / lately** بنفس الطريقة في السؤال :

e.g. : - Has Ahmed scored goals **lately/recently**?

- يُفضل استخدام **recently** في الجملة المثبتة و **lately** في الجملة المنفية :

e.g. : - Rodayna has moved to a new house **recently**.

- He hasn't phoned me **lately**.

7 since منذ

- يأتي بعد **since** زمن يحدد بداية الحدث (بداية أو نقطة زمنية محددة) :

- I haven't returned home since **07:30 am**.

- She has stayed with her aunt since **Saturday**.

- We haven't met since **26th September**.

- Mum has been in bed since **the morning**.

- Rodayna hasn't met her grandma since **April**.

- Those birds have built their nests here since **Spring**.

- Mr Samy has stayed in Edfu since **2002**.

- Rodayna hasn't slept since **you left the house**.

الماضي البسيط

- I arrived home yesterday evening. I haven't gone out since **then**.

- I haven't played with Ahmed since **yesterday**.

- We haven't played football since **last week**.

كما يأتي بعد since أيضا اسم يدل على وقت معلوم مثل :

- (lunch / lunchtime / childhood / wedding / arrival / departure / birth / death / this age /)

e.g. : - She has lived here since her wedding.

- He has known the same friends since his childhood.

8 for لمدة

- يأتي بعد for المدة التي استغرقها الحدث :

a moment	- I have waited for a few moments.
a while لحظة	- She has thought for a while.
عدد ثواني	- I have closed my eyes for ten seconds.
عدد دقائق	- Mum has waited for 15 minutes.
عدد ساعات	- Rodayna hasn't slept for 24 hours.
عدد ايام	- Those birds have stayed in their nests here for a few days.
عدد أسابيع	- Mr Mohammed has stayed in Sharm El-Sheikh for two weeks.
عدد شهور	- Rodayna has lived here for two months.
عدد فصول	- This play has been on show for two seasons.
عدد سنين	- I've had my own computer for three years now.
عدد عقود	- She has stayed abroad for more than two decades.
عدد قرون	- The United States has been the world's greatest power for a century.
ages	- I haven't met him for ages.
a long / long	
short time /	- I haven't played with Ahmed for a long time / long.
the last	- We haven't played football for the last two weeks.

- و لاحظ استخدام for في هذه الجملة.

e.g. : - I've written stories and poems for as long as I can remember.

- عند استخدام since / for بدلا من the last time / last / when / ago نحول الماضي البسيط إلى مضارع تام منفى :

e.g. : - I last ate fish when I was in Alex.

= I haven't eaten fish since I was in Alex.

- إذا كانت الجملة مضارع تام منفى و بدأنا بـ It's نستخدم التركيب التالي (الذي يعطى معنى النفي) :

ماضى بسيط مثبت + last + فاعل + since + مدة زمنية + It's

e.g. - I haven't seen him for ages. = It's ages since I last saw him.

- عند استخدام ago بدلا من since / for نستخدم التركيب التالي لإعطاء نفس المعنى :

began / started + to + inf.

e.g. : - It has rained for two hours. = It began to rain two hours ago.

4 The Present Perfect Continuous Tense إمن المضارع التام المستمر

التكوين : Formation :

Subject الفاعل + **have** + been + inf. + ing
has

- وغالبا ما تكون في الجملة كلمات تدل علي الاستمرار :

since... / for... / for... now / all + تعبير زمني مفرد

e.g. : - He has been working there ever **since** he graduated.

- It has been raining **for** three days **now**.

- I have been playing football **for** about ten years.

- لاحظ صيغة النفي :

Subject الفاعل + **hasn't / haven't** + been + inf. + ing ...

e.g. : - They **haven't** been sleeping all night.

- Rodayna **hasn't** been learning English for this long time.

- لاحظ صيغتي السؤال :

Have / Has + subject الفاعل + been + inf. + ing ... ?

e.g. : - Have you been playing tennis for an hour?

Yes, we have (been playing tennis for an hour).

- Has Rodayna been learning English for this long time?

No, she **hasn't** (been learning English for this long time).

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject الفاعل + been + (inf. + ing) ... ?

e.g. : - How long have you been playing tennis?

- What has Rodayna been learning for this long time?

Usage : الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن :

- حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرا حتى الوقت الحاضر :

e.g. : - He's been training really hard since the last Olympic Games.

- I have been learning English since I was eight years old.

- He has been working for them for about two years.

- حدث تم بانتظام حيث بدأ في الماضي وأستمر حتي الآن :

e.g. : - For the last few months, I've been playing squash regularly.

- حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي وله اثر علي الحاضر (تفسير لموقف في الحاضر) :

A : You look tired. What have you been doing?

B : I have been serving customers all day.

- يستخدم هذا الزمن مع الأفعال التي تستغرق وقتا طويلا وتدل على الاستمرارية :

study, teach, learn, read, write, play, run, paint, sit,

stand, lie, sleep, cook, wait, rain,

e.g. : - It has been raining since I woke up.

- يُستخدم المضارع التام وليس المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية:

- عند بناء جملة المضارع التام المستمر للمجهول تتحول إلى المضارع التام :

Object + the doer + have / has + been + p.p.

e.g. : - I have been studying English since I was in primary one. (active)

- English has been studied (by me) since I was in primary one. (passive)

- هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموما ومنها المضارع التام المستمر وهي :

① أفعال المشاعر والحواس والإدراك والملكية والرغبة بالإضافة إلى (be) كفعل اساسي:

astonish

يدهش

hate

يكره

need

يحتاج

see

يرى

believe

يصدق

hear

يسمع

owe

يدين

seem

يبدو

belong	يخص	know	يعرف
own	يمتلك	smell	يشم
concern	يهم/يتعلق بـ	lack	ينقص
possess	يمتلك	suppose	يفترض
consist	يتكون	like	يحب
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يفاجئ
contain	يحتوي على	love	يحب
realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم
recognize	يتعرف على	understand	يفهم
deserve	يستحق	mean	يعنى
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد

e.g. : - I **have been knowing** Mr Ayman for a few months now. (x)

- I **have known** Mr Ayman for a few months now. (✓)

- Ashraf **has been being** in Aswan for only one night. (x)

- Ashraf **has been** in Aswan for only one night. (✓)

٢ مع الأفعال اللحظية التي لا يستغرق حدوثها وقتا (يمكن وصفه بالاستمرار) مثل :

receive – arrive – break down – crash ...

e.g. : - A car **has been crashing** into a tree. (x)

- A car **has crashed** into a tree. (✓)

٣ عند ذكر مرات حدوث الفعل ، ومن الكلمات الدالة على ذلك :

two / three / many / a few / few / several / a lot of /

lots of / all / plenty of ...+ مفعول جمع

e.g. : - I've **been watching** all the judo at the Olympics this year. (x)

- I've **watched** all the judo at the Olympics this year. (✓)

- I **have been scoring** lots of goals. (x)

- I **have scored** lots of goals. (✓)

- I **have been playing** for four different teams. (x)

- I **have played** for four different teams. (✓)

Test Yourself

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What time we usually go to school? The term has already started.
a. did b. do c. does d. will
2. He for an international company for three years, but he no longer works.
a. works b. worked c. has worked d. will work
3. The play at 9 o'clock tomorrow.
a. starts b. started c. will start d. is starting
4. Don't go out until you your homework.
a. finish b. had finished c. will finish d. finishes
5. Nurses after patients in hospitals.
a. look b. looks c. are looking d. looked
6. It is a long time since he his village.
a. has visited b. visited c. had visited d. visiting
7. Have you completed your work ? Very good, you are very fast.
a. already b. yet c. just d. ago
8. I to be a doctor since I was ten.
a. wanted b. was wanting c. have wanted d. want
9. When I was eight, I a programme about a famous Egyptian doctor on television.
a. saw b. have seen c. was seeing d. was seen
10. At the moment, she to be a primary school teacher.
a. trains b. was training c. is training d. has trained
11. Since I started the job two years ago, I important people from all over the world.
a. have met b. had met c. met d. meeting
12. I'll phone you as soon as I my work .
a. finish b. will finish c. had finished d. finished

13. In ancient times, they often waterwheels to irrigate the fields.
 a. used b. use c. are using d. were using
14. Phone me when you the message.
 a. read b. reads c. was reading d. had read
15. I first my best friend when we were both about 3 years old.
 a. meet b. have met c. met d. meeting
16. I hard since the morning.
 a. work b. have to work
 c. have been working d. will work
17. you finished your work yet ?
 a. Do b. Did c. Have d. Had
18. I on this English exercise for the last hour !
 a. have been working b. had worked
 c. worked d. were you working
19. They have been doing the homework 6 o'clock.
 a. for b. ago c. from d. since
20. She has been cleaning the house two hours now.
 a. for b. ago c. from d. since
21. We here for 6 years now and we don't intend to move.
 a. lived b. have been living
 c. were living d. has lived
22. The boys games for 3 hours now.
 a. have played b. have been playing
 c. are playing d. play
23. He has been learning French the age of six.
 a. for b. since c. while d. when
24. Ahmed has been learning English he was 7 years old.
 a. for b. ago c. when d. since
25. Ali has been travelling the last five days.
 a. for b. ago c. when d. since

PART 1

26. I have been doing my homework three hours.
a. for b. ago c. when d. since
27. She hard all day.
a. has been studying b. has been studied
c. had to be studied d. will be studied
28. They Spanish for the last few months.
a. have to learn b. had learnt
c. have been learning d. are learning

Part II Past Tenses الجزء الثاني : أزمنة الماضي

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation : التكوين

Subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل - في الجملة المثبتة :

e.g. : - Ahmed **visited** his friends yesterday.

- They **watched** a film last night.

Subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + didn't + inf. - في الجملة المنفية :

e.g. : - They **didn't watch** the match yesterday.

- Omar **didn't do** his homework.

Did + subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + inf. ? - السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه « هل » :

e.g. : - **Did** you **tidy** your room?

- Yes, I **did**.

- Yes, I **tidied** my room.

- **Did** the student **do** his homework?

- No, he **didn't** (do his homework).

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + did / didn't + subject + inf. ?

e.g. : - **Where** did you **watch** the match?

- **Why** didn't you **stay** at a hotel?

Usage : الاستخدام

① يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

e.g. : - I **studied** French when I **was** in secondary school.

② يعبر عن عادة في الماضي :

e.g. : - Mr Mohammed **used to play** tennis when he **was** young.

- I **used to write** very quickly.

③ وصف أحداث في سرد قصة :

e.g. : - Ali **found** a bag. He **took** it to the police station.

④ في الحاله الثانية من جملة الشرط (II) :

e.g. : - If he **helped** us, we would win.

⑤ يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضي غير حقيقي يعبر عن (افتراض شيء) وليس الواقع :

① **I wish + subject** ماضي بسيط + فاعل

e.g. : - I wish mum **wasn't** ill.

- I wish the Egyptian team **played** well.

② **It's time + subject** ماضي بسيط + فاعل

e.g. : - It's time he **paid** the bill.

- It is time father **arrived**.

③ **I'd rather + subject** ماضي بسيط + فاعل

e.g. : - I would rather she **helped** him.

- I'd rather Ali **didn't** come.

⑥ يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية :

Key words :

yesterday – ago – last – once – in the past – once upon a time –

How long ago – the previous in the ancient time / in the old days

e.g. : - Last week, I **went** to Alexandria.

- Two months ago, we **flew** to London.

- يلاحظ استخدام (always, usually, often, sometimes) للتعبير عن مدى تكرار الحدث في الماضي :

e.g. : - When I was in Alex, I **always** swam in the sea.

PART 1

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Formation : التكوين

Subject فاعل + was / were + (inf. + ing) : في الجملة المثبتة :

e.g. : - Ahmed **was reading** a story.

- Rodayna and Heba **were cooking** lunch.

: في الجملة المنفية :

Subject فاعل + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + (inf. + ing)

e.g. : - Ahmed **was not (wasn't)** reading a story.

- Rodayna and Heba **were not (weren't)** cooking lunch.

- السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد معناه «هل» :

Was / Were + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ?

e.g. : - **Was Ahmed reading** a story?

Yes, he **was (reading a story)**.

- **Were you running** fast?

No, I **was not**.

= No, I **was not running** fast.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + was / were + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing).... ?

e.g. : - **What was Ahmed doing (reading)**?

- **Who was running** fast?

- في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Object المفعول + was / were + being + p.p.

e.g. : - A story **was being read** by Ahmed.

Usage : الاستخدام

١ للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت معين في الماضي :

e.g. : - At half past six this morning, I was having breakfast.

٢ للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر :

e.g. : - I was having a shower when the phone rang.

٣ يأتي في سياق قصة أو موقف في الماضي :

e.g. : - I was studying Chemistry when I met Jane.

- He was doing research when they arrested him.

٤ يستخدم الماضي المستمر غالباً مع روابط زمنية مثل (While / When / As / Just as)

للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً ثم قطعه حدث آخر :

ماضي بسيط Past Simple , ماضي مستمر Past Cont. (While / When / As / Just as) + Past Cont.

e.g. : - I was having a shower when the phone rang.

- While she was walking in the street, she met one of her old friends.

- لاحظ أن when يمكن أن يأتي بعدها الماضي البسيط :

e.g. : - We were doing the homework when it started to rain.

- يمكن استخدام On بدلاً من when و يأتي بعدها inf. + ing :

- When he arrived, he found the door locked.

= On arriving, he found the door locked.

٥ يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع روابط زمنية مثل (While / when / As / Just as)

للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت :

ماضي مستمر Past Cont. , ماضي مستمر Past Cont. (While / When / As / Just as) + Past Cont.

e.g. : - While I was studying, my father was reading.

- While I was finishing one story, I was thinking of the next one.

- إذا لم يأتي بعد While فاعل يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - While playing, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام during بدلاً من while ويأتي بعدها اسم أو عبارة اسمية فقط وليس (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - While he was playing the game, he got hurt.

- During the game, he got hurt. = He got hurt during the game.

3 The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Formation : التكوين

had ('d) + p.p.

- e.g. : - I **had collected** money for the disabled. (Affirmative) الاثبات
- Soha **had not studied** for her exams. (Negative) النفي
- **Had you finished** your homework ? (Yes/No questions) السؤال بـ « هل »
- **What had happened** before the theft? السؤال بكلمات استفهام (Wh-questions)
- The letter **had been written** before you phoned. (Passive) المبنى للمجهول

Usage : الاستخدام

① حدث تم وانتهى قبل وقت محدد أو معين في الماضي :

e.g. : - By 1970, the government **had built** a new road from Benha to Tanta.

② حدث تم وانتهى قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

- (بمعنى إذا كان هناك أكثر من حدث تم في الماضي، نضع الحدث الأقدم في الماضي التام ثم يتبعه جميع الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط) :

e.g. : - After I **had had** my breakfast, I **prepared** my bag and then **went** to school.

- الأفعال حسب حدوثها في الماضي ولاحظ الأزمنة في المثال السابق :

have breakfast → prepare the bag → go to school

(1)

(2)

(3)

- كلمات ربط مع زمن الماضي التام :

ماضي بسيط + فاعل , ماضي تام + فاعل + After

e.g. : - After I **had done** my homework, I **watched** TV.

- لاحظ إذا لم يتبع after فاعل ، تستخدم بعدها inf. + ing مباشرة :

- After **doing** my homework, I **watched** TV.

After + فاعل + (had + p.p) = Having + p.p.

e.g. : - After I **had watched** the film, I **fell** asleep.

- **Having watched** the film, I **fell** asleep.

ماضى بسيط , ماضى تام + فاعل + As soon as

e.g. : - As soon as Sami had come into sight, we all cheered.

ماضى تام + فاعل , ماضى بسيط + فاعل + Before

e.g. : - Before he married, he had built himself a nice house.

ماضى تام + فاعل , Before + inf. + ing

e.g. : - Before doing hard exercises, Sally had warmed up.

ماضى تام + فاعل , ماضى بسيط + فاعل + By the time

e.g. : - By the time she died, she had written down all her possessions to her son.

ماضى تام , مدة زمنية فى الماضى + By

e.g. : - By 1963, Egypt had built the High Dam.

ماضى تام , ماضى بسيط + فاعل + When

e.g. : - When Shukri arrived, his mom had cooked him a nice cake.

ماضى تام + till / until + ماضى بسيط منفى

e.g. : - hardly
scarcely + had + فاعل + when
no sooner than + ماضى بسيط + فاعل

e.g. : - Soha had hardly met me when she started to cry.

- Bassem had no sooner finished secondary school than he joined the police academy.

لاحظ : يقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل اذا بدأنا بأدوات الربط التالية :

Hardly
Scarcely + had + فاعل + p.p. + when
No sooner than + ماضى بسيط + فاعل

PART 1

e.g. : - Hardly had it rained when all people in the street began to run back home.

- No sooner had he seen the dog than he felt scared.



لاحظ : أن «السبب» يسبق «النتيجة» عند ترتيب الاحداث، لذا يوضع السبب في الماضي التام :

e.g. : - He shouted because he had seen a snake.

- Since he had studied hard, he got high marks.

It was only when } ماضي بسيط + that + ماضي تام
 It wasn't until }

e.g. : - It was only when I had finished my homework that you called me.

- It wasn't until I had finished my homework that you called me.

4 The Past Perfect Continuous Tense زمن الماضي التام المستمر

Formation : التكوين

Subject + had + been + (inf. + ing) : - في الإثبات :

e.g. : - He had been cleaning the room when I arrived home.

Subject + hadn't + been + (inf. + ing) : - في النفي :

e.g. : - He hadn't been cleaning the room when you arrived home.

Had + Subject + been + (inf. + ing) ? : - في السؤال بـ «هل» :

e.g. : - Had he been cleaning the room for two hours when you arrived home?

- Yes, he had.

- No, he hadn't.

- في السؤال بأداة استفهام :

Question word + had + subject + been + inf. + ing + ?

e.g. : - What **had Ali been doing** when his father came home ?

- يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة فى الماضى قبل وقوع حدث آخر
ويستخدم عادة مع :

since / for / all + تعبير زمنى مفرد / from .. to ... / after / before
by the time / when

e.g. : - **When Ahmed arrived** at school, his hair was wet. It **had been** raining all day.

- Rody **went** into the kitchen and found lots of fresh bread on the table. Her mother **had been baking** for 3 hours.
- My brother Mahmoud **had been looking** for work for over a year **before** he **got** a job.
- The little children's clothes **were** dirty **because** they **had been playing** in the park all day.

- هناك أفعال لا تستخدم فى الأزمنة المستمرة عموما ومنها الماضى التام المستمر وهى أفعال الشعور والحواس والملكية والمعرفة :

astonish	يدهش	lack	ينقص	recognise	يتعرف على
believe	يصدق	like	يحب	remember	يتذكر
belong	يخص	love	يحب	see	يرى
concern	يهم/يتعلق	matter	يهم	seem	يبدو
consist	يتكون	mean	يعنى	smell	يشم
contain	يحتوى	need	يحتاج	suppose	يفترض
depend	يعتمد	owe	يدين	surprise	يفاجئ
deserve	يستحق	own	يمتلك	taste	يتذوق
hate	يكره	possess	يمتلك	understand	يفهم
hear	يسمع	prefer	يفضل	want	يريد
know	يعرف	realise	يدرك		

e.g. : - I **had been knowing** him for a long time before he died. (X)

- I **had known** him for a long time before he died. (✓)

PART 1

كما لا يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر مع الأفعال التى لا تستغرق عادة فترة طويلة فى حدوثها وفى هذه الحالة نستخدم الماضى التام (لاحظ أنه توجد استثناءات) :

break down / stop / close / open / end etc.

e.g. : - She **was** late for the meeting because her car **had broken** down.
(not had been breaking).

إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل أو ما يدل على العدد لا يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر بل نستخدم الماضى التام، ومن الكلمات الدالة على مرات حدوث الفعل :

one / two / three ... / many / a few / several / a lot of / lots of / plenty of ...

e.g. : - **When I met** Ahmed, he **had finished** typing **three** reports.

- **By the time** she **finished** writing her report, she **had drunk** six cups of tea.

لاحظ أن :

ماضى بسيط / ماضى مستمر / ماضى تام مستمر / ماضى تام + because / since / as + ماضى بسيط

e.g. : - I **didn't meet** my sister **because / since / as** she **had travelled** to Paris

- He **didn't hear** the mobile ringing **because / since / as** he **was** asleep

- I **was** very tired **because / since / as** I **had been working** all day.

- She **couldn't help** her mother **because / since / as** she **was doing** her homework.

ماضى بسيط / ماضى مستمر / ماضى تام مستمر / ماضى تام + so / that's why / consequently / as a result / thus + ماضى بسيط

e.g. : - My sister **had travelled** to Paris, **so** I **didn't meet** her.

- I **had been working** all day; **as a result** I **was** very tired.

- She **was doing** homework; **consequently** she **couldn't help** her mother.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- A wood fire was burning on the hearth and a cat in front of it.
a. slept b. had slept c. was sleeping d. sleeping
- He tennis for three hours yesterday.
a. played b. was playing c. had played d. has played
- At this time yesterday, Tom his car.
a. washed b. was washing c. had washed d. washing
- Between one and two, I the shopping.
a. did b. was doing c. had done d. doing
- When I was at university, I short stories for students magazine.
a. write b. writes c. wrote d. was writing
- Yesterday, my sister gave me a book she reading the day before.
a. finished b. has finished c. had finished d. finishes
- I a car accident while coming to school.
a. was seeing b. saw c. see d. have seen
- I the newspaper everyday. Now I don't have the time.
a. used to read b. was reading c. had read d. have read
- As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson
a. had begun b. begin c. begins d. has begun
- As the thief into the bus, the police caught him.
a. got b. was getting c. getting d. has got
- I a bath when the phone rang.
a. had b. was having c. having d. have had
- When I got to the car, I realized that I my keys.
a. am losing b. would lose c. had lost d. was losing
- I the film before I read the book.
a. saw b. have already seen
c. had already seen d. has already seen
- He the tree when he suddenly fell down.
a. climbed b. climbs c. was climbing d. will climb
- On the film, Ali came.
a. watch b. watches c. watched d. watching

PART 1

16. They saw the fighting people while home.
 a. were driving b. drove c. driving d. drive
17. As he was carrying the vase, he it on the floor.
 a. drops b. dropped c. had dropped d. was dropping
18. By the time he was 12, my brother three languages. He spoke Arabic, English and French.
 a. learnt b. has learnt c. was learning d. had learnt
19. When I went to my friend's flat, she for school.
 a. already left b. has already left
 c. had already left d. was leaving
20. Last year, I spent a month in France. I of going there since I was a child.
 a. have dreamed b. had dreamed c. dreamt d. was dreaming
21. While he his homework, his friend came.
 a. was doing b. was done c. did d. is doing
22. She was carrying her bag when a thief it.
 a. grabs b. was grabbing c. grabbed d. had grabbed
23. As we were sitting in the garden, a storm out.
 a. had broken b. broke c. breaking d. has broken
24. When the teacher entered the class, the pupils a lot of noise.
 a. are making b. was making c. were making d. made
25. My father retired last week. He for the same company all his life.
 a. worked b. has worked c. had worked d. was working
26. Karim fell asleep during the football match because he to bed late the night before.
 a. had gone b. went c. gone d. has gone
27. He fell down and broke his leg while football.
 a. was playing b. playing c. played d. plays
28. Just after her flat, Malak visited her cousin.
 a. clean b. cleaning c. had cleaned d. has cleaned
29. Hossam watered the tree just after he it.
 a. plant b. planted c. planting d. had planted

30. My friend for only three weeks, so he failed his driving test.
a. drove b. has driven
c. had driven d. had been driving
31. It was only Esraa had passed her exam that she travelled abroad.
a. before b. after c. until d. when
32. Amr ate a sandwich during the game because he enough time to eat before it started.
a. hadn't had b. doesn't have c. hasn't had d. didn't have
33. Jane recognized her old friend though she her for a long time.
a. didn't see b. hadn't seen c. hasn't seen d. wouldn't see
34. She found lots of fresh bread on the table as her mother all morning.
a. had been baking b. was baking
c. baking d. had baked
35. Yara was over the moon she had passed her final exams.
a. while b. till c. after d. then
36. When we got up that morning, there was sand all over the streets. There a sand storm.
a. was b. were c. had been d. has been
37. Sara couldn't buy a new mobile the shop had shut.
a. as b. till c. no sooner d. hardly
38. When he died in 2005, his daughter after his finances for a few years.
a. looked b. had been looking
c. looks d. was looking
39. Sobhi to the doctor's yesterday as he had been feeling unwell for three days.
a. go b. went c. have gone d. had gone
40. I borrowed money from Ali I had left my money at home.
a. having b. because c. till d. before
41. Before he..... novels, he had written a few plays.
a. wrote b. write c. had written d. writes

PART 1

42. When Ahmed arrived home, his hair was wet because it
a. rained b. raining
c. has rained d. had been raining
43. When we got to the show, all the seats
a. were reserving b. had been reserved
c. have been reserved d. are reserved
44. When they arrived, they were exhausted because they for nearly 15 hours.
a. have flown b. flew
c. had been flying d. had flown
45. I couldn't believe it. I chosen to play the football match.
a. was b. have been c. had been d. 'm
46. When we got to the party, my friends for more than an hour.
a. danced b. were dancing
c. have been dancing d. had been dancing
47. Her eyes were red, so he knew that she
a. was crying b. has cried
c. had cried d. had been crying
48. My home town looked different because several new shops
a. were built b. has built
c. have been built d. had been built
49. When my mother called me for dinner, I for two hours.
a. had been reading b. have read
c. had read d. was reading
50. The concert yesterday before I began to go there.
a. had been cancelled b. was cancelled
c. has been cancelled d. is cancelled
51. When Alaa went to university, he English for ten years.
a. studied b. has been studying
c. had studied d. had been studying
52. I was tired yesterday morning because I until late the night before.
a. read b. have been reading
c. had read d. had been reading

Part III Future Tenses

الجزء الثالث : الزمنة المستقبل

1 The Future Simple Tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

Formation : التكوين

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط في الإثبات من:

Subject الفاعل + will / shall + inf. ...

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط :

e.g. : - I will / shall help you do your homework.

- Rodayna will be four next March.

- عند النفي : Subject الفاعل + will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + inf. ...

e.g. : - We won't be ready before he comes back.

- Ahmed won't attend the party.

- السؤال بـ «هل» : Will / Shall + subject الفاعل + inf. ... ?

e.g. : - Will you wait for the bus ?

- Yes, I will wait for the bus.

- No, I won't wait for the bus.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + will / shall + subject فاعل + inf. ... ?

e.g. : - When will you go to bed ?

- What will they do next ?

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبني للمجهول من :

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p. ...

e.g. : - A camera will be bought by Rodayna tomorrow.

- يستخدم المستقبل مع كلمات مثل :

Next (year / month / week / Friday ...) / in the future / soon /
tomorrow / this time (next week / tomorrow ...) in (a year, a
month, a week ...) / later on / sooner or later

استخدامات (will) :

Uses of will :

التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية :

- e.g. : - Next year, my son Ahmed **will be** in primary one.
- Rodayna **will be** four on her next birthday.

التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة عدم وجود دليل (رأى شخصي) :
(لاحظ أن الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلاً)

- e.g. : - Do you think Ahmed **will pass** his exams ?
- Yes, he'll **pass**. He's a good student.

إذا نحن لا نتحدث عن نوايا أحمد أو خطته، بل رأينا الشخص وتنبؤاتنا الشخصية :

- e.g. : - My daughter and her husband both have blue eyes, so their baby **will have** blue eyes too.

نستخدم مع بعض التعبيرات الآتية في حالة عدم وجود دليل :

I expect / I'm sure / I think / I'm afraid / Maybe / Perhaps / I promise / I predict / probably / I hope / I wonder ...

- e.g. : - We'll **probably be** in the space station for a week.
- I expect they'll **arrive** back in the morning.
- I'm sure she'll **do** well in her exams.
- I don't think he'll **get** a summer job.
- I wonder what **will happen** in the country next.

اتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ويدل على ذلك :

just decided / decided just now / made a quick decision ...

- e.g. : - Mr Mohammed has just decided that he **will buy** a car.

لقد يكون القرار السريع مفهوماً من السياق (رد فعل) مثل :

- e.g. : - The doorbell is ringing. I'll **open** it.
- It's cold in here. I'll **close** the window.

الترتيب لعمل شيء ما وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق :

- e.g. : - So that's settled. I'll **buy** dinner, you'll **buy** the theatre tickets, and Ahmed **will pay** the taxi fares.

٦ عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة ما :

- e.g. : - I'll wash the dishes.
- I'll help you with your homework.

٧ عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء :

- e.g. : - Will you give me that book, please ?
- I hope you will look after the baby.

٨ عمل الوعود والتهديدات :

- e.g. : - I'll buy you a computer when you pass the final exam.
- I won't repeat that to anyone.
- You won't get your prize if you come late.

2 Be + going to + inf.

- فى الجمل المثبتة : Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf. ...

- e.g. : - Mr Mohammed is going to play tennis.
- I'm going to study medicine.

- فى النفي :

Subject الفاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + going to + inf.

- e.g. : - Mr Walid isn't going to play squash.

- السؤال بـ « هل » : Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. ... ?

- e.g. : - Is Rodayna going to attend the meeting ?
- Yes, she is going to attend the meeting.
- No, she isn't going to attend the meeting.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. ?

- e.g. : - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday ?

- فى صيغة المبني للمجهول : Object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + p.p.

- e.g. : - Tennis is going to be played (by Mr Ali).

استخدامات (going to) :

Uses of going to :

نستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن النوايا والقرارات المتخذة والخطط الشخصية ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

intend / intention / plan / have in mind / decided

e.g. : - Mr Ali intends to build a new house.

- He is going to look for a good place.

- Ahmed : What are your plans for the next weekend ?

- Rody : I'm going to play computer games.

النبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة وجود دليل (أى يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمع بوقوع الشئ) :

e.g. : - My daughter is going to get married. She is engaged.

- It is very cloudy. I think it is going to rain.

- Look out ! We're going to crash! Why are you driving so recklessly

- My daughter is going to have a baby. She is pregnant.

ونستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

decided / have decided / made a decision / make up mind

e.g. : - They are going to go shopping. They have decided.

- I've decided that I'm going to do more exercises in the future.

ونستخدم أيضاً للتحذير (التنبيه) عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث :

e.g. : - Watch out ! You are going to fall.

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

هناك شرطان أساسيان لاستخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل هما :

١. أن يكون الفاعل عاقل. ٢. وجود تعبير زمني يدل على المستقبل (ولو بشكل ضمني).

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة (أى من الأطراف المشتركة بالحدث تعلم هذا الحدث والموعود معروف)، ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / have arranged / made arrangements / prepared / have

prepared / made preparations

e.g. : - He has arranged everything. He's spending the next summer holiday in Paris.

- لاحظ أنه إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتبطاً له :

e.g. : - I can't see you this evening. I'm doing my homework.

- لاحظ أن this evening تعبر عن وقت قادم.

٢ يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة اتخاذ خطوة تنفيذية :

e.g. : - Rodayna has bought some eggs, butter and flour. She is making a cake tomorrow.

- Mr Ali is flying to London next Monday. He has booked a ticket.

٣ لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

e.g. : - He's getting married next Friday.

- We're going back to the States in three years.

٤ لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي تقوم بها المؤسسات تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

e.g. : - Our school is taking part in the sports competition next year.

- This company is sending a delegation to the conference next week.

4 The Present Simple for the Future

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث مستقبلية طبقاً لجداول المواعيد الخاصة مثل وسائل المواصلات (الطائرات والسفن والأتوبيسات...) والمسرح والسينما والمدرسة (الحصص والامتحانات والدروس) والعمل (الحضور والانصراف...) والأفلام والبرامج والمباريات... إلخ.

e.g. : - His plane leaves at 7:15.

- The match starts at 9 sharp tomorrow.

- The launch of the spaceship is at 10 a.m. next Friday.

- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية :

مستقبل → حدث أول (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) After / As soon as / the moment

مستقبل → حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) = Before / When / By the time +

حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + till / until + حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى غالباً

e.g. : - Before Rokaya leaves the office, she will send some e-mails.

- After Rokaya sends the e-mails, she will leave the office.

- Rokaya won't leave the office until she sends the e-mails.

PART 1

5 The Future Continuous

زمن المستقبل المستمر

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمراً في وقت معين في المستقبل ويتكون من :

Subject + will / shall + be + inf. + ing ...

e.g. : - Ali : I'd like to invite you to my birthday party at five o'clock tomorrow.

- Ahmed : Sorry, I'll be helping my grandpa at the garage.

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمراً في المستقبل عندما سيقع حدث آخر :

e.g. : - We will be watching the football match when my father comes home from work.

يستخدم للتعبير عن خطط الآخرين (خاصة عندما نريد شيئاً من شخص) :

e.g. : - Will you be using your dictionary tomorrow ?

- No, you can borrow it.

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث من المرجح حدوثه في وقت معين في المستقبل :

e.g. : - I'll be staying up late tomorrow night preparing for the English exam.

6 The Future Perfect

زمن المستقبل التام

Subject + will have + P.P. يتكون المستقبل التام من :

Object + will have been + P.P. وفي حالة المبني للمجهول يتكون من :

e.g. : - By 2050, they will have replaced the old buildings by modern ones

- By 2050, the old buildings will have been replaced by modern ones

يبدل على أن حدث سيكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل.

يستخدم هذا الزمن عادة مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل مسبقة بحروف الجر (before/in/by) :

By (the year) 2050 / By tomorrow morning / by next June /

By next week / by next year / In three years' time /

by 7 o'clock tomorrow / by next Ramadan

e.g. : - They will have built the house by next month.

- My father will have arrived home before five o'clock.

- By this time next week, I will have heard my test results.

- يستخدم المستقبل التام أيضا للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل ، وهنا يتوقف استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام على المعنى :
- e.g. : - When mum **arrives** home, we **will have cleaned** our rooms.
(سيكون التنظيف قد تم قبل وصول الأم).
- e.g. : - When mum **arrives** home, we **will clean** our rooms.
(عند وصول الأم ، ستقوم بالتنظيف).

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

- ١ يمكن أن يُستخدم المستقبل التام وأزمنة المستقبل الأخرى مع تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحروف جر وظروف أخرى مثل :
- This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week etc.)
- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time.
- e.g. : - This time tomorrow, I **will have written** the reports.
(سأكون بالفعل قد كتبت التقارير).
- e.g. : - This time tomorrow, I **will be writing** the reports.
(سأكون مستمرا في كتابة التقارير).
- e.g. : - This time tomorrow, I **will write** the reports.
(سوف أقوم بكتابة التقارير).
- ٢ لاحظ أن الأساس في استخدام المستقبل التام أن يكون الحدث قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل كما في الأمثلة السابقة، أما في حالة عدم اكتمال الفعل فنستخدم المستقبل البسيط حتى في ظل وجود تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحرف الجر (by) :
- لاحظ المثال التالي :
- e.g. : - English **will be spoken** by half the world's population by 2050.
- في هذا المثال ، تحدث اللغة الإنجليزية من قبل نصف سكان العالم لن يتوقف عند هذا التاريخ ، بل سيكون أمر قائما و مستمرا.
- لاحظ أيضا المثال التالي :
- e.g. : - By 2040, people **will use** renewable sources of energy.
- في هذا المثال ، استخدام الطاقة المتجددة سيكون أمر قائما و قيد الاستخدام ، ولن يكون حدثا قد تم أو انتهى.

Test Yourself

☛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She this article in two hours' time tomorrow.
a. writes b. has been written
c. 'll be written d. will have written
2. By the end of this year, more houses will for young people and newly married couples.
a. be building b. have been built
c. have building d. build
3. I will my final exams by the time you receive my letter.
a. be finished b. have been finishing
c. have finished d. be finishing
4. In the future, solar energy in homes and in industry.
a. will use b. is used c. will have used d. will be used
5. They will by dinnertime.
a. have arrived b. have been arrived
c. arrive d. to have arrived
6. By 2025, the government will the problem of power shortage.
a. solve b. be solved
c. have been solved d. have solved
7. When will you all this work?
a. have been completed b. have completed
c. be completed d. have completing
8. More food to overcome the food crisis.
a. may produce b. will be produced
c. will produce d. shall be produced
9. I will all my pocket money by the end of the school trip.
a. have been spent b. have spent
c. be spent d. spent
10. Let's start tomorrow and the details later on.
a. will have discussed b. will be discussed
c. will discuss d. discuss
11. He won't work by seven.
a. be finished b. have been finished
c. have finished d. has finished

12. The drinks will already.
 a. have been ordered b. be ordering
 c. have ordered d. order
13. I expected that the prices will again.
 a. raise b. be raising c. have raised d. be raised
14. Surgeons will operations by using robots in the near future.
 a. perform b. have performed
 c. be performed d. have been performed
15. Most of the fruit on our farm will by the end of June.
 a. harvest b. have harvested
 c. have been harvested d. be harvested
16. He will his novel by the end of the month.
 a. publish b. be published
 c. have published d. have been published
17. He will her before the meeting.
 a. be rung b. have been rung
 c. have rung d. have been ringing
18. All Exams will electronic by 2025.
 a. make b. have made
 c. be made d. have been made
19. In four years' time, most of the old buildings will by modern offices.
 a. have been replaced b. have replaced
 c. be replacing d. replace
20. In the future, most of our energy will by wind power.
 a. have replaced b. have been replaced
 c. be replaced d. replace
21. We are saving up because we buy a car.
 a. will b. are going to c. would d. are going
22. My plane at ten o'clock.
 a. is going to leave b. leaves
 c. is leaving d. will be leaving
23. anything next Saturday?
 a. Will you be done b. Are you doing
 c. Do you do d. Have you done
24. Hi, Leen! My family me out today for passing my exams.
 a. takes b. are taking c. take d. will take

PART 1

25. I apply to study medicine at Assuit University. That's what I've just decided.
 a. am going to b. will c. would d. have
26. We need your help. do it for us?
 a. Are you going to b. Will you
 c. Do you d. Should you
27. I my next summer holiday in Australia. I have arranged everything.
 a. will spend b. am spending c. spend d. have spent
28. It is predicted that people on space holidays in the next ten years.
 a. are going b. are going to go
 c. will go d. will be going
29. A : Are you leaving this evening? B : Yes, my train
 at 7:15. I think so.
 a. is going to leave b. leaves
 c. will leave d. will be leaving
30. It is arranged .We the Red Sea this summer.
 a. will go b. are going to c. go d. have gone
31. I think my brother a doctor. He is very clever.
 a. will be b. is going to be c. is being d. would be
32. Mr Ahmed 40 next year.
 a. is b. will be c. is going to be d. is being
33. My English lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.
 That's what the timetable says.
 a. finishes b. finish
 c. will finish d. is going to finish
34. I I have arranged it with my boss.
 a. will leave b. am leaving
 c. am going to leave d. leave
35. If I wait for you any longer, I the train.
 a. will miss b. am missing
 c. miss d. am going to miss
36. I Tarek tonight. We have arranged that.
 a. visit b. am visiting c. will visit d. visits
37. As soon as I hear the news, I you.
 a. will tell b. am telling c. going to tell d. had told
38. Do you think we the match?
 a. are winning b. will win
 c. win d. are going to win

39. I don't have any plans, but I expect I some time with my friends.
 a. am going to spend b. spend
 c. will spend d. will be spending
40. My football team two players for next year. The two players signed the contract.
 a. is going to get b. are getting c. get d. will
41. I think the weather in England be cold and rainy.
 a. is going to b. will c. would d. shall
42. Omar looks exhausted. He
 a. is going to sleep b. will sleep
 c. sleeps d. would sleep
43. I to Moscow tomorrow. I've arranged it.
 a. am flying b. fly
 c. am going to fly d. will fly
44. He the children to the match tonight. He has booked 3 tickets.
 a. may drive b. shall drive c. drives d. is driving
45. There's not a cloud in the sky. It another very sunny day.
 a. will be b. is being c. shall be d. is going to be
46. I've decided what to do at the weekend. I my uncle.
 a. have visited b. will visit
 c. am visiting d. am going to visit
47. We to the Red Sea this summer. I've bought a guidebook.
 a. will go b. are going
 c. shall go d. have gone
48. The cup is on the edge of the table. It
 a. is falling b. has fallen c. is going to fall d. will be falling
49. She has already packed her luggage. She leave.
 a. is going to b. might c. will d. shall
50. you buy me some stamps, please?
 a. Might b. May c. Should d. Will
51. He to London tomorrow. He's got his ticket.
 a. will fly b. is going to fly c. flies d. is flying
52. The concert at 11 o'clock tonight. That's what the clerk says.
 a. starts b. will start c. is starting d. is going to start
53. A : The phone is ringing. B : I it.
 a. answer b. am answering
 c. will answer d. am going to answer
54. The forecast says it's be hot and sunny tomorrow.
 a. be going to b. going to c. will d. shall

A Linking words (Conjunctions)

1 Conjunctions that express contrast أدوات ربط تدل على التناقض

تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض ويتبع هذه الروابط جملة (فاعل + فعل ...).

although - though - even though - even if - but - yet - however + subject + verb

e.g. : - Although Sami is upset, he keeps smiling.

- Even if this car is expensive, I am going to buy it.

- Ali was born in London, yet he can't speak English well.

- It is hot. However, I won't turn the fan on.

تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض. ويتبع هذه الروابط (noun or gerund):

In spite of - Despite - Regardless of + (gerund or noun)

e.g. : - In spite of her old age, she isn't married yet.

- Regardless of his wealth, he isn't satisfied with his life.

- Despite being wealthy, he isn't satisfied with his life.

لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (Whatever, However) في بداية الجملة كالتالي :

However + ظرف / صفة + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - However tall he is, he can't play basketball.

- However hard he works, he doesn't get a promotion.

Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - Whatever the wealth he has, he is sad.

لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (as) كالتالي :

as + ظرف / صفة + فاعل + فعل + ...

e.g. : - Short as he is, he can jump so high.

- Well as he plays, he doesn't win the match.

In spite of
Despite

+ the fact that + subject + فعل + verb ...

- لاحظ أن التركيبة السابقة يتبعها جملة كاملة :

e.g. : - Despite the fact that he is ill, he can work hard.

2 Conjunctions that express cause روابط تدل على السبب

١ للتعبير عن السبب نستخدم الروابط التالية ويتبعها جملة (فاعل + فعل + ...) :

(because - as - since) + subject + verb

e.g. : - She won the competition because
as
since she worked hard.

- Because
As
Since Soha has a heart problem, she can't do sport.

٢ للتعبير عن السبب نستخدم الروابط التالية ويتبعها (noun أو gerund) :

because of - due to - owing to - on account of -
thanks to - through - for بسبب + noun / (inf. + ing)

e.g. : - My grandpa died due to a heart attack.

- Owing to his intelligence, he can do any difficult sum.

- Because of being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (Being + adj.) بمعنى (كونه / كونها / كونهم) للتعبير عن السبب :

e.g. : - Being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أن هذه التعبيرات يمكن أن يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة :

- Because of
Owing to
Due to
Thanks to
On account of the fact that + subject + verb

e.g. : - The teacher punished him because of being rude / because of the fact that he was rude.

3 Conjunctions that express result روابط تدل على النتيجة

- تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على النتيجة :

so - that is why - therefore - consequently - As a result of - Hence - thus

e.g. : - He was wet **so** he had a severe cold.

- Nada was born with a phobia of dogs **therefore** she can't stand seeing a dog in the street.

- كذلك يمكن استخدام جملة **so (adj. / adv.) that** للتعبير عن النتيجة : **such (adj. + noun) that**

e.g. : - The book was **so** successful **that** it was sold like sweet.

- It was **such** a successful book **that** it was sold like sweet.

4 Conjunctions that express time روابط زمنية تدل على الزمن / الوقت

- تستخدم الروابط الزمنية التالية لتدل على علاقة زمنية بين حدثين ويأتي بعدها جملة (فاعل + فعل) :

When - While - As (Just as) - After - Before
- By the time - till - until - As soon as

e.g. : - **While** it was raining, I fell down.

- **After** the train had left, Sally arrived at the station.

- **By the time** he got the prize, he had expected it.

- She didn't do the shopping **till** she had had her salary.

- We won't leave home **until** we have permission.

- **As soon as** Ali arrives, we will leave.

- لاحظ العلاقة بين الحدثين في الجمل السابقة.

- لاحظ أنه عند حذف الفاعل يستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد بعض هذه الروابط :

e.g. : - **While** raining, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام (During) بدلاً من (While) ويتبعها (noun) :

e.g. : - I fell asleep **during** the film.

- لاحظ أنه تستخدم (On) بمعنى (When) ويتبعها (inf. + ing) أو (noun).

e.g. : - When she got the prize, she felt extremely excited.

- On getting the prize, she felt extremely excited.

- On his arrival, we started the party.

- يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (When) :

e.g. : - When reading the new novel written by Tom, he felt shocked.

5 Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

• If $\xrightarrow{\text{Present Simple}}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{Present Simple}}$ (Zero conditional)
 زمن المضارع البسيط زمن المضارع البسيط

e.g. : - If you **put** wood in water, it **floats**.

• If $\xrightarrow{\text{Present Simple}}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{will + inf.}}$ (First conditional)
 زمن المضارع البسيط زمن المستقبل البسيط

e.g. : - If I **remember** her address, I **will tell** you.

• If $\xrightarrow{\text{Past Simple}}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{would + inf.}}$ (Second conditional)
 زمن الماضي البسيط could / might + inf.

e.g. : If I **lost** Ahmed's CD, I **would buy** him another one.

• If $\xrightarrow{\text{Past perfect}}$ $\xrightarrow{\text{would have + p.p.}}$ (Third conditional)
 زمن الماضي التام could / might + have + p.p.

e.g. : If I **had been** more careful, I **wouldn't have lost** my book.

- يمكن استخدام "Were" مكان "If" في الحالة الثانية :

- If she **were** a tour guide, she **would tell** him about the monuments.

Were she a tour guide, she **would tell** him about the monuments.

- If he **played** well, he **would win** the game.

Were he to play well, he **would win** the game.

- يمكن استخدام (In case of) مكان (If) في الاثبات ويأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : If Ali **worked** hard, he **wouldn't be fired** من العمل.

In case of **working** hard, Ali **wouldn't be fired**.

PART 1

يمكن استخدام (But for / Without) مكان (If) فى النفي أو بدلاً من (Unless) ويأتى بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : - If Samia **didn't** eat vegetables, she **wouldn't** be healthy.
Without eating vegetables, Samia **wouldn't** be healthy.

6 Conjunctions that express purpose روابط تعبر عن الغرض

① Subject + present → so that
in order that
in the hope that من أجل / لى
+ can / will / may + inf. + فاعل

e.g. : - We **save** money in the hope that we **will** buy a car.

② Subject + past → so that
in order that
in the hope that + could / would / might + inf. + فاعل

e.g. : - Ali **went** to the market so that he **could** buy some vegetables.

③ Subject + verb + to / so as to / in order to + inf. المصدر لى

e.g. : - She **went** there in order to **enjoy** the fine weather.

- I **study** hard to **reach** my goal.

④ Subject + verb + in order not to / so as not to + inf. لى لا

e.g. : - I **go** to bed early in order not to **be** late for school.

⑤ Subject + verb + in the hope of + inf. + ing

e.g. : - I **went** home quickly in the hope of **laying** with my children before they slept.

⑥ Subject + verb + lest + inf. / should + inf. أن خشية + فاعل

e.g. : - She **turned** away from the window lest any one **see** / should see her.

7 Conjunctions that express addition روابط العطف والإضافة

① and تُستخدم "and" لربط جملتين بإضافة شئ إلى شئ آخر (تربط بين جملتين)

e.g. : - We **played** tennis and **went** home.

- Ahmed is **studying** and Rodayna is **cooking**.

2 Besides + noun or (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - Besides doing homework, she helped her mother.

- She helped her mother besides doing homework.

: Besides that + subject فاعل + inf. (جملة) بالإضافة إلى ذلك

e.g. : - She did her homework. Besides that she helped her mother.

3 in addition to + noun / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - In addition to doing homework, she helped her mother.

- She helped her mother in addition to doing homework.

4 In addition + جملة بالإضافة إلى ذلك

- تُستخدم in addition في أول الجملة أو في وسطها :

e.g. : - In addition she did homework, she helped her mother.

- She did homework . In addition, she helped her mother.

5 As well as + (inf. + ing). إذا كان فاعل الجملتين واحد بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - We went to the market. We went to the zoo.

- As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.

- إذا كان الفاعلان مختلفين بالجملتين فإن الفعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى في حالة الربط بـ as well as كالآتي :

فعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى ... + فاعل ثاني + as well as + فاعل أول

e.g. : - I as well as Ali have a car.

- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

6 not only but also (as well) ليس هذا فقط ولكن أيضًا

e.g. : - She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.

- She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.

- لاحظ : عند استخدام Not only في بداية الجملة نستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Not only did she arrive late, but she also forgot her books.

7 Both and

كلًا من

e.g. : - Mr. Ahmed is a doctor. His wife is a doctor.

- Both Mr. Ahmed and his wife are doctors.

- لاحظ : عند الربط بـ both and يكون الفعل فى حالة الجمع

بأنى بعد "Both of" ضمير مفعول جمع (you , us , them) ويمكن استخدامه كفاعل أو مفعول للجملة :

e.g. : - Both of the girls are polite.

- My aunt visited both of us yesterday.

8 Neither nor

لا ولا

- تُستخدم neither ... nor لربط جملتين فى حالة النفي :

e.g. : - Rodayna isn't at home. Her brother isn't at home.

- Neither Rodayna nor her brother is at home.

- لاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى كالاتى :

e.g. : - Malak isn't lazy. Her sisters aren't lazy.

- Neither Malak nor her sisters are lazy.

- عند استخدام Neither فى أول الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل :

e.g. : - I neither watched nor tried to watch the film.

- Neither did I watch nor tried to watch the film.

Test Yourself

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Lemuel Gulliver was travelling at sea, there was a storm.

a. Although b. If c. Because d. While

2. They were accused of stealing money they were innocent.

a. despite b. although c. in spite of d. as

3. He failed the exam his intelligence.

a. although b. however c. despite d. even though

4. Cheap the car was, I refused to buy it.

a. however b. despite c. though d. as

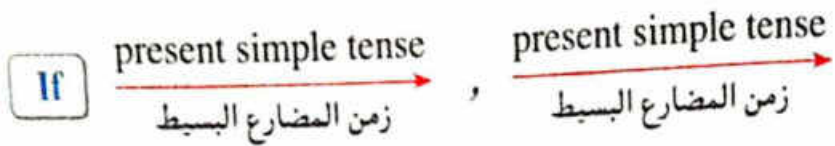
5. They couldn't continue the race the bad storm.
 a. owing to b. because c. since d. as
6. He'd like to join the sports club he can get fit.
 a. so as to b. as c. so that d. in order
7. We visited Ahmed yesterday congratulate him on his success.
 a. so that b. in order to c. so as d. because
8. did he get full marks but he was chosen as the ideal student as well.
 a. As well as b. Not only c. Beside d. In addition to
9. he was in debt, we decided to help him.
 a. Since b. Because of c. Owing to d. In spite of
10. cleaning the house, she did the shopping.
 a. In addition b. As well as c. However d. Also
11. you say, I'll never believe you.
 a. Despite b. However c. Whatever d. In spite
12. swimming makes me fit, I don't like it.
 a. Although b. Despite c. In spite d. Because
13. I, as well as my friend, to leave at once.
 a. am b. is c. are d. were
14. Not only my brothers but also my sister going to Alexandria.
 a. are b. is c. were d. have been
15. Neither the library nor the bookshops that book.
 a. has b. have c. is having d. are having

B Conditionals الجمل الشرطية



1 Zero conditional clause with "if" الحالة الصفرية

Formation : التكوين



Usage : الاستخدام

- نستخدم هذه الحالة عند الكلام عن الحقائق العلمية والظواهر الطبيعية والفلكية والتجارب المعملية والكلام عن النظريات الهندسية والكلام المنطقي :

- e.g. : - If we freeze water , it turns into ice.
 - If you don't water flowers , they fade.
 - If you heat ice , it melts.
 - If we mix red and yellow, we get orange.
 - If people don't get enough food, they become ill.
 - I get a headache if I stay too long on the computer.

- نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتعبير عن عادات عامة وحقائق ولا بد ان تكون الحقيقة عامة وليست شىء خاص، وإذا كان شىء خاص نستخدم الحالة الأولى:
 ويمكن معرفة الشىء الخاص بالآتي :

1 استخدام صفة اشارة (this / that / these / those) قبل الفاعل أو المفعول :

- e.g. : - If goats eat the bark on a tree, the tree dies. (حقيقة عامة)
 - If those goats eat the bark on a tree, the tree will die. (حقيقة خاصة)

2 استخدام صفة ملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their / 's ...) لتحديد معنى خاص :

- e.g. : - If the plants on our farm get very thirsty, we will irrigate them.

3 اقتران أو ارتباط حدوث الفعل بمكان محدد أو بتوقيت محدد :

- e.g. : - Streets will become wet if it rains tonight.

- يمكن استخدام (When) بدلاً من (If) فى الحالة الصفرية :

- e.g. : - When you heat ice, it melts.
 - Streets become wet when it rains.

2 First conditional clause with "if"

Formation : التكوين

If present simple tense → , will / shall / can / may / must / should + inf.
إذا/لو زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage : الاستخدام

- تعبر هذه الحالة عن امكانية حدوث شئ في المستقبل إذا تحقق شرط حدوثه.

- e.g. : - If we **take** a taxi, we'll **get** there in time.
- You'll **catch** a disease if you **swim** in the canal.
- If Ali **buys** a new car, he'll **give** me a lift.

حذف أداة الشرط (If) في الحالة الاولى

- يمكن استخدام (should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الاولى كالتالي :

Should + subject + inf. , will + inf.

- e.g. : - If she **studies** hard, she **will** pass the test.
- لاحظ وضع فعل الشرط في المصدر (study) لأن (should) يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل دائما :
e.g. : - **Should** she **study** hard, she **will** pass the test.
- لاحظ إذا كان جواب الشرط جملة أمرية :
e.g. : - If you don't have a solution, call me.

3 The second conditional clause with "if"

Formation : التكوين

If past simple tense → would / 'd + inf. مصدر الفعل
إذا/لو زمن الماضي البسيط → could / might + inf. مصدر الفعل

Usage : الاستخدام

- تستخدم حالة (If) الشرطية الثانية للتعبير عن حدث غير محتمل وقوعه في المضارع أو المستقبل :
e.g. : - If you **worked** harder, you **would** get higher marks.
- I **would** visit my friends in Kuwait if I **had** more time.

نستخدم (were) مع الضمائر المفردة والجمع في حالة استحالة تحقيق جواب الشرط :

e.g. : - If I were ten years younger, I'd go cycling.

- If he were a bird, he would fly.

- If she were rich, she would help the poor.

نستخدم حالة (If) الشرطية الثانية لإعطاء النصيحة :

e.g. : - If I were you, I would be more tolerant.

- If I were you, I wouldn't make any mistakes.

حذف أداة الشرط (If) في الحالة الثانية

① نستخدم (Were) مكان (If) إذا كانت فعل اساسي في الجملة :

Were + فاعل +

e.g. : - If she were a doctor, she would save his life.

- Were she a doctor, she would save his life.

② نستخدم (Were + فاعل + to + inf.) في حالة وجود فعل اساسي آخر :

e.g. : - If he drank bad juice, he might be ill.

- Were he to drink bad juice, he might be ill.

③ يمكن استخدام (Had) محل (If) في الحالة الثانية إذا كانت فعل اساسي :

Had + فاعل +

e.g. : - If I had enough money, I would live in a villa.

- Had I enough money, I would live in a villa.

4 The third conditional clause with "if"

التكوين : Formation

If $\xrightarrow[\text{ماضي تام}]{\text{Past perfect}}$, + ... would have + P.P.

... would have + P.P. + if + $\xrightarrow{\text{Past perfect}}$
جملة ماضى تام

- e.g. : - If I **had studied** harder, I **would have passed** the exam.
- We **wouldn't have missed** the plane if we **had taken** a taxi.

الاستخدام : Usage

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن شيء في الماضي لم يحدث لعدم توفر شرط حدوثه في الماضي أو العكس و تعبر عن الانتقاد أو الندم لأن الحدث لا يمكن التعديل فيه.

- e.g. : - If she **had studied** hard, she **would have passed** the exam.

(Criticism)

- If I **hadn't eaten** so much, I **wouldn't have felt** sick. (Regret)

حذف أداة الشرط (If) في الحالة الثالثة

- تحل Had محل If في الحالة الثالثة ويلبها الفاعل و تصرف ثالث :

- e.g. : - If he **had left** the house at nine, he **would have been** on time for the interview.
- **Had he left** the house at nine, he **would have been** on time for the interview.

بدائل أداة الشرط (IF)

أولا : يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (if) ويلبها جملة مع مراعاة معنى كل أداة :

only if / بشرط أن (that) providing / في حالة (in case) / فقط لو (only if)
حتى لو (even if) / بشرط أن (that) on condition / طالما (As long as) - بشرط أن

- e.g. : - I'll attend the party **provided that** he invites me.

- I'll lend you the money **as long as** you promise to pay it back soon.
- He will travel abroad **in case** he gets the passport.
- She will pass the test **only if** she studies hard.
- She would **only** pass the test if she studied hard.

أيضا : يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (If) في جميع الحالات يليها (noun / inf. + ing) :
 (noun/ inf. + ing) + (في حالة النفي) / But for / By / With / في حالة In case of

e.g. : - In case of getting his passport, he will travel abroad.

- She will pass the test with / by studying hard.

إذا لم / لو لم (Unless)

Unless = Except if = If not + جملة

e.g. : - You will be late if you don't hurry. = You will be late unless you hurry.

= You will be late except if you hurry.

- يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (unless) يليها (noun / inf. + ing) :

Without (But for) + (noun/ inf. + ing)

e.g. : - Without (But for) hurrying, you will be late.

- يمكن ان تكون جملة (if) ماضي تام مستمر / ماضي مستمر :

e.g. : - If Ahmed hadn't been working hard, he wouldn't have achieved such a success.

- If she was coming, she'd be here by now.

Test Yourself

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Take these tools with you your car breaks down.

a. without b. unless c. in case of d. in case

2. my help, he will pay back all his debts.

a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless

3. If the book was cheap, I buy it.

a. will b. would c. can d. may

4. If Hisham with us, he would have a good time.
a. would come b. had come
c. would have come d. came
5. today, he would get there by Thursday.
a. Would he leave b. Were he to leave
c. If he leaves d. Was he leaving
6. I would have attended the meeting if I time.
a. had had b. would have had
c. have had d. had
7. Adel hadn't lived in China, he wouldn't have learned to speak Chinese.
a. Unless b. Without c. In case of d. If
8. If I to bring my mobile phone, I would borrow my brother's.
a. forget b. forgot c. had forgotten d. forgets
9. Wood floats if it on water.
a. put b. puts c. is put d. will put
10. He wouldn't take a taxi if someone for him at the airport.
a. had waited b. waited c. has waited d. waiting
11. If they by car, the journey would have taken much longer.
a. have gone b. has gone c. had gone d. went
12. What do if you passed the exam ?
a. you would b. would you c. will you d. you will
13. If you difficulty understanding the instructions, call me.
a. have b. had had c. had d. has
14. If my watch been right, I wouldn't have been late.
a. had b. has c. hasn't d. hadn't
15. He would have visited Aswan if he my address.
a. would have know b. would know
c. know d. had known
16. If Sameh hadn't visited Aswan, he the High Dam.
a. wouldn't see b. wouldn't have seen
c. will see d. would have seen

PART 1

17. You would have a good health if you a balanced diet.
a. eat b. had eaten c. have eaten d. ate
18. If Shakespeare had stayed in Stratford, he would probably
a glove maker.
a. became b. have become c. has become d. becomes
19. If I enough money, I'd buy a second-hand car.
a. have b. had c. had had d. would have

C Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

1 who / which / whom / that الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي

• **نُشير (who / that)** الي فاعل عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل في الجملة الموصولة:

- e.g. : - I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.

- Teachers are people who / that work at schools.

• **تُشير (who / whom / that)** الى مفعول عاقل في حالة المبني للمعلوم ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفهم:

- e.g. :- The man who / whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

= The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

- تُشير (which / that) الى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل:

- e.g. : - The dog **which/ that** chased me belongs to my neighbours.

- تَـشِير (which / that) الى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما:

- e.g. : - The car **which/ that** I bought has a problem with the engine.

- The car I bought has a problem with the engine.

لا تستخدم (that) في الجمل الاعتراضية - أي بعد الفاصلة التحتية (,) :

- e.g. :** - Ismail Yassen, **who is** still a famous actor, died in 1970s. (Not: that is....)

- Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is...)

بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :

أ. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما في نهاية الجملة الموصولة :

e.g. : - This is my friend **who** I play tennis with. (Not: with who....)

- This is the motorbike **that** I go to school on. (Not: on that....)

ب. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

e.g. : - This is my friend **whom** I play tennis **with**.

= This is my friend **with whom** I play tennis.

- This is the motorbike **which** I go to school on.

= This is the motorbike **on which** I go to school.

2 where حيث / حيثما / المكان الذي

١ تعود على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل :

e.g. : - This is the room **where** I sleep.

- She went to Cairo University **where** she studied Arabic language.

٢ لاحظ أن :

- where = (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + which) / (which + ... حرف جر مناسب للمكان)

e.g. : - This is the room **where** I sleep.

= This is the room **in which** I sleep.

= This is the room **which** I sleep **in**.

٣ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجملة الوصل

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين :

e.g. : - This is the house **where** we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)

- This is the house **which** we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

e.g. : - I went to the room **in which** I sleep. (Not: the room **in where**)

- I went to the room **which** I sleep **in**. (Not: the room **where** in)

PART 1

3 when حين / حينها / عندما / الوقت

نشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل :

e.g. : - 2012 is the year when Rodayna was born.

- Friday is the day when we don't go to school.
- Two o'clock is the time when I return home from school.
- when = حرف مناسب للتعبير الزمني (which + ...)
- 2012 is the year in which Rodayna was born.
- = - 2012 is the year which Rodayna was born in.
- Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.
- = - Friday is the day which we don't go to school on.
- Two o'clock is the time at which I get up.
- = - Two o'clock is the time which I get up at.

يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجمله الوصل :

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين :

e.g. : - August is the month when we go to Alexandria.

= We go to Alexandria in August.

- August is the month which we spend in Alexandria.

= We spend August in Alexandria.

لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when) :

e.g. : - Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not : the day on when ...)

- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (Not : the day when ... on)

4 whose = (Nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل) :

e.g. : - I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.

- She lives in a house whose roof is high.

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

❶ لا يتم ذكر ضمير يعود على الاسم الذي يشير إليه ضمير الوصل :

- e.g. : - This is my friend who I go to school with him. (X)
 - This is my friend who I go to school with. (✓)
 - I go to a secondary school where I am a student there. (X)
 - I go to a secondary school where I am a student. (✓)
 - This is the villa which my uncle bought it. (X)
 - This is the villa which my uncle bought. (✓)

❷ يتم حذف كل من (who - which - whom) عندما يحلون محل مفعول (اي إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

- e.g. : - This is the woman who I helped.
 = This is the woman I helped.

❸ هناك نوعان من جمل الوصل :

أ. تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه وفي هذا النوع لا نستخدم (.) :

- e.g. : - The man who /that lives next door works in a bank.

ب. لا تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه بل تعطي معلومة شائعة وفي هذا النوع نستخدم (.) :

- e.g. : - Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is where I was born.

Notes for advanced level

ملاحظات للمتفوقين

❶ يمكن حذف كل من (who - which - that) في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا جاء بعدهم زمن مستمر وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقى (inf.+ing) :

- e.g. : - The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son.

= The boy wearing a red shirt is my son.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنية للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و (be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل :

- e.g. : - The criminal who was arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

- The criminal arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

PART 1

يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلاً من عبارة الوصل إذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل :

The first / the second /the last/the only.....

e.g. : - I was the first person who left the ship.

= I was the first person to leave the ship.

يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلاً من عبارة الوصل للدلالة على الغرض مثل :

e.g. : - He has some books that he wants to read.

= He has some books to read.

يمكن أن يأتي فعل بعد (whom) إذا جاء قبلها أحد التعبيرات الآتية :

all of, most of, none of, both of, neither of, either of, any of, one of, some of, many of, much of.....

e.g. : - The house was full of boys, ten of whom were my cousins.

Test Yourself

✳ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I finally reached the café, I usually meet friends.

- a. who b. where c. that d. which

2. I thought that the woman in blue is the secretary I was waiting for

- a. whom b. whose c. where d. which

3. I feel relaxed in my bedroom I sleep, use my computer and study my lessons.

- a. where b. which c. when d. there

4. The Eastern Desert , is very dry, has very little wildlife.

- a. where b. when c. who d. which

5. Dr Zewail, discovered the femtosecond, was born in Egypt.

- a. whom b. whose c. who d. which

6. Lake Nasser, was formed behind the High Dam, is the largest man-made lake.
 a. where b. whom c. that d. which
7. My uncle, is a pilot, lives in Cairo very near to the airport.
 a. who b. whom c. that d. which
8. Mr Fathy Zaki, works as an inspector of English, lives in Edfu.
 a. who b. whom c. that d. which
9. The young man lives next door wants to marry my sister.
 a. whose b. whom c. that d. which
10. A florist is someone sells flowers.
 a. whom b. who c. when d. whose
11. Could you show me the photos you took yesterday?
 a. whom b. who c. when d. no pronoun
12. Uncle Omar, is a father of three sons, is a greengrocer.
 a. that b. who c. when d. whom
13. The gentleman I met yesterday is a successful businessman.
 a. whom b. whose c. when d. which
14. The cafeteria I have my drinks on is at the corner of a quiet street.
 a. where b. which c. when d. no pronoun
15. The person I really enjoy talking to is my grandfather.
 a. whose b. who's c. which d. no pronoun
16. Armstrong was the first on the moon.
 a. walking b. to walk
 c. man he walked d. one walked
17. A new tower was built next to the house I was born.
 a. in where b. in which c. when d. whose
18. Will you lend me the DVD you bought last week?
 a. in which b. whose c. when d. no pronoun
19. The watch I have bought is very expensive.
 a. where b. who c. that d. at which
20. This is the photo shows the location of our new house clearly.
 a. who b. whom c. that d. where

PART 2

المهارات Skills



Contents :

1. Reading Skill
2. Writing Skill
3. Translation

١. مهارة القراءة

٢. مهارة الكتابة

٣. الترجمة

1

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

How to answer a comprehension :

- كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :
قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة (تبدأ بأدوات استفهام) :
لا بد أن تلمس أسئلة قطعة الفهم السهات التالية :

1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Topic الموضوع

• The topic / main idea of the passage is

= The text is mainly about

- موضوع النص هو / الفكرة الرئيسية للنص هي

= What is the topic / main idea of the passage?

= ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية؟

• Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

- أي من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ؟

Source المصدر

• This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from

- هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من

Title العنوان

• Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?

- أي مما يلي يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس؟

- The underlined word / pronoun refers to

المفسر الذي تحته خط يشير إلى

2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

المعنى مفردة لغوية في النص

مع كثرة الأمثلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Synonym المعنى / المرادف

- In line the word is closest in meaning to
..... أقرب ما يكون في المعنى لـ كلمة
.....
- The underlined word gives the meaning of
..... تعطي معنى
.....
- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to ?
..... ما يلي مرادف في المعنى لـ ؟
- The word in the passage gives the synonym of
..... في النص تعطي مرادف
.....

Antonym التضاد / العكس

- In the paragraph, the word is the antonym of
..... الكلمة مضاد لـ
.....
- The word in the passage gives the opposite of
..... في النص تعطي عكس
.....
- Which of the following gives the antonym of ?
..... ما يلي مضاد في المعنى لـ ؟
- The word has two meanings in the passage. Explain.
..... لها معنيين في النص. وضح.

3 Understanding details and extracting information

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Yes / No questions
Wh-questions

- أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد

- أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

- أدوات وتعبيرات استفهامية هامة :

about whom	عن من	since when	منذ متى
for how long	لكم من الوقت	to what extent	إلى أى مدى
for whom	لأجل من	to whom	إلى من
from where	من أين	what	ما / ماذا
how	كيف	what ... for = for what	لماذا
how come	لماذا	what colour	ما لون
how far	كم بعد / لأى مدى	what size	ما حجم
how high	كم ارتفاع	what time	ما وقت
how long	كم طول المدة / المسافة	when	متى
how many	كم عدد	where	أين
how many times	كم مرة	where ... to	إلى أين
how much	كم كمية / كم ثمن	which	أي
how often	كم مرة	who	من (فاعل أو مفعول عاقل)
how old	كم عمر	whom	من (مفعول عاقل)
how tall	كم طول	whose	لمن / ملك من
in / at which	فى أي	why	لماذا
in what way	بأي طريقة	with whom	مع من

True / Correct صحيح

- According to the passage, all of the following is true EXCEPT
سب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا
- Based on the passage, which of the following is true about?
سب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ صحيحاً فيما يخص؟

False / incorrect خاطئ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT
سب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي خطأ ما عدا
- Based on the passage, what is probably untrue about?
سب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ غير صحيح فيما يخص؟

4 Critical Thinking Skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

عن أسئلة التفكير النقدي المرتبطة بقطع الفهم :

تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأي / وجهة نظر القارئ.

لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.

لا بد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدي كما يلي :

١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال.
٢. منطقية أو عقلانية.
٣. صحيحة من الناحية اللغوية.

نماذج من أسئلة التفكير النقدي :

تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الرأي الشخصي للطلاب بخصوص الكاتب أو الأفكار الموجودة بالنص مثل :

- Do you think this passage was written by a young man or an old person?
What showed this to you?

هل تظن أن كاتب هذا النص شاب أم شخص كبير في السن؟ ما الذي أوحى إليك بذلك؟

- What job do you think the writer of this passage is? How do you know?

في رأيك، ما وظيفة كاتب هذا النص؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

٢ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على قياس القدرة على التعبير عن اتفاق أو اختلاف مع ما ورد في النص مع ذكر السبب :

• Do you agree with the ideas the writer has introduced / raised? Why / Why not?

- هل تتفق مع الأفكار التي طرحها الكاتب؟ لم / لم لا؟

• Does the writer's idea make sense to you? Why / Why not?

- هل فكرة الكاتب مفهومة لديك؟ لم / لم لا؟

٣ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على طلب أمثلة من عند الطالب لإثبات صحة أو خطأ ما ورد بالنص :

• What do you think of what the writer has said? Give examples of your own that can prove / disprove that.

- ما رأيك فيما قاله الكاتب؟ اذكر أمثلة من عندك تثبت صحة أو خطأ ذلك.

• How would you put into your own words?

- كيف يمكنك صياغة بأسلوبك؟

• What do you think would be an example of ?

- ماذا تعتقد أنه مثلاً لـ ؟

= Give an example of = Illustrate

- اذكر مثلاً لـ / وضح

٤ تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على أن يفترض الطالب أنه في موقف معين وكيف سيكون رد فعله :

• If you were the writer, would you have the same point of view? Give your reason(s).

- لو كنت مكان الكاتب، هل كنت ستبني نفس الرأي؟ اذكر السبب / الأسباب.

• What would you (do) if you were in the writer's position? Explain why.

- ما الذي كنت (ستفعله) لو أنك في مكان الكاتب؟ وضح السبب.

• If hadn't, what do you think would have happened?

- لو لم يكن ، ماذا تعتقد كان سيحدث ؟

تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تقييم عرض الكاتب للموضوع وهل هو مناسب أم لا :

- Has the writer succeeded in making his ideas clear? Explain your opinion in detail.
- Is the writer's style suitable for the topic? How did he develop his ideas in detail.

تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تخيل ردود أفعال فئات معينة من الناس تجاه الأفكار الواردة بالنص :

- How do you think poor people / patients would view these? Illustrate.
- How would people who differ in age or gender react to? Illustrate.

تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على التعبير عن المغزى أو الدروس المستفادة أو القيم الموجودة بالنص :

- How can you make use of (benefit from)?
- How could be put into practice?
- What is the moral of the story?

المغزى الأخلاقي للقصة؟

Vocabulary used in Reading comprehension questions :

مفردات شائعة الاستخدام في الأسئلة المرتبطة بفهم الفهم

- لابد من مراجعة المفردات التالية، فستساعدك على فهم الأسئلة الواردة على نص القراءة :

abbreviation	اختصار	lead to	يؤدي إلى
according to	طبقاً لـ	lesson	درس
advantages	مزايا	line	سطر
analyse	يحلل	main idea	فكرة رئيسية
analysis	تحليل	make a comment	يعلق
antonym	مضاد / عكس	make clear	بوضح
apply to	ينطبق على	meaning	معنى
article	مقال	mention	يذكر
author	مؤلف	merits = advantages	مزايا
back with evidence	بدعم بالدليل	moral	مغزى أخلاقي
based on	قائم على	moralities	قيم أخلاقية
be against	يعارض	opinion	رأي
be for	يؤيد	opposite	عكس
bold	بارز	other than	بخلاف / غير ذلك
case	قضية	paragraph	فقرة
choice	اختيار	paraphrase	يعيد صياغة
claim	يدعى / يزعم	passage	قطعة القراءة
classification	تصنيف	perspective	منظور
classify	يُصنّف	point of view	رأي / وجهة نظر
comment	يعلق / تعليق	practical	عملي

core	جوهر / لب	predict
demerits = disadvantages	عيوب	principle
discuss	مناقشة	pros and cons
effect	أثر / تأثير	quality
equal	مساوي	rather than
equivalent	مرادف	reject
essay	مقال	result in
essence	جوهر / لب	short for
example	مثال	simplify
explain	يشرح / يفسر	state
express	يعبر عن	summarise
extra	إضافي / آخر	support
impact	انطباع / أثر	synonym
impression	انطباع / تأثير	underlined
introduce	يُطرح / يقدم	value
		writer

Read and learn

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A All the different plants and animals in a natural community are in a state of balance. This balance is achieved by the plants and animals interacting with each other and with their non-living surrounding.

An example of a natural community is woodland, and woodland is usually dominated by a particular species but there are also many other plants.

The plants of a community are the producers : they use carbon dioxide, oxygen, water and nitrogen to build up their tissues using energy in the form of sunlight. The plant tissues form food for the plant eating animals (herbivores) which are in turn eaten by the flesh-eating animals (carnivores). Thus, plants produce the basic food supply for all animals of the community. The animals themselves are the consumers, and are either herbivores or carnivores in a woodland community.

Examples of herbivores in a woodland community are rabbits, deer, mice, and snails, and insects, such as aphids and caterpillars. The herbivores are sometimes eaten by the carnivores. Woodland carnivores are of all sizes.

Some carnivores feed on herbivores and some feed on the smaller carnivores, while some feed on both : a tawny owl will eat beetles and shrews as well as voles and mice. These food relationships between the different members of the community are known as food chains or food webs. All food chains start with plants. The links of the chains are formed by the herbivores that eat the plants and the carnivores that feed on the herbivores. There are some organisms at the base of a food chain than at the top : for example, there are many more green plants than carnivores in a community.

Another important section of the community is made up of the decomposers. They include the bacteria and fungi that live in the soil and feed on dead animals and plants. By doing this, they break down the tissues of the dead organisms and release mineral salts into the soil.

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Decomposers soil for plants.
a. disturb b. enrich c. kill d. spoil
- The sun is nutrition in plants.
a. catalyst b. an element
c. responsible for d. secondary for
- According to the passage, a natural community comprises
a. living organisms b. non-living organisms
c. neither of them d. both of them

المعنى مفردة لغوية في النص

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

4. The underlined word "caterpillars" in the passage is similar to
- a. forests b. mice c. moth d. snails

مهارة التفكير النقدي

Critical thinking skill

B. Answer the following questions :

5. According to the passage what do you think the writer's message is?
- Man should interact with the elements of nature to benefit them not to damage them.
6. In your opinion, what are the three components of a food chain mentioned in the passage ?
- Plants, herbivores & carnivores.
7. From your view point, what is meant by the balance in the passage ?
- There should be a balance between plants (producers), herbivores and carnivores (consumers).

B How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometers from Earth ? And how would you feel if you had been told that you could never return ?

That is what is planned for people who are going on the Mars one mission in 2031. Surprisingly, 200000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they will not see earth again.

The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from the first Europeans who went to America, or thousands of people who have left their countries because of war or diseases. They also knew that their new lives would be difficult and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have been chosen to receive special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get the people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they can expect on Mars.

The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space. A special settlement will be built on Mars where food will be

be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life. There will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, it is an adventure they can not refuse.

Understanding details & extracting information

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The number of people who will be made ready through training is
- a. a thousand people b. less than a thousand people
c. two hundred thousand people d. less than ten people

Understanding the main idea

2. The main idea of the passage is
- a. One day we will all live on Mars
b. Life on Mars will be very difficult
c. The people who will go to Mars will be famous
d. Life on Mars will be impossible

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

3. The underlined word "settlement" means
- a. a farm b. a place where a group of people live
c. a factory d. a rocket

Understanding details & extracting information

4. The thing that made those who sent applications want to travel to Mars is that
- a. they want to know if they can survive there
b. they want to see the dust storms
c. scientists made them go there d. they don't like Earth

Critical thinking skill

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What do you think the qualities of people who wanted to travel to Mars ?

I think they should be adventurous and brave.

PART 2

6. How would you feel if someone told you that you will never return to the Earth? Why would you have such a feeling?
It's a terrible feeling to know that you will never see your family or friends again.
7. What difficulties do you think will be found on Mars?
On Mars, there will be very little water. People who will go there will have to grow their own food. Mars is known for its giant dust storms.
8. Why do you think people want to go into space despite the difficulties?
Because it is a real adventure they can not refuse.

Practise by yourself / تدرّب بنفسك

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- 1 There is a common expression in the English language referring to a blue moon. When people say that something happens "**only once in a blue moon**," they mean that it happens only very rarely, one in a great while. This expression has been around for at least a century and a half; there are references to this expression that date from the second half of the nineteenth century.

The expression "a blue moon" has come to refer to the second full moon occurring in any given calendar month. A second full moon is not called a blue moon because it is particularly blue or is any different in the hue from the first full moon of the month. Instead, it is called a blue moon because it is so rare. The moon needs a little more than 29 days to complete the cycle from full moon to full moon. Because every month except February has more than 29 days, every month will have at least one full moon (except February, which will have a full moon unless there is a full moon at the very end of January and another full moon at the very beginning of March). It's on the occasion when a given calendar month has a second full moon that a blue moon occurs. This doesn't happen very often, three or four times a decade.

The blue moons of today are called blue moons because of their rarity and not because of their colour; however, the expression "blue moon" may have come into existence in reference to unusual circumstances in which the moon actually appeared blue. Certain natural phenomena of **gigantic** proportions can actually change the appearance of the moon from Earth. The eruption of the Krakatoa volcano in 1883 left dust particles in the atmosphere, which clouded the sun and gave the moon

a bluish tint. This particular occurrence of the blue moon may have given rise to the expression that we use today. Another example occurred more than a century later. When Mount Pinatubo erupted in the Philippines in 1991, the moon again took on a blue tint.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- This passage is about
 a. an unusual colour b. an idiomatic expression
 c. a month on the calendar d. a phase of the moon
- The expression "**once in a blue moon**" means
 a. for around fifty years b. for less than one hundred
 c. for more than one hundred d. for two hundred years
- The antonym of the underlined word "**gigantic**" is
 a. large b. huge c. colossal d. tiny
- According to the passage, the moon actually looked blue
 a. when it occurred late in the month
 b. several times a year
 c. during the month of February
 d. after large volcanic eruptions

B. Answer the following questions :

- Do you think February can have more than one full moon ? Why / Why not ?

- Do you think the "blue moon" seldom occurs ? Why ? Why not ?

- Do you think that natural catastrophes have an influence on the lunar system ? Why ? Why not ?

- Give a suitable title to the passage.

- 2** Most human beings are awake during the day and sleep all night. Owls live the opposite way. Owls are nocturnal. This means that they sleep all

day and stay awake at night. Because owls are nocturnal, this means they must eat at night. But finding food in the dark is generally difficult. To help them, they have special eyes and ears.

Owls also have very good hearing. Even when owls are in the trees, they can hear small animals moving in the grass below. This helps owls catch their prey even when it is very dark.

Like owls, mice are also nocturnal animals. Mice have an excellent sense of smell. This helps them find food in the dark.

Being nocturnal helps mice to hide from the many different snakes and lizards that want to eat them. Most of the birds, snakes, and lizards that like to eat mice sleep at night except, of course, owls.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The owl
 a. can't see at night b. has trouble seeing in the dark
 c. can see well at night d. is likely to be eaten by an owl
2. Being nocturnal helps mice to
 a. find food for other animals b. keep themselves safe
 c. kill owl sand snakes d. release stress
3. Owls use senses to find food.
 a. smell and hearing b. sight and smell
 c. hearing and sight d. taste and smell
4. The underlined word "them" refers to
 a. mice b. lizards c. snakes d. owls

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What do you think is special about nocturnal animals ?

.....

6. Why do you think owls have special eyes and ears ?

.....

7. Find a word in the passage which means :

a) take in =

b) sleepless =

8. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

2

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

Forms of composition you have to master for the exam

الصيغ التعبيرية التي يجب أن تجيد كتابتها

عزيزي الطالب / عزيزتي الطالبة :

- لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية في نظام التقويم الجديد، وعلى الطالب أن ينمي هذه المهارة ليصل للدرجة الإتيقان ويكون مستعداً للكتابة عن أي موضوع، وبصفة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة جميع الصيغ التالية :

1 A narrative essay /short story

مقال سردي أو قصة قصيرة

2 A descriptive essay

مقال وصفي

3 A comparative/argumentative essay

مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف) / مقال جدلي

• Different forms like : formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation card, a book review or brochure.

صيغ مختلفة مثل: رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية وغير الرسمية - وصف الوظائف - وصفات الطهي - الخطابات - بطاقة الدعوة - عرض نقدي لكتاب - نشرة ... إلخ

ما المطلوب منك في الامتحان بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائي؟

• كتابة حوالي (١٥٠) كلمة بأحد الصيغ (مقال - قصة ...)

• يتم إعطاء موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه

• يتم صياغة رأس الموضوع على شكل:

- عبارة قد تحتوي على العنوان المطلوب مباشرة

- حكمة أو قول مأثور يتخذه الطالب محوراً أساسياً لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائي

- سؤال مباشر

أمثلة :

Write about 180 words on ONE only of the following topics :

- An essay or short story about the statement: "For every joy, there is a price to pay."

- An essay or short story about the statement: "Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition."
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

- وفيما يلي سيتم عرض مبسط لكيفية كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعبيرية وهى :

1 Essay writing

كتابة المقال

2 Short story writing

كتابة القصة القصيرة

3 Email writing

كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

1

Essay Writing

كتابة المقال

- ما الفرق بين الفقرة (Paragraph) والمقال (Essay) ؟

- الفقرة (Paragraph) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل تتعلق بفكرة معينة.
- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات (Paragraphs) تناقش كل واحدة منها فكرة فرعية متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُفضل أن يحتوى المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.

- إرشادات هامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال:

- عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

من حيث الشكل Form

- تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
- ترك مسافة صغيرة (١ سم تقريباً) فى بداية السطر الأول فقط من كل فقرة.
- لا بد أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف (Capital).
- وضع نقطة (.) فى نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام (?) فى نهاية السؤال.

من حيث المضمون Content

- يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التى تعبر عنها الفقرة وتسلسلها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
- من المهم جداً أن تلتزم بالحديث عن الفكرة المطلوبة بموضوعية وبساطة.
- ابدأ الفقرة بـ (topic sentence) أى جملة رئيسية تحتوى على الفكرة التى تناقشها الفقرة.
- لا بد من تنويع بدايات الجمل.
- استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
- استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع فى أخطاء أنت فى غنى عنها.

The Form of the Essay الشكل العام للمقال

Title العنوان



Education and Technology

→ It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

Introduction
القدمة

→ Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This in turn will make the education process more enjoyable and effective.

Body
الجزء الأساسي

→ Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. No more paper will be wasted. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

→ To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

Conclusion
الخاتمة

Indentation
المسافة البادئة في أول كل فقرة

The main parts of the essay الأجزاء الرئيسية للمقال

(1) Introduction :

المقدمة

- هي الفقرة الأولى في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع، وكيف سيتم تسلسل وعرض الأفكار.

- بالنسبة للطالب الذي يجيد الكتابة، هناك أساليب مختلفة يمكن أن يبدأ بها فقرة المقدمة مثل :

① جملة عامة تعبر بها عن الفكرة التي يدور حولها الموضوع :

- مثال : عند كتابة موضوع عن دور المعلم "The role of teachers" يمكن أن نبدأ كالتالي:

- No one can deny that teachers play a very important role in both students' education and their personal lives.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن المعلمين يلعبون دوراً هاماً في تعليم الطلاب وحياتهم الخاصة على السواء.

Or :

- We all owe much to our teachers and the important influence they have on our lives.

- جميعنا ندين بالكثير لمعلمينا وتأثيرهم المهم في حياتنا.

② حكمة أو مثل :

- A good teacher can inspire hope, ignite the imagination, and instill a love of learning.

- يمكن للمعلم الجيد أن يلهم الأمل ويشعل الخيال ويغرس حب التعلم.

③ جملة تتضمن تعريف بالموضوع :

- A good teacher is not that person who gives the answers out to students but understands their needs and challenges and gives them tools of success.

- المعلم الجيد ليس مجرد شخص يقدم الإجابات للطلاب، ولكنه يفهم احتياجاتهم وتحدياتهم ويوفر أدوات لمساعدتهم على النجاح.

١ سؤال عام يتم طرحه في البداية لإثارة الموضوع :

What role do teachers play in shaping the future of the nation?

- ما الدور الذي يلعبه المعلمون في صياغة مستقبل الأمة؟

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية

- بالنسبة للطالب الذي لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعد مثل :

• We all agree that ... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

- نتفق جميعاً أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء في حياتنا وله دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.

• We all admit the importance and necessity of ... in our life.

- كلنا نقر بأهمية وضرورة ... في حياتنا.

• No wonder if we say that ... has (have) its (their) good and positive effects on us.

- لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ... له آثار طيبة وإيجابية علينا جميعاً.

• We all agree that is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.

- كلنا نتفق أن ... ضروري جداً ويلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

• We should put into consideration that ... has (have) become one (some) of the most important things in everyone's life.

- يجب أن نضع في الاعتبار أن ... قد أصبح واحداً من أهم الأشياء في حياة كل شخص.

• In my opinion, ... is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring all the good to our society.

- في رأيي ... هو حقاً مهم وضروري هذه الأيام وقد يكون له الأثر الطيب والإيجابي علينا جميعاً وإنني أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يعود بالنفع على مجتمعنا.

• No one can deny that ... plays a very important role in our life.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

• There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.

- لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيراً بالغاً علينا.

* لاحظ أنه إذا كان الموضوع اسم جمع يراعى استخدام أفعال تناسب الفاعل.

• In my opinion, ... is serious and harmful nowadays. It may have had and negative effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring evils to our society.

من وجهة نظري ... خطير وضار هذه الأيام، وقد يكون له آثار سلبية علىنا جميعا. وانني اعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يجلب الشرور إلى مجتمعتنا.

• There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.

مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له آثاره السلبية والسلبية في وقتنا هذا.

• Frankly speaking, ... is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it.

بمراحة أقول أن ... واحدا من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا. وعلى هذا فان دولتنا لا تدخر جهدا لكي تكافح وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسي)

(2) Body :

1. لكي يكون المقال الذي تكتبه معبرا ومفهوما ومؤثرا، عليك بمراعاة ما يلي :

1. اقرأ عناوين الموضوعات جيدا واختر أفضلهم وأسهلهم بالنسبة لك.

2. تأكد أنك تكتب عن الموضوع المطلوب.

3. لابد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار.

4. تحدث عن كل فكرة في فقرة مستقلة.

5. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.

6. تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم (إلا إذا كنت تتحدث عن شيء يخصك مثل هواياتك أو عاداتك أو شيء مفضل لديك ... إلخ).

7. يجب تنوع بدايات الجمل، ولتحقيق هذا الهدف يمكنك أن تستخدم ما يناسب من العبارات التالية في بدايات الجمل :

- Everyone knows that + جملة

- I don't exaggerate when I say that + جملة

- I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة

- It can't be denied that + جملة

- It goes without saying that + جملة

- يعرف الجميع أن ...

- لست أبالغ عندما أقول أن ...

- لا أفسى سرا عندما أقول أن ...

- لا أحد يمكنه أن ينكر أن ...

- نغش عن البيان أن ...

- It is crystal clear that + جملة

- It is known that + جملة

- It is taken for granted that + جملة

- There is no doubt that + جملة

- من الواضح تماماً أن ...

- من المعروف أن ...

- من المسلم به أن ...

- مما لا شك فيه ...

٨. عند التعبير عن رأيك الخاص يمكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد التعبيرات التالية :

- I think / believe that ... أعتقد أن ...

- In my opinion, ... من وجهة نظري ...

- As far as I am concerned, ... على حد علمي ...

٩. عندما تريد أن تعطي مثالاً ابدأ جملتك بـ :
- For example, ... / For instance, ... على سبيل المثال ...

(3) Conclusion :

الخاتمة (الخلاصة)

- غالباً ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصاً (summary) للأفكار التي تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التي وصلت إليها.

- هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأي أو غيره.

بعض الجمل الختامية التي يمكن استخدامها في الفقرات الختامية للمقال

• Finally, it is quite clear that ... (الموضوع) ... is really ... (صفة).

- أخيراً، من الواضح أن ... فعلاً ...

• I can end my speech saying that...

- يمكنني أن أنهى حديثي بالقول أن ...

• In brief, I think that ... is really ...

- باختصار، أعتقد أن ... يكون حقاً ...

• In the end, I hope I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear. - في الختام، أتمنى أن أكون قد تطرقت إلى كل جوانب الموضوع وجعلته واضحاً.

• To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject.

- ختاماً، أتمنى أن تكون كلماتي كانت كافية لإلقاء الضوء على أكثر جوانب هذا الموضوع أهمية.

• To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...

- الخلاصة، يمكن للمرء أن يقول أن ... يكون فعلاً ...

Related essay models

1 How to use the Internet

Introduction

Nowadays, most people use the internet. I think there are both good and bad things about using it. In this essay, I'm going to throw light on both the merits and demerits *مزايا وعيوب* of using the internet.

Advantages

On the one hand, the internet makes life easier. There is so much information on the internet that people don't need to go to libraries to do research into. People can also use emails through the internet and they no longer have to send letters through traditional post offices. With emails, they can expect the other person to get their messages and reply to them at once *على الفور*.

Disadvantages

On the other hand, the internet makes people waste much time. There are too many interesting things on the internet. People can download music and movies, read blogs, and play games. Many people spend so much time on the internet that they don't have time to do their work or sleep. Children can sometimes see things that are harmful or not suitable for their age.

Conclusion

To conclude, too much internet is bad. If people don't spend too much time on the internet, it is a useful thing. There should be some sort of control on the content *المحتوي* children can see.

2 Living in the countryside

Introduction

Where would you prefer to live: in the city or in the countryside? Most people prefer living in the city. However, I would rather live in the country. I'll tell you the reason for this preference.

Disadvantages of city life

People may think that the country is not as exciting as the city. It is true that the city has many activities to do like going to cinemas, parks and clubs. However, you probably have to pay for all these activities. Some of these activities are also very expensive. City life is noisier with the sounds of busy streets and car horns. The city has much air pollution because of exhaust fumes.

Advantages
of countryside life

In contrast, you can enjoy many nice things for free in the countryside. You can go fishing in the rivers or hiking ^{التبرقش} in the fields. In addition, the country is cleaner and quieter than the city. The country has fresh air and many quiet places. There's also the enjoyable green landscape. There's one more advantage to live in the countryside : the simple kind-hearted people.

Conclusion

To sum up ^{باختصار}, the city is expensive, not clean, and loud. The countryside is cheaper, cleaner and quieter. I wish I could spend all my life in the countryside.

3 Keeping Healthy

Introduction

I think health is one of the most important things in our life. Everyone wants to keep healthy. However, some people think it is too hard to be healthy because they are too busy. In this short essay, I'm going to tell you about some easy things you can do to keep healthy.

Advice about
food and drink

Instead of drinking fizzy drinks, you should drink water. Fizzy drinks taste good, but they have sugar. Eating too much sugar will make you gain weight or get cavities ^{تجاويف}. If you are eating a snack or meal, drink a cup of water with it. You'd better avoid eating much food. Much food means much weight but less health.

Doing exercise

You can also exercise. Exercising will help you not get sick or feel tired. If you don't have time to play sports or run outside, you can do other things. For example, you can walk up the stairs instead of taking the lift. If you are watching television or doing homework, get up now and then ^{بين الحين والآخر} and move around. It's also better to depend on yourself for doing what you need.

Conclusion

In brief ^{باختصار}, you don't have to have a diet or do hard exercises every day to be healthy. Making small changes will help you be healthier, fitter and happier.

2

Email Writing format

يختلف رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (email) عن المقال (Paragraph) في الشكل فقط.
يجب اتباع قواعد الكتابة الصحيحة التي سبق تناولها في كتابة المقال.

1

The form of the email

الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني (email) في الامتحان الشكل التالي :

To : إلى

From : من

Subject : الموضوع

Dear + اسم المُرسَل إليه

How are you? I hope you are well. I send you this email to + inf.

.....

..... (موضوع الرسالة)

That's all I want to say. I'm waiting for your reply.

Best wishes

توقيع المُرسَل

2

The main parts of the email

الاجزاء الرئيسية لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني

نشان البريد الإلكتروني للمُرسَل إليه: ويُكتب في أعلى الصفحة من ناحية اليسار بعد كلمة (To) مثل :

To : samamohammed@elmoasser.com

نشان البريد الإلكتروني للمُرسَل: ويُكتب بعد كلمة (From) مثل :

From : ahmedbar@elmoasser.com

نشان الموضوع: ويُكتب بعد كلمة (Subject / About) مثل :

Subject : Tourist attractions in Egypt

• بداية الرسالة: تبدأ الرسالة بكلمة (Dear) ثم اسم المُرسَل إليه، ويجب مراعاة ما يلي :
- إذا كانت الرسالة إلى صديق: نكتب اسم الصديق مباشرة بدون كلمة (friend) مثل :

Dear Rokaya,

Dear my uncle,

Dear Mr Ashraf,

Dear General Manager,

Dear Sir or Madame,

- إذا كانت الرسالة إلى قريب: نكتب درجة القرابة مثل :

- إذا كانت الرسالة إلى مسؤول:

- نكتب لقب المسؤول قبل الاسم إذا كنا نعرفه، مثل :

- نكتب لقب المسؤول بدون الاسم إذا كنا لا نعرفه، مثل :

- إذا لم نكن نعرف ما إذا كان رجل أو امرأة نستخدم :

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لرسائل فى مناسبة عادية

• How are you? I hope you are happy and in good health. I'm very happy to send this e-mail to you.

- كيف حالك؟ أتمنى أن تكون بخير وبصحة جيدة، ويسعدنى أن أرسل لك هذه الرسالة.

• I'm very pleased to send this email to you. I hope that you are well when you receive it.

- يسعدنى جداً أن أرسل إليك هذه الرسالة وأتمنى أن تكون بخير عندما تتسلمها.

• You can't imagine how pleased I am while I'm typing this email.

- لا يمكنك أن تتخيل مدى سعادتى أثناء كتابة هذه الرسالة.

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لرسائل فى مناسبة غير سعيدة

• I am so unhappy to hear about that (illness / accident / ...)

- إننى حزين جداً منذ أن سمعت عن ذلك (المرض / الحادث / ...)

• I am so sorry I won't be able to accept your invitation because...

- يؤسفنى أننى لن أستطيع قبول دعوتك لأن ...

• I have been shocked since I heard your bad news. I hope you overcome this situation soon.

- إننى أشعر بالصدمة منذ أن سمعت أخبارك غير السعيدة، وأتمنى أن تجتاز هذا الموقف سريعاً.

3 Email (writing) topic الموضوع الرئيسى لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني

الموضوع الرئيسى بعد فقرة المقدمة مباشرة، ويمكنك أن تبدأه بإحدى العبارات التالية :

- I send this email in order to thank you for ...
إبنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أشكرك على ...
- I send this email in order to invite you to ...
إبنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أدعوك إلى ...
- I send this email in order to tell you about ...
إبنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أخبرك عن ...
- I send this email in order to apologise to you for ...
إبنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أعتذر لك عن ...
- I send this email in order to congratulate you on ...
إبنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أهنئك على ...
- I send this email in order to ask you about ...
إبنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أسألك عن ...
- I send this e-mail in order to discuss ... with you.
إبنى أرسل لك هذه الرسالة لكى أناقش ... معك.

4 How to end an email كيفية إنهاء رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

وأن تكتب الخاتمة فى نهاية الموضوع وفى منتصف السطر أو بعد ترك مسافة لا تقل عن ٢ سم من جهة اليسار، وهناك نهايات كثيرة مثل:

- I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon. أظن لرسالة منك قريباً .
- Remember me to all at home. بلغ تحياتى لجميع أفراد العائلة .
- Please, write back soon. رجاء الرد سريعاً .

5 Signing an email توقيع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

توقيع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني فى نهايتها، ولا بد أن تستخدم الاسم الذى يُعطى لك فى الامتحان وليس اسم العقبى، وغالباً ما يتم التوقيع بعد إحدى التعبيرات التالية:

- Best wishes,
- Yours / Yours sincerely,
- Love from me,

تحيات الأمنيات
المخلص
مع أصدق مشاعرى

Email Model

نموذج رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

To : sadhorizon@yahoo.com
 From : mrmohammed@elmoasser.com
 Subject: Tourist attractions in Egypt

Dear Kate,

How are you, Kate? I'm very happy to send this email to you. I hope that you and your family are all in good health. I write this email in reply to your last email in which you asked me about tourist attractions in Egypt. I'm going to tell you about both historical and natural attractions.

As you know, Egypt has one of the oldest and greatest civilizations in the world. In Luxor and Aswan, there are thousands of historical sites and monuments which attract millions of tourists from all over the world. In Cairo, you can visit the Egyptian Museum. The Pyramids of Giza are famous all over the world. Cairo and Alexandria are also full of Muslim and Coptic tourist sites.

As for natural attractions, Egypt has some of the most beautiful beaches in the world. You can enjoy your time on healthy beaches with great tourist facilities. The Egyptian deserts are also great places to explore.

You can find detailed information and guidebooks about tourist attractions in Egypt online. I have attached some nice photos of some tourist attractions.

I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Best Wishes

Mohammed

Follow your progress in writing skill

تابع مستواك في إتقان مهارة الكتابة باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر

UNIT 1

1. Write an essay of about (180) words on eco-tourism.



UNIT 2

2. Write an essay of about (180) words on a famous person.



UNIT 3

3. Write an essay of about (180) words on describing a character from a book, film or TV who is similar to you.



UNIT 4

4. Write an essay of about (180) words on to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.



UNIT 5

5. Write an essay of about (180) words on the internet, possible advantages, disadvantages and how to protect yourself online.



UNIT 6

6. Write an essay of about (180) words on a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.



3

Translation

الترجمة

السادة معلمى اللغة الإنجليزية، أبنائنا وبناتنا طلبة و طالبات المرحلة الثانوية :

نقدم لكم هذا الجهد المتواضع "El-Moasser Translation Guide" كإسهام بسيط منا للقضاء نهائياً على مشكلة الترجمة بالنسبة لأبنائنا في المرحلة الثانوية، وذلك باستخدام أسلوب السؤال والإجابة الوافية السلسلة البسيطة في عرض المادة العلمية الخاصة بكيفية الترجمة ، وقد تم تقسيم المادة العلمية في هذا الدليل إلى عدد من الحصص ، و في كل حصة نتناول جزئية محددة ثم نعقبها بتدريبات مُتعلقة بما تم عرضه في الحصة.

تنويه : كل مجموعة تدريبات يتبعها جدول مرتب أبجدياً للمفردات الهامة للطلاب، كما يوجد جدول لبعض التعبيرات الهامة في نهاية هذا الجزء.

Introduction

Expressing the sense of (words or text)

ترجمة المعنى

السؤال : هل المقصود بالترجمة ترجمة الكلمات الموجودة بالجملة حرفياً ؟

طبعاً لا ، فالترجمة تعني نقل المعنى من لغة إلى أخرى دون التقيد بالألفاظ ، لاحظ ترجمة الجملة التالية:

- Diamond cuts diamond

هذه ترجمة حرفية ولا تؤدي معنى المقولة الإنجليزية ، لكن إذا أردنا أن نترجم بشكل صحيح فنقول لا يفل الحديد إلا الحديد :

إنها تمطر بغزارة.

- It's raining cats and dogs.

ولكى تترجم بشكل صحيح عليك بمراعاة ما يلي :

(1) اقرأ النص الذي تريد أن تترجمه بالكامل لكي تفهم الفكرة العامة له.

(ب) اقرأ النص من جديد قراءة جيدة لتعرف ما الذي يعنيه الكاتب وكيف كان إحساسه حين قال هذا الكلام، فمثلاً كيف تترجم الجملة التالية ؟

- Ahmed is always listening to loud music.

أعتقد أنك ستترجمها كالتالى : « يستمع أحمد دائماً إلى موسيقى صاخبة »

وتلك بالطبع ترجمة غير سليمة ، حيث أن استخدام "always" مع المضارع المستمر "is listening" يوحي بضيق وضجر المتحدث، لذلك فإنه من الدقة أن تترجم الجملة كما يلي: « يستمع أحمد دائماً إلى تلك الموسيقى الصاخبة؟ ».

لاحظ أننا استخدمنا صيغة السؤال و علامة استفهام رغم أن الجملة الأصلية ليست كذلك ، فالأهم هو نقل المعنى بالإحساس الموجود في النص الأصلي.

(ج) لا تترجم الكلمات كمعاني مستقلة ، لكن حسب استخدامها في السياق ، لاحظ كيف تترجم الجملة التالية:

- The teacher asks me to use my right hand to draw a right angle right now.

لاحظ تكرار كلمة "right" ثلاث مرات بثلاث معانٍ مختلفة :

الآن على الفور right now - زاوية قائمة right angle - اليد اليمنى right hand - وهكذا تكون ترجمة الجملة كالتالى: « يطلب مني المعلم أن أستخدم يدي اليمنى لأرسم زاوية قائمة الآن على الفور ».

١٠) اقرأ النص الذي قمت بترجمته ، هل فهمت نفس المعنى الذي فهمته من النص الأصلي؟ هل وصل إليك من النص المُترجم نفس الإحساس الذي يصل من النص الأصلي؟ إذا لم يصل إليك نفس المعنى بنفس الإحساس ، فالترجمة غير سليمة.

Part I Translation from Arabic into English

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الإنجليزية

1 كيفية بدء الجملة الإنجليزية Starting the English Sentence

السؤال : كيف أبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية في الترجمة ؟

(أ) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمعلوم فهي تبدأ بالفاعل:

مثال : اكتشف الدكتور فاروق الباز المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية.

- Dr Farouk El-Baz discovered underground water under the Western Desert.

(ب) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول الذي ينوب عن الفاعل.

مثال : بُني السد العالي لتخزين مياه النيل.

- The High Dam was built to store the water of the Nile.

(ج) إذا كانت جملة أمر تكون الترجمة كالتالي :

يتكون الأمر المثبت في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة. comp. + مفعول. obj. + الفعل في المصدر. Inf.

مثال : اعمل بجد واحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم.

- Work hard and get enough sleep.

- يمكن أن توضع "always" في بداية جملة الأمر المثبت لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : دومًا ساعد الآخرين وقت الحاجة.

- Always help others in need.

- يتكون الأمر المنفي (النهي) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة. comp. + مفعول. obj. + الفعل في المصدر. Inf. Don't +

مثال : لا تأخذ أي أدوية دون استشارة الطبيب.

- Don't take any medicines without consulting the doctor.

- يمكن أن تستخدم "Never" بدلًا من "Don't" في بداية جملة النهي لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : إياك أن تُصادق الأشرار.

- Never make friends with evil people.

(د) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بـ «هل»
ابدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية حسب الزمن:

- Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had
- Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought /
Need / Dare

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فاعل إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمعلوم :
مثال : هل سبق أن قرأت رواية لتشارلز ديكنز؟ (لاحظ الفعل في زمن المضارع التام)

- Have you ever read a Charles Dickens Novel?

مثال : أنتمارس الرياضة بشكل يومي؟ / هل أنت معتاد على ممارسة الرياضة يوميًا؟ (لاحظ أن الفعل في صيغة المضارع)

- Do you practise sport every day?

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص مفعول إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمجهول :
مثال : هل شُرح لك هذا الدرس بالأمس؟

- Was this lesson explained to you yesterday?

مثال : هل جرت العادة أن تنظف حجرتك كل صباح؟

- Is your room cleaned every morning?

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ (أليس / ألا) تبدأ الترجمة بالفعل المساعد المنفي:
مثال : أليس تتبع نظاماً غذائياً؟ / أليس من عاداتك اتباع نظاماً غذائياً؟

- Don't you follow a diet?

مثال : ألا تهتم بمشاهدة الأفلام؟ (عادات في الحاضر)

- Aren't you interested in watching films?

(هـ) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بأداة استفهام إبدأ بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية ثم أحد الأفعال المساعدة حسب الزمن:

What	ما / ماذا	Which	أى
Where	أين	When	متى
Why	لماذا	Who	من
Whose	لمن	How	كم / كيف

مثال : ما الذي يجب أن تفعله لحماية البيئة من التلوث؟

- What should you do to protect the environment from pollution?

مثال : كيف لنا أن نواجه الغش في الامتحانات؟

- How can we fight exam cheating?

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. تعمل اختى مذيعة طيران وترتدى زياً خاصاً بالشركة التى تعمل بها.
٢. تُستخدم الأقمار الصناعية في اكتشاف المياه الجوفية والمعادن و البترول.
٣. في كل عام يأتي السياح إلى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل في الشتاء.
٤. بُني المدارس والجامعات في كل المحافظات لتوفر تعليم مناسب لجميع المصريين.
٥. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم إلى العيش معاً في حب وسلام.
٦. ساعد والدك و اعمل بجد.
٧. لا تُكثر من الطعام و لا تنسى ممارسة الرياضة.
٨. اصنع ما شئت ، لكن لا تؤذي الآخرين.
٩. لا تتأخر على مدرستك ، ولا تضيع وقتك.
١٠. ألا تساعد أصدقائك وقت الحاجة؟
١١. هل تقوم بأعمال مفيدة في وقت فراغك؟
١٢. أنفعل أسنانك بالفرشاة مرتين يومياً؟
١٣. كيف تمكن قداماء المصريين من بناء الأهرامات؟
١٤. لماذا تضيع وقتك فيما لا يفيد؟
١٥. كم مرة تمارس الرياضة أسبوعياً؟

Related Vocabulary

air hostess	مضيفة طيران	minerals	المعادن
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	peoples	شعوب
governorates	محافظات	special	خاص
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste	بضيع
manage to	يتمكن		

أزمة الجمل

2 Tenses of Sentences

- السؤال : في اللغة العربية هناك زمني المضارع و الماضي ، و يتم التعبير عن المستقبل بـ « سوف / س + الفعل المضارع » ، لكن في اللغة الإنجليزية يوجد حوالي إثني عشرة زمنا ، فكيف يتم ترجمة الأزمنة ؟
- تحتاج إجابة هذا السؤال إلى دراسة الأزمنة و معرفة استخدامات كل زمن و هذا متروك لدروس القواعد اللغوية ، لكن هنا سنتكلم في بعض العموميات التي قد تفيد إلى حد كبير في الترجمة :
- (1) الجملة التي تدل علي حقائق ثابتة أو عادات متكررة يوضع فعلها في صيغة المضارع البسيط : (inf. / inf. + s, es, ies)

مثال : المخ البشرى يتحكم في كل شيء ، نقوم به.

- The human brain controls everything we do.

مثال : يتسلم الكتاب والعلماء جوائز قيّمة كل عام.

- Writers and scientists receive valuable prizes every year.

مثال : التعليم ليس غاية في حد ذاته ، إنما وسيلة تؤدي إلى غاية.

- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

(ب) الجملة التي تدل علي حدث مستمر في الوقت الحالي يوضع فعلها في المضارع البسيط إلى مضارع مستمر : (am / is / are + inf. + ing)

مثال : في الوقت الحالي ، تبذل الحكومة جهودا كبيرة لتحسين الصحة التعليم.

- Nowadays, the government is exerting great efforts to improve health and education.

(ج) الجملة التي تدل علي خبرات أو أحداث إنتهت للتو أو أحداث ماضية لها تأثير علي الحاضر تُترجم إلى مضارع تام (have / has + p.p.) بشرط عدم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين حتي الآن.

- Ahmed has won two gold medals so far.

- أما إذا تم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين العام الماضي.

- Ahmed won two gold medals last year.

(د) عادات الماضي يتم التعبير عنها كالتالي :

- always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / never التصريف الثاني

مثال : كان جدي أحيانا يأخذنا لزيارة أقاربنا في الريف.

- My grandfather sometimes took us to visit our relatives in the countryside.

(هـ) عادات الماضي التي تتوقف في الحاضر :

- used to + inf. - be + used to + ing

مثال : اعتدت الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية بدراجتي الصغيرة.

- I used to go to primary school on my small bike.

مثال : كانت جدتي معتادة علي عمل الخبز في المنزل.

- My grandmother was used to making bread at home.

(و) الجملة التي تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي (غالبا تحتوي على كلمة « كان + فعل مضارع ») تُترجم إلى ماضي مستمر (was / were + inf. + ing) :

مثال : كان أحمد يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه عندما انكسرت ساقه.

- Ahmed was playing football with his friends when his leg broke.

(ز) الجملة التي تدل على حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي نستخدم ماضي تام (had + p.p.) :

مثال : انتهى المعلم من شرح الدرس قبل أن يعطى لنا بعض التدريبات.

- The teacher had finished explaining the lesson before he gave us some exercises.

(ح) الجمل التي تدل على المستقبل (سأفعل / سوف أفعل / لن أفعل) تُترجم إلى الصيغة المناسبة من المستقبل (will + inf. / be going to + inf. / be + inf. + ing) :

مثال : ستحتفل هدى بعيد ميلادها الخامس الشهر القادم.

- Huda is celebrating her fifth birthday next month.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يتم إنشاء المكتبات العامة في كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة على القراءة.

٢. يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين لأنه السبب في كثير من الأمراض.

٣. لم ينجح العلماء حتى يومنا هذا في إيجاد علاج لبعض الأمراض.

٤. أصبح تعلم اللغات والحاسب الآلي هاما للحصول علي وظيفة.
٥. في القريب ، سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا علي قيادة السيارات بأمان أكثر.
٦. في بعض المنازل الحديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية في تسخين المياه.
٧. قد قام السد العالي بحماية مصر من الفيضانات ووفر المياه لوقت الحاجة.
٨. لن نتحقق أهدافك دون أن تعمل بجد.
٩. كنت عاندا من المدرسة عندما قابلت عمتي في الشارع.
١٠. اعتادت جدتي أن تحكي لنا قصصا شيقة.
١١. أحاول جاهدا أن أحل هذه المسألة الصعبة.

Related Vocabulary

do my best	أحاول جاهداً	aims	أهداف
come true	تتحقق	smoking	التدخين
floods	الفيضانات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
problem	مسألة / مشكلة	try hard	يحاول جاهداً
public	عام	warn (ed)	يحذر
set up	ينشئ	diseases	أمراض
cure	علاج	achieve	يحقق

3 كيفية ترجمة الصفات والظروف Translating Adjectives and Adverbs

السؤال : كيف أترجم الصفة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية وما هو موقع الصفة بالنسبة للموصوف ؟
 (١) تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف علي عكس اللغة العربية ، لاحظ :

- interesting stories - قصص شيقة
- a beautiful girl - فتاة جميلة
- a clever boy - ولد ماهر
- Hard work and good manners are some qualities of a successful person.
- (ب) علي غير العادة ، تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف و ليس قبله إذا كانت تصف أي من الكلمات التالية :

something / anything / everything / nothing - someone / anyone
 / everyone / none - somebody / anybody / everybody / nobody -
 somewhere / anywhere / everywhere / nowhere

PART 2

- شيء ما مهم something important -
 مثال : وضع أحمد شيء ما صغير الحجم في حقيبته.
 - someone evil شخص ما شرير
 - Ahmed put something small in his bag.
 (ب) تأتي الصفة وبعدها موصوف أو بدون موصوف بعد أفعال مثل :
 يبدو sound - له رائحة smell - له مذاق taste - يشعر feel - يصبح become - يصبح get - be
 يبدو look - يبدو seem
 مثال : لقد أصبح عجوزاً / لقد أصبح رجلاً عجوزاً.
 - He became old. / He became an old man.
 (ج) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط نبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة، لاحظ:
 رجل ثري مشهور.
 سيدة شابة ذكية.
 - a famous rich man
 - an intelligent young lady
 مثال : الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة تُساعد أطفال الشوارع المشردين.
 - Different charitable organisations help homeless street children.
 (د) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان وبينهما أداة ربط فإننا في الغالب نكتب الصفة الأولى أولاً ثم الثانية، لاحظ:
 رجل ثري ومشهور.
 سيدة شابة وذكية.
 مثال : العمل الجاد والمستمر هو الخطوة الأولى نحو تحقيق هدفك في الحياة.
 - Hard and continuous work is the first step towards achieving your goal in life.
 (هـ) إذا وضعنا قبل الصفة "the" ولم يتبع الصفة اسم فنقص بذلك كل من يتصفون بهذه الصفة.
 المكفوفين The blind - رجال مكفوفين blind men - رجل كفيف a blind man
 مثال : ينبغي علي الأغنياء مساعدة الفقراء.
 - Rich people should help poor people.
 = The rich should help the poor.
 السؤال : وماذا عن الظرف؟ كيف يُترجم إلى الإنجليزية وأين يكون موقعه في الجملة ؟
 (أ) ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) ويمكن أن يأتي بعضها في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :
 always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / hardly / never
 مثال : تحاول أمي دائماً الحفاظ علي بيتنا نظيفاً ومرتّباً.
 - My mother always tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

-Always my mother tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

مثال : غالبا ما أكون في عملي في الموعد المحدد .
-I am usually at my work in time.

(ب) ظروف الكيفية التى تدل على كيفية أو طريقة حدوث الفعل تأتى بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :
مثال : أسير إلى مدرستي مسرعا .

-I walk quickly to my school.

مثال : من حَقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية .
-It is your right to express your opinion freely.

(ج) ظروف الدرجة التالية تحدد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة ، و توضع قبل الصفة مباشرة :
extremely / completely / utterly / بشكل مُطلق / absolutely / للغاية really / إلى حد ما / rather / إلى حد ما / quite / جدا / very / so / حقا

مثال : إنني فى الحقيقة غاضب جدا من ذلك الجار السيء .
-I'm really angry with that bad neighbour.

(د) فى اللغة الانجليزية يُفضل أن يكون ظرف الزمان أو المكان إما فى بداية الجملة أو نهايتها وذلك حسب المعنى :
مثال : أسافر إلى أوروبا مرتين كل صيف .

-I travel to Europe twice every summer.
-Every summer, I travel to Europe twice.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من اجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.

٢. العلم الحديث والتخطيط الجيد ضروريان من أجل حياة أفضل.

٣. هبة تذهب إلى الفراش مبكرا.

٤. يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزة الكمبيوتر فى مدارسهم.

٥. يقدم العلماء شيء ما جديد كل يوم لخدمه البشرية.

٦. كان الجو حارا للغاية طوال الأسبوع الماضي.

٧. يجب أن تقود السيارة بحرص حتى تبقى بأمان.

أحياناً أعمل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

المكفوفون يمكنهم التعلم والعمل.

الوجبات الصغيرة الخفيفة مفيدة للصحة.

حصلت على درجات مرتفعة بسبب العمل الجاد والمستمر.

يبدو هذا اللاعب غاضباً بعد خسارة المباراة.

Related Vocabulary

home / homeland	الوطن	marks	درجات
light	خفيف	meals	وجبات
look / seem	يبدو	modern	حديث
losing	خسارة	planning	التخطيط
mankind	البشرية	humanity	البشرية

4 Special Cases (1) حالات خاصة (1)

نزال: كيف أقوم بترجمة الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم، وكذلك الفعل (يُعتبر / يُعد) المبنى للمجهول؟

(أ) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم كالتالي:

- Subj. + **consider** + (حسب الزمن) + **that** + جملة + فاعل.
- Subj. + **as + noun** + (حسب الزمن) + **regard** + فاعل.

مثال: تعتبر الحكومة التعليم استثماراً في مستقبل مصر.

- The government considers that education is an investment in the future of the country.
- The government regards education as an investment in the future of the country.

(ب) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمجهول كالتالي:

- Obj. + **be** + (حسب الزمن) + **considered** + ...
- Subj. + **be** + (حسب الزمن) + **regarded + as + noun** + ...

مثال: يُعتبر التعليم استثماراً في مستقبل مصر.

- Education is considered an investment in the future of Egypt.
- Education is regarded as an investment in the future of Egypt.

السؤال : أحياناً يكون من الصعب ترجمة الأفعال (يعمل / يقوم / يتم) ، فكيف أترجم الجملة حينئذ ؟
هذا يحدث عندما لا تكون هذه الأفعال هي الأفعال الأساسية للجملة ، وفي هذه الحالة يتم استبدالها بفعل مناسب للمعنى أو الاستغناء عنها والاعتماد على الفعل الأصلي :

مثال : تعمل جميع الدول على إيجاد حل لمشكلة التلوث.

هنا كلمة (تعمل) تؤدي معنى (تحاول) ، فترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- All nations try to solve the problem of pollution.

مثال : يقوم معلمو اللغة الإنجليزية بمدرستنا بشرح الدروس جيداً.

- هنا كلمة (يقوم) لا تؤدي أي معنى فيتم حذفها واستخدام فعل مشتق من الجملة (يشرح) ، وترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- The teachers of English in our school explain lessons well.

مثال : يتم حل المشكلات التي تواجه الطلاب لمساعدتهم على التعلم بشكل جيد.

هنا كلمة (يتم) لا تؤدي معنى ، فنحذفها و نترجم الجملة مبنية للمجهول كالتالي :

- The problems which face students are solved to help them learn well.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة عربية ليس بها فعل إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

(١) هناك الجمل الاسمية التي ليس فيها فعل و نستخدم (be) عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية :

مثال : العمل الجاد طريقك إلى النجاح.

- Hard work is your way to success.

(ب) هناك الجمل الاسمية عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية نستخدم (be) كترجمة لـ (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن) :

مثال : الطعام الصحي والرياضة هما مفتاحي الصحة الجيدة والسعادة.

- Healthy food and sport are the keys to good health and happiness.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يعتبر المصريون نهر النيل مصدر الحياة لهم.

٢. يتم بناء طرق جديدة لحل مشكلة الازدحام المروري.

٣. يُعد السد العالي أفضل إنجاز للرئيس عبد الناصر.

٤. العمل هو سر الحياة ، و النجاح في العمل هو السعادة.

٥. يعتبر أبي مشاهدة المباريات علي التلفاز مضيعة للوقت.

تقوم الحكومة بتوفير التعليم لكل المواطنين.

التعليم هو الطريق الحقيقي لمستقبل أفضل.

يُعتبر الدكتور الباز رمز من رموز العلم في كل أنحاء العالم.

إن الإنترنت أضخم مكتبة في التاريخ.

يقوم أبي بزيارة جدي في الريف كل شهر.

إن زراعة الصحراء شيء ضروري لتوفير الغذاء.

يقوم الحواس بإرسال رسائل إلى المخ.

Related Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	source	مصدر
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	symbol	رمز
president	الرئيس	traffic jam	الازدحام المروري

5 Special Cases (2) حالات خاصة (٢)

سؤال : كيف أترجم جملة بها (لدى / لديه / لديها / عندي / عنده / عندنا / لها / لهم ... إلخ) وليس بها فعل؟

ترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب الجدول التالي مع مراعاة زمن الجملة :

I have	عندي - لدى - لي - أملك	You have	عندكم - لديكم - لكم - تملكون
He has	عنده - لديه - له - يملك	We have	عندنا - لدينا - لنا - نملك
She has	عندها - لديها - لها - تملك	They have	عندهم - لديهم - لهم - يملكون
It has	لديه - لديها - له - لها	One has	للمرء - لدى المرء - يمتلك المرء
You have	عندك - لديك - لك - تملك		

مثال : لدينا الكثير من الاهتمامات في وقت فراغنا.

- We have a lot of interests in our free time.

مثال : كان لأبي دور كبير في نجاحي.

- My father had a great role in my success.

مثال : سيكون للشباب دور كبير فى تقدم الوطن.
- Youth will have a great role in the progress of the country.

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (عليه / عليها / عليك / لابد / حتما / يجب / ينبغي إلخ) ؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب القاعدة التالية :
Subj. + must / should / ought to / have to / has to / had to + inf

مثال : علينا أن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة.
- We should keep the environment clean.

مثال : لابد أن تُطيع والديك و تحترم مُعلميك.
- You must obey your parents and respect your teachers.

مثال : كان عليّ أن أراجع دروسي جيدا لأجتاز الإمتحان.
- I had to revise my lessons well to pass the exam.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الكلمات (عسى / لعل / ليت) ؟
(1) إذا جاء بعد هذه الكلمات فعل مضارع فإنها تُترجم فى الغالب إلى :

- I hope / I wish + to + inf.
- I hope + subj. + will + inf.
- I hope + subj. + inf. + (s / es / ies)

مثال : ليتنى أقدر أن أساعدك.

- I hope / wish to be able to help you.
- I hope I will be able to help you.
- I hope I am able to help you.

(ب) إذا جاء بعد (لعل / ليت) فعل ماضى فإنها تُترجم فى الغالب إلى :

- I wish + subj. + had + p.p. ...
- I regret not + inf. + ing ...

مثال : ليتنى ذاكرت جيدا العام الماضى.

- I wish I had studied hard last year.
- I regret not studying hard last year.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه ؟

(1) نضع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف إليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف بدون (of) :

- standard of living	- living standard	مستوى المعيشة
- pollution of the air	- air pollution	تلوث الهواء
- the rate of birth	- birth rate	معدل المواليد

PART 2

الاستخدام ('s) الملكية غالبًا عندما يكون المضاف إليه عاقل أو اسم حيوان :

- My mother's house. (s) ملكية مفرد
- My parents' house. (s') ملكية جمع
- The parrot's tail is very long.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا.

يُعمل الدولة على رعاية الشباب وتنمية مواهبهم.

يجب أن ننشئ الأطفال على حب الوطن واحترام الوالدين.

علينا أن نشارك بإيجابية في تقدم وطننا.

علينا أن نداوم على تحسين ظروف حياتنا.

يجب استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم.

من الضروري أن ننمي الاهتمام بالعلم لدى الصغار لإعداد جيل من العلماء.

للعلماء دور هام في إيجاد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع.

لبنني لم أنفق كل مالي في شراء هذه السيارة.

التلفزيون دور مؤثر في ثقافة وسلوك المواطنين.

Related Vocabulary

bringing up
conditions
culture
effective
generation
interest

تربية
ظروف
ثقافة
مؤثر
جيل
اهتمام

positively
progress
share
society
solutions
talents

إيجابية
تقدم
شارك
المجتمع
طول
بالإضافة

6 Special Cases (3) حالات خاصة (٣)

السؤال : كيف أترجم كلمة (لقد) ؟

(١) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن المضارع التام في حالة عدم وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي.

- My brother passed the driving test last week.

(ج) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي التام مع الحدث الأول في حالة وجود حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي قبل أن يقوم أبي بشراء سيارة له بالأمس.

- My brother had passed the driving test last week before my father bought him a car yesterday.

السؤال : حسنا ... فكيف أترجم كلمة (قد) ؟

لا توجد ترجمة لكلمة (قد) ، فهي تُحذف ونستخدم بدلاً منها زمن الماضي البسيط ويمكن المضارع التام :

(١) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل ماضي) مثل (لقد) :

مثال : قد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) إلى (may / might + inf.) :

مثال : قد يسافر أبي إلى أسوان غدا.

- My father may / might travel to Aswan tomorrow.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بحرف التوكيد (إن) ؟

- الجملة التي تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية غالباً ما تبدأ بـ (noun / inf. + ing) في اللغة الإنجليزية ويكون فعل الجملة مضارع بسيط :

مثال : إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية والحاسب الآلي ضروري في الوقت الحالي.

- Learning foreign languages and the computer is necessary at present.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) وبعد الأفعال الناقصة؟

(١) الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ (To + inf.) في اللغة الإنجليزية :

مثال : أن تساعد في الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة فهذا شيء جيد.

- To help keep the environment clean is a good thing.

كلمة (أن) بعد الأفعال الناقصة لا تُترجم :

مثال : يجب أن نجد حلولاً لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

- We should find solutions to our economic and social problems.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد فاز فريق كرة القدم بمباراة هامة.

٢. لقد ذهب الله مصر الكثير من الأماكن السياحية والطقس الرائع.

٣. إن تحقيق التقدم لا يمكن أن يحدث إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

٤. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخلون مطلقاً يعيشون حياة أطول.

٥. إن هوايتي المفضلة هي قراءة القصص الخيالية ولعب التنس.

٦. لقد أصبح ضروريا البدء في إنشاء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

٧. إن إهدار مياة النيل جريمة في حق الوطن.

٨. إن مهارات الحاسوب لا غني عنها للحصول علي وظيفة جيدة في الوقت الحالي.

٩. إن البحث العلمي وسيلة هامة لتحديد شكل مستقبل أي أمة.

١٠. إن زراعته الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديدة يحل الكثير من المشاكل الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

١١. إن زيادة الانتاج واجب وطني لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان.

١٢. لقد ذهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية.

١٣. إن سيناء جزء هام من أرض مصر يجب الاهتمام بتنميتها ورعاية أهلها.

Related Vocabulary

against
co-operation
crime
duty
fictional
grant (ed)
increasing
means

في حق / ضد
تعاون
جريمة
واجب
خيالي
يهب
زيادة
وسيلة

nation
national
production
research
resources
skills
wasting

أمة
وطني / قومي
إنتاج
بحث
موارد
مهارات
إهدار

7 Special Cases (4) حالت خاصة (4)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (يوجد / كان يوجد / هناك / كان هناك / سيكون هناك الخ) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

. There + is / are / was / were / have been / has been / had been /
will be / can be / must be + noun اسم

مثال : يوجد الكثير من الطرق لتجنب الأمراض.

- There are a lot of ways to avoid diseases.

مثال : كان هناك مشكلة في محرك السيارة.

- There was a problem with the car engine.

مثال : سيكون هناك بدائل للبترول في المستقبل.

- There will be replacements for oil in the future.

مثال : لا بد أن يكون هناك حل لمشكلة تلوث الهواء.

- There must be a solution to the problem of air pollution.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التي بها (كلما ... كلما) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

. The + subj. + verb + the + subj. + verb + صفة مقارنة
مثال : كلما تمرنت أكثر كلما أصبحت أكثر لياقة.

- The more you exercise, the fitter you get / become.

مثال : كلما تكون أكثر طولا كلما تستطيع أن تجري أسرع.

- The taller you are, the faster you can run.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل بفعل ؟

(1) ضمير الفاعل المتصل بفعل يترجم ضمير فاعل (I - he - she - it - you - we - they) ، لاحظ :

- We wrote كتبنا

- She wrote كتبت

- I wrote كتبت

PART 2

مثال : زرت جدتي مع أخي واشترينا لها هدية.

- I and my brother visited my grandmother and bought her a present.
- (ضمير المفعول المتصل بفعل أو حرف جر يُترجم ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them) :
مثال : سمعته يقول بعض المعلومات الهامة فاستمعت إليه بحرص.
- I heard him say something important, so I listened to him carefully.
- المثال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل باسم ؟
- ضمير المتصل بالاسم يُترجم إلى صفة ملكية (s - their - your - our - its - her - my) لاحظ :
- كتابي my book - كتابها her book
مثال : يبذل جميع المواطنين ما بوسعهم من أجل وطنهم.
- All citizens do their best for their home.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. توجد بعض قواعد النظافة الشخصية التي يجب اتباعها لتجنب الأمراض.

٢. علمتني الحياة ألا أحزن على ما ضاع مني لأنه ليس لي.

٣. كلما ساعدت الناس وقت الحاجة كلما شعرت بالسعادة.

٤. كان هناك حادثاً مروعاً على الطريق الصحراوي إلى أسوان.

٥. نحتاج الدولة جهودنا نحن الشباب لتحقيق التقدم.

٦. أعتقد أن الناس سوف تستمر في قراءة الكتب من أجل المتعة.

٧. كلما زاد العمل والإنتاج كلما ارتفع مستوى المعيشة.

٨. لا يوجد دين يدعو إلى القتل وترويع الناس.

٩. ندين بالكثير للعلماء لما قدموه لنا من إنجازات.

١٠. أفكر جدياً في دراسة الطب في الجامعة.

١١. تعطينا الشمس الحرارة والضوء، وهي مصدر للطاقة النظيفة.

١٢. نعيش الآن عصر الاتصالات الذي جعل العالم عالماً مفتوحاً.

Related Vocabulary

achievements
age
for fun

إنجازات	in need	وقت الحاجة
عصر	owe	يدين
من أجل المتعة	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة

Special Cases (5) حالات خاصة (5)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (من + صفة) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
- تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

It is + adj. + (for + ضمير مفعول) + to + inf.
مثال : من الجيد أن تقضي وقت فراغك بشكل مفيد.

It is good (for you) to spend your free time in a useful way.
مثال : من الضروري أن يشارك الطلاب في الأنشطة المدرسية.

It is necessary for students to take part in school activities.
السؤال : كيف أترجم المفعول المطلق إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- بصفة عامة يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية.
مثال : تتأثر الصحة تأثراً كبيراً بالتدخين.

Health is greatly affected by smoking.
السؤال : هناك أيضاً الأعداد، هل تُترجم أرقاماً حسابية أم حروفاً ؟

(1) الأعداد من (1 - 9) تكتب هجائياً دائماً ، أما إذا زاد عن ذلك فيكتب أرقاماً حسابية :
مثال : أرسلت دعوات الحفل لخمسين صديقاً لكن لم يحضره منهم إلا ثمانية.

I sent the invitations of the party to 50 friends, but only eight of them attended it.
(ب) عندما تبدأ الجملة الانجليزية بذكر العدد فإنه يكتب هجائياً دائماً :

مثال : وصل ثلاثون مسافراً إلى المحطة بعد أن غادر القطار.

Thirty passengers arrived at the station after the train had left.
السؤال : وماذا عن حروف الجر ؟

- لحروف الجر استخدامات يعرفها الطالب بالتدريج من خلال دراسته للغة ، و المهم هنا أن هناك بعض الأفعال التي لا تأخذ حرف جر مثل :

admire	يعجب بـ	include	يشتمل على
affect	يؤثر على	join	يلتحق بـ
arrest	يقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
avoid	يتجنب	owe	يدين بـ

PART 2

celebrate
enjoy
fear
feel

يحتفل به
يتمتع به
يخشى أن
يشعر به

pass
reach
recognise
sacrifice

يبتلع / يجتاز / يمر على
صل إلى
يعرف على
بضحي به

- Smoking affects health badly.

مثال : يؤثر التدخين على الصحة بشدة.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. من الضروري أن نهتم أكثر بالتعليم والصحة.

٢. يجب أن تهتم الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالمشروعات في صعيد مصر.

٣. من الطبيعي أن يكون لمصر جيش قوى يحمى حدودها وشرطة قوية تحمي أمنها الداخلي.

٤. من المتوقع أن تكون الحروب القادمة بين الدول هي حروب للسيطرة على مصادر المياه.

٥. تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا في منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

٦. تتأثر السياحة تأثرًا كبيرًا بالأحداث الجارية في العالم.

٧. يحذر الأطباء الناس تحذيرًا شديدًا من التدخين.

٨. تنطلق مصر تطلعًا كبيرًا لتحسين مستوى معيشة مواطنيها.

٩. تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالموهوبين وتقدم لهم مزايا قيمة.

١٠. تولي الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالأطفال لأنهم قادة المستقبل.

١١. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق.

Related Vocabulary

current events
deep thought
It is wise

الأحداث الجارية
تفكير عميق
من الحكمة

pay attention
the Middle East

تولى اهتمامًا
الشرق الأوسط

Translation from English into Arabic

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية :

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية أمر سهل وبسيط، ولقد تم تناول معظم الملاحظات التي قد تفيدك فيها ضمن الملاحظات الخاصة بالترجمة من اللغة العربية للغة الإنجليزية ولم يتبقى سوى بعض الملاحظات البسيطة سنتناولها فيما يلي :

السؤال : ما الذى يتطلبه ترجمة نص من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية ؟

(أ) قراءة وفهم النص الإنجليزي لمعرفة الفكرة العامة للموضوع.

(ب) قراءة النص مرة أخرى بعناية للوقوف على الكلمات والتراكيب الصعبة.

(ج) تخمين معنى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الجملة فالمطلوب هو استنتاج المعنى.

(د) بعد الانتهاء من الترجمة، اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربى سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الفعل (be) عندما يكون فعلاً أساسياً ؟

هناك طرق مختلفة لترجمة هذا الفعل حسب استخدامه فى الجملة الإنجليزية، منها :

(أ) المعنى الأساسى للفعل (be) فى اللغة العربية وهو (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g.- My life was difficult when I was abroad, away from home.

كانت حياتى صعبة عندما كنت بالخارج بعيداً عن الوطن.

(ب) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بفعل آخر فى اللغة العربية غير (يكون / يوجد) حسب المعنى العام للنص :

e.g.- The wedding was last week.

- تم الزفاف الأسبوع الماضى.

- A knife is for cutting food.

- تستخدم السكين لتقطيع الطعام.

(ج) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير شخصى مثل (هو / هى / هما / هم / هن) فى اللغة العربية مثل :

e.g.- My mother is everything to me.

- إن أمى هى كل شىء بالنسبة لى.

- Our children are the joy of our life.

- أطفالنا هم بهجة حياتنا.

(د) يمكن إسقاط الفعل (be) نهائياً من الترجمة العربية للجملة :

e.g.- Ahmed is a hard-working student.

- أحمد طالب جاد فى العمل.

- My house is in a quiet part of the city.

- يقع منزلى فى جزء هادئ من المدينة.

PART 2

السؤال : قالوا لي أن الفعل (have) متعدد المعاني، فكيف أترجمه إلى العربية ؟
هذا كلام صحيح، فهذا الفعل يستخدم بمعاني كثيرة منها :

(أ) المعنى الأصلي للفعل (have) هو (يمتلك / عنده / لديه) حسب الزمن :

- I have a house with a small garden. - لدى / عندي / أمتلك منزلاً ذو حديقة صغيرة.

(ب) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يتناول طعاماً أو شرباً) :

- I had some meat and rice for lunch yesterday. - تناولت بعض اللحم والأرز في الغداء أمس.

(ج) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يقيم / يعقد / يحضر) :

- I will have a big party on the occasion of my daughter's success. - سأقيم حفلاً كبيراً بمناسبة نجاح ابنتي.

(د) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يعاني / لديه معاناه) :

- She had a bad headache after the party. - لقد عانت من صداع شديد بعد الحفل.

السؤال : هل بالفعل كلمة (only) تحتاج لمعاملة خاصة في الترجمة ؟

نعم بالفعل، ولكي تترجم بشكل سليم لا بد أن تتذكر دائماً أن هذا الفعل يقصر الكلمة التي تأتي بعده مباشرة :

- Only my mother helped me with my homework. - أمي فقط هي من ساعدتني في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother only helped me with my homework. - لم تقم أمي إلا بمساعدتي في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother helped only me with my homework. - ساعدتني أمي أنا فقط في واجبي المنزلي.

- My mother helped me with only my homework. - ساعدتني أمي في واجبي المنزلي فقط.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنجليزية مبنياً للمجهول ؟

(أ) يفضل تحويل الجملة الإنجليزية المبنية للمجهول إلى المبنى للمعلوم عند الترجمة للعربية طالما كان الفاعل معروفاً :

- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon. - لقد أجرى العملية جراح مشهور. / أجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.

(ب) من الممكن استخدام الفعل (تم) يليه الاسم من الفعل الأصلي مثل :

e.g. - The task was carried out on time. - تم تنفيذ المهمة في الوقت المحدد.

Now, test yourself**Translate into Arabic :**

1. A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life.
2. Always do right. This will please some people and astonish the rest.
3. Awareness should be spread among citizens to make great efforts to reduce pollution.
4. Be free and respect others' freedom.
5. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour.
6. Children learn good habits by imitating of their elders.
7. Creative thinking is essential for success in life.
8. Currently, there're major powers trying to dominate the whole world through technology.
9. Don't cry over spilt milk.
10. Eat less, exercise more, and fill your eyes with sleep.
11. Egypt is one of the earliest cradles of human civilisation.
12. Everyone has the right to express their opinion freely and take part in the social life.
13. Experts believe that solar energy may have replaced oil by the 2050.
14. Good citizens are ready to sacrifice their lives when their country is in danger.
15. Great efforts have been made for the equality between men and women.
16. Growing older is a natural process that we cannot stop.
17. Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood.
18. Has technology made the world a better place to live in?
19. If an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it.
20. If you risk nothing, then you risk everything.
21. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self-confidence and self-dependence.
22. In the future, the world's supplies of oil will dry up.
23. In the third world countries, the number of smokers is increasing, mainly due to ignorance.
24. Inside their homes, children get their first lessons in behaving towards others.

El Moasser's Glossary for Translation Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالترجمة.

Economy and work الاقتصاد والعمل

ambitions	تطلعات / طموحات	low income	دخل منخفض
bargains	صفقات	manufacture	صنع
budget	ميزانية	manufacturer	صانع
capital	رأس المال	marketing	تسويق
capitalism	رأسمالية	monopolist	محتكر
commerce	تجارة	monopoly	احتكار
commercial	تجاري	national duty	واجب وطني
compete	ينافس	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
congestion	التكدس / الزحام	national income	الدخل القومي
consume	يستهلك	nationalization	تأميم
consumer	مستهلك	nationalize	يؤمم
consumption	استهلاك	necessitate	يستلزم
cost of living	تكاليف المعيشة	overpopulation	الانفجار السكاني
creation	خلق / إيجاد	price control	ضبط الأسعار
crime	الجريمة	priorities	أولويات
current stage	المرحلة الراهنة	products	منتجات
dealer	وكيل	profits	أرباح
development	تنمية / تطوير	promote	يُفَعِّل / يُرَوِّج
discount	تخفيض / خصم	prosperity	ازدهار
dissatisfaction	عدم إشباع	rate	معدل
due care	الاهتمام اللازم	rationalise	يضبط / يُرشد
economic	اقتصادي	rationalization	ترشيد
economic crisis	الأزمة الاقتصادية	reclaim	يستصلح
economical	موفر / اقتصادي	reclamation	استصلاح
economics	علم الاقتصاد	recycling	إعادة تصنيع
economist	خبير اقتصادي	reduction	تخفيض
enterprise	مشروع / منشأة	reform	إصلاح
expenses	نفقات	renaissance	نهضة
facing	مواجهه / مواجهة	resources	موارد
famine	مجاعة	revenue	عائد
finance	مال / يمول	risky	خطير
financial	مالي	sales / discounts	مبيعات / تخفيضات
food shortage	نقص الطعام	shares	أسهم
		short-term	قصير الأجل
		slogan	شعار
		slums / squatters	العشوائيات

foreign aids	معونات خارجية	long-term	طويل الأجل
funds	مدخرات	spread	انتشار / ينتشر
goods / commodities	السلع / البضائع	standard of	مستوي المعيشة
grant(ed)	يُمنح / يمنح	living	إحصائيات
greed	جشع / طمع	statistics	بورصة
growth	نمو	stock market	معايير صارمة
handmade	صناعة يدوية	strict measures	إجراءات صارمة
hard currency	عملة صعبة	strict procedures	الدعم
high income	دخل مرتفع	subsidy	ضريبة
humour	الفكاهة / المرح	tax	يتاجر / تجارة
in turn	بدوره	trade	تاجر
inflation	التضخم	trader	البطالة
inhabitants	سكان	unemployment	اضطراب
inject	يُضخ	unrest	كبير / شامل
insurance	تأمين	vast	من خلال / عبّر
investment	استثمار	via	العنف
investor	مستثمر	violence	رخاء / رفاهية
job opportunities	فرص عمل	welfare	الشباب
labour force	القوى العاملة	youth	

النيل وتوفير المياه The Nile and saving water

a matter of life or death	مسألة حياة أو موت	improve relationships	تحسن العلاقات
artery of life	شريان الحياة	International Treaty	معاهدة دولية
civilisation	الحضارة	lack of water	نقص المياه
constructive dialogue	الحوار البناء	majority	معظم / أغلبية
cradle	مهد	must	ضرورة
dam	سد	national security	الأمن القومي
date back to	يعود تاريخه إلى	Nile Basin	حوض النيل
demand for	الطلب على	Renaissance Dam	سد النهضة
downstream countries	دول المصب	shortage	نقص
drought	جفاف / قحط	supplies	موارد
Egypt's share	حصة مصر	main source	المصدر الرئيسي
emergency meeting	اجتماع طارئ	thirst	الظمأ
essential	ضروري	tributaries	روافد
generate	يُولد	upstream countries	دول المنبع
company	صُحبة	water security	الأمن المائي

consequently	لذلك	noncommunicable	غير ساري
contributions	إسهامات	noninfectious	غير معدى
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	nuclear	نوى
creativity	الابداع	nuclear waste	النفايات النووية
creatures	مخلوقات	observatory	مرصد
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	owe	يدين
destructive	مدمر	pathology	علم امراض الدم
developed countries	دول متقدمة	pharmaceutical	خاص بالصيدلة
developing countries	دول نامية	philosophy	الفلسفة
deviation	إنحراف	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي
diabetes	مرض السكر	physical illness	مرض بدني
diagnose	يُشخص	physiology	علم وظائف الأعضاء
diagnosis	تشخيص للمرض	physiotherapy	العلاج الطبيعي
disaster	كارثة	pillars	ركائز
disastrous	مدمر / كارثي	positive	بناء / إيجابي
distance learning	تعلم عن بُعد	potentials	قدرات
donation	تبرع	power plant	محطة توليد طاقة
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات	preservation	صيانة
eagle	صقر	prevention	وقاية
ecology	علم البيئة	properly	بشكل صحيح
Egyptology	علم المصريات	proportional to	متناسب مع
end / target / goal	غاية / هدف	psychiatrist	طبيب نفسي
endanger	يعرض لخطر	psychologist	عالم نفسي
epidemic	وباء	psychology	علم النفس
erosion	تآكل / تعرية	public opinion	الرأي العام
evergreen	دائم الخضرة	radiation	إشعاع
evils	شرور	rare species	نسيبة نادرة
existence	وجود	reactor	مفاعل
extinction	إندثار / إنقراض	reform	إصلاح
females	إناث	regional	إقليمي
fever	حمى	remarkable progress	تقدم ملحوظ
		remedy	علاج

field	مجال	respiratory system	جهاز تنفسي
fragile	هش / ضعيف	restoration	ترميم
frustration	إحباط	scales	قشور / موازين
generation	جيل / توليد (طاقة)	scientific research	البحث العلمي
genetic engineering	الهندسة الوراثية	seabed	قاع البحر
global warming	الإحتباس الحراري	self	النفس / الذات
harness	يُسَخَّرُ	set up	يُنشئ
herbal medicines	الأدوية العشبية	sociology	علم الاجتماع
heritage	تراث	sooner or later	عاجلا أم اجلا
hibernation	بيات شتوي	sterilization	تعقيم
humidity	رطوبة	stubborn	عنيد
hurricane	إعصار	support	يدعم / دعم
ideal solution	حل مثالي	surgery	جراحة
immune system	جهاز المناعة	symptoms	أعراض
impact	أثر	tame	أليف
incurable	لا علاج له	techniques	تقنيات
indigestion	عسر الهضم	thanks to	بفضل
individual	الفرد	therapist	معالج
infection	عدوى	therapy	علاج
infectious	معدى	thinkers	مفكرين
injection	حقن	tide	المد والجزر
innovation	الإبتكار	tornado	إعصار
insomnia	أرق	transfusion	نقل دم
instinct	غريزة / فطرة	tropical	إستوائي
intensive care	عناية مركزة	tumor	وَدَم
issue	قضية	vaccine	مصل / لقاح
kidneys	كليتين	vegetarian	إنسان نباتي
knowledge	المعرفة	vehicle	مركبة
limit	يُحد من / يقلل	waterfalls	شلالات
lungs	رئتين	wheel of production	عجلة الإنتاج
		zoology	علم الحيوان

Literature & Different Arts الأدب والفنون المختلفة

ancestors	أسلاف / أجداد	kindergarten (KG)	حضانة
aware	واع	loyalty	ولاء
awesome	مدهش / رهيب	manners	سلوكيات
barriers	حواجز	manuscripts	مخطوطات
borders	حدود	masterpieces	روائع
brain drain	هجرة المتفوقين	merely	فقط
bringing up	تنشئة	motives	دوافع
bullying	بلطجة	nobility	نبيل
censorship	رقابة	non-verbal	غير لفظي
coherence	ترابط / تناغم	nutrition	تغذية
commemorate	يحيى ذكرى	objective	موضوعي
cope with	يجاري / يساير	obstacle	عقبة
core	لب / جوهر	peer	نظير / ند
corner stone	حجر الزاوية	personal interests	مصالح شخصية
craftsmen	أصحاب الحرف	personify	يُجسد
creative	مبدع	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
cultural	ثقافي	potentials	قدرات
curriculum	مناهج	pre-historic	يخص ما قبل التاريخ
descendants	ذرية / نسل	principles	مبادئ
deterioration	تخلف / تدهور	procedures	إجراءات
edition	نسخة / طبعة	producer	مُنتج
elegance	أناقة	professional	مهني
enrich	يُثري	public library	مكتبة عامة
exceed	يتجاوز	public opinion	الرأي العام
faithfulness	إخلاص	reference	مرجع
fashion designer	مصمم أزياء	science fiction	خيال علمي
fashion houses	بيوت الموضة	spiritual	روحي
fashion show	عرض أزياء	sponsor	راعي
fine arts	فنون جميلة	sponsorship	رعاية
for entertainment	من أجل المتعة	storyteller	قصاص
		strategy	خطة

fortification
fortress
glory
graphics
heritage
hero
heroine
honest
imagination
immigrants
immortal
incidents
inspiration
invaders
justice

تحصين
حصن
مجد
فن الجرافيك
تراث
بطل
بطلة
صادق
خيال
مهاجرين
خالد
أحداث
الهام
غزاة
العدالة

sufficiency
suspense
talented
tastes
timid
traditions
UNESCO
unique
values
verbal
vision
warmth
weave
willingness
wonders

إكتفاء
تشويق
موهوب
أذواق
متحف / جبان
تقاليد
منظمة اليونسكو
فريد
قيم
لفظي
رؤية
دفء
ينسج
إستعداد
عجائب

السياسة والمجتمع Politics & Society

activist
administrative capital
ambassador
armed forces
assassinate
assassination
belonging
betray home
bomb
carry out
citizen
citizenship
civilian
civilized
commitment to
conflict

ناشط
العاصمة الإدارية
سفير
قوات مسلحة
يغتال
إغتيال
الإنتماء
يخون الوطن
قنبلة / يفجر قنبلة
يُنَفَّذ
مواطن
المواطنة
مدني
متحضر
الإلتزام بـ
صراع

military
military secrets
miracles
Muslims
nation
national security
national unity
nationalism
negotiate
negotiation
obstacles
parliament
partner
party
peace

حربي / عسكري
اسرار عسكرية
المعجزات
المسلمين
أمة
الامن القومي
وحدة وطنية
القومية
يفاوض
التفاوض
عقبات
برلمان
شريك
حزب
السلام

congested	متكدس	peace makers	صانع السلام
conspiracy	مؤامرة	policy	سياسة
constitution	دستور	politician	سياسي (شخص)
contribute to	يساهم في	politics	علم السياسة
cooperation	التعاون	pray	يدعو / يصلي
Copts	الأقباط	president	رئيس
crossroad	ملتقى	prevail	يسود / ينتشر
democracy	ديموقراطية	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
democratic	ديموقراطي	principles	المبادئ
devote	يُكرّس	progress	التقدم
dictatorship	ديكتاتورية	protective	واقفي
difficulty	صعوبة - مأزق	rebel	بتمرد
diplomacy	دبلوماسية	rebellion	نرد / متمرد
domination	هيمنة / سيطرة	refugee	لاجئي
efforts	جهود	regime	نظام حكم
eliminate	يقضي علي	rejecting	رفض - نبذ
emigration	الهجرة	require	يتطلب
equality	مساواة	resistance	مقاومة
exert	يبذل	restrictions	القيود - الضوابط
extremism	تطرف	revolutions	الثورات
extremist	متطرف	rights	حقوق
fatal	قاتل / خطير	sacrifice	بضحي - تضحية
flourish	يزدهر	secret agent	عميل سري
formal request	طلب رسمي	security forces	الجهزة الامن
freedom	حرية	service	خدمة
government bodies	المؤسسات الحكومية	shield	درع
governorate	محافظة	spy	جاسوس
heavenly religions	الديانات السماوية	spying	نخابر
housing	الإسكان	stability	استقرار
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	strictness	الحزم
human values	القيم الإنسانية	subjects	رعايا
ignorance	الجهل	tendency	توجه
illegal	غير شرعي		

illiteracy	الأمية	terrorism	الإرهاب
impose	يفرض	terrorist	إرهابي
independence	إستقلال	the state	الدولة
injustice	الظلم	tolerance	التسامح
intelligence	المخابرات	transitional stage	مرحلة إنتقالية
leak secrets	يسرب أسرار	treason	خيانة عظمى
legal	شرعي / قانوني	treaty	معاهدة
lethal	قاتل	truce	هدنة
liberation	تحرير	tyranny	طغيان
loyalty	انتماء	victim	ضحية
major	كبير - رئيسي	violate	ينتهك
martyr	شهيد	violation	انتهاك
		weapons	أسلحة

Various Issues

قضايا متنوعة

accommodation	إقامة	intimacy	ألفة - مودة
acquire	يكتسب	journalism	صحافة
amateur	هاو	local tourism	سياحة داخلية
amuse	يمتع / يسلى	magical	ساحر - خلاب
ancient / long-standing	عريق	major powers	قوي عظمي
annually	سنويا	manufacturer	صانع
athlete	لاعب ألعاب قوي	mass tourism	سياحة جماعية
attractions	أماكن جذب	miss the record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
audience	جمهور	monuments	أثار
ban	يحظر	motivate	يحث / يدفع
bear	يحمل	mountaineers	متسلقو الجبال
broaden	يُوسّع	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
champion	بطل رياضي	news agency	وكالة انباء
championship	بطولة رياضية	Olympic games	الالعاب الاولمبية
coach/ trainer	مدرب	outlet	مُتَنَفِّس - مخرج
competition	منافسة	pay	راتب / أجر
competitors	منافسين	pharaohs	فراعنة
conference tourism	سياحة المؤتمرات	physical fitness	لياقة بدنية
critical	نقدي / حرج	professional	محترف
criticism	نقد	prohibition	حظر - منع
criticize	ينقد		

cultural tourism
current events
decisive
deprive
deviation
dignity
disasters
disputes
dominance
dominate
earner
ecotourism
enrich
equality
erosion
fair play
farming
finals
flourish
flow of traffic
free press
migration
friendship
gallantry
generous
glory
grateful
greed
hard currency
homesickness
honour
hospitality
humour
hurricanes
ideal
ignorance
impression
instruct
interpret
interpreter

سياحة ثقافية
الأحداث الجارية
حازم / حاسم
يُحرم
الإنحراف
كرامة
كوارث
النزاعات
هيمنة / سيطرة
يهيمن / يسيطر على
مصدر دخل
سياحة صديقة للبيئة
يُشرى
المساواة
التعرية
اللعب النظيف
الزراعة
نهائيات
يزدهر
انسياب المرور
صحافة حرة
هجرة
الصدقة
الشهامة
كريم
المجد
شاكر / ممتن
جشع / طمع
عملة صعبة
حنين للوطن
شرف / بكرم
كرم الضيافة
فكاهة
أعاصير
مثالى
الجهل
إنطباع
يُعلم
يترجم فوري
مترجم فوري

propaganda
public relations
public transport
purity
rapprochement
rare
recreational tourism
reinforce
relationship
resort
rights
risk
rumour
satisfy
security
seek
self-confidence
self-dependence
selfishness
set a record
set an example
settlement
sightseeing
silver
source
stamina
stream
surroundings
take drugs
teamwork
therapeutic tourism
tourist site
tournament
traffic regulations
transition
travel agency
unite peoples
unselfishness
vacations
victory
virtues

الدعاية
علاقات عامة
المواصلات العامة
نقاء
التقارب
نادر
سياحة ترفيهية
يعزز - يدعم
العلاقة
منتجع
الحقوق
خطر
إشاعة
يُرضى / يُشبع
أمن
يسعى / يرغب في
ثقة بالنفس
لإعتماد على النفس
الأثانية
سجل رقما قياسيا
يعطي قدوة
نسوية / حل
زيارة المعالم
النضة / فضي
مصدر
قوة الاحتمال
التيار
الأشياء المحيطة
بتعاطى المخدرات
العمل الجماعي
سياحة علاجية
موقع سياحي
دورة
قواعد المرور
تحويل
وكالة سفريات
توحيد الشعوب
الإشارة
عطلات / اجازات
نصر
الفضائل

New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors

Interactive Notebook

الصف الثاني الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



EL-MOFASSER

GUIDE

2nd
Sec.
2021
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

PART

1 Student's Follow-up

page 3

1. Follow your progress in vocabulary

١. تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية

2. Homework (Answered at the end of the notebook)

٢. الواجب المنزلي (مجاب عنه في نهاية الكراسة)

3. Al-Azhar Exercises & Islamic selections

٣. تدريبات خاصة لطلبة الأزهر الشريف ومختارات إسلامية

PART

2 Assess yourself

قُيم نفسك

page 27

1. Vocabulary of Exams

المفردات التي قد تكون جديدة عليك داخل الاختبارات.

2. 5 Accumulative Assessment Model Tests on Units (According to the New System)

خمسة نماذج إختبارات تراكمية للتقييم على الوحدات طبقاً للمنظومة الجديدة.

3. 15 Assessment Model Tests on the whole curriculum (According to the New System)

خمسة عشر نموذج اختبار للتقييم على المنهج بأكمله (طبقاً للمنظومة الجديدة).

4. SB & WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات



تنويه : تابع مستواك أولا بأول إلكترونياً





1- Follow your progress in vocabulary

١. تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر

2- Homework

٢. واجب منزلي

3- Al-Azhar Exercises & Islamic selections

٣. تدريبات لطلبة الأزهر الشريف

تنويه

تابع مستواك أولاً
بأول إلكترونياً



Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر

UNIT 1

باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

تلاويه



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

.....	إرشاد	viral	.....
.....	أُسلوب / بَغِيَّة	sick	.....
.....	الترويج الرياضي	severity	.....
.....	تشغيل	severely	.....
.....	التنفس	serious	.....
.....	تنفيذي	resilience	.....
.....	الجهاز الصناعي	reaction	.....
.....	خلية	place	.....
.....	الدعم - يدعم	pioneer	.....
.....	سماع - علاوة	persuasive	.....
.....	شديد - حاد	persuading	.....
.....	الصدر	persuade	.....

marks

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

- : when an illness or injury that is very serious
- : very small living thing that causes disease
- : to do something because something else has been done
- : to do an action
- : the smallest separate part of a plant or animal
- : help someone or something to improve يتحسن or get better
- : a way that your body protects you from disease
- : a way of doing something with a skill
- : a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart
- : a disease caused by a virus or bacteria

2 Homework**Part I****Exercises on Vocabulary**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Taking protective measures will help reduce the
a. technique b. immune system c. infection d. cell
2. A / An can make lots of people very ill.
a. organ b. virus c. muscle d. brain
3. She has cut her finger and now it is She tries to stop it by covering the cut.
a. infecting b. reacting c. boosting d. bleeding
4. The skin is the body's largest
a. organ b. virus c. muscle d. brain
5. The advertisement will really the number of toys the shops sell.
a. infect b. react c. boost d. bleed
6. You can see a/an of an onion using a simple microscope.
a. technique b. immune system c. chest d. cell
7. A lot of people have been with COVID - 19.
a. infected b. reacted c. boosted d. bled
8. A good diet can help to support the
a. technique b. immune system c. chest d. cell
9. We hope the patient will to the new medicine.
a. infect b. react c. boost d. bleed
10. Don't repeat yourself. Try using a new to solve the problem.
a. technique b. membrane c. organ d. cell

Part II**Exercises on Structures**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The heart pump a lot of blood through your body.
a. has to b. need to c. doesn't have to d. mustn't
2. You eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them.
a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to
3. Wrap the bandage around the injured person's arm. You make it very tight, but make sure it can't come off.
a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. a & c

4. You pay to go in the museum. It is free to enter.
a. mustn't b. don't have to c. needn't d. b & c
5. If anything is in the injured person's arm, you pull it out because it could hurt them more.
a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. mustn't
6. Leila work hard if she wants to pass her exams.
a. must b. has to c. had to d. needn't have
7. You take a bandage or cloth and press it down on the area which is bleeding.
a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. a & c
8. You forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold!
a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. b & c
9. You put on gloves before helping someone who's bleeding.
a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. mustn't
10. You buy a ticket before you get on the train.
a. should b. shouldn't c. have to d. don't have to

Part III Writing Skill

Write an essay of about 180 words on :

“The immune system”

[illegible]

UNIT 2

باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

تدوينة



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

		marks
.....	عبدان الأكل	questionnaire
.....	فضولي	prepared
.....	كمية	preparation
.....	متحير	personality
.....	المحار	past
.....	محور - مقلّي	optional
.....	معتقدات	occasionally
.....	مُعقد	occasional
.....	مُناسبة هامة - حدث	light
.....	مُناسبة - يُسبب	festival
.....	يأكل خارج المنزل	extract
.....	يحتفل به	difficulty

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

- : a choice you can make in a particular situation
- : a time when something special happens
- : belonging or relating to one person, rather than to other people or to people in general
- : do something fun to show that an event is special
- : following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time
- : get something ready for use
- : give someone food or drinks as part of a meal
- : have a meal outside your home
- : how much of something there is
- : meet people and spend time with them
- : not difficult or complicated to do or understand

2

Homework

Part I

Exercises on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A person who is obese has to reduce the of food they eat.
a. occasion b. amount c. chopsticks d. extract
2. Talk to little children using a language they can understand.
a. simple b. curious c. personal d. complicated
3. The Aymans his promotion in a five-star hotel.
a. served b. ate out c. celebrated d. prepared
4. Celebrating Sham El-Nessim outdoors is a / an I will never miss.
a. occasion b. amount c. chopsticks d. extract
5. I need help with this lesson because I find it
a. simple b. traditional c. personal d. complicated
6. I must myself to what will happen to a void being shocked.
a. serve b. eat out c. celebrate d. prepare
7. I've read a / an of this novel. It is really worth reading.
a. occasion b. quantity c. chopsticks d. extract
8. Colouring eggs on Sham El-Nassim day is something It dates back to the time of the Pharaohs.
a. simple b. traditional c. personal d. complicated
9. They great seafood here in this restaurant.
a. serve b. eat out c. celebrate d. prepare
10. The Chinese find it easy to eat using
a. oysters b. amount c. chopsticks d. seafood

Part II

Exercises on Structures

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Tomorrow, I will be We can meet then.
a. busy b. busier c. less busier d. less busy
2. The you work, the more you will achieve.
hard b. harder c. hardly d. less hard
3. Let's leave. This's film I have ever watched here in this cinema.
a bad b. a worse c. the worst d. best

4. Alexandria is the second city in Egypt.
a. largest b. the largest c. larger d. least large
5. My car is expensive, but your car is expensive.
a. the most b. more c. even more d. b & c
6. Most students have gone home, but are still waiting in front of the school.
a. all b. none c. some d. any
7. They don't allow here.
a. smoking b. smoke c. to smoke d. a & c
8. My tablet is good, but my sister's is
a. good b. better c. best d. more good
9. Sama is the same as Abdulrahman.
a. old b. older c. oldest d. age
10. Nasser is my friend.
a. close b. closest c. a & b d. the closest

Part III Writing Skill

Write an email of about 180 words on :

“My favourite dish”

Address the email to Hany whose email is hany@yahoo.com

Your name is maher and your email is maher@yahoo.com

[illegible]



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

marks

.....	يلخص	farmland	.....
.....	يلتزم - يمتثل	proposal	.....
.....	يطرح - يقدم	summary	.....
.....	يتضمن - يُضمّن	solution	.....
.....	يستثمر	agriculturalist	.....
.....	يدير / يشرف على	farming	.....
.....	يخلق - يبتكر	hydroponics	.....
.....	يتكهن - يتنبأ	agricultural	.....
.....	مصدر	algae	.....
.....	مُستدام - صديق للبيئة	various	.....
.....	محصول غذائي	seaweed	.....
.....	كوكب الأرض	rainforest	.....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

- : (the introduction of) new ideas or methods
- : a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way
- : a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food
- : a plant that grows in the sea
- : a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from
- : a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water
- : able to continue without causing damage to the environment
- : animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
- : food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold

10. : someone who does not eat meat or fish
 11. : the planet that we live on
 12. : the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm
 13. : the practice or science of farming
 14. : the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil
 15. : the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities

2 Homework

Part I

Exercises on Vocabulary

مجاب عليه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Around 30% of Egyptians work in farming and
 a. algae b. agriculture c. source d. variety
2. It is not to use petrol in cars, as one day, we will have no more oil.
 a. clear b. various c. sustainable d. extraordinary
3. My uncle keeps on his farm, such as sheep and goats.
 a. proposal b. chemicals c. innovation d. livestock
4. The weather has been very good for the cotton this year.
 a. crop b. evidence c. education d. rainfall
5. Food went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory.
 a. hydroponics b. vegetarian c. production d. algae
6. Technological means that we can now make seawater safe to drink.
 a. livestock b. innovation c. information d. seaweed
7. The of crops grown on that farm is huge.
 a. algae b. agriculture c. source d. variety
8. The Nile is the main of freshwater for drinking and agriculture.
 a. source b. produce c. organisation d. rainforest
9. Being a he eats no meat at all.
 a. agriculturalist b. vegetarian c. farmer d. nocturnal
10. To be healthy, your diet should fresh fruit and vegetables.
 a. invest b. include c. involve d. b & c

Part II

Exercises on Structures

مجاب عليه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I think he fish for dinner.
 a. will have b. having c. are going to have d. will have had

UNIT 4

باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

لغوي



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

marks

.....	تعبيرات (وجه)	suffix	.....
.....	خبير لغة	prefix	.....
.....	رسمي	introduction	.....
.....	رمز تعبيري	blog(ged)	.....
.....	علي علم - مُنْزَك	blogger	.....
.....	مُبتكر - مُخترع	section	.....
.....	موسوعة مفردات	linguistics	.....
.....	موضوع - فكرة رئيسية	necessary	.....
.....	نغمة الصوت - النبرة	necessity	.....
.....	وجهي	selfie	.....
.....	يستشهد بـ - يُنَوِّه	message(v)	.....
.....	يسئ استخدام	conclusion	.....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

- : to not understand properly
- : to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy
- : the system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment
- : the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking
- : someone who studies or teaches linguistics
- : someone who introduces changes and new ideas
- : information that is discovered as the result of research into something
- : formal language is used in official or serious situations
- : an icon used in electronic messages and on websites
- : a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up the name of something
- : a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way
- : a short form of a word or expression
- : a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct

14. : a photograph you take of yourself
 15. : a personal website diary for other people to read
 16. : a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word
 17. : a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word
 18. : a book that lists words in groups that have similar meanings

2 Homework

Part I Exercises on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We usually use English when we send text messages to friends.
 a. formal b. informal c. official d. unofficial
- He is a real He can improve or create new devices.
 a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
- A photo that I take to myself is called a / an
 a. selfie b. acronym c. message d. emoji
- Donating money does not mean that someone is rich. It usually means they are generous.
 a. positively b. negatively c. necessarily d. loudly
- A person who does not like you is more likely to you.
 a. recommend b. support c. understand d. misunderstand
- Mm! don't expect her to agree after she has
 a. followed b. frowned c. concluded d. communicated
- "OU" is a / an of 'Open University'.
 a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
- His sharp frightens her.
 a. tone b. suffix c. selfie d. thesaurus
- A well-known has created the material for this course.
 a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
- A smiling icon is a / an which expresses happiness or satisfaction.
 a. selfie b. acronym c. message d. emoji

Part II Exercises on Structures

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ahmed have been unkind to his sister, Rodayna. He knew she would be upset.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
- Hossam was working with me all day, so you have seen him at the park.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't

3. Omar have helped Ali, but he didn't because they aren't friends anymore.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
4. Why hasn't he called? You said he would call when he got to the hotel and he have arrived by now.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
5. Thank you. It's a fantastic gift, but you have spent so much money on me.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
6. I have gone to bed earlier last night. I'm really tired today.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
7. I have practised playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret it.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
8. You have shouted at your sister. You knew it would make her unhappy and it was the wrong thing to do.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
9. You have caught the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
10. You have seen Manal in the park this morning. She has been with me at my house all day.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
11. I can't believe that you still haven't received the parcel. I sent it three weeks ago, so it have arrived by now.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
12. He have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't

Part III Writing Skill

Write an essay of about 180 words on :

"The advantages and disadvantages of using international technology words in a language"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

.....	أثر	advertise	.....
.....	تطبيق	rely	.....
.....	سطحية	install	.....
.....	سلوك - تصرف	behave	.....
.....	عرض - رؤية	follow	.....
.....	عيوب	profile	.....
.....	لافتة إعلانية	advertisers	.....
.....	متابع	subscriber	.....
.....	محدث	pros	.....
.....	مدمن	downloadable	.....
.....	مزيف - مكنوب	instant	.....
.....	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	unreliable	.....
.....	مُمول	sociology	.....

marks

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

- : to save something from the internet onto your computer
- : to remove a message or photo you have put on social media
- : to put information on social media
- : to make something better
- : to install the most recent version of a program
- : to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something
- : the things that a person or animal does
- : the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech etc.
- : someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites
- : information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again
- : including all the latest information
- : an occasion when a post, an image or a video is watched online

2 Homework

Part I

Exercises on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Click here to be a of the person or group.
a. post b. view c. follower d. tone
- Click here to a message or photo and share it.
a. subscribe b. post c. addict d. chat
- This shows you how many the video has had.
a. unlikes b. views c. likes d. b & c
- If you to the page, you will become a follower.
a. subscribe b. post c. addict d. chat
- My laptop has a problem. I need to a technician about it.
a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down
- I will a new an important file to this site.
a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt
- Please my photo. I don't like sharing my photos online.
a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down
- This version of the application is out of date. You need to it.
a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt
- The free service on this website is not good enough. I will to premium.
a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down
- I am not sure if I will be able to to living abroad.
a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt

Part II

Exercises on Structures

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Nada is supposed dinner.
a. to cook b. to cooking c. to be cooked d. cooking
- Dinner is supposed by Nada.
a. to cook b. to cooking c. to be cooked d. cooking
- I seem the first student to arrive at school today.
a. being b. to being c. be d. to be
- It to snow last week.
a. didn't suppose b. wasn't supposed c. isn't supposed d. doesn't suppose

5. I it would snow last week.
a. didn't suppose b. wasn't supposed c. isn't supposed d. don't suppose
6. Leen meant you but she unluckily forgot.
a. to call b. to have called c. to be called d. calls
7. Amr seems a good day.
a. have b. having c. to be having d. has
8. The train is meant at 9 o'clock.
a. leaves b. leaving c. to be left d. to leave
9. My teacher to be happy with my work.
a. meant b. supposed c. a & b d. seemed
10. My mother to be angry with me.
a. seem b. seems c. is seeming d. is seemed

Part III Writing Skill

Write an email of about 180 words on :

“How to use social media well”

Address the email to Reda whose email is reda@gmail.com

Your name is Nour and your email is nour@gmail.com

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

UNIT 6

باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

تلاوه



1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

		marks
.....	مُتَسَوِّل (شحات)	leader
.....	مدفأة	employer
.....	يبقى على اتصال به	main
.....	يتشاجر - يتساقط	memory
.....	يتنهد - تنهيدة	pocket
.....	يتوسل - يتسول	feedback
.....	يُحسِّن التعامل مع	including
.....	يُذكر - يُعيد ذكرى	donation
.....	يُعاشِر - يَألف - يرافِق	attention
.....	يُكَدِّس - يتكدس	friendship
.....	يُندم - الندم	gift
.....	يُندمج - يَألف	generous

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

- : to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it
- : to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
- : stop communicating
- : stop being friendly
- : spend time with
- : not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
- : continue to communicate with
- : be friendly with
- : a group of things put on top of each other
- : a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed
- : - make you remember

UNIT 6



باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

تلوته

1 Check your Vocabulary

A Vocabulary

marks

.....	مُسَوِّل (شحات)	leader	.....
.....	مدفأة	employer	.....
.....	يبقى على اتصال بـ	main	.....
.....	يتشاجر - يتساقط	memory	.....
.....	يتنهد - تنهيدة	pocket	.....
.....	يتوسَّل - يتسول	feedback	.....
.....	يُحسِّن التعامل مع	including	.....
.....	يُذكر - يُعيد ذكرى	donation	.....
.....	يُعائِر - يألف - يرافق	attention	.....
.....	يُكَدِّس - يتكدس	friendship	.....
.....	يندم - الندم	gift	.....
.....	يندمج - يألف	generous	.....

B Definitions

Write the word(s) suitable for each definition

- : to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it
- : to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
- : stop communicating
- : stop being friendly
- : spend time with
- : not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
- : continue to communicate with
- : be friendly with
- : a group of things put on top of each other
- : a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed
- : - make you remember

2 Homework

Part I

Exercises on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Does that photo a lot to you?
a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
2. The race starts when you the gun.
a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
3. I'm sure Taha didn't to upset you.
a. attend b. mean c. intend d. b & c
4. He doesn't work, so his boss will him.
a. fire b. sack c. a & b d. shoot
5. He was so that he wouldn't spend money on anything.
a. mean b. main c. generous d. a & c
6. Mr Mohammed has of work to do. He doesn't have any free time.
a. feedback b. piles c. tones d. gifts
7. He didn't say anything, but I knew Dad was disappointed when I heard him
a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
8. Anna will her mum to make her a chocolate cake for her birthday because it is her favourite.
a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
9. Hassan and I are no longer friends. I have with him.
a. fallen out b. hung out c. got into d. kept in
10. I didn't see him all day yesterday. He with his friends all day.
a. fell out b. hung out c. got into d. kept in

Part II

Exercises on Structures

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If I hadn't learnt English, I international friends.
a. would have b. wouldn't have c. would have had d. wouldn't have had
2. He wouldn't have felt so alone if he about people.
a. cares b. cared c. had cared d. hadn't cared
3. If we didn't take our map with us, we lost.
a. might get b. might have got c. should get d. should have got
4. If you don't water plants, they
a. die b. don't die c. died d. would die

UNIT 2

هذا هو الجزء الثاني من الكتاب

Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. You don't have the right to interfere with other people's personal lives.
2. We are accelerating my sister's birthday tomorrow.
3. You need to repair for your next exams.
4. This restaurant introduces great shrimps.
5. Homemade food is healthier, but sometimes I have to eat in.

Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. I have never met such a best friend.
2. I think Ping pong is the less popular game all over the world.
3. It is not so colder today as yesterday.
4. January is coldest month of the year.
5. Ahmed and Khalid aren't the same tall.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. Ali and Ahmed are the same height. (tall)
2. Everest is the highest mountain in the world. (high)
3. He is the best history teacher I have ever met. (better)
4. He got the worst marks in school. (worse)
5. He got the best marks in our class. (Nobody....)

UNIT 3

هذا هو الجزء الثالث من الكتاب

Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. Sugar cane is one of the main crops in Egypt....
2. Increasing pollution will solve our economic problems....
3. Farming is the science and practice of growing plants....
4. Keeping livestock on farms needs experience....
5. The ground is the planet on which we live....

Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. Do you please look after the baby while I am away?
2. Don't leave food uncovered after you had prepared it.
3. Don't throw away any of these papers until I had told you.
4. According to the timetable, we are having English after break.
5. We have hired a chalet. We will spend the next two weeks in the North Coast.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. My father has just said, "I'll buy you a computer if you succeed."
2. He intends to travel abroad.
3. I'll cut off the electric current if you don't pay the bill.
4. I'm going to decorate my flat.
5. I've arranged to give my wedding party next week.

(promised)
(going)
(He threatens)
(decided)
(am)

UNIT 4 4 مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. His ton shows that he has been disappointed.
2. We use format language when we write to officials.
3. Having a degree in a flaw doesn't necessary mean that he is an expert.
4. He has introduced a lot of new ideas. He is a real elevator.
5. The brown on his face shows that he is not happy.

II Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. I want he to behave well.
2. Nada warned me to use her things again.
3. Your knee could have hurt. We need to check.
4. Ahmed could be played tennis in the club right now.
5. He must have gone out. I don't know.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. I regret wasting my time.
2. I suppose he will be here soon.
3. You should have got up early.
4. The train to Cairo had left before I reached the station five minutes ago.
5. He didn't solve the problem although he had the ability to do so.

(have)
(supposed)
(shouldn't)
(travelling)
(solved)

UNIT 5 5 مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. I trust him because he is reliant.
2. You should learn how to adopt to living in the countryside.
3. This video had thirty thousand viewing in ten minutes.
4. Keep your applications out-of-date.
5. Facebook allows you 5000 friends in addition to other following.

I Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. He seems not working hard.
2. I can hear loud voices while talking to him on the phone. He seems to have walked in a market.
3. He felt exhausted. He seems to work hard all day.
4. She is seeming to be busy.
5. She seems to be taller than she really is.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. I have to be home by midnight. (supposed)
2. Did you expect us to be here so early? (supposed)
3. We are discussing the wrong topic. (supposed)
4. We expected the weather to be sunny. (supposed to be)
5. Rokaya seems to be happy these days. (as if)

UNIT 6

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

I Vocabulary

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly:

1. Someone who is main won't offer you anything.
2. He is busy checking the pales of files in front of him.
3. I like Ann because we get off well with each other.
4. He was lucky to get on the team from the first match.
5. Old songs bring at childhood memories.

II Language

1. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write it correctly :

1. If it is fine tomorrow, the match won't be played.
2. If she was taller, she would have played basketball.
3. If it had rained anymore, there would be serious floods.
4. If I'd have more time, I'd go for long walks.
5. If I were rich. I will buy a big house.

2. Rewrite the following using the words in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. He didn't work hard. Perhaps that's why he failed. (If)
2. He was put in prison because he accepted bribes. (Unless)
3. Adel left his coat at home, so he caught a cold. (If)
4. You didn't do very well in the test because you didn't do enough revision. (If)
5. Reem lost her tennis match because she didn't have enough practice. (Had)

Islamic Selections

Chapter (4) Fasting

◆ Answer the following questions :

1. What is fasting ?
2. For whom was fasting made compulsory ? Why ?
3. What should the faithful do to get closer to Paradise ?
4. When was the Holy Quran revealed ?
5. What would happen if a Muslim adheres to fasting and the recitation of the Holy Quran ?

Chapter (5) Pilgrimage

◆ Answer the following questions :

1. What does Allah grant those who perform accepted Pilgrimage ?
2. Where do millions of Muslims go every year to perform Pilgrimage ?
3. How do pilgrims come to Blessed Mecca ?
4. What do all Muslims know well ?
5. What does the Muslim Brotherhood show ?

احرص على اقتناء



EL-MONASSER

كتاب

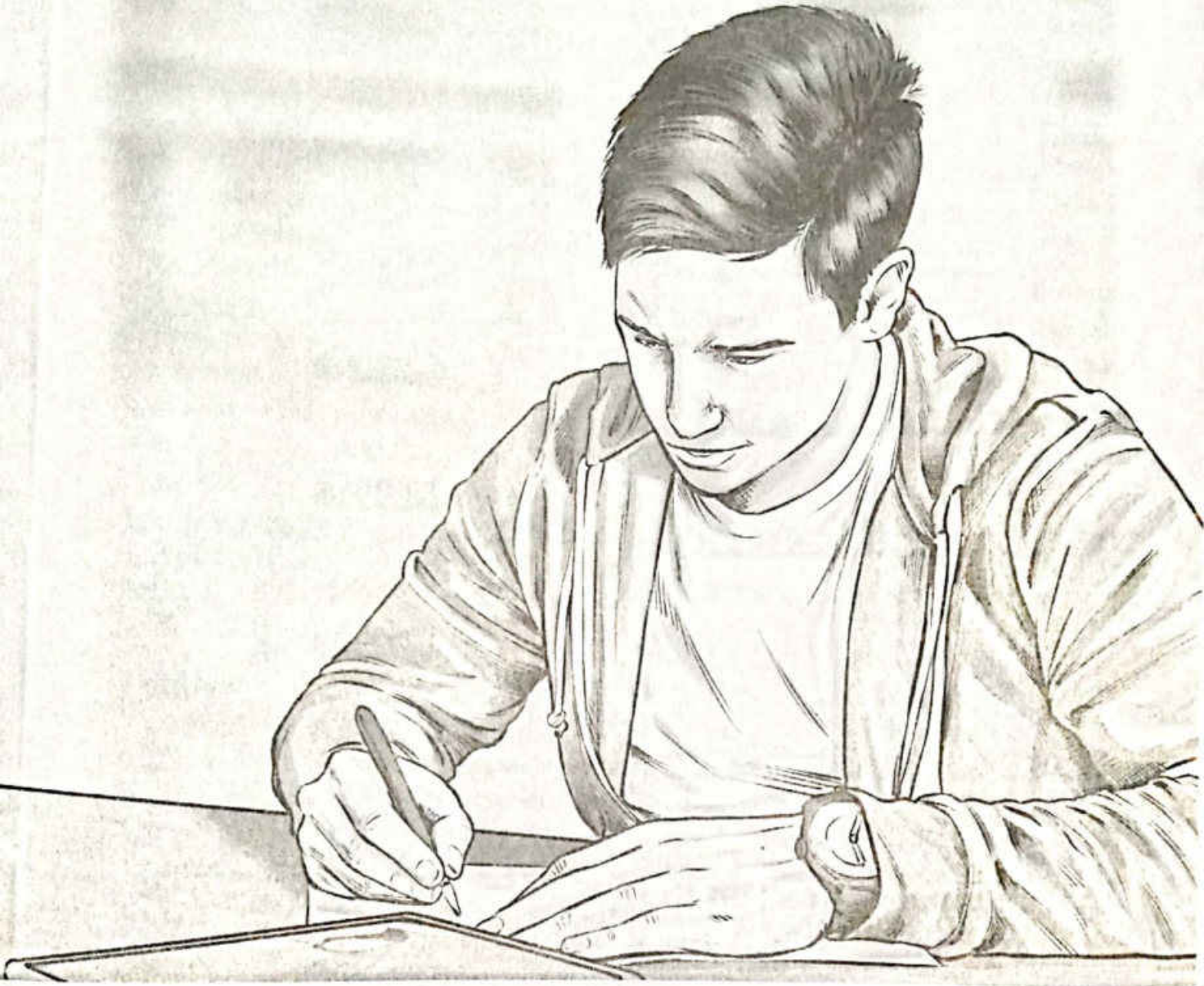
لنماذج البوكليت The Booklet

اللغة الإنجليزية

الصف الثاني الثانوي

المطابقة للمنظومة التعليمية الجديدة





1. 5 Accumulative Assessment Model Tests on Units
(According to the New System)

خمسة نماذج إختبارات تراكمية للتقييم على الوحدات طبقاً للمنظومة الجديدة.

2. 15 Assessment Model Tests on the whole curriculum
(According to the New System)

خمسة عشر نموذج إختبار للتقييم على المنهج بأكمله (طبقاً للمنظومة الجديدة).

3. SB & WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

Vocabulary Of Exams

المفردات اللغوية التي قد تكون جديدة عليك داخل الاختبارات

يصدق على - يشهد صحة كذا
ذو ثقافة رفيعة

5 Accumulative sample Tests

Test (1) based on Units 1 & 2

poverty
salutations
declare
regain
composure
forsake

فقير
تحيات (حامية العسكرية)
أعبر به
استعيد
رباطه العائش - رصانة
أهجر / تنحلي عن

validate
highbrow

Model 3

يسنعر / يشعر
تودة

Model 4

sense (v)
hesitation

مخافة
مقاومة

Model 5

dismiss
resistance

يخرد من / يحرم من

Model 6

deprive of

يرتبط به
يثرى

Model 7

(be) associated with
enrich

يسجل في دورة تدريبية
فضولي / محب للاستطلاع
يكتسب

Model 8

enroll in a course
curious
acquire

السياحة البيئية

Model 9

ecotourism

غامضة - ملتبس
يسطر على

Model 10

ambiguous
dominate
drawback
inadequate
profitable
slogan

غائب
عائق
غير مناسب / غير ملائم
مربح
شعار

Model 11

waggle

يهز

globalisation
compliment
glance
unemployment
illiteracy
eradicate

العولمة
يجامل
يلقي نظرة خاطفة
البطالة
الأمية
يسحو

Test (2) based on Units 3 & 4

frustrated
tension
toughness

محبط
توتر
جد - صلابة

Test (3) based on Units 5 & 6

compartment
optimistic

مقسمة - حجرة
متفائل

Test (4) based on Units 1, 2 & 3

contrary
visible
naked eye
self sacrifice
deviation

مكس - مضاد
مرئي
العين المجردة
التضحية بالنفس
الانحراف

Test (5) based on Units 4, 5 & 6

embarrassed
justification

مخجل
تبرير

15 Assessment Model on the whole curriculum

خمسة عشر نموذج للتقييم على المنهج بأكمله

Model 1

nuisance
inhibit
unconscious

مصدر إزعاج
يمنع - يردع
فاقد الوعي

Model 2

facial features
tendency

ملامح الوجه
إنحاء

15. to get him out of prison?
 a. What have do they to do
 c. What have they do to do
 b. What do have they to do
 d. What do they have to do
16. Of the two novels, which is to read tonight?
 a. most interesting
 b. more interesting
 c. less interesting
 d. least interesting

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Once Wealth and Poverty approached a merchant and introduced themselves as visitors. The merchant offered his salutations to both of them and said: "May I know what brings you to my humble shop?" Wealth said: "We want you to judge and tell us who is more beautiful between us two?" The merchant was in a fix. If he were to declare wealth as more beautiful than poverty, it would curse him. If he were to declare poverty as more beautiful than wealth, wealth would forsake him. However, he regained his composure and said: "I have great respect for you both. Would you please act according to my instructions? Then only I can judge properly." The visitors agreed. He said: "Mother wealth, would you please go to the entrance (gates) and walk into the house? Mother, poverty! Would you please walk from here towards the gates? I can have a good look at you both, from near and far." The two visitors did walk as the merchant wished them to. Then the merchant happily declared: "Mother wealth! You appear very beautiful when you enter the house. Mother poverty! You look very beautiful when you leave the house."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The word "visitors" refers to
 a. wealth and poverty
 b. the wisdom
 c. the problems
 d. the merchants
18. The way to solve a problem is to
 a. stop thinking
 b. hesitate
 c. think calmly
 d. rush
19. The underlined word "fix" can be replaced by
 a. repair
 b. mend
 c. mess
 d. miss
20. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?
 a. Poverty wins
 b. Wealth wins
 c. Both wealth and poverty lose
 d. A wise reaction

B. Answer the following questions:

21. What are the morals of the story? Mention TWO moral lessons.

.....

.....

22. What do wealth and poverty symbolize يرمز إلى in this story? Explain your opinion.

.....

.....

23. Do you think the merchant knows who the visitors are? How do you know?

24. What do you think of the merchant? What do you think of the way he acted?

25. Translate into Arabic :

C. Translation

Water conservation means using water resources wisely to do useful things. This is important because it keeps the water pure and helps us protect the environment.

26. Translate into English:

قبل اتخاذ قرارات مهمة، فكر في مزاياها وعيوبها، فهذا سيساعدك على اتخاذ أفضل قرار ممكن.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

The immune system

Test (2) based on Units 3 & 4

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Money for someone who finds or helps someone important means a / an
a. prize b. reward c. award d. occasion
2. To make long and difficult words easier, people often use for these words.
a. abbreviations b. explanations c. titles d. addresses
3. You should accept his generous offer before he his mind.
a. does b. leaves c. changes d. charges
4. He didn't know how to drive a car, so he much damage to his father's car when he tried driving it.
a. made b. caused c. gave d. saved



5. Focus your study and don't pay attention to anything else.
a. on b. for c. by d. at
6. Countries are always interested in their innovators in all fields. The word "innovators" here can be replaced by
a. customers b. criminals c. youth d. creators
7. The match at 8:30 in the evening. I want to watch it.
a. is going to start b. starts c. is starting d. will start
8. My cousin asked me him my new laptop, but I refused because I needed it badly.
a. to lend b. lending c. to lending d. lend
9. Mayar has decided to paint her car after the accident. She it.
a. is going to paint b. paints c. will paint d. is painting
10. Sorry, I forgot to bring my homework with me. I put it in my bag before coming here.
a. shouldn't b. can c. should have d. couldn't have
11. The mobile is ringing. I it.
a. am answering b. answer c. am going to answer d. will answer
12. Parents always advise their children friends with bad people.
a. to make b. not to make c. not to making d. to making
13. At seven o'clock tomorrow morning, I to Luxor. My bus leaves at 6 a.m.
a. will travel b. will have travelled c. am going to travel d. will be travelling
14. I must buy a nice present for my little sister. I promised her one.
a. to buying b. not to buying c. not to buy d. to buy
15. Laila seventeen next Monday.
a. will be b. is going to be c. is d. will being
16. I was invited a wedding party, but I couldn't come.
a. to attend b. attending c. to attending d. attend

B. Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Nothing we do in this world is done in isolation. It is now recognized that being able to work successfully with other people is one of the major keys to success. In every situation where you are in a group, you will need a skilled leader. All groups need leaders and all successful groups have good leaders. Groups without leaders always break down. Members of a leaderless group often begin to feel dissatisfied and frustrated. There are often arguments and tensions between people as there is nobody to keep the goals clear.

Some people are natural leaders. True leaders are born and you can spot them. They are people who combine toughness, fairness and humour. Although a lot of people agree that there are some natural-born leaders, most people now recognize that leadership can also be taught in training courses which use activities and techniques to develop a range of qualities which are necessary to be a good leader, such as self-confidence, calmness and intelligence. They also need to be able to work under pressure. Lastly, and probably most

importantly, good leaders need to be sensitive, sociable and be able to get on with a wide range of people. Good leadership is the ability to influence others and allow all members of the group to contribute.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title for this passage is ".....".
 - a. Teamwork is the main key to success
 - b. Teamwork is not necessary for succeeding the group
 - c. Leaderless groups are always frustrated
 - d. A good leader must be joking
18. According to the passage, Good leadership is
 - a. the capability to insult the members and discourage them
 - b. the power to have an effect on the members and give them chance to add new ideas
 - c. the capability to have a bad effect on the members
 - d. the ability to influence the members negatively
19. The word "toughness" in the passage means
 - a. the quality of being strong and determined
 - b. the quality of being difficult to deal with
 - c. the quality of being cruel
 - d. the quality of being severe
20. Why can't people in leaderless groups often achieve what they want?
 - a. because they have a skilled leader.
 - b. because there are a lot of members in the group.
 - c. because they are sensitive, sociable and be able to get on with each other.
 - d. There are often arguments and tensions between them as there is nobody to keep the goals clear.

B. Answer the following questions:

21. If you were a leader, how would you be? Why?

.....

.....

22. Are you for or against the idea of Teamwork? Give your justification.

.....

.....

23. What is your opinion of the leaders who are selfish? Give a reason.

.....

.....

24. Not everyone can be a leader, do you agree? Illustrate.

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

People are liked or disliked for their deeds and behaviour, some are honest and efficient, so they are respected and loved by all. Others are dishonest and selfish, so they are hated.

26. Translate into English:

التعليم ليس غاية ولكنه وسيلة لغاية بمعنى آخر نحن لا نعلم أطفالنا لمجرد التعليم ولكن لأجل أن نعددهم للحياة العملية وأن يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين قادرين على خدمة بلادهم عندما يكبروا.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Hard work is the key to success.

Test (3) based on Units 5 & 6

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A. Vocabulary and Structures



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed means a / an
a. sigh b. lung c. experience d. effect
2. It's important to your doctor. You are very hot.
a. recommend b. persuade c. consult d. ignore
3. You can get any information you need at the touch of a / an
a. bullet b. button c. expert d. essay
4. It's difficult to get a good job nowadays. You must your language and computer skills first.
a. decrease b. lose c. prove d. develop
5. Hala's father was very angry with her and turned his back her.
a. for b. on c. in d. at
6. You can rely on him to do this job. Don't worry, he can do it well. Another word for "rely on" in this sentence is to
a. depend on b. come on c. get on d. congratulate on

7. They can catch their train getting up early.
a. if b. in case c. unless d. in case of
8. The plane at 9:30 in the morning.
a. is meant to fly b. is meant to flying c. is meaning to fly d. is meaning to flying
9. If it for your mobile, I couldn't phone the police for help.
a. isn't b. weren't c. hasn't been d. hadn't been
10. My coach seems happy with my performance.
a. to being b. being c. to be d. be
11.if someone robbed you of your money?
a. What would you do b. What you would do
c. What would you have done d. What you will do
12. today?
a. What you are supposed to do b. What supposed you are to do
c. What are supposed you to do d. What are you supposed to do
13. I would have lunch with you if I enough time.
a. had had b. have had c. had d. have
14. My brother to clean the bedroom, but he didn't do it.
a. is supposed b. was supposed c. isn't supposed d. wasn't supposed
15. If you boil water, it into steam.
a. will turn b. turned c. would turn d. turns
16. What like next week?
a. is the weather meant to be b. is the weather meaning to be
c. does the weather mean being d. does the weather meaning to be

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

As the train approached the seaside town where I was going to spend my holidays, I went into the corridor to stretch my legs. When I turned to go back to my seat, I happened to glance into the compartment next to mine. Sitting there was a man who many years before had been my neighbour. He was a great talker, I remembered, it used to take hours to get away from him once he began a conversation.

Luckily , at that moment , he was much too busy talking to the man opposite him to catch sight of me. I slipped back into my compartment , took down my two suitcases and carried them to the far end of the corridor so as to be ready to get off the train as soon as it stopped.

When I reached the hotel, I went straight to my room and rested there until it was time for dinner. Then I went down to the lounge and ordered a drink. I had hardly raised the glass to my lips when an all too familiar voice greeted me. I had not escaped from my tiresome neighbour after all ! He grasped me warmly by the hand and insisted that we should share a table in the dining room. "This is a pleasant surprise", he said. "I never expected to see you again after all these years".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The story is about a man who
- a. tried to get away from an ex-neighbour but didn't succeed.
 - b. got off the train to avoid meeting an ex-neighbour.
 - c. was surprised to meet his ex-neighbour in a small seaside hotel.
 - d. went with an ex-neighbour to spend a holiday at the seaside.
18. The idiom "catch sight of" in the second paragraph means
- a. to escape when you see someone noisy
 - b. to avoid seeing someone or something
 - c. not to be happy when you meet someone you don't like
 - d. to see someone or something only for a moment
19. Why did the writer avoid his ex-neighbour ?
- a. as his ex-neighbour is patient and sociable.
 - b. as his ex-neighbour is annoying and making you lose patience.
 - c. as the writer had problems with his ex-neighbour.
 - d. as they didn't like each other.
20. The main idea of the passage is that
- a. you should be boring
 - b. it is good to have a charming manner
 - c. it is not good to have a charming manner
 - d. travelling by trains is not comfortable

B. Answer the following questions:

21. How do you see the writer's ex-neighbour ? Do you want to be like him?
.....
.....
22. Would you prefer to spend your holiday in a seaside town? Why ?
.....
.....
23. What do you think of travelling by trains ? Give your reasons.
.....
.....
24. I think it is better for someone to have an attractive behaviour, do you agree? Why ?
.....
.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

The choice to become a leader is not an easy one and there will not always be an easy path. You must possess some qualities and work on them. Learn how to be optimistic, patient, sensible, tolerant and understanding.

.....
.....

26. Translate into English:

الانضباط عادة ضرورية في كل شئون المجتمع المتحضر، بدونها لا يمكن لنا إنجاز أى شئ وسيصبح كل شئ في حالة من الفوضى والارتباك.

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Dalia inviting her to your birthday party. Your name is Zahra and your email address is zahra@gmail.com and your friend email is dody@gmail.com

Test (4) based on Units 1 & 2 & 3

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A. Vocabulary and Structures



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- A small part of a play which happens in one place means a / an
a. occasion b. interview c. view d. scene
- After the accident, he needed donor.
a. blood b. oxygen c. emergency d. chest
- The best punishment for them is to make them have a / an of their own medicine.
a. meal b. amount c. taste d. award
- It may months or years from scientists to have a safe medicine for coronavirus.
a. give b. take c. make d. send
- You can help your mother with the housework instead playing games all the time.
a. for b. of c. in d. on
- The manager of the new involved him in his new staff. The antonym of the word "involved" in this sentence is
a. included b. added c. recommended d. excluded
- The festival was cancelled yesterday, so many people come.
a. don't have to b. needn't c. didn't have to d. needn't have to
- Coming first in the final exam was event this year for Ali.
a. the worst b. the best c. better d. worse
- My uncle, Maher, a new house next week. Everything is arranged.
a. is building b. is going to build c. builds d. will build

10. Using mobiles phones is prohibited here. You use it.
 a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to
11. No player in Liverpool scored goals as Mohamed Salah. This means that
 a. Salah scored the fewest goals.
 b. Salah scored the least goals.
 c. All the players scored more goals than Salah.
 d. All the players scored fewer goals than Salah.
12. Stop talking or you
 a. will punish b. will be punished
 c. are punishing d. are going to punish
13. Mariam study physics and chemistry this year. She wants to join the faculty of medicine.
 a. has to b. mustn't c. had to d. needn't
14. I like my father
 a. well b. better c. best d. good
15. I be here on time or I can be late for half an hour?
 a. Need b. Must c. Have d. Ought
16. Hurry up, please. Our bus in five minutes.
 a. will leave b. is leaving c. is going to leave d. leaves

B. Reading

2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

What are falling stars? Contrary to popular belief, "falling (or shooting) stars" are not stars at all. They are meteors which are solid bodies that travel through space. Meteors range in size from that of a pinhead, which can't be seen, to huge objects weighing many tons, which are visible to the naked eye at night. Most meteors, except the really huge ones, burn up when they enter the earth's atmosphere. If they do land successfully, they are renamed meteorites.

Meteors usually travel together in swarms like bees. This nature's interesting fireworks show is called a meteor shower. It comes into view when these swarms of meteors hit the earth's atmosphere and then fall towards the earth in a beautiful display of light. One must be quite patient to see the most interesting meteor storms, as these cross the earth's path only once every thirty-three years. Believe it or not, this scientific fact took the scientists many years to prove.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Falling stars are
 a. ordinary stars in the sky
 b. insects which look like bees
 c. meteors which are solid bodies travelling through space
 d. kinds of fireworks
18. Meteors and bees are alike because they all travel
 a. in space b. in the atmosphere c. in swarms d. individually

19. According to the passage, some meteors are so huge that they can be seen at night.
 a. with a telescope
 b. without the help of an instrument
 c. with glasses
 d. binoculars
20. The idiom "It comes into view" in the second paragraph of the passage means
 a. It can be seen
 b. It disappeared out of view
 c. It is an opinion
 d. It is too far to be seen

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think it is important for man to study meteors ? Why?

22. Some people think that space exploration is a waste of money, do you agree ?
 Explain your point of view.

23. Would you like to be an astronaut ? Why?

24. What do you think might happen if a huge meteor hit the earth? How do you think
 space scientists can avoid that?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Sports and games play an important role in building up one's body and character. They are also an effective means of acquiring many virtues such as co-operation, self, sacrifice and discipline. Through games and sports young people find an outlet to their energies and they can be protected from deviation.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

مقاومة الإرهاب واجب وطني وديني، كل الأديان السماوية تنبذ (ترفض) الإرهاب ولذلك فإن الحرب التي تشنها الدولة على الإرهاب تتطلب مشاركة الجميع لاستئصال هذا الطاعون الخطير.

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Tom who lives in London to invite him to come to Egypt to spend a week with you. Your name is Marwan and your email address is mero@gmail.com. Your friend's email is tom12@gmail.com.

Test (5) based on Units 4 & 5 & 6

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A. Vocabulary and Structures



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- To make benefit from something means to
a. improve b. profit c. celebrate d. develop
- The referee gave the player a yellow card because he to be injured.
a. attended b. intended c. pretended d. predicted
- URL is an abbreviation for
a. union resources location b. useful repeated language
c. university repeated learning d. uniform resource locator
- She gave a loud cry when she a bad dream.
a. had b. sent c. made d. got
- He is a very sociable student. He gets on all the school students and teachers.
a. for b. at c. with d. by
- The earthquake ruined many buildings in the city. The antonym of the word "ruined" here is
a. destroyed b. constructed c. damaged d. smashed
- to have enough money, he'd buy that new house.
a. If he b. Were he c. Unless he d. In case he
- Your last exam marks weren't good. You harder.
a. should study b. must have been studied
c. should have studied d. must study
- She first in the competition, but her bad performance wasn't the expected one.
a. was supposing to come b. was supposed to come
c. is supposing to come d. is supposed to come
- If he had crashed into the tree, the car
a. would have damaged b. would have being damaged
c. would have been damaged d. would be damaged

11. Where was Amr yesterday's evening? He the car for his father.
 a. could wash b. could have washed
 c. should wash d. should have been washing
12. Take an umbrella with you. It sunny this afternoon.
 a. was supposed being b. is supposing being
 c. was supposed to be d. is supposed to be
13. paying the bill, your mobile will offline.
 a. Without b. In case of c. Unless d. Provided
14. Teachers often instruct their students the best use of their time.
 a. not to making b. not making c. not to make d. to make
15. she answer all the questions correctly, she can win the prize.
 a. Should b. Has to c. If d. In case
16. He seems by all his colleagues.
 a. to be loving b. to being loved c. to be loved d. being to love

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

One day I was doing a lot of shopping in my local supermarket , I had a long list of things , fruit, vegetables , sugar, tea, nuts, biscuits and so on. I waited in the queue until I got to the cash desk. The assistant added up the price of all the things I had bought. I paid her and began putting things into my basket . "Thank you . Goodbye ," I said , and went out of the shop with all my things.

I was walking down the street when I heard voice shouting behind me, I turned round and noticed it was the lady who had been behind me in the supermarket . She looked very angry . "You put my handbag in your basket with all my things," she said. I looked in my basket and saw the lady's handbag. "I'm very sorry," I said, "I picked your handbag up by mistake." My face was red as I gave the lady her bag . I was very embarrassed . The lady took her bag without a word, but looked at me strangely.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The lady ran after the writer because
 a. the writer robbed the lady
 b. the writer took her bag on purpose
 c. the writer took the lady's bag accidentally
 d. the writer thanked the assistant but didn't thank her
18. The writer , as a result his face was red.
 a. felt ashamed b. was embarrassing
 c. was guilty d. forgot to pay the assistant
19. The lady took her bag without a word as she
 a. looked at the writer strangely. b. was dump
 c. thought the writer was a thief. d. put her bag into the writer's basket.

20. The phrase «and so on» in the first paragraph means
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| a. nothing else | b. everything except this |
| c. together with other similar things | d. nothing more |

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think "A critical situation" is a good title for this passage? Why? Why not?

22. Would you call the police if you were in the lady's situation? Why? Why not?

23. How would you behave if you were the man in this situation? Give justification to your answer.

24. Do you prefer traditional shopping from shops or shopping online? Why?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilized behaviour like helping people in need. Imagine you were in their place, wouldn't you like to have other people standing by your side?

26. Translate into English:

من المهم أن يكون لك رأيك الشخصي الخاص بك و تقرر ما ينبغي أو لا ينبغي القيام به. ففكرة المرء على التأثير مستمدة من قوة شخصيته. وهناك حالات تحتاج فيها إلى أن تكون صارماً وحاسماً ولا تنسى أبداً أن السمك الميت فقط يسبح مع الشبار.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Reading enriches our culture.

13. He fell off that high building. Fortunately, he
 a. died b. survived c. searched d. donated
14. Don't the chance and try to make the best use of it.
 a. lose b. forget c. spend d. miss
15. This technology is bang up-to-date. The synonym of the word "up-to-date" is
 a. old-fashioned b. ancient c. modern d. creative
16. We live at the age of technological
 a. innovation b. organization c. reclamation d. immigration

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many people have been recently discussing the use of seat belts while driving their cars. Although seat belts have been shown to save lives, people give a number of reasons for not using them. First, many people think that they are a nuisance; they say that the belt is uncomfortable and inhibits freedom of movement. Second, many people are lazy. For them, it is too much trouble to put on and adjust a seat belt, especially if they are only going a short distance. Third, many people believe they will not have an accident because they are clever and careful drivers. They think that they are able to avoid accidents. Finally, some people are worried they think the seat belts may trap them in their cars and prevent them from running away. If they have an accident, they may not be able to get out of a car that is burning, or they may be unconscious. In spite of all these reasons, statistics prove that wearing seat belts saves lives and prevents serious injuries.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Many accidents happen because
 a. drivers are worried b. of using seat belt
 c. of high speed d. drivers are lazy
18. According to the passage, statistics prove that wearing seat belts the bad results of accidents.
 a. double b. reduce c. occur d. increase
19. The underlined word 'inhibits' in the passage can be replaced by
 a. allows b. permits c. embarrasses d. prevents
20. Which of the following words from the passage is an antonym of "aware"?
 a. Worried b. Careful c. Unconscious d. Uncomfortable

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Give a suitable title to the passage. Why do you think it is suitable?

.....

22. Do you think 'nuisance' has a positive or a negative meaning? How are seat belts considered a nuisance to some drivers?

23. Why do you think some people think they will not have accidents? Do you agree with them or not?

24. Do you think a seat belt is really a trap? Why / Why not?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Each student has a talent of some kind. The problem is that it is not logical to teach all students in the same way. Can you ask a fish to climb a tree?

26. Translate into English:

إن المعلم الناجح هو من يتعامل مع كل طالب بشكل مختلف حسب قدراته واهتماماته، فلا جدوى من إهدار الوقت والجهد في إجبار الطالب أن يتعلم شيئاً لا يتوافق مع مَلَكَاتِهِ الطَبِيعِيَّةِ.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

The Olympic Games

Model 2

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They would have called me if the results

a. had shown

b. were shown

c. had been shown

d. are shown

2. I'll have a shower as soon as I home.

a. am going

b. are going to go

c. go

d. will go



0.9.0

يمكنك حل
الاختبار إلكترونياً
وتصويبه

3. Mr. Mahmoud is teacher I've ever seen. He gives a hand to everyone.
a. the more helpful b. more helpful c. the most helpful d. the least helpful
4. People in public transport wear face masks or they will be fined.
a. have to b. should c. must d. could
5. It was meant a painting of Cairo Tower, but I damaged it.
a. to be b. to being c. being d. to been
6. They lost the match easily. They should harder.
a. train b. be training c. have training d. have trained
7. Mrs Nagwa to Hurghada with her family next weekend. This is her plan.
a. will fly b. is flying c. flies d. is going to fly
8. She would have taken part in the race she had been ill.
a. if b. unless c. in case d. as long as
9. Tamer and Sherif are twins. Tamer is Sherif.
a. as old as b. older than c. oldest than d. the older
10. Doing sports regularly is very necessary to avoid illness. You do it.
a. must b. should c. have to d. need
11. Can you divide this melon two equal parts ?
a. onto b. into c. out to d. away from
12. The scientific study of the nature and the development of society and social behaviour means
a. physiology b. psychology c. sociology d. biology
13. This site usually has fake news. The synonym of "fake" in this sentence is
a. correct b. false c. real d. true
14. The teacher asked me to an answer to his question, but I couldn't do.
a. save b. win c. take d. give
15. When he had an accident, he was badly and very weak.
a. bleeding b. forgiving c. acting d. performing
16. I think he is in the crime.
a. contained b. excluded c. consisted d. involved

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

We do it every day, making decisions about people just from looking at their faces. The tendency to link facial features to personality has even crept into the English language, with words like **'highbrow'**.

For Naomi Tickle, these are the basis of 'personology' (the study of persons). This science was developed by a judge in the USA who discovered a pattern in the physical characteristics of the witnesses and defendants paraded before him. Since then, studies of thousands of individuals have validated his observations.

Ms Tickle, who had a practice in London, claims that 'personology' can act as an **invaluable** tool for planning careers. It is known that most of us spend 40 years of our life at work, so it is not surprising that 75 percent of our clients come to us for career guidance.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The word "invaluable" in the third paragraph can be replaced by
 a. not valuable b. very valuable c. fake d. valueless
18. What is 'highbrow' an example of ?
 a. Facial features b. Funny personality
 c. Make-up d. Serious illnesses
19. People visit Ms Tickle to ask for career
 a. promotion b. training c. tips d. audience
20. What is this passage mainly about?
 a. Physical characteristics b. Planning careers
 c. Career guidance d. Facial features and personality

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think that facial features are linked to personality? Why?

.....

.....

22. How do you think personology can help you plan your career? Mention **TWO** points at least.

.....

.....

23. Do you think '**highbrow**' gives a positive or a negative meaning? What do you think a 'highbrow person' mean?

.....

.....

24. Have you ever judged a person you don't know by their facial expression? Were you right in your judgment?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Time management allows you to do more tasks in a shorter time. This results in lowering your stress and leads to more career success.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

المشاركة في الألعاب الرياضية مهمة للأطفال لأنها تقلل من التوتر وتحسن من مزاجهم. فهي تبني عظام وعضلات صحية، وتزيد من اللياقة، وتحسن النوم وتطور مهارات تعاونهم.

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words to your friend Salma on :

How to attract more tourists to visit Egypt

Your email address is hala@elmoasser.com and your friend's email address is salma@elmoasser.com

Model 3

A. Vocabulary and Structures



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه
1. I can give you a lift if you with me to the mall.
a. will come b. come
c. came d. would come
 2. My cousin's plane at 7:00 am.
a. takes off b. is going to take off c. will take off d. is taking off
 3. My brother ran 1000 metres in five minutes. I ran it in 4 minutes fifty-five seconds. This means I'm
a. much slower than him b. much faster than him
c. slightly faster than him d. slightly slower than him
 4. To build a new building, you take a licence.
a. must b. have to c. should d. ought to
 5. She was meant first in the final exam. She studied hard.
a. coming b. to be come c. to come d. to coming
 6. My English teacher always encourages me better in my exams.
a. not to do b. to do c. to doing d. not to doing



يمكنك حل
الاختبار إلكترونياً
وتصويته

7. Do you intend to take part in the competition ? This means
- a. Are you taking part in the competition ?
b. Are you going to take part in the competition ?
c. Do you take part in the competition ?
d. Will you take part in the competition ?
8. Were he, he would come on time.
- a. hurrying b. hurry c. to hurry d. hurried
9. The Amazon River is river in South America.
- a. the larger b. the largest c. larger than d. largest than
10. Wearing face masks in public transport is a / an nowadays.
- a. joke b. offer c. idea d. must
11. "Get your tablets and do the exercise on page 35, please." The teacher said to the students.
- a. from b. with c. off d. out
12. means the fact of having a place to live or stay, considered as a basic human need.
- a. Hatred b. Confidence c. Cooperation d. Shelter
13. Do you think he is an experienced mechanic ? The synonym of the word "experienced" is
- a. skilful b. amateur c. genius d. fable
14. They tried hard to first aid, but he was badly injured.
- a. make b. have c. do d. treat
15. He refused to reveal the of his information about the accident.
- a. source b. production c. author d. method
16. I like eating beans for breakfast. It is
- a. suspicious b. previous c. delicious d. ambiguous

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

As the plane circled over the airport, everyone sensed that something was wrong. The plane was moving unsteadily through the air. At that moment, the airhostess appeared. Speaking quickly, but almost in a whisper, she informed everyone that the pilot had fainted and asked if any of the passengers knew anything about machines, or at least how to drive a car. After a moment's hesitation, a man got up and followed the hostess into the pilot's cabin.

Moving the pilot aside, the man took his seat and listened carefully to the urgent instructions that were being sent by radio from the airport below. The man had to circle the airport several times in order to become familiar with the controls. The terrible moment came when he had to land. Following instructions, the man guided the plane

towards the airfield. It shook violently as it touched the ground, but after a long run, it stopped safely. Outside, a crowd of people who had been watching anxiously, rushed forward to congratulate "the pilot" on the perfect landing.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The main problem with the plane was
a. the busy airport
b. the unconscious pilot
c. the difficult landing
d. running out of fuel
18. The man who replaced the pilot
a. was an ex-pilot
b. flew a plane in the army
c. needed to get used to the controls
d. followed the hostess's instructions
19. But for, the man wouldn't have been able to land the plane safely.
a. the hostess
b. the pilot
c. the fainting
d. the airport controller
20. The word "sensed" can be replaced by
a. felt
b. fell
c. filled
d. failed

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Did that plane have its full crew? How do you know?

22. What distinguishes هو a man who drives a car in this situation? Mention TWO points.

23. If you were the man who replaced the pilot, would you agree to fly the plane?
Why/ Why not?

24. If you were a passenger on that plane, How would you feel? How would you help?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

We should carry out high-quality educational programmes to upgrade primary stage students. These programmes should cope with the latest strategies that result in a truly creative child.

8. Take this medicine you feel ill.
 a. without b. unless c. in case of d. in case
9. Students aren't to use their books during exams. It is an open-book exam.
 a. encouraged b. recommended c. prohibited d. allowed
10. My aunt arrived Luxor Airport coming from Mecca.
 a. in b. for c. at d. on
11. A time when something special happens means a / an
 a. meal b. revision c. occasion d. organisation
12. When something is extremely bad or serious, It is
 a. comfortable b. comparable c. severe d. foreigner
13. She's always been mean with her money. The antonym of "mean" here is
 a. generous b. active c. negative d. aggressive
14. People don't use means of communication. They are old-fashioned.
 a. modern b. global c. artificial d. traditional
15. The car agent gave me an offer to my old car with a new one.
 a. place b. produce c. replace d. introduce
16. My elder sister is very kind. She always tries hard to me happy.
 a. do b. make c. support d. boost

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A lot of people like to keep a pet. However, those pets sometimes put their owners in embarrassing situations. That's what exactly happened to us.

Our dog, Rex, is a nice little one, which we have had for almost five years. He has soft and white hair, which is so smooth that every one of the family enjoys moving his hand on him. Rex is now convinced that he is actually a member of the family, and so has equal rights. It is his rights that Rex insists on but duties he has none. One day we were expecting some guests for dinner. Mother woke up early to prepare food before the guests arrived. Rex followed her and started barking asking for some food. Mother dismissed him from the kitchen, closed the door and carried on her cooking in peace. The guests arrived; took their seats around the table and started eating. All of a sudden Rex jumped in front of one of the lady guests. She was so frightened that she screamed loudly. In spite of Rex's strong resistance, my sister took him away. He kept shouting when he was locked up in a room. Finally, my mother gave him something to eat. One of the good things about Rex is that he forgets our little cruelties to him. Anyhow, he looked up at my mother gratefully, and ate with great appetite.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Rex jumped in front of the lady to
- a. welcome her b. show her that he had equal rights
c. make her scream d. take food from her plate
18. One of the good things about Rex is that he
- a. remembers cruelties b. doesn't remember unkindness
c. was ugly d. helps everyone
19. Rex has duties.
- a. lots of b. many c. no d. not
20. The underlined word 'equal' in the passage can be replaced by
- a. the same b. same c. alike d. different

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Would you like to keep a pet? Why / Why not?

.....

.....

22. What do people like most about Rex? How do they express their feeling?

.....

.....

23. Do you think Rex is stupid in that situation? Why / Why not?

.....

.....

24. Did Rex tolerate the mother's punishment? How do you know?

.....

.....

C. Translation**25. Translate into Arabic :**

Global warming is the long-term rise in temperature of the Earth's climate.
It is a major aspect of current climate change demonstrated by direct temperature measurements.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

إن الطبيعة البشرية هي الخصائص النفسية العامة، والمشاعر، والصفات السلوكية للبشرية. هناك دائمًا صراع بين الخير والشر
تعكس هذه الطبيعة البشرية المتغيرة.

.....

.....

- 2** Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I don't think that you can say that the circus **treat** animals cruelly. The animals get used to it, anyway. It's good entertainment for us, and the animals work hard for their living. At least nobody kills them or eats them !

The most important point is that zoos are cruel to animals, and are worse than prisons because animals can never get used to being locked up in cages. And everybody goes and stares at them. We treat people in prison better than that.

17. people see that hunting is wrong.

- 55

B. Answer the following questions:

21. From your point of view, what is the best title for this passage ?

Why do you think that?

22. Are you for or against keeping animals in zoos? Justify your answer.

23. What do you think of using animals in circus? Why?

24. Do you think hunting animals for fun is wrong? Give a reason.

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

We should be optimistic and always think about the good sides in our life.

Pessimism is a deadly enemy that defeats our hopes and aspirations . We should always look cheerfully at the future.

26. Translate into English:

يحلم الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم بعالم من الحب والصداقة، عالم حيث يستمتعون بالحرية والمساواة، وحيث يحب الفقراء الأغنياء لأنهم يساعدهم، عالم حيث يوجد احترام متبادل بين الكبار والشباب.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

How to help your community

15. Breakfast in this restaurant is between 7 and 9 a.m.

a. survived

b. served

c. separated

d. celebrated

16. Don't be Everything will be OK.

a. upset

b. cool

c. exhausted

d. magnificent

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of the things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are widely used nowadays.

Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science. In the field of health, we use computers a lot in medicine nowadays. With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be **obtained** quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are generally associated with the world of science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Computers can store amounts of information.

a. few

b. massive

c. little

d. a few

18. everything we do in the world is controlled by computers.

a. Never

b. Early

c. Rarely

d. Almost

19. The word '**obtained**' in the passage can be replaced by

a. lost

b. existed

c. gained

d. applied

20. The passage is mainly about

a. the uses of computers

b. the drawbacks of computers

c. computers endanger the world

d. computer in medicine

B. Answer the following questions:

21. "Computers are far more efficient than human beings". Do you agree or not? Why?

.....
.....

22. Which field do you think computers can help most? Why?

.....
.....

23. Give a suitable title to the passages and say why you think it is suitable.

.....
.....

24. Do you think computers will control the world one day? Why / Why not?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Literature offers readers the profound pleasure of enriching their lives culturally and morally. Literature tells us about history, epics, heavenly books and wonderful classical works.

26. Translate into English :

إن المرأة الحديدية هي واحدة من أهم روايات الخيال العلمي للكاتب البريطاني تيد هيزز، وتعتبر هذه الرواية الهادفة تكملة لرواية الرجل الحديدي حيث تتناول واحدة من القضايا العامة.

D. Writing

4 Write an email of about 180 words on :

Write an email to your friend telling him about the bad habits people do in the streets and how to get rid of them. Your email address is magdi@gmail.com and your friend's email address is helmi@gmail.com

Model 7

A. Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you have a problem with your tablet, the technician at once.

- a. will phone
c. phoned

- b. phone
d. would phone

2. I get up late, so I missed the first lesson. It at 8 a.m.

- a. will start

- b. is going to start

- c. is starting

- d. starts

3. He is careful driver in the factory. He has many accidents recently.

- a. the least

- b. the less

- c. the most

- d. the more

4. When it is very hot and sunny, people walk in the street with umbrellas.

- a. needn't

- b. aren't allowed

- c. must

- d. have to



الدولة

يمكنك حل
الاختبار إلكترونياً
وتصويبه

5. He the first prize.
 a. was meaning to win b. was meant to win
 c. was meant to winning d. was meaning winning
6. My uncle has decided to build a new floor next month. He it.
 a. is going to build b. is building c. will build d. builds
7. If it weren't for his assistance, the meeting
 a. would be cancelled b. will have cancelled
 c. would be cancelled d. would cancel
8. The weather forecast says that it is warmer today yesterday.
 a. than it was b. as it was c. than was it d. as was it
9. Old cans and bottles must
 a. be recycling b. recycle c. recycling d. be recycled
10. Can you give me a reply this question ?
 a. for b. at c. to d. by
11. Tarek was very happy when he his final exam.
 a. controlled b. succeeded c. followed d. passed
12. To means to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet, or computer.
 a. download b. upload c. update d. upgrade
13. In summer, the sun rises at 5 : 30 every morning. The antonym of "rises" is
 a. sets b. moves c. sends d. sits
14. The soldier used his to defend himself against the enemies.
 a. sword b. torch c. fork d. spoon
15. They were very happy to their son's success. They had a big party.
 a. negotiate b. appreciate c. celebrate d. stimulate
16. I received an encouraging to my new advertisement. I was hopeful.
 a. linguist b. suffix c. response d. object

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A student passed all his school examinations and then went to a college to continue his studies. There, he enrolled in a course in geography. But after the first lecture, he didn't attend any more lectures. The geography lecturer noticed this student was always absent and that he had changed to another course, so he was very surprised to see the boy's name on the list of students who wanted to take the geography examination at the end of the year.

The lecturer had prepared a difficult examination paper, which followed his lectures very closely, and he was eager to see how this student answered the questions. When he examined the answers, he found only one small mistake. So, he sent for the student and told him that he was curious to know how he was able to find only one little mistake although the student came to the first lecture and he was absent from all the others. To his great surprise, the student told him that he would not have made that mistake if he hadn't been confused by his first lecture.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

17. Why was the lecturer surprised when he saw the student's name on the list of the students wanting to take the exams?
- As the student didn't like geography lectures.
 - As the student attended only one lecture.
 - As the student had changed to another course.
 - As the student only attended geography lectures.
18. is the synonym of "enroll".
- Register
 - Pay
 - Cost
 - Research
19. The student mentioned in the passage must have been
- foolish
 - a fool
 - bright
 - sap
20. According to the student, he attended the first lecture he made the mistake.
- therefore
 - despite
 - because
 - although

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think learning at universities is different from learning at school? How?

22. What do you think of the student mentioned in the passage? Would you like to be like him?

23. Are you for or against difficult exams? Justify your answer.

24. In your opinion, is it useful or not for university students to attend lectures? Why?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood. Reading is certainly a good habit. It amuses, instructs, and broadens people's minds. Children learn good habits by imitation of their elders as well as by instruction and encouragement.

26. Translate into English :

إن سر النجاح في الحياة هو أنه يجب على المرء أن يكون مستعداً حين تواتره الفرصة، لذلك لا تنتظر أن يقدم لك النجاح على طبق من فضة. فعليك أن تعمل بجد وأن تتحلى بالعزيمة لتحقيق ما تصبوا إليه.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

What the youth can do to change the future of their country.

Model 8

A. Vocabulary and Structures



المزيد

يمكنك حل
الاختبار إلكترونياً
وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He the faculty he likes if he exerts more efforts.
a. may join b. would join
c. could join d. would have joined
2. Today, there's a football match between Al-Ahly and Zamalek. Which team do you think the match ?
a. is winning b. will win c. wins d. is going to win
3. Of the two tablets, my tablet is
a. more cheapest b. less cheap c. cheapest d. the cheaper
4. The manger told the employees that they work two additional hours tomorrow.
a. will need b. had to c. must d. will have to
5. It a nice poem, but it wasn't.
a. was meant being b. was meant to being
c. was meaning to be d. was meant to be
6. Mariam refused to the club with me.
a. to coming b. not to come c. to come d. not to coming
7. Everything is arranged for my brother's birthday party. He it tomorrow evening.
a. has b. is going to have c. is having d. will have
8. his report, the truth would have been hidden.
a. In case b. Unless c. As long as d. Without
9. When it is a holiday, all the governmental offices have to
a. be closed b. closing c. be closing d. closed
10. To take all the money, he plotted his brother.
a. on b. against c. behind d. above
11. A / An means money for someone who finds or helps someone important.
a. reward b. gift c. award d. indicator

12. Before the exam result, Mona was very upset. The synonym of "upset" is
 a. confused b. disappointed c. anxious d. marvelous
13. Your teaching methods are You should depend on some modern ways.
 a. natural b. industrial c. normal d. traditional
14. My uncle works as a guide in a tourist company. The word "guide" here is a / an
 a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
15. When someone acts in plays, he is a / an
 a. novelist b. inspector c. author d. character
16. Modern technology may be very harmful if it is
 a. followed b. respected c. wasted d. misused

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Most countries in the world now welcome tourists because of the money they bring in. Many countries make great efforts to encourage tourism, and many also depend on what they earn from it to keep their economies going.

People who travel as tourists can choose the form of tourism best suits them. Some people like adventure tourism while others prefer cultural tourism. People who have an illness of some kind prefer medical tourism. Those who care about wildlife and the environment prefer ecotourism.

People who like adventure will even try to visit countries. Companies regularly arrange trips through the Sahara Desert or to Himalayan Mountains for whoever enjoys such trips, but the numbers of visitors are small. Most tourists try to choose whichever places have fairly comfortable, cheap hotels, quite good food, reasonable safety, sunny weather or unusual things to see. Their choice of a place for a holiday also depends on when they can get away; it is not very pleasant to go to a place when it is having its worst weather.

One big problem for a nation wishing to attract tourists is the cost of building hotels for them. Building good hotels swallows up a lot of money, and many of the countries that need the tourists are poor. What they spend on building has to be borrowed from foreign banks. Another problem is that more and more big international companies are building hotels all over the world, so that the profits from a hotel often do not stay in the country in which it has been built.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Some people don't go to a place for a holiday although they like it because
 a. it is very pleasant b. it is fairly comfortable
 c. they might be treated well d. of worse weather
18. Which of the following is not a positive thing for poor countries?
 a. Comfortable Hotels. b. Hospitable people.
 c. High cost of having good hotels. d. Job opportunities.

19. Young people would be more likely to choose tourism.
 a. adventure b. medical c. conference d. cultural
20. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?
 a. Drawbacks of Tourism b. Forms of Tourism
 c. Benefits of Tourism d. Little about Tourist Industry

B. Answer the following questions:

21. What type of tourism would you choose? Why?

22. What type / types of tourism can Egypt provide? Mention at least TWO types.

23. Which tourist destination do you recommend to tourists visiting Egypt? Why?

24. What solutions do you suggest to help poor countries attract more tourists? Make at least two suggestions.

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Personal hobbies are vital for the health and time of individuals in modern societies.
 Hobbies help them satisfy their desires and get rid of the pressures of heavy work.

.....

26. Translate into English:

لا بد من الاهتمام بالأدب الموجّه إلى الطفل، فأدب الأطفال يلعب دورًا حيويًا في تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، فهو يطور كلاً من
 الثروة اللغوية للأطفال وحسهم النقدي كما يؤدي إلى إثراء خيال الطفل وتطلعاته.

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Your past habits

.....

Model 9

A. Vocabulary and Structures



يمكنك حل
الاختبار إلكترونياً
وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you had had enough money, ?
 a. would have you bought that car
 b. would you that car have bought
 c. would you bought have that car
 d. would you have bought that car
2. Stop ! I you.
 a. am killing b. kill c. will kill d. am going to kill
3. Smoking here. You can smoke outside this building.
 a. isn't banned b. isn't allowed c. is allowed d. is permitted
4. This is hotel I've ever been to.
 a. best b. better c. the better d. the best
5. He is supposed the site all night.
 a. to guard b. to guarding c. being guard d. to be guard
6. The shopkeeper asked his customers noise at the supermarket.
 a. to make b. not to make c. making d. to making
7. Experts think that electric cars in the near future.
 a. are spreading b. spread c. are going to spread d. will spread
8. We will travel by bus we get train tickets.
 a. unless b. if c. as long as d. in case of
9. People use their mobile phones during driving.
 a. have to b. should c. mustn't d. oughtn't to
10. No sport is more popular than football. This means that
 a. all sports are more popular than football b. football is the most popular sport
 c. sports are as popular as football d. football isn't so popular as other sports
11. I used to stay touch with my friends in summer holidays.
 a. in b. on c. at d. of
12. A / An is a letter or a group of letters added at the end of a word to make another word.
 a. suffix b. award c. article d. prefix
13. It is unhealthy to eat big of ice cream during summer.
 a. amounts b. levels c. grades d. degrees
14. You should follow the proper procedures for dealing with complaints. The synonym of the word "proper" in this sentence is
 a. correct b. wrong c. ambiguous d. positive

15. Your essay is very long. Can you it, please ?
 a. recognize b. realize c. specialise d. summarise
16. Rania wanted to buy her mother a new bag, but she doesn't enough money.
 a. win b. spend c. pay d. have

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Sport is an important part of today's society and plays a large role in people's lives. Now, more than ever, sport events dominate headlines and athletes have become national heroes.

From a social standpoint, sport plays a positive role in uniting people from different social backgrounds in support of their favourite team. However, just as sport unites people so it can divide them, as is often demonstrated by crowd violence at football matches. Sport is also an important part of every child's schooling, as it plays a big role in their physical and mental development. It teaches children how to work as part of a team and cooperate with others, while at the same time improving their physical condition. The only drawback to this is that children who are less able to perform well in sports are likely to feel inadequate in comparison with their more gifted classmates, which may affect their self-confidence.

From an economic point of view, sport can be very profitable as it attracts a lot of advertising. On one hand, this creates profit for the sporting industry which allows for improvement and expansion, on the other hand, large sums of money are often paid to event organizers to promote products such as cigarettes, which are harmful to one's health.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. According to the passage, sport has two social effects on people, what are they?
 a. As well as combining people, it can divide them.
 b. It can split people but has no positive effect.
 c. It can't unite people and has a negative effect.
 d. It can be profitable as it attracts a lot of advertising.
18. The children who are likely to feel inadequate are usually
 a. good at sport b. experts at sport c. fan of sport d. weak in sport
19. One demerit of sport at football matches is that
 a. it improves the physical condition. b. it often leads to violent actions.
 c. it creates profit for the sporting industry. d. it develops the mental condition.
20. The word "....." in the passage is the antonym of "loss".
 a. support b. profit c. drawback d. expansion

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Are you in favour of involving sport during the school day ? Why / Why not ?
-
-

22. What do you think of "Fair play" as a sporting slogan? Justify your answer.
23. Do you agree that sporting competitions have a moral? If yes, what is it? If no, why?
24. Do you think the government should encourage people to practice sport? How?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life. He has to be valued like treasures. In fact, the feeling of friendship bears the meaning of intimacy and the purity of relationship.

26. Translate into English:

لقد أدركت البوالة أن التعليم هو حجر الزاوية في تحقيق التقدم، ولذا تزود وزارة التربية والتعليم المدارس بكل المقومات الممكنة التي تجعل اليوم الدراسي مفيد وممتع. فالمدرسة ليست أماكن لتعلم العلوم المختلفة فقط، ولكن أيضاً لاكتساب السلوكيات الصحيحة.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Friendship.

Model 10

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. They the charity if they had enough time.
- a. visit
b. would have visited
c. would visit
d. visited



نموذج

يمكنك حل
الاختبار إلكترونياً
وتصويبه

2. Amal : My birthday party will be next Thursday. Will you come ?
 Soheir : Yes, of course. How old ?
 a. will you be b. are you being c. are you going to be d. are you
3. Young people show respect to the old people in their conversations.
 a. need b. needn't c. mustn't d. must
4. My friend's school bag is mine. He only takes his tablet.
 a. heavier than b. the heaviest c. lighter than d. the lightest
5. I recommend buying this flat. It the best flat that you can buy.
 a. was supposed to be b. is supposed being c. is supposed to be d. was supposed being
6. Doctors advised people their face masks in public places.
 a. not to wear b. wearing c. to wearing d. to wear
7. At this time next week, I on the beach in Sharm El-Sheikh.
 a. play b. will play c. am going to play d. will be playing
8. If it for his laptop, I wouldn't have been examined.
 a. had been b. hadn't been c. were been d. weren't
9. Which is popular, football or basketball ?
 a. most b. many c. much d. more
10. Our children to follow healthy habits from their early days.
 a. must be taught b. should teach c. must teach d. have be taught
11. You should get with your neighbours.
 a. in b. about c. by d. on
12. A / An means a letter or group of letters added at the beginning of a word to change its meaning.
 a. apex b. index c. suffix d. prefix
13. It three hours to clean your father's car. Hurry up, please.
 a. takes b. does c. spends d. makes
14. Being upset all the time is bad for your health. The antonym of the word "upset" is
 a. cold b. cool c. warm d. hot
15. The police are investigating the everywhere to know the killer.
 a. suspect b. respect c. aspect d. defect
16. My mother asked me to the food because she had had a bad headache.
 a. do b. serve c. create d. imagine

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Does anyone know the number of living beings? Have scientists studied all the known species? Do you have an idea that some species have already disappeared or will disappear in the future?

What we know about many creatures on earth is still very little. Even the species that we know haven't all been studied well yet. Here is a marvelous kind of insect. It is the bee. Bees cannot talk, so they dance instead. They do this to let each other know where food can be found. A dancing bee begins by running in a straight line, and as she does so, she waggles her body to attract the other bees' attention. After going a certain distance along, she runs to the left and hurries back to her run again. But this time, she turns to the right at the end, and thus completing a sort of figure eight.

To human observers, the dance lacks meaning. To bees, it is full of detail, and the detail is not only meaningful but it is also vital to survival. It shows them which direction to take off and how far to go to reach the flowers on which they depend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The underlined word "waggles" can be replaced by
 a. runs b. dances c. shakes d. washes
18. People wrongly think the bees' dance has no
 a. vitality b. meaning c. detail d. colour
19. Why does a bee waggle her body?
 a. To get in shape. b. To please other bees.
 c. To warm herself. d. To tell other bees where to find food.
20. What is the best title for the passage?
 a. The Language of Bees b. Unknown Species
 c. Endangered Species d. Extinct Species

B. Answer the following questions:

21. What language do bees speak? Is it a verbal language?

.....

.....

22. Which arithmetic figure does the bee complete in her dance? How do you think she knew how to complete it?

.....

.....

23. Do you think dancing is important to bees? Why / Why not?

.....

.....

24. Are the bees that dance male or female? How do you know?

.....

.....

C. Translation

28. Translate into Arabic :

Translate into Arabic ;
Students with special needs are in urgent need of a special educational environment.
That's why teachers should maintain an organized classroom and limit distractions to help them.

26. Translate into English:

6. Translate into English:

يصبح اقتصاد البلد أكثر إنتاجية بالتزامن مع زيادة نسبة العمال الصغار. فالنمو هو استثمار في رأس المال البشري، على غرار الاستثمار في معدات أفضل.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Doing things late does not help you succeed.

Model 11

A. Vocabulary and Structures



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه**
1. If we water plants regularly, they
a. will grow b. grow
c. would grow d. can grow
2. We a play at the theatre tonight. We've got the tickets.
a. will watch b. are watching
c. watch c. are going to watch
3. Some students think that electronic exams are than paper exams.
a. easier b. as easy as c. the easiest d. the easiest
4. bring my tablet to school every day or it isn't necessary ?
a. Do I have b. Must I c. Should I d. Had I
5. It can't be a cat. You seem ,
a. be lying b. being lie c. to lying d. to be lying
6. Our English teacher advised us El-Moasser English book because it is very useful.
a. to buy b. not to buy c. to not buy d. to buying

ملفوظات

يمكنك حل
الاختبار إلكترونياً
وتصويبه

7. I intend to take an English course during the next summer holiday. I it.
 a. will take b. am taking c. am going to take d. take
8. he offer me an apple, I will take it.
 a. Had b. Were c. Should d. Unless
9. Shakespeare is writer in the world.
 a. most famous b. more famous c. the most famous d. the more famous
10. It is necessary to pay your bill before the 10th of May or you will pay a fine. You pay it.
 a. ought to b. should c. have to d. must
11. Can you bring some events happened in your childhood ?
 a. forward b. back c. on d. off
12. The car explosion damage to the surrounding buildings.
 a. caused b. got c. saved d. sent
13. To means to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy.
 a. laugh b. boost c. frown d. exclaim
14. Black pearls are very rare, so they are very valuable. The synonym of the word "rare" in this sentence is
 a. scarce b. familiar c. popular d. frequent
15. It's very useful to learn any language from a speaker.
 a. negative b. foreign c. strange d. native
16. You can trust him because he is a / an person.
 a. recognizable b. reliable c. unreliable d. employable

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I'm going to tell you a meaningful story. Once upon a time, two friends were travelling through a forest on foot. One of them is called Atef. The other is called Hamdi. A bear appeared out of the blue and started to run after them. Without hesitation, Atef rushed to the nearest tree and climbed as fast as he could to its top branches. His friend, Hamdi, threw himself to the ground and pretended he was dead. He stayed very still when the bear came close to him. He didn't move when the bear's nose touched his ear. Then the bear went away.

He waited for a little time and then he called Atef who was in the tree, "It's all right now. The bear has gone. You can come down." Atef, who was frightened, came down slowly, "The bear was close to your ear." Atef said "What did it say?" Hamdi laughed and said, "It told me to look for another friend because a friend who runs away when there is danger isn't a real friend."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The bear didn't eat the friend who pretended to be dead because
a. he was thin
b. he was brave
c. it doesn't eat the dead
d. he smelt bad
18. The underlined word "still" in the passage can be replaced by
a. movable
b. moving
c. motionless
d. active
19. Atef can be described as a / an friend.
a. brave
b. cowardly
c. loyal
d. evil
20. Which of the following is the best title for the story?
a. A False Friend
b. A True Friend
c. An Intelligent Bear
d. A Walk in the Forest

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think the bear really told Hamdi anything? How do you know?
.....
.....
22. Who is wiser, Atef or Hamdi? Why?
.....
.....
23. Which do you think is safer in this situation, climbing a tree or pretending to be dead ?
.....
.....
24. What moral lessons do you learn from this story? Mention at least TWO lessons.
.....
.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

School leadership teams have a vital role in shaping the right culture of students. This enables us to create good citizens who can share effectively in society.

.....
.....

26. Translate into English:

تعد صعوبات التعلم من أهم الأمور التي تهم العديد من التربويين في الوقت الحاضر. يمكن أن تعيق بعض هذه المشكلات مهارات التعلم الأساسية مثل القراءة والكتابة.

.....
.....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on:
Write an email to your friend telling him/her skills. Your email should be about 180 words.

D. Writing
Write an email to your friend telling him about the best ways she can follow to develop her skills. Your email address is soha@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is lamya@gmail.com

Model 12

A. Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Page 17
Date _____
Page No. _____
- Answer from a , b , c or d :
- My aunt would be a millionaire if she that factory.
a. bought b. buys
c. has bought d. had bought
 - I don't think it tomorrow.
a. rains b. is going to rain c. is raining d. will rain
 - The higher you go, oxygen there's in the air.
a. the more b. the most c. the less d. the fewer
 - My father's car broke down last Friday. He a taxi to his work every day.
a. necessary take b. has to take c. had to take d. should take
 - She was by now.
a. meaning to recover b. meant recovering c. meant to recovering d. meant recover
 - My cousin promised me a new T-shirt. He is very kind to me.
a. not to buy b. to buying c. to buy d. not to buying
 - The pharmacy at 12 p.m. Hurry up to buy the medicine we need.
a. closes b. will close c. is closing d. is going to close
 - I the manager, I would hold a meeting at once.
a. Had b. Should c. Would d. Were
 - You should read "King Lear" many times. It is play I have ever read.
a. more exciting b. few exciting c. the most exciting d. less exciting
 - My brother spent much time an essay about globalisation.
a. to write b. writing c. write d. to writing
 - At the age of technology, you can do many difficult things the touch of a button.
a. at b. in c. on d. for

12. Damietta is known for good furniture. d. making
 a. doing b. transporting c. importing
13. This dance is one of the traditional customs in this area. The synonym of the word "traditional" is d. global
 a. informal b. classical c. abnormal
14. A / An means the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking. d. aim
 a. idea b. tone c. topic
15. I have just made a / an to the Wikipedia article on guerillas. d. button
 a. effect b. target c. update
16. Do you think he punishment for his bad behaviour ? d. preserved
 a. deserved b. reserved c. served

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Last week, I went to a favourite restaurant of mine, where I often went to eat two or three times a week. I knew the owner well and frequently complimented him on his excellent cooking. While I was waiting for the soup to arrive, I noticed that a man sitting at a corner table near the door kept glancing in my direction, as if he knew me. I certainly didn't know him, for I never forget a face. He was keeping an eye on me. When the waiter brought my soup, the man was clearly puzzled by the familiar way in which the waiter and I addressed each other. Eventually he got up and went into the kitchen. After a few minutes he came out again, paid his bill and left without another glance in my direction.

When I had finished, I asked the owner of the restaurant what the man had wanted. "Well," he said, "That man was a detective", "Really?" I said, considerably surprised. "He was certainly interested in me, But why?" "He followed you here because he thought you were a man he was looking for", the owner of the restaurant said, "When he came into the kitchen, he showed me a photograph of the wanted man, he certainly looked like you! Of course, since we know you here, I was able to convince him that he had a mistake".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. We understood from the passage that the detective
 a. was following the wrong man b. didn't suspect the writer
 c. was following the right man d. knew the man wanted by the police
18. "He was keeping an eye on me". This means he was me.
 a. glancing at b. looking at
 c. watching d. looking in the direction of
19. The word "....." in the passage is the antonym of "disapproved".
 a. puzzled b. complimented c. addressed d. glanced

20. According to the passage, which of the following is not true ?

- a. The detective paid the bill before leaving b. The restaurant's food was delicious
c. The waiter hasn't seen the writer before. d. The writer knew the restaurant owner well

21. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you prefer to have your food at restaurants or at home? Give a reason.

22. The job of a detective needs special qualities, do you agree or not? Justify your answer.

23. If you were the writer, how would you behave if someone looked at you strangely? Why?

24. Do you think that the writer was lucky? Why / Why not?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Unemployment and illiteracy are two major causes that may lead to crimes and violence. So we have to create job opportunities for youth. It is also the responsibility of all sectors of society to eradicate illiteracy.

26. Translate into English:

الإدمان هو أحد أخطر الأمراض في هذا العصر. المشكلة التي تواجه معظم الدول ليست فقط في كيفية مكافحة هذه العادة الضارة بل أيضًا في كيفية محو آثارها الخطيرة على الشباب.

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Esam telling him about the place where you are going to spend your mid-year holiday. Your name is Hamza and your email address is hamza2003@gmail.com and your friend's email is esam100@gmail.com

Model 13

A. Vocabulary and Structures



يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتوبيه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. if your tablet had been broken before the final exam ?
a. What you would have done
b. What would have you done
c. What you have would done
d. What would you have done
2. The more you study, the marks you gain.
a. less
b. higher
c. most
d. highest
3. Shahd has an important meeting tomorrow morning, so she early.
a. should have slept
b. oughtn't to sleep
c. has to sleep
d. mustn't have sleep
4. Ahmed is known to be clever. He the full mark easily.
a. is getting
b. gets
c. is going to get
d. will get
5. It was supposed the easiest exam.
a. to being
b. being
c. be
d. to be
6. The oculist warned me too much TV.
a. to watch
b. not to watching
c. to watching
d. not to watch
7. Ali come early, he'd have taken a rest before the conference.
a. Should
b. Had
c. Were
d. Have
8. Do you think life in the country is life in a new city ?
a. quieter than
b. the most quiet
c. the quietest
d. as quiet
9. Our teacher said that he walk about 3 km to school every day during his childhood.
a. has to
b. needs to
c. had to
d. must
10. His theft was like a stab..... the back for his father. He couldn't believe it.
a. of
b. on
c. in
d. at
11. When you have a health problem, you have to your doctor.
a. consult
b. advise
c. suggest
d. recommend
12. means old ways of doing things that don't change.
a. Local
b. Traditional
c. Normal
d. Vocational
13. It's rare to find such loyalty these days. The antonym of "rare" is
a. dishonest
b. unusual
c. common
d. traditional
14. He us for hours by his stories and jokes.
a. annoyed
b. bothered
c. interrupted
d. entertained
15. The villagers often livestock on their farms.
a. buy
b. eat
c. keep
d. sell

16. You should control your or you will face a big problem.
a. degree b. anger c. democracy d. heavily

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of the things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are **widely** used nowadays.

Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science. In the field of health, we use computers a lot in medicine nowadays. With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be obtained quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are generally associated with the world of science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Computers, so the modern world is controlled by them.
a. are as inefficient as people b. are huge machines
c. more efficient than people d. work in an old-fashioned way
18. Computers can store..... amounts of information.
a. few b. massive c. little d. a few
19. You can tell the computer the field of science you are interested in and it supplies you with information
a. in no time b. after a long time c. after two hours d. two hours later
20. The antonym of "**widely**" is
a. to a great extent b. slightly c. little d. narrow

B. Answer the following questions:

21. In your opinion, what is the best title for this passage ? Why is this title in particular ?

22. Computers save time and effort, do you agree ? Why ?

23. Are you for or against using the computer in every thing we do instead of humans ?
Explain your point of view.

24. Do you think that modern technology has improved our life. How ?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Bosses used to discourage humour in the workplace. They thought that if people were laughing or having fun, then they weren't working hard. But now, that opinion has changed. Studies have shown numerous benefits of combining humour and work.

26. Translate into English:

مصر لديها تاريخ ثقافى عريق، وشهد التاريخ أن أجدادنا هم المعلمون الأوائل للبشرية، وأن مصر هي مهد الحضارة وستظل شريكاً
مسئولاً وفعالاً في جهود نشر التنوير والمعرفة.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Encouraging local products, why and how ?

Model 14

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your English if you want to get this job. You can take a course.

a. would improve

b. will be improved

c. should be improved

d. can improve

2. I don't think it tomorrow. The sky is very clear.

a. rains

b. is going to rain

c. is raining

e. will rain



تعليق

يمكنك حل
الاختبار إلكترونياً
وتصويبه

3. Samia is the same weight as Ola. This means that
 a. Ola is heavier than Samia
 b. Samia is heavier than Ola
 c. Ola is as heavy as Samia
 d. Samia isn't as heavy as Ola
4. before going camping?
 a. What you do have to buy
 b. What do have you to buy
 c. What do you have to buy
 d. What have you buy to do
5. This novel great success, but it didn't succeed.
 a. was meant to make
 b. was meaning to make
 c. was making to mean
 d. was meant to making
6. The police officer asked the driver the limited speed or he will be fined.
 a. to exceed
 b. to exceeding
 c. not to exceed
 d. to not exceeding
7. Nourhan will be punished for her mistake she apologizes for her teacher.
 a. unless
 b. provided
 c. as long as
 d. in case
8. This laptop is one in the shop. I can't buy it.
 a. more expensive
 b. most expensive
 c. the more expensive
 d. the most expensive
9. You have a big competition next week. You train very hard.
 a. must
 b. have to
 c. had to
 d. will
10. The metro train was full, so he had to wait the next one.
 a. about
 b. of
 c. for
 d. behind
11. The criminal himself not to be recognised by the police.
 a. disappointed
 b. disguised
 c. described
 d. discovered
12. This fish has a nice smell. I think it is going to be delicious. The antonym of the word "delicious" is
 a. tasteless
 b. spicy
 c. tasty
 d. harmless
13. It's kind of you to his financial problem with the bank.
 a. give
 b. solve
 c. stay
 d. evaluate
14. To give people food or drink means to
 a. serve
 b. deserve
 c. reserve
 d. preserve
15. When he spilled his cup of coffee on the carpet, he was
 a. relaxed
 b. confusing
 c. confused
 d. amazing
16. He for his government for more than ten years. He was active.
 a. applied
 b. spied
 c. attacked
 d. attracted

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The neighbours closest to my house are my favourite . The man is a retired army officer and his wife is still working for the nearby university .They are hospitable and usually invite friends to lunch. It is enjoyable to wake up on a Friday morning to the

sounds of their music. However, I also love their laughing when they make a mistake in their playing. The man's main interest is carpentry, he practices his hobby in the garden, making pieces of furniture.

They are ideal because they are helpful. I respect them as they never interfere in my private affairs. We've helped each other with **numerous** emergencies as fire and car accidents. We cooperate with each other in little ways as bringing in the mails. We invite them to with some of their friends who are poets, painters and professors to have meals. Sometimes, we go out together to share special occasions. Simply we live next to door peacefully side by side and I'm happy to say in a friendly neighbourhood.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. One of the reasons why the writer likes his neighbours is that
 a. they always make mistakes in their playing
 b. they are welcoming to guests
 c. they interfere in the writer's affairs
 d. they are unemployed people
18. The writer and his neighbours are to each other especially at the time of need.
 a. neighbourly b. neighbouring c. cruel d. tricky
19. The word "numerous" in the passage is synonymous with the word ".....".
 a. almost b. rare c. many d. few
20. The male neighbour of the writer
 a. works for the university nearby b. is noisy when he practices his hobby
 c. no longer has a job d. he works as an army officer

B. Answer the following questions:

21. It is important to live in a friendly neighbourhood, do you agree? Why?

22. Are you for or against helping our neighbours? If yes, say how giving one suggestion, if no say why?

23. Do you have neighbours from hell? Justify your answer.

24. The writer's neighbour practise his hobby in his garden, do you approve that?
 Why /Why not?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

A man cannot live in society without considering the interests of others as well as his own interests. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions ought not to be unjust or harmful to others.

26. Translate into English:

تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية لتحقيق معدلات عالية من النمو والاستثمار في محاولة لخلق فرص عمل جديدة للشباب والقضاء على البطالة التي تعتبر التحدي الرئيسي الذي يواجه مصر في الوقت الحاضر.

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Noha congratulating her on her success. Your name is Lamia and your email address is lamia20@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is noha@gmail.com.

Model 15

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you were a celebrity, ?

- a. how you would behave
c. how behave you would

- b. how would you behave
d. how you behave would

2. Shady is the most intelligent student in the class. This means that

- a. No student is more intelligent than Shady
b. Shady is more intelligent than a student
c. Other students are more intelligent than Shady
d. All students are as intelligent as Shady

3. Huda will be free till eleven o'clock. After that, she an important meeting with her employees.

- a. has
b. will be having
c. is going to have
d. will have



نونه

يمكنك حل
الاختبار الإلكتروني
وتصويبه

4. If you are very hot or have a cough, you by a doctor at once.
a. have to see b. must be seen c. had to be seen d. should see
5. It was meant a nice taste, but I burnt it.
a. giving b. give c. to giving d. to give
6. My grandfather advised me my teeth before sleeping.
a. to brush b. to not brush c. not to brush d. to brushing
7. You can join the faculty you want passing your exams with high marks.
a. without b. in case c. in case of d. unless
8. Which is the internet or the mobile phone?
a. most useful b. little useful c. more useful d. much useful
9. to fasten my seat belt while driving?
a. Must I b. Have I c. Is it must d. Is it a must
10. She was guilty stealing the gold ring.
a. of b. in c. on d. with
11. To means to get something ready to eat or use.
a. repair b. remind c. appear d. prepare
12. It's accepted to a mistake, but it isn't accepted to repeat it many times.
a. create b. invent c. make d. speak
13. Maha cooks delicious food for her family. The synonym of "delicious" is
a. distasteful b. tasty c. unique d. familiar
14. Mr. Nabil is the of the new branch of this clothes factory.
a. detective b. director c. athlete d. surgeon
15. The oculist asked me if I could the difference between the two letters.
a. tell b. say c. speak d. talk
16. My brother's or sister's son is my
a. cousin b. niece c. daughter d. nephew

B. Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Are supermarkets designed to persuade us to buy more? When you enter a supermarket, the manager knows better than you do how you will behave – which way you will walk, where you'll look, what will make you buy one product rather than another. The layout of a supermarket is designed to take shoppers around the store, from left to right. Then, shoppers will **pay attention** to all the products.

Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown near supermarket entrances. This gives the **impression** that only healthy food is sold in the shop. Basic foods that everyone buys, like sugar and tea, are not put next to each other. They are kept in different places so customers go past other attractive goods before they find them. In this way, shoppers are encouraged to buy products that they do not really need.

Customers also buy more when the shelves are full than they are half-empty. They do not like to buy from shelves with few products on them because they feel there is something wrong with those products.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title of this text is
 a. Supermarket Owners
 b. Supermarket and Children
 c. Successful Supermarkets
 d. Supermarket entrances
18. The best antonym of the expression "pay attention to" in this passage is
 a. distract
 b. ignore
 c. attract
 d. forget
19. The word 'impression' in the passage can be substituted by
 a. impact
 b. admiration
 c. opinion
 d. disgust
20. Which of the following is not an attractive thing for customers?
 a. Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown away from supermarket entrances.
 b. Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown near supermarket entrances.
 c. Shelves are empty or with few products.
 d. Sugar and tea are shown near supermarket entrances.

B. Answer the following questions:

21. If you were the owner of a supermarket, would you organise it the way mentioned in the passage? Why / Why not?
22. Have you ever bought something you do not need? Why?
23. Why do you think people are attracted by the view of fresh fruit and vegetables? What else can affect them?
24. How do you think a shopper can protect himself from buying things he do not need? Make at least TWO suggestions.

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Food preservation prevents the growth of microorganisms besides slowing the oxidation of fats. In fact, this oxidation causes a lot of serious diseases such as cancer.

26. Translate into English:

يمكن تدوين البيانات على الأطعمة المواطنين من الحصول على معلومات مفيدة حول محتوى المنتجات الغذائية. وهذا يساعد المستهلكين على اتخاذ قرار مستنير أثناء شراء المواد الغذائية الخاصة بهم.

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on :

Write an email to your foreign friend about the best habits your neighbours have. Your email address is suzy87@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is areej@mail.com

Practice Exercises 1

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

1. My mother has a delicious meal of chicken and rice.
a. prepared b. celebrated c. done d. cook
2. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or food such as fish and nuts ?
a. salt b. salty c. spicy d. small
3. Where do you have to put your hands when you CPR ?
a. prepare b. make c. perform d. act
4. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your
a. muscle b. cell c. surface d. lungs
5. You aren't late. You hurry.
a. had to b. don't have to c. didn't have to d. have to
6. In next week's programme, we to a famous scientist.
a. talk b. will be talking c. talking d. have talked
7. There was food at my friend's party, so I eat before I went there.
a. mustn't b. didn't have to c. had to d. don't have to
8. Did you know that Indian food is one of the food in UK ?
a. most popular b. poor c. best popular d. popular
9. COVID-19 can spread in crowded places, so we should be careful to avoid
a. protection b. injection c. infection d. perfection
10. This is the book I have ever read; I learned so much about athletes' hearts.
a. least valuable b. most valuable c. much valuable d. more valuable
11. All King Lear wanted was to keep the of King.
a. inheritance b. promotion c. address d. title
12. Travelling by plane is expensive than travelling by train.
a. many more b. much c. much more d. a lot
13. We must look for more solutions that involve producing a wider variety of food.
a. unavailable b. sustainable c. traditional d. insupportable
14. I think my brother this mobile phone most.
a. going to like b. is liked c. will like d. has liked
15. She felt for getting angry, so she apologised to her sister.
a. guilty b. fond c. proud d. capable
16. We can't go to the club this evening; we for Amr's birthday party.
a. will be preparing b. had to prepare c. going to prepare d. won't prepare

2 Choose the correct answers :

Last Saturday was an exciting (1) **occasion/tradition** because we celebrated my grandfather's 80th birthday ! All the family got (2) **out/together**, so there were 30 of us! My grandfather's daughters (my mother and aunts) cooked a special meal and I helped to (3) **celebrate/serve** the food to everyone at the party. In my (4) **conclusion/opinion**, it was the (5) **better/best** meal I've ever eaten! You must see the photos that I took on my phone! I (6) **will/was** show them to you when we meet

3 Translate the following into Arabic :

The immune system is made of the cells and organs in our bodies working together to protect us from infections and diseases. The immune system keeps us healthy because people with strong immune systems get ill less often.

4 Translate the following into English.

الكل يخطئ لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف يستفيد من أخطائه المختلفة. التعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعاً اكتسابها، فمن لا يتعلم من أخطائه لا ينجح أبداً.

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

What do you have to give to a plant in your home ? Most people would say food, water and light. However, an Englishman did an experiment and he found that you only have to give a plant sunlight for it to grow. In 1960, David Latimer put a plant inside a large glass bottle with a little soil. In 1972, he gave the plant some water, then he closed the bottle. He has not opened the bottle since that time, and years later, the plant is still growing inside the bottle. The plant, which is in David Latimer's house, needs light from a nearby window, but nothing else. He doesn't have to water it or give it food. The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air. This means that the plant can use the water to survive. The plant's food source is its old leaves, which the water in the bottle helps to recycle. The plant is now more than 50 years old and it will continue growing inside the bottle for many more years.

Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space. The plants will be a sustainable food source, and they will also help to take pollution from the air of a spaceship.

- What does David Latimer give to his plant every day ?
 a. some water b. food and water c. old leaves d. nothing
- When did David Latimer last open the glass bottle ?
 a. 1960 b. 50 years ago c. 1972 d. last year
- What does the plant need from outside the bottle ?
 a. light b. water c. oxygen d. leaves

4. In the future, this plant will

a. go into space

c. continue growing

b. become a food source
d. take pollution from the air

5. How was the plant able to live inside the glass bottle ?
.....

6. Why are scientists interested in this plant ?
.....

7. How might plants like this help people in space ?
.....

8. Suggest two other things that can replace traditional food types.
.....

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :

1. Write an essay to describe a dish that has a great deal of popularity in Egypt but is not Egyptian. Why do people eat it ?

2. Write a short story about an emergency. What did the people have to do and why ?
.....
.....

Practice Exercises 2

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

1. CPR is a famous

a. abbreviation

b. acronym

c. word

d. punctuation

2. Ali what the teacher said and did the wrong homework last night.

a. misunderstood

b. deceived

c. ruined

d. fell out with

3. They have just the timetable, so we know these train times are correct ?

a. upgrade

b. got into

c. solved

d. updated

4. Mr Omar is a man. He always gives us the right advice.

a. well-known

b. wise

c. wealthy

d. wild

5. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you me!

a. could phone

b. should have phoned

c. should phone

d. would have phoned

6. The teacher told the students their books at page 150.

a. to open

b. open

c. you open

d. opening

7. I send the report to the General Manager, he needed it urgently.

a. mustn't

b. don't have to

c. had to

d. didn't have to

8. My brother would have been a doctor if he his exams.

a. passed

b. would pass

c. had passed

d. pass

9. are used to express emotions in electronic messages.
 a. Abbreviations b. Emojis c. Keys d. Symbols
10. I wish I that food yesterday; I got very sick from it.
 a. had eaten b. didn't eat c. hadn't eaten d. won't eat
11. Don't files from the internet unless you are sure they are safe.
 a. upload b. download c. overload d. load
12. I'm so sorry; if I free time, I'd have met you yesterday.
 a. had had b. had been c. would have d. hadn't had
13. Samir is very busy. He has an enormous of papers on his desk.
 a. bell b. bill c. pile d. ball
14. The airline postpone the flight to Rome yesterday because of the bad weather conditions.
 a. has to b. had to c. doesn't have to d. didn't have to
15. He me to help him because he was in trouble.
 a. begged b. made c. apologised d. insisted
16. They are happy; they be having a nice time.
 a. are meaning to b. supposed to c. seem to d. won't

2 Choose the correct answers :

If it (1) **can/was** not for technology, language (2) **have/would** probably be very different today. New inventions (3) **meant/seem** to get their names from old words, or from the innovator who made them. For example, if you ask for a biro, someone (4) **to/will give** you a type of pen that gets its name from Laszlo Biro, who invented it (5) **Do/If** you want to clean the carpet, you might hover it. And the verb hoover also comes from an innovator, William Hoover. So, if you must to have your name on an important product, (6) **became/become** an innovator!

3 Translate the following into Arabic :

All over the world, a lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do various tasks as quickly as they can.

.....

.....

4 Translate the following into English.

لقد تأثر سوق العمل والاقتصاد العالمي كثيرًا في كل أنحاء العالم بجائحة كورونا، حيث تضررت العمالة اليومية وظهرت العديد من الوظائف التي تؤدي من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الإنترنت.

.....

.....

5

Read the text and answer the questions :

Last year, my friend Hesham and I decided to visit an old friend called Adam. We had first met Adam at Cairo. University, but we lost touch with him when he moved to Thessalonian in the north of Greece. I had always wanted to see Athens and so Hesham agreed to spend a few days there before we went to meet our friend. We decided to use an old guidebook of the city that my cousin, Sami, had given to me. It was supposed to be the best guide to the city. It seemed to be very detailed and it had a lot of maps. At the time, I didn't realise that it had been more than fifteen years since my cousin last visited Athens. If we had known that his book had been written in 2003, we wouldn't have used it ! It told us to avoid a lot of **hazardous** places in the city, so we did. Adam later told us that those areas were fantastic. We should have realised that a lot of changes had been made to the city for the 2004 Olympic Games. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved. If we had known about them, we would have gone to see those areas for ourselves. When we left Adam, he gave us an up-to-date and reliable new guide to Greece, which we used to visit some of the islands. You could also read it online and download maps and updates. It was fantastic ! If I went travelling again, I would definitely use an up-to-date guide.

- Why didn't Hesham and the writer keep in touch with Adam?
 - They fell out him
 - He went to a different school
 - He lived in a different country
 - He spoke a different language
- What did the writer first think of the guidebook his cousin gave him?
 - It seemed to be good.
 - He did not trust it
 - It was very old
 - It was new and reliable.
- Why did the writer and Hesham not visit some parts of Athens?
 - Adam ordered them not to go there
 - The Olympic Games were happening.
 - The guidebook did not recommend them.
 - They did not have time.
- How did they get information to travel around the islands?
 - from an online guide
 - from an ebook
 - from a guide that Adam wrote
 - from a man who knew the islands
- What had changed in Athens since 2003 ?
- What do you think the word "**hazardous**" in the text mean ?
- What do you think the writer learnt from his trip to Greece ?
- What problems do you think online guides might have?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :

1. Write a blog about your life so far. What are your wishes and regrets ?
2. You receive an email from an uncle advising you how to use social media well. Report what your uncle told you to a friend.

Practice Exercises 3

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

1. Firefighters have to quickly when there is an emergency.
a. sigh b. divide c. persuade d. react
2. This cave is very dark. Does anyone have a ?
a. sword b. post c. torch d. frown
3. If you are rude to someone, you should
a. apologise b. perform c. shelter d. deceive
4. In their game, some of the children to be animals.
a. rewarded b. did c. pretended d. looked
5. You sit on that wall. It is dangerous
a. mustn't b. don't have to c. must d. had to
6. The students all feel now that the exams have finished.
a. the happiest b. happier c. more happy d. happiest
7. In the future, I think we electric cars.
a. drive b. be driving c. will be driving d. are driving
8. Ahmed feels ill and wishes he eaten so' many sweets.
a. hasn't b. didn't c. won't d. hadn't
9. The teacher asked students to cooperate together to a certain task.
a. form b. reform c. perform d. inform
10. The Athletic Heart Center have the best technology to check athletes' hearts.
a. must b. had to c. doesn't have to d. needn't
11. There will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050, so we will have to increase food by about 70 percent.
a. reduction b. protection c. production d. construction
12. Mohamed Abdelwahab to be very healthy before having a heart attack in 2006.
a. meant b. supposed c. seemed d. known
13. Messaging language isn't suitable in emails
a. informal b. friendly c. formal d. forming
14. I was locked my house; I had left my keys at work.
a. in b. out of c. out d. into

15. We are going to today because my father was promoted!

a. compete

b. complete

c. celebrate

d. construct

16. Shehab travelled by train, even though he by car. He thought it would be safer.

a. had to travel

b. has to travel

c. could have travelled

d. couldn't have travelled

2

Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the verbs :

My cousin Haytham lives in the far west of Egypt, and he visited our house for the first time last year. One day, we had a picnic near a canal and he told me he wanted to explore the area. I would have (1) (go) with him, but I was tired. When we saw him swimming in the canal, we (2) (tell) him to get out quickly! If we had known that he (3) (want) to swim, we would have stopped him. The next day, he (4) (get) quite ill. I (5) (wish) I had told him not to swim in the canal. However, he (6) (seem) to understand that he had made a mistake. They do not have big canals in his part of Egypt, so Haytham didn't know that it is not safe to swim in them. Luckily, he is better now!

3

Translate the following into Arabic :

The world is experiencing a lot of epidemics, such as COVID-19. Maintaining personal hygiene in this case is a must, not a luxury anymore.

4

Translate the following into English.

يُعتبر التعليم في المنزل إحدى الطرق التي يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. لذلك توفر الدولة كل سبل الدعم لتمكين الطلاب من المشاركة بفاعلية.

5

Read the text and answer the questions :

When you learn English, you should remember that languages are always changing. New words and phrases will appear and sometimes old words start to have new meanings. If you want to be really effective at learning a language, it is important to know about these new words. A list is published online every year. For example, unfriend is a new verb that is used when you stop being friends with someone on social media. The phrase fake news was added to dictionaries in 2019 after many false stories started to appear on social media. The phrase social distancing was first used in 2020 during the health emergency and it means keeping away from other people. The German word uber has recently been used in informal English to mean 'very successful' adding to the many other foreign words used in English, such as café (from French) and the small motorbike called a moped (from Swedish).

You might wish that English followed the example of the Portuguese language to make spelling easier. Portugal and Brazil both speak the same language, but the Portuguese recently changed the spelling of many words to follow the same rules that they use in Brazil because they are much easier. At the moment, however, if you learn English in many parts of the world, you usually have to learn the British English spellings, which can be more difficult than American English spellings.

1. It is important to changes to the English language.
 a. be aware of b. take control of c. be tempted by d. bring back
2. You can use the verb "unfriend" when you want to stop friends on social media.
 a. losing touch with b. keeping in touch with
 c. subscribing to d. uploading
3. The German word *uber* is an example of
 a. an informal use of an old word b. a new informal word in English
 c. a foreign word used by successful people d. a very common word in English
4. They changed the spelling of Portuguese because they wanted it to be
 a. like English b. the same as the American spelling
 c. more traditional d. easier
5. Why were phrases such as "fake news" and "social distancing" added to dictionaries recently ?
6. What has not changed about the English language, according to the article ?
7. Why do you think English uses words from other languages ?
8. Do you think people should change the rules of a language to make it easier to learn?
 Why/Why not ?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :

1. Write an essay to persuade a friend of yours of how important it is to stay safe and healthy.
2. Write a summary of *King Lear* or any other play you like.

1. Answers of Homework Exercises

١. اجابات تدريبات الواجب المنزلي

Unit 1

Exercises on Vocabulary

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1. c. infection | 2. b. virus |
| 3. d. bleeding | 4. a. organ |
| 5. c. boost | 6. d. cell |
| 7. a. infected | 8. b. immune system |
| 9. b. react | 10. a. technique |

Exercises on Structures

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. a. has to | 2. c. mustn't |
| 3. b. don't have to | 4. d. b & c |
| 5. d. mustn't | 6. a. must |
| 7. d. a & c | 8. b. mustn't |
| 9. c. must | 10. c. have to |

Unit 2

Exercises on Vocabulary

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. amount | 2. a. simple |
| 3. c. celebrated | 4. a. occasion |
| 5. d. complicated | 6. d. prepare |
| 7. d. extract | 8. b. traditional |
| 9. a. serve | 10. c. chopsticks |

Exercises on Structures

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. d. less busy | 2. b. harder |
| 3. c. the worst | 4. a. largest |
| 5. d. b & c | 6. c. some |
| 7. a. smoking | 8. b. better |
| 9. d. age | 10. c. a & b |

Unit 3

Exercises on Vocabulary

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. agriculture | 2. c. sustainable |
| 3. d. livestock | 4. a. crop |
| 5. c. production | 6. b. innovation |
| 7. d. variety | 8. a. source |
| 9. b. vegetarian | 10. d. b & c |

Exercises on Structures

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. will have | 2. c. will see |
| 3. a. finish | 4. d. am walking |
| 5. c. are going to have | 6. b. will be eating |
| 7. a. will probably work | 8. a. is going to be |
| 9. a. won't leave | 10. b. is going to |

Unit 4

Exercises on Vocabulary

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. informal | 2. d. innovator |
| 3. a. selfie | 4. c. necessarily |
| 5. d. misunderstand | 6. b. frowned |
| 7. c. abbreviation | 8. a. tone |
| 9. b. linguist | 10. d. emoji |

Exercises on Structures

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. d. shouldn't | 2. b. couldn't |
| 3. a. could | 4. c. should |
| 5. d. shouldn't | 6. c. should |
| 7. c. should | 8. d. shouldn't |
| 9. a. could | 10. b. couldn't |
| 11. c. should | 12. a. could |

Unit 5

Exercises on Vocabulary

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. follower | 2. b. post |
| 3. d. b & c | 4. a. subscribe |
| 5. b. consult | 6. b. upload |
| 7. d. take down | 8. c. update |
| 9. c. upgrade | 10. d. adapt |

Exercises on Structures

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a. to cook | 2. c. to be cooked |
| 3. d. to be | 4. b. wasn't supposed |
| 5. a. didn't suppose | 6. a. to call |
| 7. c. to be having | 8. d. to leave |
| 9. d. seemed | 10. b. seems |

Unit 6

Exercises on Vocabulary

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. mean | 2. a. fire |
| 3. d. b & c | 4. c. a & b |
| 5. a. mean | 6. b. piles |
| 7. c. sigh | 8. d. beg |
| 9. a. fallen out | 10. b. hung out |

Exercises on Structures

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. d. wouldn't have had | 2. c. had cared |
| 3. a. might get | 4. a. die |
| 5. c. missed | 6. b. would buy |
| 7. a. fall | 8. c. would be |
| 9. b. hadn't taken | 10. b. wouldn't waste |

2. Answers to Al-Azhar Exercises

٢. إجابات تدريبات الأزهر

Unit 1

I Vocabulary

1. boasts → boosts
2. microbe → virus
3. mute → immune
4. sell → cell
5. origin → organ

II Language

1. need to → don't need to
2. has → have
3. mustn't → must
4. must → mustn't
5. mightn't → mustn't

Rewrite

1. You must avoid those mistakes.
2. We mustn't park here.
3. You must drive slowly.
4. You mustn't take photos in the Egyptian Museum.
5. Does he have to attend the party?

Unit 2

I Vocabulary

1. arsenal → personal
2. accelerating → celebrating
3. repair → prepare
4. introduces → serves
5. in → out

II Language

1. best → good
2. less → least
3. colder → cold
4. coldest → the coldest
5. tall → height

Rewrite

1. Ali is as tall as Ahmed.
2. No other mountain in the world is as high as Everest.
3. No other history teacher I have met is better than him.

4. His marks are worse than other students' marks at school.
5. Nobody in class got as good marks as his.

Unit 3

I Vocabulary

1. corps → crops
2. pollution → production
3. Farming → Agriculture
4. livestock → livestock
5. ground → earth

II Language

1. Do → Will
2. had prepared → prepared / have prepared
3. had told → tell / have told
4. are having → have
5. will spend → are spending

Rewrite

1. My father has just promised to buy me a computer if I succeed.
2. He is going to travel abroad.
3. He threatens to cut off the electric current if I don't pay the bill.
4. I've decided to decorate my flat.
5. I'm giving my wedding party next week.

Unit 4

I Vocabulary

1. ton → tone
2. format → formal
3. necessary → necessarily
4. elevator → innovator
5. brown → frown

II Language

1. he → him
2. to → not to
3. have hurt → have been hurt
4. played → playing
5. must → could

Rewrite

1. I shouldn't have wasted my time.
2. He is supposed to be here soon.
3. You shouldn't have got up late.
4. I should be travelling on the train to Cairo, but the train had left before I reached the station five minutes ago.
5. He could have solved the problem, but he didn't.

Unit 5

I Vocabulary

1. reliant → reliable
2. adopt → adapt
3. viewing → views
4. out-of-date → up-to-date
5. followers → following

II Language

1. working → to work
2. have walked → be walking
3. work → have worked
4. is seeming → seems
5. seems to be taller → seems taller

Rewrite

1. I am supposed to be home by midnight.
2. Were we supposed to be here so early?
3. This topic isn't what we're supposed to be discussing.
4. The weather was supposed to be sunny.
5. It seems as if Rokaya is happy these days.

Unit 6

I Vocabulary

1. main → mean
2. pales → piles
3. off → on
4. on → into
5. at → back

II Language

1. If → Unless
2. would have played → would play
3. be → have been
4. 'd have → had
5. will → would

Rewrite

1. If he had worked hard, he wouldn't have failed.
2. Unless he had accepted bribes, he wouldn't have been put in prison.
3. If Adel hadn't left his coat at home, he wouldn't have caught cold.
4. If you had done enough revision, you would have done very well in the test.
5. Had Reem had enough practice, she wouldn't have lost her tennis match.

Islamic Selections

Chapter (4) Fasting

1. Fasting is the fourth pillar of Islam.
2. For the faithful. So that they may be pious.
3. The should have their hearts fed and their souls vitalized.
4. More than 14 centuries ago in Al-Qadr Night.
5. He/She would get pleased and hopeful when they know that both fasting and the Holy Quran will mediate for them on the Day of Resurrection.

Chapter (5) Pilgrimage

1. a neonatal status.
2. They go to Blessed Mecca.
3. They come on foot and mounted.
4. Prayer in the Holy Mosque in Blessed Mecca equals one hundred thousand prayers.
5. It shows that all Muslims of the world are but one unified family whose members sympathize with one another.

3. Answers of Accumulative Exams

Test (1) based on Units 1 & 2

Vocabulary & Structures

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. a | 7. c | 8. b |
| 9. b | 10. d | 11. a | 12. a |
| 13. d | 14. c | 15. d | 16. b |

Reading & Critical thinking

17. a. 18. c. 19. c. 20. d.
21. It is sometimes wise to tell a person what they want to hear. It is intelligent to get out safe from difficult situations.
22. I think wealth symbolizes everything good. poverty, on the other hand, symbolizes everything bad.
23. Yes, I think so. He asked wealth to get in and he asked poverty to stand outside.
24. I think he is wise and intelligent. He acted wisely with both wealth and poverty.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

الحفاظ على المياه يعنى استخدام موارد المياه بحكمة فى فعل أشياء مفيدة. هذا مهم لأنه يحافظ على المياه نقية ويساعدنا فى حماية البيئة.

26. Translate into English :

Before taking important decisions, negotiate their advantages and disadvantages that will help you make the best decision possible.

Writing

27. student's own answer

Test (2) based on Units 3 & 4

Vocabulary & Structures

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. a |
| 9. a | 10. c | 11. d | 12. b |
| 13. d | 14. d | 15. a | 16. a |

Reading & Critical thinking

17. a. 18. b. 19. a. 20. d.
21. If I were a leader, I would be cooperative, sensible and decisive I think by this I can lead my group well and achieve too much.
22. I'm for it as teamwork makes it easy to achieve our targets.

23. I think they are losers and don't deserve to be leaders. Selfishness is a bad quality. The leader should be selfless not selfish.
24. Yes, I agree. As a leader should have the qualities that enable him / her to be so.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

يُحب الناس أو يُكرهوا لأفعالهم وتصرفاتهم (سلوكهم). البعض منهم أصدقاء وأكفاء لذلك هم محترمون ومحبوبين من الجميع. الآخرين غير أصدقاء وأنانيين ولذلك هم مكروهين.

26. Translate into English :

Education is not an end but a means to an end. In other words, we don't educate our children for just education, our purpose is to fit them for practical life to be good citizens who can serve their country when they grow up.

Writing

27. student's own answer

Test (3) based on Units 5 & 6

Vocabulary & Structures

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. c | 3. b | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. a | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. b | 10. c | 11. a | 12. d |
| 13. c | 14. b | 15. d | 16. a |

Reading & Critical thinking

17. a. 18. d. 19. b. 20. b.
21. He is talkative and boring. Of course, I don't want to be like him.
22. It would be fantastic to spend my holiday in a seaside town to be able to enjoy swimming in the sea or maybe dicing.
23. I think travelling by trains is more comfortable than travelling by cars, particularly if it is a long distance.
24. Yes, I think so. Having an attractive behaviour makes people love your company.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

إن الاختيار أن تكون قائدًا ليس بالاختيار السهل ولا يوجد دائمًا طريقًا سهلًا. يجب أن يكون لديك بعض السمات وأن تعمل عليها. تعلم أن تكون متفانيًا، صبورًا، عقلانيًا، متسامحًا ومتفهمًا.

26. Translate into English :

Punctuality is a necessary habit in all affairs of a civilized society. Without it, nothing could ever be brought to a conclusion. Every thing would be in a state of chaos and confusion / disorder.

Writing

27. student's own answer

Test (4) based on Units 1, 2 & 3

Vocabulary & Structures

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. a | 3. c | 4. b |
| 5. b | 6. d | 7. c | 8. b |
| 9. a | 10. c | 11. d | 12. b |
| 13. a | 14. c | 15. b | 16. d |

Reading & Critical thinking

17. c 18. c 19. b 20. a
21. Yes, to avoid them and to know how to protect the earth from them.
22. No, I don't agree. We must know the secrets of the universe. That must be useful to life on the earth.
23. Yes, to be an astronaut will give me a chance to explore the unknown space.
24. It might destroy a big part of the earth. I think space scientists make some kind of explosion on its way if the meteor is coming towards the earth to change it and be away from the earth.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

تلعب الرياضة والألعاب دوراً هاماً في بناء جسد المرء وشخصيته، وهي أيضاً وسيلة فعالة لاكتساب فضائل كثيرة مثل التعاون والتضحية بالنفس والانضباط ومن خلال الألعاب الرياضية يجد الشباب متنفساً لطاقتهم، ويمكن حمايتهم من الانحراف.

26. Translate into English :

Fighting terrorism is a religious and national duty, all heavenly religions reject terrorism, so the war which the state wages against terrorism requires everyone participation to uproot this dangerous plague.

Writing

27. student's own answer

Test (5) based on Units 4, 5 & 6

Vocabulary & Structures

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. b | 8. c |
| 9. b | 10. c | 11. b | 12. d |
| 13. a | 14. d | 15. a | 16. c |

Reading & Critical thinking

17. c 18. a 16. c 20. c
21. Yes, I think so because it describes an embarrassing situation.
22. No, I wouldn't call the police as it might be accidentally not on purpose.
23. I would apologize for the lady because I was the one who had made the mistake and I'd try to explain the situation to her.
24. I prefer traditional shopping because I can check what I'm going to buy before buying it.

Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

لتكون مواطن صالح هذا يتطلب الكثير من السلوك الحضاري مثل مساعدة الناس وقت الحاجة. تخيل أنك في مكانهم ألا تحب أن يقف الآخرون بجانبك ؟

26. Translate into English :

It is important to have your own personal opinion and to decide what should or shouldn't be done. One's being influential lies in the strength of one's personality. There are situations where you need to be strict and decisive. Never forget that only dead fish swim with the stream.

Writing

27. student's own answer

SECTION

3

Answers of Main Book

الإجابات الخاصة بكتاب الشرح (المعاصر)

Unit 1

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. b | 6. b | 7. c | 8. a |
| 9. b | 10. d | 11. c | 12. b |
| 13. c | 14. a | 15. c | 16. a |
| 17. d | 18. a | 19. b | 20. c |
| 21. b | 22. a | 23. d | 24. c |
| 25. d | 26. b | 27. a | 28. c |
| 29. d | 30. b | 31. a | 32. c |
| 33. b | 34. a | 35. d | 36. c |
| 37. a | 38. c | 39. b | 40. d |
| 41. b | 42. a | 43. c | 44. d |
| 45. b | 46. c | 47. a | |

Vocabulary Study

Mini-test (1) - Collocations :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. b | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. c | 7. a | 8. d |
| 9. c | 10. d | | |

Mini-test (2) – Synonyms & Antonyms :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. b | 7. a | |

Mini-test (3) – Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. c | 3. b | 4. a |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. a | 8. c |
| 9. d | 10. b | | |

Mini-test (4) – Derivatives :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. b | 4. b |
| 5. d | 6. c | 7. d | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. a | | |

Mini-test (5) – Clear the confusion :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. b | 6. a | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. a | 10. b | | |

Language Mini-Tests

Language mini-test (1):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. b | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. d | 7. c | |

Language mini-test (2):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. d | |

Language mini-test (3):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. d | 7. b | 8. d |

Language mini-test (4):

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. c | 4. d |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. c | 8. a |
| 9. c | 10. d | | |

Exercise on (Language)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. b | 7. b | 8. b |
| 9. c | 10. b | 11. b | 12. a |
| 13. a | 14. a | 15. b | 16. a |
| 17. d | 18. d | 19. c | 20. b |
| 21. d | 22. d | 23. b | 24. b |
| 25. d | 26. c | 27. a | 28. d |
| 29. b | 30. b | 31. b | 32. d |
| 33. d | 34. b | 35. b | 36. a |
| 37. b | 38. a | 39. b | 40. b |
| 41. c | 42. a | 43. b | 44. d |
| 45. c | 46. a | 47. b | 48. d |
| 49. b | 50. a | 51. b | |

Language Hints

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. a | 3. c | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. d |
| 9. a | 10. c | | |

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. لقد ثبت أنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل في العلم، وفي المستقبل غير البعيد سنتعامل مع جميع الأمراض لعلاجها وليس فقط للتحكم فيها.

٢. التَّغْيِيرُ المناخي له آثار كارثية على مستقبل الحياة على الأرض، فإذا كانت آثار تغير المناخ تجعل بيئتنا معادية، فقد يتناقص عدد سكان بعض البلدان.

٣. وفقا للتقديرات، يعاني حوالي ٤٠٠ مليون مريض من مرض السكري في جميع أنحاء العالم. لسوء الحظ، لم تنجح جهود العلماء في إيجاد علاج لمرض السكري حتى الآن.

Translate into English:

- Experts predict that the world population will increase to ten billion by the year 2100. This increase will necessarily require an increase in food production and the provision of more housing and services.
- Certainly, the research teams are working to find effective treatments for diseases such as diabetes and arthritis, but this may take a long time to achieve and it will benefit future generations.
- Some agricultural lands may turn into desert, which is known as desertification. This will result from drought and expected climate change.

Consolidate your Vocabulary from (chapter 1)

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. d | 6. a | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. d | | |

Test on (Unit 1)

Multiple Choice:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. a | 8. b |
| 9. d | 10. c | 11. b | 12. c |
| 13. a | 14. a | 15. b | 16. a |

Reading passage:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 17. d | 18. b | 19. c | 20. a |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|

- I think he is optimistic but he wants us to be ready for the possible danger of viruses. He also says that we can make use of viruses.
- Yes, we do. Not all viruses can be useful. We need the universal anti-viral drug for harmful viruses.
- The main idea of the third paragraph is: Viruses can be useful. It shows that science can turn viruses from harmful creatures into useful ones.
- Yes, I do. Scientists will use viruses in a way that make them useful not harmful.

25. Translation into Arabic:

يقوم العلماء حالياً بإجراء أبحاث حول طرق جديدة لعلاج الأمراض الشائعة مثل السكري وضغط الدم والإيدز، ولقد اكتشفوا بالفعل علاج فعال للفيروس C.

26. Translate into English:

Climate change will melt the ice covering the mountain peaks and ice at the poles. This will lead to an increase in the water level in the seas and oceans, which may lead to the disappearance of low-lying areas below the sea surface.

27. Writing: Student's own answer.

Unit 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. b | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. c | 10. a | 11. c | 12. d |
| 13. a | 14. b | 15. c | 16. d |
| 17. b | 18. c | 19. a | 20. b |
| 21. c | 22. d | 23. c | 24. a |
| 25. b | 26. d | 27. c | 28. a |
| 29. b | 30. d | 31. d | 32. b |

33. c 34. b 35. d 36. a
 37. b 38. c 39. d 40. b
 41. a 42. d 43. b 44. a
 45. c 46. d 47. a

Vocabulary Study

Mini-test (1) - Collocations :

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c
 5. b 6. d 7. a 8. c
 9. b 10. d

Mini-test (3) – synonyms & Antonyms :

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d
 5. c 6. c 7. a 8. d
 9. a 10. d

Mini-test (3) – Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions :

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c
 5. d 6. c 7. a 8. d
 9. b

Mini-test (4) – Derivatives :

1. b 2. c 3. b 4. a
 5. c 6. b 7. a 8. b
 9. d 10. b 11. d

Mini-test (5) – Clear the confusion :

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d
 5. a 6. c 7. c 8. d
 9. a 10. c

Language Mini-Tests

Language mini-test (1):

1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d

Language mini-test (2):

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. d
 5. a

Language mini-test (3):

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b
 5. c 6. a 7. d 8. b
 9. c

Language mini-test (4):

1. a 2. c 3. d 4. b

Language mini-test (5):

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d

Exercise on (Language)

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. d
 5. d 6. b 7. c 8. c
 9. a 10. d 11. d 12. c
 13. c 14. d 15. c 16. c
 17. c 18. a 19. c 20. c
 21. d 22. a 23. d 24. c
 25. b 26. c 27. a 28. c
 29. c 30. a 31. d 32. b
 33. d 34. b 35. b 36. a
 37. c 38. b 39. d 40. d
 41. b 42. c 43. a 44. d
 45. b 46. b 47. b 48. c
 49. a 50. d

Language Hints

1. d 2. b 3. a 4. b
 5. c 6. a 7. c 8. a
 9. d 10. b 11. c

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. برغم أن الغابات مورداً رئيسياً للأكسجين، إلا أنه يتم تدميرها بمعدل لا يُصدق مما يُعتبر تهديداً للحياة على الأرض.
 ٢. انتهت الحكومة المصرية من إعداد خطط إنشاء عاصمة إدارية جديدة لأنها الحل الوحيد لشوارع القاهرة المزدحمة، والعاصمة الجديدة ستكون موطناً لجميع الهيئات الحكومية.
 ٣. لقد أضافت العديد من الفرق الرياضية الشهيرة مؤخراً عضواً جديداً إلى منظوماتهم - أخصائي تغذية. وأصبح الرياضيون يدركون أن الطعام يؤثر على أدائهم.

Translate into English:

1. All living beings contain genes that control everything related to them, such as the speed of growth, the general shape, and even the diseases that they can be infected with.
2. The population in Egypt is constantly increasing all the time, and this requires the reclamation of more desert lands.
3. Many people oppose conducting any scientific experiments that aim at interfering with the formation of human nature, This has been made clear in the great opposition to cloning of some living beings or even some humans using genetic engineering.
4. Invading (Reclaiming) the desert and turning it into a green land is our only hope for a better future for future generations, without the need to use genetic engineering that people fear its harms.

**Consolidate your Vocabulary
from (chapter 2)**

Multiple Choice:

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. c | 3. b | 4. a |
| 5. d | 6. c | 7. c | 8. b |
| 9. c | 10. d | | |

Test on (Unit 2)

Multiple Choice:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. c | 3. a | 4. b |
| 5. d | 6. c | 7. b | 8. b |
| 9. d | 10. b | 11. b | 12. a |
| 13. b | 14. b | 15. c | 16. d |

Reading passage:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 17. c | 18. a | 19. c | 20. b |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|

21. I think because they believe it causes health problems.
22. I think being natural is the main cause of this. Things that are natural are better and have no side effects.
23. I am for organic food because it's healthy and harmless.
24. I think we can't do without it. It provides enough quantities of food to feed the ever-increasing population.

25. Translation into Arabic:

توفر الأرض ما يكفي لتلبية احتياجات كل شخص وليس
جشع كل شخص، وعندما نأخذ أكثر مما نحتاج فإننا ببساطة
نحرم الآخرين مما يحتاجون إليه.

26. Translate into English:

Scientists spend most of their time researching and experimenting to present everything new to serve humanity. They have made a lot of discoveries so far and they have made a lot of inventions that have made people's lives easier.

27. Writing: Student's own answer.

Unit 3

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. c | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. c | 7. b | 8. d |
| 9. a | 10. d | 11. a | 12. b |
| 13. d | 14. d | 15. a | 16. b |
| 17. c | 18. a | 19. d | 20. b |
| 21. a | 22. c | 23. a | 24. b |
| 25. d | 26. c | 27. a | 28. b |
| 29. d | 30. c | 31. b | 32. a |
| 33. d | 34. c | 35. b | 36. a |
| 37. d | 38. d | 39. c | 40. a |
| 41. c | 42. c | 43. a | 44. b |
| 45. d | 46. d | 47. b | 48. c |
| 49. b | 50. a | 51. a | 52. d |

Vocabulary Study**Mini-test (1) - Collocations :**

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. a | 4. c |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. b | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. d | | |

Mini-test (2) – Synonyms & Antonyms :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. d | 3. b | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. c | 7. d | 8. b |
| 9. a | 10. c | | |

Mini-test (3) – Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. b | 4. c |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. c | 10. d | | |

Mini-test (4) – Derivatives :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. d | 8. b |
| 9. a | | | |

Mini-test (5) – Clear the confusion :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. b | 4. a |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. d | 8. c |

Language Mini-Tests**Language mini-test (1):**

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. c | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. a | 8. d |

Language mini-test (2):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. c | 7. a | |

Language mini-test (3):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. b | | | |

Language mini-test (4):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. d | | | |

Exercise on (Language)

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. a | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. a | 8. b |

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 9. a | 10. a | 11. b | 12. b |
| 13. b | 14. c | 15. b | 16. c |
| 17. b | 18. a | 19. b | 20. c |
| 21. a | 22. a | 23. b | 24. d |
| 25. b | 26. c | 27. a | 28. c |
| 29. a | 30. d | 31. a | 32. d |
| 33. a | 34. d | 35. b | 36. a |
| 37. c | 38. c | 39. b | 40. d |
| 41. a | 42. c | 43. d | 44. b |
| 45. c | 46. d | 47. a | 48. b |

Language Hints

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. d | 7. d | 8. c |
| 9. b | 10. a | | |

Translate into Arabic:

١. إن نهر النيل ، والذي يمنحنا الحياة ، يتم التعامل معه بقدر كبير من القسوة، ففي بعض الأحيان يتم تلويث النهر بشكل متعمد وأحياناً من قبيل الإهمال.
٢. ليس الماء هو الشيء الوحيد الذي يمنحنا إياه نهر النيل، ففي السابق كانت مياه النيل تستخدم لتخصيب التربة على ضفافه.
٣. إن الأمانة واحدة من أهم سمات التاجر، لذا يجب تغريم أولئك الذين يبيعون الطعام الذي يتجاوز تاريخ انتهاء صلاحيته.
٤. من الأفضل دائماً شراء الطعام من متجر موثوق به حيث يمكنك أن تضمن أن طعامك لذيذ وصحي في نفس الوقت.
٥. يوجد الآن منظمات لسلامة الأغذية تهدف إلى التأكد من أن جميع الأطعمة التي تشتريها صالحة لتناولها.
٦. قد تحتوي ملصقات الطعام على قائمة بمكوناته لكي تعرف ما إذا كانت طبيعية أو اصطناعية.

Translation into English:

1. Health is a crown on the heads of healthy people, which is seen only by patients. So, you must be careful to have healthy food and clean water in order to remain healthy.

2. Meat should be well cooked so as not to cause any harm. Bacteria and germs in meat need a high temperature to get rid of them.
3. Experts say there are three bases for good health: proper food, regular exercise and adequate sleep every day.
4. The lack of exploitation of the population increase is one of the biggest problems facing us as Egyptians. The more population there is in Egypt, the less share of national income and services everyone gets.
5. We must rationalize the use of water so that we do not face thirst in the future. The whole world is in danger of scarcity of fresh water sources.

Consolidate your Vocabulary from (chapter 3)

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. d | 7. c | 8. a |
| 9. d | 10. c | | |

Test on (Unit 3)

Multiple Choice:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. c | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. d | 10. b | 11. a | 12. d |
| 13. d | 14. c | 15. b | 16. b |

Reading passage:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 17. c | 18. d | 19. b | 20. b |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|

21. Play provides students with refreshment which helps them relieve the pressure of study. Both play and study are of equal importance.
22. If the students didn't play, the outcome would be very bad because students would be stressed and very bored.

23. Teaching methods should be attractive. There should be suitable balance between study and play.

24. The Importance of Games at Schools

25. Translate into Arabic:

يُعتقد بأن النفايات التي تلقي بها المصانع في النهر تكون سامة لدرجة أنها تقتل الأسماك، لهذا السبب فهي تُعتبر تهديداً حقيقياً لأحد المصادر الرئيسية للبروتين.

26. Translate into English:

It is necessary to protect the Nile water from pollution in order to avoid diseases, and also to protect the fish resources we get from it.

27. Writing: Student's own answer.

Unit 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. c | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. b | 7. b | 8. d |
| 9. c | 10. d | 11. a | 12. d |
| 13. c | 14. b | 15. a | 16. d |
| 17. a | 18. c | 19. a | 20. a |
| 21. c | 22. d | 23. c | 24. b |
| 25. d | 26. b | 27. d | 28. c |
| 29. a | 30. b | 31. a | 32. b |
| 33. d | 34. b | 35. a | 36. d |
| 37. c | 38. a | 39. b | 40. d |
| 41. a | 42. c | 43. a | 44. c |
| 45. a | 46. b | 47. d | 48. a |
| 49. c | 50. c | 51. a | 52. b |
| 53. d | 54. d | | |

Vocabulary Study

Mini-test (1) - Collocations :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. b | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. a | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. d | 10. b | | |

Mini-test (2) – Synonyms & Antonyms :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. b | 7. d | 8. d |
| 9. a | 10. c | | |

Mini-test (3) – Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. b | 6. d | 7. a | 8. b |
| 9. c | 10. b | | |

Mini-test (4) – Derivatives :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. a | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. a | 7. c | 8. b |

Mini-test (5) – Clear the confusion :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. a | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. c | 7. c | 8. d |

Language Mini-Tests

Language mini-test (1):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. d | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. c | | |

Language mini-test (2):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. b | 7. a | |

Language mini-test (3):

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. b | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. a | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. c | 10. a | | |

Language mini-test (4):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. c | | | |

Language mini-test (5):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. b | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. c | 6. d | 7. c | |

Exercise on (Language)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. d | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. c | 11. b | 12. d |
| 13. d | 14. b | 15. a | 16. c |
| 17. c | 18. c | 19. d | 20. d |
| 21. b | 22. a | 23. d | 24. d |
| 25. c | 26. c | 27. b | 28. b |
| 29. a | 30. b | 31. c | 32. d |

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 33. c | 34. a | 35. c | 36. d |
| 37. c | 38. b | 39. d | 40. b |
| 41. d | 42. b | 43. b | 44. c |
| 45. d | 46. a | 47. c | 48. a |
| 49. b | 50. c | 51. d | 52. c |
| 53. d | 54. b | 55. c | 56. d |
| 57. c | 58. d | 59. d | 60. a |
| 61. a | | | |

Language Hints

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. d | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. a | 7. b | 8. d |
| 9. d | 10. c | 11. a | 12. b |

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. من المعروف أن التواصل هو مفتاح النجاح الشخصي والمهني، وهذا يجعل من الضروري للجميع تطوير مهارات التواصل الخاصة بهم.
٢. إن مهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورية لأداء الكثير من الأعمال في الوقت الحالي، وإنك تحتاج أيضًا إلى معرفة كيفية استخدام مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي بأفضل طريقة ممكنة.
٣. لقد حققت مصر تقدماً كبيراً في مختلف مجالات الصناعة والتعليم والتكنولوجيا الحديثة، والآن هي على طريق التطوير التعليمي.

Translate into English:

1. Language evolves at the same speed as scientific and technological development. New inventions have created new vocabulary, and social networks have led to the rapid transmission of vocabulary from one language to another.
2. Nearly twenty years ago, the mobile phone was considered a major revolution in the world of communication. This revolution is still going on and it brings us new things every day in the world of digital communication.

3. New generations of smartphones allow high-quality video calls through the fast internet networks that have spread all over the world.

**Consolidate your Vocabulary
from (chapter 4)**

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. a | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. b | 7. b | 8. c |
| 9. c | 10. d | | |

Test on (Unit 4)

Multiple Choice:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. c | 7. c | 8. a |
| 9. d | 10. d | 11. b | 12. b |
| 13. c | 14. b | 15. b | 16. d |

Reading passage:

17. b 18. d 19. a 20. b
21. I think vocational education is a bit easier because it involves action. This makes it more attractive and less boring.
22. Vocational education has become more important because it provides us with the skills we need in the labour market. Technological progress has made it of top importance to learn and develop new skills all the time.
23. Vocational education provides young people with the skills needed to find jobs or start their own small businesses. However, it can't replace academic education completely.

24. Vocational education

25. Translation into Arabic:

إن اللغة - كما تبدو لي - كائن حي، إنها تعمل وتتفاعل مع التغيرات السريعة التي تحدث كل يوم في كل مكان.

26. Translate into English:

Modern technology has some positives as well as some drawbacks, and it is better not to share details of your personal life on social media.

27. Writing: Student's own answer.

Unit 5

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. a | 8. b |
| 9. d | 10. a | 11. c | 12. d |
| 13. c | 14. a | 15. a | 16. b |
| 17. d | 18. c | 19. d | 20. b |
| 21. a | 22. d | 23. c | 24. d |
| 25. c | 26. a | 27. c | 28. b |
| 29. a | 30. d | 31. c | 32. b |
| 33. a | 34. b | 35. d | 36. c |
| 37. a | 38. b | 39. b | 40. a |
| 41. c | 42. d | 43. a | 44. b |
| 45. c | 46. b | 47. c | 48. d |
| 49. b | 50. d | 51. a | |

Vocabulary Study

Mini-test (1) - Collocations :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. d | 3. d | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. a | 7. b | 8. d |
| 9. d | 10. c | | |

Mini-test (2) - Synonyms & Antonyms :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. b | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. b | 6. d | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. c | 10. a | | |

Mini-test (3) - Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. b | 6. c | 7. a | 8. b |
| 9. d | 10. a | | |

Mini-test (4) – Derivatives :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. b | 7. b | 8. a |
| 9. c | 10. c | | |

Mini-test (5) – Clear the confusion :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. b | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. b | 7. a | 8. b |
| 9. a | 10. c | | |

Language Mini-Tests

Language mini-test (1):

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. a |
|------|------|------|

Language mini-test (2):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. d | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. c | |

Language mini-test (3):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. d | 6. b | 7. c | |

Language mini-test (4):

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. d |
|------|------|------|

Language mini-test (5):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. d | 7. c | |

Language mini-test (6):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. b | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. d | |

Language mini-test (7):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. c | 4. d |
|------|------|------|------|

Language mini-test (8):

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. a | 4. c |
| 5. b | 6. a | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. b | | |

Language mini-test (9):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. d | | | |

Language mini-test (10):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. d | 3. c | 4. d |
|------|------|------|------|

Exercise on (Language)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. b | 11. b | 12. a |
| 13. a | 14. b | 15. b | 16. c |
| 17. c | 18. a | 19. c | 20. d |
| 21. c | 22. a | 23. b | 24. c |
| 25. a | 26. d | 27. a | 28. d |
| 29. c | 30. d | 31. c | 32. d |
| 33. d | 34. d | 35. d | 36. c |
| 37. b | 38. b | 39. b | 40. b |
| 41. c | 42. d | 43. c | 44. b |
| 45. b | 46. a | 47. a | 48. d |
| 49. d | 50. c | 51. c | 52. c |
| 53. b | 54. c | 55. a | 56. c |
| 57. d | 58. c | 59. d | 60. b |
| 61. a | 62. d | 63. c | 64. a |
| 65. d | 66. c | 67. d | 68. b |
| 69. c | | | |

Language Hints

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. a | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. a | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. d | | |

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

١. عند تكوين صداقات على مواقع شبكات التواصل، يمكنك فقط معرفة ما يريد هؤلاء الأصدقاء أن تعرفه عنهم وليس واقعهم.
٢. لم يعد التواصل مع الآخرين أمراً صعباً، باستخدام مواقع الشبكات الاجتماعية يمكنك التواصل مع الأصدقاء والأشخاص الآخرين أينما كانوا وقتما تشاء.
٣. الدردشة مع أشخاص آخرين على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي تساعد أحياناً على إعطاء الشباب الثقة. الأمر السبب هو أن الأصدقاء عبر الإنترنت يمكن أن يكون لديهم شخصيات حقيقية مختلفة.
٤. كن حذراً بخصوص وضع بياناتك الشخصية على الإنترنت لأنه قد يراها أي شخص، وقد يستخدم بعض الأشخاص الأشرار أو مواقع التواصل هذه التفاصيل لإلحاق الأذى بك أو حتى خداع الآخرين.

Translation into English:

1. Internet chatting can be of great benefit if it is used to exchange useful information and help others succeed in their lives or even share their feelings with others.
2. Parents must monitor their children's use of social media. There are some destructive sites that destroy young people's ideas and motivate them to adopt extremist ideas.
3. Social media has many advantages and has some disadvantages, so everyone should benefit from all that is positive and avoid all negative things that are mentally or healthily harmful.
4. Modern technology must be used in a way that benefits the individual and the society, but using it only as a means of entertainment and wasting time is considered a negative matter that leads to killing the desire to work and achieve.

**Consolidate your Vocabulary
from (chapter 5)**

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. a | 4. c |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. c |
| 9. a | 10. b | | |

Test on (Unit 5)

Multiple Choice:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. b | 4. d |
| 5. d | 6. b | 7. d | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. c | 11. d | 12. b |
| 13. a | 14. d | 15. b | 16. a |

Reading passage:

17. d 18. a 19. c 20. c
21. This passage is mainly about producing digital media. I think it is a worthwhile topic because we live in a digital age.

22. Each member of the team should understand other members because that will improve the quality of the final product. Members of the team have to be aware of the latest developments in the digital field because that will make the final product competitive.
23. I would like to be a storyteller because I have the talent as a writer.
24. Yes, I think so. They need these options to help them create and launch a new business with a new digital media product.

25. Translate into Arabic:

بخلاف صداقات الإنترنت فإن أصدقاءك في الحياة الواقعية من المرجح أن يساعدونك ويعتنون بك. ومع ذلك ، يمكن لأصدقائك عبر الإنترنت تزويدك بالمعلومات ، ونقل الأموال إليك كما يمكنهم التعبير عن المشاعر الجيدة من خلال الكلمات أو الصور أو مقاطع الفيديو.

26. Translate into English:

Many young people become addicted to social media. Some of them cannot leave their smartphones or tablets from their hands, and this destroys their ability to communicate with others in real life.

27. Writing: Student's own answer.

Unit 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. b | 6. b | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. a | 10. c | 11. b | 12. a |
| 13. b | 14. a | 15. a | 16. d |
| 17. d | 18. c | 19. c | 20. a |
| 21. d | 22. d | 23. d | 24. c |
| 25. c | 26. d | 27. b | 28. d |
| 29. a | 30. b | 31. b | 32. a |
| 33. a | 34. c | | |

Vocabulary Study**Mini-test (1) - Collocations :**

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. c | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. a | 6. c | 7. c | 8. d |
| 9. b | 10. b | | |

Mini-test (2) – Synonyms & Antonyms :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. d | 3. c | 4. b |
| 5. c | 6. c | 7. a | 8. b |

Mini-test (3) – Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. c | 8. b |
| 9. b | 10. d | | |

Mini-test (4) – Derivatives :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. a | 3. b | 4. b |
| 5. c | 6. d | 7. b | 8. c |

Mini-test (5) – Clear the confusion :

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. c | 7. c | 8. a |
| 9. c | 10. c | | |

Language Mini-Test**Language mini-test (1):**

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. a | 3. b | 4. c |
|------|------|------|------|

Language mini-test (2):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. a | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. c | | |

Language mini-test (3):

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. c |
| 9. b | 10. d | | |

Language mini-test (4):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. c |
| 5. b | 6. a | 7. d | 8. a |

Language mini-test (5):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. b | 4. d |
|------|------|------|------|

Language mini-test (6):

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. a | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. c | 7. a | 8. d |
| 9. c | 10. b | | |

Language mini-test (7):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. b | 4. b |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. c |

Exercise on (Language)

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. b | 4. d |
| 5. b | 6. a | 7. d | 8. a |
| 9. b | 10. b | 11. b | 12. b |
| 13. c | 14. d | 15. d | 16. b |
| 17. c | 18. a | 19. d | 20. d |
| 21. d | 22. b | 23. b | 24. c |
| 25. b | 26. b | 27. c | 28. b |
| 29. c | 30. d | 31. d | 32. a |
| 33. d | 34. b | 35. b | 36. a |
| 37. c | 38. d | 39. b | 40. c |
| 41. c | 42. b | 43. d | 44. b |
| 45. b | 46. c | 47. d | 48. c |
| 49. c | 50. b | 51. b | 52. d |
| 53. c | 54. a | 55. c | 56. a |
| 57. c | 58. b | | |

Language Hints

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. c | 6. b | 7. a | 8. c |
| 9. a | 10. c | | |

Translation**Translate into Arabic:**

١. نحن نتاج ماضينا، لكن لا يجب أن نكون أسرى له، فلا تدع أخطاء الماضي تسيطر على حياتك اعثر وابحث لنفسك دائماً عن بداية جديدة ومعها سيكون هناك أمل جديد.
٢. لقد قيل دائماً أن الفشل مفيد، والشخص الذكي حقاً يتعلم من إخفاقاته بقدر ما يتعلم من نجاحاته.
٣. ما نعتبره خطأ أو فشلاً هو في الواقع هدية، ففي النهاية نجد أن الدروس المستفادة من تلك التجربة المحبطة تثبت أنها ذات قيمة كبيرة.

Translate into English:

1. It is natural, and sometimes useful, for a person to make some mistakes, for those mistakes are the best teacher of man. The lessons that we learn from our mistakes are never forgotten.
2. Do not stop too much at your mistakes. What happened cannot be changed because the clock hands do not turn back. Just turn the page and start over.
3. Life is the largest school in which we learn in a practical way. Every situation we pass through leaves an indelible mark on us because it has become part of our life experiences that benefit us in one way or another.

**Consolidate your Vocabulary
from (chapter 6)**

- | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. c | 4. d |
| 5. a | 6. d | 7. b | 8. c |
| 9. a | 10. c | | |

Test on (Unit 6)**Multiple Choice:**

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. d | 3. c | 4. d |
| 5. a | 6. b | 7. b | 8. b |
| 9. b | 10. c | 11. c | 12. d |
| 13. b | 14. d | 15. d | 16. b |

Reading passage:

17. d 18. a 19. b 20. c

21. I think no equipment can be described as the most important one. Every single equipment plays a role in making the game perfect.
22. I would bring the ball because I have a good one. I would suggest that the oldest boy would get to pick the teams.
23. This story teaches us to have flexible opinions. It also teaches us the importance of cooperation.

24. I think the best title is: A lesson to remember. As the boys have learnt a lesson they will never forget.

25. Translate into Arabic:

إن النقد جزء من التعلم والنمو، وهذا يعني أنك تبادر لتعلم شيء جديد وتتطور عن وضعك الحالي، فإذا لم تتعرض للنقد فهذا يعني أنك لا تخاطر بما يكفي لتعلم شيء جديد وتتطور.

26. Translate into English:

Regret is a painful feeling that makes us suffer for a short time. However, regret does not help and not trying to get rid of it makes us prisoners of it and may lead us to failure and misery.

27. Writing: Student's own answer.



ENGLISH

2nd SEC

Model Tests for

The first Term Exam

اللغة الإنجليزية
الصف الثانى الثانوى

نماذج اختبارات الترم الأول
طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٢

Model Tests

Model Test

1

Part

1

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When fertile land always produces good crops, it is
a. negative b. cooperative c. productive d. selective
2. It's polite to use formal language with people we don't know. Another word for "formal" is
a. sociable b. official c. artificial d. special
3. A good journalist must his sources before writing any news.
a. create b. repair c. fix d. check
4. A small part of a play which happens in one place means a /an
a. activist b. chapter c. act d. scene
5. When his car broke down, he walk a long distance looking for a mechanic.
a. had to b. needn't have c. didn't have to d. has to
6. No girl is Nourhan in the class.
a. the fastest b. faster than c. as faster d. faster as
7. I think the English exam easy this year.
a. is going to be b. is c. is being d. will be
8. "What when you were seven?" My teacher said to me.
a. could you do b. you could do c. you can do d. can you do
9. **Mother:** You to tidy your bedroom. I tidied it for you.
Son : Thank you, mum.
a. must b. needn't c. don't have d. have to
10. if your car had broken down in the high way?
a. What you would have done b. What would you have done
c. What have you would done d. What would have you done
11. It seemed the teacher was tired during the lecture.
a. as b. such c. though d. like

12. He got marks in this exam, so he was very happy.
a. the best b. the worst c. worse than d. the better
13. It's clear that COVID 19 bad effects on all the countries around the world.
a. needs b. has c. gives d. takes
14. When you invent a password for a safe or a mobile, it should consist of special as numbers, symbols or letters.
a. acts b. scenes c. events d. characters
15. The detective asked the boy to the people who kidnapped his sister.
a. arrest b. describe c. forget d. inspire
16. A / An means official name of a job.
a. attendant b. address c. nickname d. title
17. At libraries, people speak quietly.
a. must b. don't have to c. need d. needn't
18. I have enough time, I'll visit you.
a. Unless b. Should c. Had d. Were
19. Jana's training course at five tomorrow.
a. starts b. is starting c. will start d. is going to start
20. It seemed me as if the head teacher wouldn't accept my apology.
a. by b. of c. off d. to

Part 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Most people worry about forgetting things as they get older. But do you know that we have different kinds of memory? What most people think of as memory is, in fact, five different **categories** of memory. Remembering things from the past depends on two categories of memory, remote and recent memory. If you can't remember things about your last birthday, you are having a problem with your remote memory. If you can't remember what you ate for lunch yesterday, that is a problem with your recent memory.

When we take a test, we need to draw on our semantic memories. That is the sum of our acquired knowledge. Or maybe we want to remember to do or use something in the future. Here we use our immediate and prospective memories. Many people think that developing a bad memory is inevitable as we get older, but this is actually not correct. Of our five kinds of memory, immediate, remote, and prospective do not degrade with age.

To have good memories, we need to do some activities like learning new things or even doing crossword puzzles. Regular physical activity is useful to have a better blood supply to the brain. The only thing to avoid is stress. When we are stressed, our bodies release a hormone called cortisol, which is harmful to our brain cells and our memories. Reducing stress through meditation, exercise, or other activities can help to preserve our mental abilities.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. Which category of memory would you use to remember where your car keys are?
 - a. Recent memory.
 - b. Immediate memory.
 - c. Remote memory.
 - d. Semantic memory.
22. The synonym of the underlined word **“categories”** is
 - a. events
 - b. facts
 - c. hormones
 - d. kinds
23. The main topic of this passage is
 - a. Types of human memory
 - b. Functions of brain chemicals
 - c. Tricks for remembering things
 - d. How to stay active and healthy
24. Which of the following would positively affect your memory?
 - a. Watching TV
 - b. Producing cortisol
 - c. Stretching
 - d. Working a lot
25. We need to do some activities like doing crossword puzzles to have good
 - a. hearts
 - b. brains
 - c. memories
 - d. technologies
26. Remembering things from the past depends on and recent memory.
 - a. near
 - b. distant
 - c. immediate
 - d. late
27. Regular activity helps to have a better blood supply to the brain.
 - a. medical
 - b. technological
 - c. mental
 - d. physical
28. Cortisol is a/an which harms our brain cells and our memories.
 - a. exercise
 - b. enzyme
 - c. hormone
 - d. cell

Part 3

29. Translate into Arabic :

People are liked or disliked for their deeds and behaviour, some are honest and efficient, so they are respected and loved by all. Others are dishonest and selfish, so they are hated.

.....

.....

30. Translate into English :

لا يأتي النجاح صدفة أو بالحظ وبدون بذل مجهود . لكنه يأتي نتيجة لمجهود وصبر وتخطيط جيد وتحديد واضح للهدف المراد تحقيقه وتعاون فريق العمل.

.....

.....

31. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

Do you think that writers play an important role in our modern life? Who are favourite writers or novelists and why?

.....

.....

Model Tests

Model Test

2

Part

1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. One of the most important tasks for a farmer is to livestock.
a. kill b. keep c. find d. rise
2. People should their parents when they become old.
a. avoid b. look after c. look for d. take part in
3. My mother's cake is very delicious. The synonym of the word "delicious" is
a. tasteless b. tasty c. painless d. crazy
4. Despite its danger effects which are the main reason for the global warming phenomenon, some countries cutting down trees.
a. bring b. neglect c. avoid d. keep
5. Being is a bad quality of this player.
a. cruel b. kind c. cheerful d. tolerant
6. A / An is a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre.
a. incident b. play c. story d. action
7. No girl is more brilliant than Eman. This means that
a. Eman is the more brilliant girl b. All girls are as brilliant as Eman
c. Many girls are more brilliant than Eman d. Eman is the most brilliant girl
8. Adham asked me I had enough money to buy that mobile.
a. to b. not to c. if d. that
9. Look out! You your mobile in water.
a. are going to drop b. will drop
c. drop d. will have dropped
10. He didn't mean to hit your car. This means that
a. he intended to hit it b. he didn't intend to hit it
c. he didn't hit it d. he doesn't intend to hit it
11. It is healthy to drink much water in hot and sunny days. You do it.
a. have to b. should c. shouldn't d. don't have to

12. If it hadn't been for the bad weather, they'd have..... early.
a. reaching b. to reached c. been reaching d. reached
13. The repairs tomorrow. It's arranged.
a. are doing b. will do
c. are being done d. are going to do
14. The more you exercise, you are.
a. the fatter b. the fattest c. the fitter d. the fittest
15. Do you think your reasons to fight with your colleague are..... ?
a. sociable b. social c. logical d. traditional
16. This winter is severe, so you must be careful. The antonym of the word "severe" here is
a. difficult b. harmful c. painful d. gentle
17. If you want to any noise, go out of here now. I want to read a novel.
a. make b. save c. have d. speak
18. The money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died means
a. intelligence b. violence c. inheritance d. confidence
19. Security rules or you will be fined.
a. have to be following b. needn't be followed
c. have to be followed d. shouldn't be followed
20. Oliver Twist is one of interesting novel I've ever read.
a. the more b. the most c. more d. most

Part 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Would you believe that your diet can make a big difference in keeping a youthful appearance? According to a scientific theory, our bodies start aging because of oxidation. This is caused by certain oxygen-containing molecules in our cells, called free radicals.

Free radicals have the capability to attach to and damage parts of our cells, including our DNA. Our bodies have the ability to repair this damage. However, as we get older, these repair mechanisms start to break down, resulting in signs of aging, such as wrinkles. Free radicals are actually produced by our bodies, but their numbers can also increase because of the food we eat. So, we should avoid eating foods that produce more free radicals and eat foods that contain vitamins which help produce molecules called antioxidants that reduce the production of free radicals.

Common antioxidants, like vitamins A and E, can be found in many dark-colored vegetables as carrots, seaweed, spinach, and broccoli. Also, Fruits like apricots and peaches. These nutrients strengthen your skin and make it soft. Also you can eat cow's liver which contains a lot of vitamin A.

Green tea has also been tentatively added to the list of youth promoting substances although we still don't know much about it. It is said that green tea's antioxidant properties can repair cell damage already sustained as well as prevent damage in the future. In fact, green tea works even better if you apply it directly to your skin as an ingredient in facial cream.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. To keep healthy and have a youthful appearance, we should
 a. avoid eating vegetables and fruits
 b. eat dark vegetables only all the time
 c. eat food which contain more free radicals
 d. avoid eating foods with more free radicals
22. What kinds of vegetables contain a lot of vitamin A?
 a. Tasty vegetables. b. Dark vegetables. c. Green ones. d. All of them.
23. What is the main idea of the passage?
 a. Our bodies old-aged. b. Carrots are good for us.
 c. Food affects aging. d. We should use facial cream.
24. Which of the following can summarise the third paragraph?
 a. Which foods can contain vitamins A and E?
 b. When can we eat vitamin A and E?
 c. How can our bodies produce vitamins A and E?
 d. How can we waste vitamins A and E?
25. Green tea works better as a/an in facial cream if you apply it directly to your skin.
 a. recipe b. ingredient c. containing d. container
26. reduce the production of free radicals.
 a. Oxidants b. Antioxidants c. Nutrients d. Fruits
27. According to science, our bodies start because of oxidation.
 a. aging b. death c. damage d. vitamins
28. The cow's contains a lot of vitamin A.
 a. seaweed b. kidney c. heart d. liver

Part 3**29. Translate into Arabic :**

Population problem doesn't mean the same for all the countries, some countries suffer from overpopulation. However, other countries suffer from lack of population and encourage immigration to them.

.....

.....

30. Translate into English :

لم يعد التعليم معتمداً على الطرق التقليدية للتعلم مثل الحفظ، ولم يعد المدرس المصدر الوحيد في الفصل. بل أصبح الطالب مطالباً بالبحث والمعلم ميسر.

.....

.....

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Modern technology affects our behaviour and life.

How do you think it does ? How can we adapt to this ?

.....

Model Tests

Model Test

3

Part

1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you say something by mistake, you'd better apologise at once.
a. kind b. rude c. polite d. well
2. I trust him because he is
a. guilty b. rude c. wise d. mad
3. One of my favourite hobbies is to online.
a. score b. match c. goal d. game
4. Good people are always friendly other people.
a. at b. for c. with d. against
5. The new team leader chose his men according to their to him.
a. cruelty b. loyalty c. possibility d. dishonesty
6. A fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions means a /an
a. child b. toddler c. adult d. infant
7. I asked him what have a new identification card.
a. do I have to do to b. I have to do to
c. have I do to do d. I do have to
8. Mohamed Salah is Egypt's player nowadays.
a. best b. the best c. better d. the better
9. I will watch a film at the cinema tonight. It at nine o'clock.
a. will start b. is going to start c. is starting d. starts
10. The criminal threatened the old woman him all her money or he'll kill her.
a. to giving b. to give c. give d. giving
11. You have a long school day tomorrow, so you stay up late.
a. have to b. needn't to c. mustn't d. should
12. If you late again, you won't be allowed to attend the lecture.
a. come b. came c. had come d. coming

13. There some boys playing in my garden yesterday.
 a. seemed to be b. seemed to being c. seeming to be d. seem to being
14. Hany and Hala are twins. Hany is as Hala.
 a. as older b. older as c. as old d. old as
15. Do you know a word that the opposite meaning of “hospitality”?
 a. sends b. forgives c. takes d. gives
16. Thanks to modern technology, you can do many things at the touch
 a button.
 a. of b. by c. about d. for
17. You must away all your bad ideas towards him. He is an honest man.
 a. give b. escape c. run d. get
18. To use violence to try to hurt or kill someone means to
 a. attach b. adapt c. attract d. attack
19. It's not allowed to smoke at hospitals. We smoke.
 a. have to b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. ought to
20. This quiz is the most difficult quiz this term. This means that
 a. No quiz is more easier than this quiz
 b. This quiz isn't as difficult as any other quizzes
 c. No quiz is as easy as this quiz
 d. This is quiz is less difficult than any other quizzes

Part 2

● Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Are you preparing for a big test? If so, you may want to go and play some basketball between hitting the books. Researchers see an apparent connection between exercise and brain development. According to Judy Cameron, a researcher at Oregon Health and Science University, it seems that exercise can make blood vessels, including those in the brain, stronger and more fully developed. Cameron claims this allows people who exercise to concentrate better.

The effects of exercise on brain development can even be seen in babies. Babies who do things that require a lot of movement and physical activity show greater brain development than babies who are less physically active. Margaret Barnes, a pediatrician, believes in the importance of exercise. She thinks that many learning disabilities children have in elementary school or high school can be traced back to a lack of movement as babies. “Babies need movement that stimulates and connects

their five senses,” says Barnes. In this way, as they get older, children will begin to associate physical activity with higher learning.”

The benefits of exercise on the brain are not just for babies. Older people can beef up their brains by working out as well. Researchers at Cornell University studied a group of seniors ranging in age from seventy to seventy-nine. Their study showed a short-term memory increase of up to forty percent after exercising just three hours a week. The exercise does not have to be very difficult, but it has to increase the heart rate.

Also, just like the **motion** for infants, exercise for older people should involve some complexity. Learning some new skills or motions, such as with yoga or tai-chi, helps open up memory paths in the brain that may not have been used for a long time. The main goal is to increase the brain’s flow of blood. Your brain can benefit from as little as two to three hours of exercise a week.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. Why is yoga recommended for seniors?
 - a. It is easy on joints.
 - b. It does not increase the heart rate.
 - c. It can be done in groups.
 - d. It includes learning new motions.
22. Which of the following sentences can summarize the passage?
 - a. Exercise helps our brains.
 - b. We should exercise individually.
 - c. We should pass our tests.
 - d. Our brains change our exercise.
23. What type of patient does a pediatrician probably treat?
 - a. Poor people
 - b. Children
 - c. Animals
 - d. Old people
24. According to the passage, what is the connection between exercise and brain development?
 - a. Exercise makes us less intelligent.
 - b. The brain needs special mental exercise.
 - c. The more exercise, the bigger the brain.
 - d. Physical exercise helps think better.
25. According to the passage, people who exercise better.
 - a. concentrate
 - b. eat
 - c. drive
 - d. sleep
26. The word “**motion**” can be replaced by
 - a. complexity
 - b. movement
 - c. exercise
 - d. flexibility

27. Margaret Barnes says babies need movement that and connects their five senses.

- a. thinks b. disconnects c. motivates d. moves

28. Babies who show greater brain development a lot.

- a. stay b. move c. drive d. ride

Part 3

29. Translate into Arabic :

Personal hobbies are vital for the health and time of individuals in modern societies. Hobbies help them satisfy their desires and get rid of the pressures of heavy work.

.....
.....

30. Translate into English :

قدمت المرأة المصرية العديد من النماذج الرائعة على مدار التاريخ في كثيرًا من المجالات، فنجد لطفية النادى كأول امرأة تلتحق بمدرسة الطيران ونبوية موسى كأول ناظرة لمدرسة مصرية.

.....
.....

31. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

Do you think that scientific research is a waste of money and time?

.....